Master Index and Glossary

Version 8
Master Index and Glossary

Version 8
About This Book

This softcopy book is available only in PDF format. You can get the most current version by going to the IMS Web site at www.ibm.com/ims and linking to the Library page.

Summary of Contents

This book contains:
1. The glossary of terms for the IMS library
2. All the index entries from each of the books in the IMS library

Glossary

This is a glossary of IMS terminology. The entries are in alphabetic order.

If a term has an abbreviation or acronym, it is shown in parentheses after the spelled-out term.

Master Index

This master index lists topics alphabetically and refers to publications in which these topics are discussed. Along with the publication indication is the page number where the actual subject can be found.

If an index entry appears in several publications, the master index entry may refer to all or some of the publications; the subentries refer to the individual publication. For example:

/TRACE command
   description CR— 479
   starting DC trace DGR—261

In the above example, the description of the /TRACE command is in the Command Reference on page 479. The discussion of starting a DC trace using the /TRACE command is in the Diagnosis Guide and Reference.

The master index is a compilation of the indexes of the books in the IMS library. The individual books may refer to the same topic in slightly different ways, and these differences are reflected in the master index. For example, entries may be both singular (“message”) and plural (“messages”), and in the master index these entries may be separated by other entries (such as “message format” and “message queues”). Also, different entries may refer to the same topic in both abbreviated and unabbreviated form: thus “HDAM” and “Hierarchic Direct Access Method” are referenced here.

The IMS Version 8 book abbreviations used in this Master Index and Glossary (MIG) are as follows:

ADB Administration Guide: Database Manager
AS Administration Guide: System
ATM Administration Guide: Transaction Manager
APDB Application Programming: Database Manager
APDG Application Programming: Design Guide
APCICS Application Programming: EXEC DLI Commands for CICS and IMS
APTM Application Programming: Transaction Manager
BPE Base Primitive Environment Guide and Reference
CG Customization Guide
CQS Common Queue Server and Base Primitive Environment Guide and Reference
CR Command Reference
CSL Common Service Layer Guide and Reference
DBRC DBRC Guide and Reference

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1974, 2005
How to Use This Book

In addition to being an index for the entire IMS library, each index entry is a hyperlink to the actual information in the target book. Just click on the index entry and the target book opens to that page. To enable this feature, you must have all the IMS book PDFs in the same subdirectory.

Recommendation: To be most useful, we recommend that you have your Adobe Acrobat Reader preferences set to open the cross-document link in a different window. With this setting, after you are done reading in the target book (and then close that book), the MIG will remain open.

To enable this setting in your Adobe Acrobat Reader 5.0:
1. Open the Adobe Acrobat Reader
2. Click Edit→Preferences→General→Options and make sure that “Open Cross-Doc Links in Same Window” is not selected.

How to Send Your Comments

Your feedback is important in helping us provide the most accurate and highest quality information. If you have any comments about this book or any other IMS documentation, you can do one of the following:

• Go to the IMS home page at http://www.ibm.com/ims. There you will find an online feedback page where you can enter and submit comments.

• Send your comments by e-mail to imspubs@us.ibm.com. Be sure to include the name of the book, the part number of the book, the version of IMS, and, if applicable, the specific location of the text you are commenting on (for example, a page number or table number).
Summary of Changes

Changes to the Current Edition of This Book for IMS Version 8
This edition, which is available in softcopy format only, includes technical and editorial changes.

Changes to This Book for IMS Version 8
This edition features alphabetic headings in the glossary.

Library Changes for IMS Version 8
Changes to the IMS Library for Version 8 include the addition of new titles, the elimination of one title, organizational changes, and accessibility enhancements.

New, Revised, and Eliminated Titles
The following list details major changes to the IMS Version 8 library:

- **IMS Version 8: Common Service Layer Guide and Reference**
  - As a new book, the CSL is available only in PDF and BookManager softcopy on the product kit (LK3T-7092-00) and on the Web at www.ibm.com/ims.
- The book formerly titled **IMS Version 7: Common Queue Server and Base Primitive Environment Guide and Reference** has been divided into two books in the IMS Version 8 library:
  - **IMS Version 8: Base Primitive Environment Guide and Reference**
  - **IMS Version 8: Common Queue Server Guide and Reference**
- The book formerly titled **IMS Version 7: Installation Volume 1: Installation and Verification** is now titled **IMS Version 8: Installation Volume 1: Installation Verification**. All installation information is now in the IMS Version 8 Program Directory.
- **IMS Version 8: Sample Operating Procedures**
  - This book will no longer be produced for the IMS library from IMS Version 8 and after. IMS Version 6 and IMS Version 7 releases of this book can be found on the Web at www.ibm.com/ims.

Organizational Changes
Organizational changes to the IMS Version 8 library include changes to:

- **IMS Version 8: Application Programming: Database Manager**
- **IMS Version 8: Application Programming: Transaction Manager**
- **IMS Version 8: Messages and Codes, Volume 1**

- The chapter titled “DL/I Return and Reason Codes” has been moved from **IMS Version 8: Application Programming: Database Manager** and **IMS Version 8: Application Programming: Transaction Manager** to **IMS Version 8: Messages and Codes, Volume 1**.
- The chapter titled “DL/I Status Codes” will now only appear in **IMS Version 8: Messages and Codes, Volume 1**.

Accessibility Enhancements
Accessibility features help a user who has a physical disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use software products successfully. The major accessibility features in z/OS products, including IMS, enable users to:
- Use assistive technologies such as screen-readers and screen magnifier software
- Operate specific or equivalent features using only the keyboard
- Customize display attributes such as color, contrast, and font size

**User Assistive Technologies**
Assistive technology products, such as screen readers, function with the user interfaces found in IMS.
Consult the assistive technology documentation for specific information when using it to access these interfaces.

**Accessible Documentation**
Online documentation for IMS Version 8 is available in BookManager format, which is an accessible format. All BookManager functions can be accessed by using a keyboard or keyboard shortcut keys.
BookManager also allows you to use screen readers and other assistive technologies. The BookManager READ/MVS product is included with the OS/390 base product, and the BookManager Library Reader (for workstations) is available on the IMS Licensed Product Kit (CD), which is available for downloading from IBM at www.ibm.com.

**Keyboard Navigation of the User Interface**
Users can access IMS user interfaces using TSO/E or ISPF. Refer to the *z/OS: TSO/E Primer*, *z/OS: TSO/E User's Guide*, *z/OS: ISPF User's Guide*. These guides describe how to navigate each interface, including the use of keyboard shortcuts or function keys (PF keys). Each guide includes the default settings for the PF keys and explains how to modify their functions.
Glossary

A

**ACB.** See application control block.

**ACBGEN.** See application control block generation.

**access intent.** What tells DBRC how the IMS™ requesting access to the database plans to use the database. During system definition, you declare one of four levels of access intent for each application program. See also exclusive access, update access, read access, read-only access.

**active IMS.** (1) In an RSR environment, an IMS that runs at an active site, performs production work, and is monitored by the tracking IMS. See also tracking IMS. (2) In an XRF environment, an IMS that performs production work and is monitored by the alternate IMS. See also alternate IMS.

**active IRLM.** The IRLM supporting the active IMS in an XRF complex. See also alternate IRLM.

**active libraries.** The libraries from which IMS draws its execution information when online change is used.

**active partition.** The HALDB partition where the cursor is displayed and where data can be entered.

**active site.** In an RSR environment, the data-processing center containing active IMSs.

**active subsystem.** See active IMS.

**ADS.** See area data set.

**advanced program-to-program communication (APPC)/IMS.** A part of IMS™, using the CPI communications interface, that allows IMS application programs communicate with other programs using LU 6.2.

**affinity.** See VGR affinity and RM affinity.

**AGN.** See application group name.

**alternate IMS.** In an XRF environment, the IMS that monitors the active IMS and takes over production work when the active IMS fails.

**alternate IRLM.** The IRLM supporting the alternate IMS in an XRF complex. See also active IRLM.

**alternate program communication block (alternate PCB).** A TP PCB, defined by the user, that can be used to describe output message destinations other than the terminal that originated the input message. Where SAMETRM=Yes is not implicitly or explicitly specified, an alternate PCB’s destination can be either a logical terminal or an input transaction queue. See also modifiable alternate PCB, express alternate PCB, and alternate response PCB.

**alternate response PCB.** A PCB that defines a logical terminal and can be used instead of the I/O PCB when required to direct a response to a terminal in response mode, conversational mode, or exclusive mode.

**AO.** See automated operator.

**AOI.** See automated operator interface.

**APPC/IMS.** See advanced program-to-program communication (APPC)/IMS.

**application control block generation (ACBGEN).** The process by which the application control blocks are generated.

**application control block (ACB).** A control block created from the output of DBDGEN and PSBGEN and placed in the ACB library for use during online and DBB region type execution of IMS.
Application Development Facility (ADF). An IBM® licensed program that is an aid for reducing the time, cost and risk in developing and maintaining IMS applications. Running as an application program under IMS, ADF interprets specifications and executes applications, making it possible for many IMS applications to be developed and put into production without conventional programming.

Application Group Name. A name that represents a defined group of IMS resources (PSBs, transaction names, and logical terminal names).

application load balancing. An optional facility that enables an application program to be scheduled into more than one message or batch message region at the same time.

application program checkpoint. A commit point that occurs when an application program issues a checkpoint call. IMS then releases segments it has enqueued for the program since the last commit point; makes permanent the program's changes to the database; and, if the program processes messages, sends output messages to their destinations.

application program output limits. An option that allows users to limit the size and number of output segments produced by an application program. This option is intended to minimize the impact of erroneous application program operations.

APPLID name. The name by which VTAM® knows an IMS system for establishing sessions. The name is specified in a VTAM APPL definition statement and in the APPLID keyword of the IMS COMM system definition macro.

archiving logs. The process of copying records or logs of IMS activity from the online log data set, which is temporarily recorded on DASD, to the system log data set, which is stored on DASD, tape, or mass storage.

area. A subset of a DEDB that is defined as a VSAM ESDS data set. Each area in a DEDB consists of a root-addressable part, an independent-overflow part, and a sequential-dependent part. Areas contain the entire logical structure for a set of root segments and their dependent segments.

area data set (ADS). A data set that contains a DEDB area. IMS can maintain up to seven copies of this data set.

area-level sharing. See level one.

associated printing. The determination of a destination print queue from the user queue. The destination print queue is specified at logon or signon time, and is created during signon of the user who created the input transaction.

attribute simulation. An MFS option that allows an application program to simulate display (video) attributes such as high intensity on printer devices.

autologon. The option of IMS to automatically create a VTAM session for a non-signed on user to which output has been made available.

Automated Operator. An application program that can issue a subset of IMS operator commands and receive status information on the execution of the commands.

Automated Operator exit routine. An exit routine that is passed a copy of system messages destined for the master terminal, operator-entered commands, and command responses. The exit routine can examine the commands and command responses and write a message to any terminal or to a queue for processing by an application program.

Automated Operator Interface. An IMS interface that allows installations to monitor and control IMS activities. The interface enables (1) an application program, using DL/I calls, to issue a subset of IMS operator commands and receive command responses, (2) a user exit routine to monitor activities and take appropriate action, and (3) operator commands, responses, and asynchronous output destined for the IMS master terminal to be logged to the secondary master terminal.

availability manager. The component of MVS™ that performs XRF processing. Specifically, it performs I/O prevention during takeover.
**back-end system.** An IMS in a multisystem environment that accepts transactions from the front-end system, calls application programs for transaction processing, and routes replies back to the front-end system for response to the terminal. A back-end system may also perform front-end processing. A back-end system can be another IMS connected by an MSC link or can be part of the same IMSplex as the front-end system. See also front-end system.

**backout.** The process of removing all the database updates performed by an application program that has terminated abnormally. See also dynamic backout.

**balanced system.** An IMS in an MSC network in which some terminals are handled, some messages are routed to other IMSs for processing, and messages are accepted from other IMSs for processing.

**Base Primitive Environment (BPE).** A system-service-layer component of IMS that provides a common set of system services (such as storage management, tracing, and dispatching) to various components such as the IMS Common Queue Server (CQS).

**basic edit.** A facility that performs general editing functions for terminal input and output messages.

**batch checkpoint/restart.** The facility that enables batch processing programs to synchronize checkpoints and to be restarted at a user-specified checkpoint.

**batch image copy.** A copy of a database or area that reflects the state of the data at a moment in time when no updates were being made. The Database Image Copy utility (DFSUDMP0) produces batch image copies, which IMS utilities use when recovering from failures.

**batch IMS.** See batch processing program.

**batch message processing (BMP) program.** An IMS batch processing program that has access to online databases and message queues. BMPs run online, but like programs in a batch environment, they are started with job control language (JCL). See also mixed-mode BMP.

**batch-oriented BMP program.** A BMP program that has access to online databases and message queues while performing batch-type processing. A batch-oriented BMP does not access the IMS message queues for input or output. It can access online databases, GSAM databases, and MVS files for both input and output. See also transaction-oriented BMP.

**batch processing program.** An application program that has access to databases and MVS data management facilities but does not have access to the IMS control region or its message queues. See also batch message processing program and message processing program.

**block-level sharing.** A method of sharing data among IMSs so that multiple application programs can access and update data concurrently between multiple IMSs.

**BMP program.** See batch message processing program.

**BPE.** See Base Primitive Environment.

**buffer.** A section of main storage to which IMS writes an image of the physical block of a database data set that an application wants to access.

**buffer handler.** The part of an IMS that manages its buffers. The buffer handler maintains pools of buffers.

**buffer invalidation.** To prevent application programs from using invalid data in a sysplex data-sharing environment, IMS marks all copies of data in IMS buffers invalid once a sharing IMS has updated that data.

**buffer lookaside.** For shared VSO DEDB areas, an option that tells IMS to check the private buffer pools for requested data before retrieving data from the coupling facility.

**buffer pool.** A set of buffers that contains buffers of the same length.
CA. See change accumulation.

CACHE structure. One of the separate sections of the coupling facility storage. The coupling facility storage is divided, under installation control, into distinct sections called structures.

callable services. Services provided by IMS for use by IMS exit routines. These services provide clearly defined interfaces that allow exit routines to request various functions, such as acquiring storage or finding an IMS control block.

catch-up processing. In an RSR environment, the process by which tracked log data is used to bring all recoverable resources (for example, shadow databases) to currency with those resources on the active IMS.

CCB. See conversation control block.

CCTL. See coordinator controller.

CF. See coupling facility.

collection accumulation (CA). The process of creating a compacted version of one or more IMS log data sets by eliminating records not related to recovery, and by merging multiple changes to a single segment into a single change. Also, the compacted log created by the process.

collection point. A point at which IMS automatically records its internal status—system control information with a unique checkpoint ID—and writes it to the restart data set (RDS). This information allows IMS to reconstruct its condition if later recovery is necessary. A system checkpoint is taken automatically by IMS at selected intervals; a synchronization point is taken whenever an application program requests one. System checkpoints can also be requested by the master terminal operator.

collection data set. A local data set that contains CQS system checkpoint information about a group of shared queues.

child segment. In a database, any segment that is dependent on another segment above it (its parent) in the hierarchy.

Cl. See control interval.

CIC. See Concurrent Image Copy.

CID. The VTAM/NCP communication ID. This value is given to IMS and used by VTAM and IMS to identify a session between IMS and a VTAM logical unit.

class. An attribute related to a transaction code and a message region that is used to determine scheduling. See also message class and region class.

classic command. A supported non-IMSplex command. A classic command generally requires a leading slash, e.g. /DBRECOVERY. See also IMSplex command.

class 1 terminal. Terminal for which the alternate IMS preopens backup sessions for the primary sessions the active IMS opens; NCP switches sessions from primary to backup at takeover.

class 2 terminal. Terminal for which IMS in the alternate reestablishes service at takeover.

class 3 terminal. Terminal that communicates with XRF IMS but whose sessions is not automatically reestablished at takeover.

CLB. See Communication Line Block.

client. An application that uses RM services. Generally, the client is an IMS system.

cloned IMSplex. A group of IMSs in a sysplex that share databases, queues, or both, and have identical resource definitions.
See Communication Name Table.

cold queue. A CQS private queue type that contains indoubt data objects for a client that cold started or a CQS that cold started.

cold start. The starting of IMS when it is initialized for the first time or when some error condition prevents a warm or emergency restart. See also emergency restart and normal restart.

command. A request from a terminal or AO (automated operator) to perform a specific IMS service, such as altering system resource status or displaying specific system information.

Command Center. A component of the Control Center that allows the user to execute commands and SQL statements, command scripts, and operating system commands at the host for processing.

command code. The portion of the segment search argument that enables an application program to access a database segment based on some variation in either the call function, the segment qualification, or the setting of parentage.

command master. In an IMSplex, a designated IMS that provides command processing. When a resource exists only in the RM (it is not active on any IMS in the IMSplex), the command master must provide command processing for that resource.

command processing client. An entity that can process commands or do other work when directed to do so by an OM. In an IMSplex, an IMS control region is a command processing client.

command significant status. Command significant status relates to the command status associated with a resource. For example, the status of STOP, TRACE, and MFSTEST commands. If a resource structure is defined, the recovery of command significant status is always global, regardless of how end-user significant status is maintained.

commit. To make changes permanent for a resource in order to establish a new consistent state.

commit point. The point at which an application program commits that a section of work is done and that the data it has modified or created is consistent and complete. Its output, which has been held up to that time, is sent to its destination(s); its input is removed from the message queues; and its database updates are confirmed and made available to other applications. A commit point occurs when a program terminates normally or when it issues a checkpoint call or command. If a program processes messages, a commit point may also occur when it retrieves a new message.

commit processing. The processing that IMS performs at a commit point.

Common Queue Server (CQS). The address space that manages the shared queues (data objects that are stored in a coupling-facility list structure) for its clients (IMS).

Common Service Layer (CSL). The combination of one or more RM, OM, or SCI that provides services to an IMSplex.

Communication Line Block (CLB). An IMS control block representing a VTAM node or a BTAM line. Each VTAM node or BTAM line has a single CLB. For VTAM, it is one of several blocks that are part of the VTCB control block. The CLB represents the DC task in the IMS system for the line or node, and also contains many other fields pertaining to the line or node.

Communication Name Table (CNT). An IMS control block that represents a logical terminal.

concatenated key. The key constructed to access a particular segment. It consists of the key fields, including that of the root segment and successive children, down to the accessed segment.

Concurrent Image Copy (CIC). A batch utility program that allows you to make a copy of OSAM data sets and VSAM entry-sequenced DBDSs whether or not IMS is running and the database is online.

Control Center. A database administration tool for users to administer database and system environments. The Control Center displays and performs administrative tasks on all systems, databases, and database objects from a single workstation.

control interval (CI). A fixed-length area of direct access storage in which VSAM stores records and creates distributed free space. Also, in a key-sequenced data set or file, the set of records pointed to by an entry in the
sequence-set index record. The control interval is the unit of information that VSAM transmits to or from direct access 
storage. A control interval always comprises an integral number of physical records.

**control interval update sequence number (CUSN).** An indicator used in a data-sharing environment to determine 
which sharing partner last read a CI. IMS compares the value of the CUSN for each CI to determine whether a CI 
should be updated during area restart or recovery.

**control program (IMS).** The IMS program that initiates and controls the major IMS facilities, such as IMS database, 
telecommunications, and message scheduling.

**control region.** The MVS main storage region that contains the IMS control program.

**conversation.** A dialog between a terminal and a message processing program using IMS conversational processing 
facilities. Also, a dialog between an LU 6.2 program and an IMS application program. A conversation between a 
terminal and a message processing program is significant status that is kept in RM, if RM is used. Status for a held 
conversation is not kept in RM. The IMS conversation is represented by a CCB. See also conversational processing.

**conversational processing.** An optional facility allowing a user’s application program to accumulate information 
aquired through multiple interchanges with a terminal, even though the program terminates between interchanges. 
Conversation information for the active and held conversations is significant status that can optionally be kept in RM if 
a status recovery mode of GLOBAL was selected.

**conversation control block (CCB).** An IMS control block that represents a conversation between a terminal and an 
an application program.

**coordinator controller (CCTL).** A subsystem consisting of the database resource adapter (DRA) and a transaction 
management subsystem, such as CICS®. A CCTL provides communications and transaction management services for 
a DBCTL environment, which has no transaction management facilities of its own.

**coordinated online change.** See global online change.

**coupling facility (CF).** A special logical partition that provides high-speed caching, list processing, and locking 
functions in a sysplex. IMS saves global information in the coupling facility, so all the IMSs in the IMSplex have access 
to the global information.

**covered database.** A database or area in an RSR environment that is tracked by a tracking IMS. Recovery 
information is not maintained by the tracking IMS for databases or areas that are not covered.

**CPI Communications driven application program.** An application program that uses CPI Communications calls to 
receive an incoming message and to send a reply.

**current position.** In an IMS database, the place immediately preceding the segment occurrence that IMS would 
retrieve if you immediately issued an unqualified retrieval call.

**CQS.** See Common Queue Server.

**CQS restart.** Process by which CQS starts up: either a cold start or a warm start. During a CQS warm start, the 
CQS environment is restored to the state it was in when CQS terminated. During a CQS cold start the CQS 
environment is not restored to a previous state; it is reinitialized.

**CSL.** See Common Service Layer.

**CSL component.** An IMSplex member type that is part of the CSL: OM, RM, or SCI.

**D**

**Database Control (DBCTL).** An environment allowing full-function databases and DEDBs to be accessed from one 
or more transaction management subsystems.

**database data set (DBDS).** A data set containing all or part of a database.

**database description (DBD).** The collection of macro parameter statements that define the characteristics of a 
database, such as the database’s organization and access method, the segments and fields in a database record, and 
the relationship between types of segments.
database description generation (DBDGEN). The process by which a DBD is created.

database integrity. The protection of data items in a database while they are available to any application program. This includes the isolation of effects of concurrent updates to a database by two or more application programs.

database-level sharing. A kind of data sharing that enables application programs in one IMS to read data while another program in another IMS reads from the same database or updates it.

database-level tracker. In an RSR environment, a tracking subsystem that tracks the active subsystem’s databases or areas. See also recovery-level tracker.

database position. A program's place in the database after a DL/I call. IMS keeps track of the program’s position in the database in order to process DL/I calls.

database program communication block (DB PCB). The PCB that describes an application program’s interface to a database. One DB PCB is required for each database view used by the application program.

database record. In a database, a collection of segments that contains one occurrence of the root segment type and all of its dependents arranged in a hierarchical sequence. It may be smaller than, equal to, or larger than the access method logical record.

database recovery. The process of restoring a physically damaged DBDS by merging an image copy and logs or change accumulations.

Database Recovery Control (DBRC). A feature of the IMS Database Manager that facilitates easier recovery of IMS databases. DBRC maintains information required for database recoveries, generates recovery control statements, verifies recovery input, maintains a separate change log for database data sets, and supports sharing of IMS databases and areas by multiple IMS subsystems.

database reorganization. The process of unloading and reloading a database to optimize physical segment adjacency or to modify the DBD.

database segment. The unit of access; the smallest amount of data that can be transferred by one IMS operation.

Database Surveyor utility. A utility that scans an IMS database and provides reports that help determine the need for reorganization of that database.

Data Communications Control (DCCTL). A subsystem that allows IMS TM to act as a stand-alone, full-function transaction manager that can connect to DB2® or other external subsystems.

data communication program communication block (DC PCB). Obsolete term. See telecommunication-program communication block.

data element. A unit of storage in a coupling facility list structure that makes up a data entry.

data entry. Part of a coupling facility list structure list entry used to hold user-specified data.

data entry database (DEDB). A direct-access database that consists of one or more areas, with each area containing both root segments and dependent segments. DEDBs use a data structure that allows them to be used for both hierarchical processing and journaling. The database is accessed by using VSAM’s Media Manager.

data independence. The concept of separating the definitions of logical and physical data such that application programs do not depend on where or how physical units of data are stored; the reduction of application program modification in data storage structure and access strategy.

Data Language/I (DL/I). The IMS data manipulation language, which is a common high-level interface between a user application and IMS. DL/I calls are invoked from application programs written in languages such as PL/I, COBOL, VS Pascal, C, and Ada. It can also be invoked from assembler language application programs by subroutine calls. IMS lets the user define data structures, relate structures to the application, load structures, and reorganize structures.

data management block (DMB). An IMS control block in main storage that describes and controls a physical database. It is constructed from information obtained from the ACB library or the DBD library.

data object. A piece of client data placed on the coupling facility by CQS as a result of a CQSPUT request or a CQSUPD request. From an IMS shared queues point of view, a data object contains one part or all of an IMS
message or an entire EMH message. From an IMS Resource Manager point of view, a data object contains information about an IMS resource such as a transaction or user.

**data set group.** An operating system data set containing a subset of a database with one or more unique segment types. A database always consists of at least one data set group. See also primary data set group and secondary data set group.

**Data Set Sequence Number (DSSN).** A number, maintained by DBRC in the RECON data set, that counts when an application opens a database for update.

**data sharing.** The concurrent access of databases by two or more IMSs. The IMSs can be in one operating system image or in separate operating system images. They can share data at two levels: the database level and the block level. See block-level sharing and database-level sharing.

**data-sharing complex.** See sharing complex.

**data-sharing group.** The components involved in sysplex data sharing. Among the components are the sharing IMSs, the IRLMs they use, the lock, OSAM, and VSAM structures in the coupling facility, and a single set of DBRC RECONs.

**data transparency.** An attribute of an input message that causes ISC edit to route the message to its destination without examination or modification.

**DBB (Database Management Batch).** One of two batch regions (the other being a DLI batch region). DBB is an execution parameter. DBB Batch jobs contain JCL DD statements for ACBLIB.

**DB (database) monitor.** See IMS Monitor.

**DBCS/EBCDIC mixed field.** A field which contains both EBCDIC data and DBCS data. The DBCS portions should always be enclosed with SO/SI control characters in both inbound and outbound data. In the case of inbound data, the control characters are automatically created by the terminal.

**DBCTL.** See Database Control

**DBCTL environment.** A database control environment. This is essentially the IMS DB/DC environment without the message handling and queue management capabilities.

**DBD.** See database description.

**DB/DC.** Database/data communication

**DBDGEN.** See database description generation (DBDGEN).

**DBDS.** See database data set.

**DB PCB.** See database program communication block.

**DBRC.** See Database Recovery Control.

**DBRC data-sharing control.** The environment of DBRC that facilitates the sharing of databases among IMSs and controls the ability of a given application program to access a database. Share control includes DBRC log control and database recovery control.

**DCCTL.** See Data Communications Control.

**DCPCB.** See telecommunication-program program communication block (TP PCB).

**DEDB.** See data entry database.

**default literal.** In MFS, a literal field that MFS inserts into an input message when no data for the field is received from the terminal. See also explicit literal and system literal.

**default system control area (DSCA).** In MFS, part of the DOF that causes, when present, specific terminal functions to be performed if the destination terminal has the required features. See also system control area.
**default terminal security.** The basic system security that prohibits the entry of certain commands from any terminal other than the master terminal.

**deferred update.** A Fast Path capability that keeps updates to databases in main storage buffers until a synchronization point is reached. Synchronization point processing schedules the VSAM writes and response messages to terminals after physically logging the changed data.

**dependent region.** An address space, associated with an IMS control region, where application programs run. Dependent regions include MPP, BMP, IFP, JMP, and JBP.

**dependent segment.** In a database, a segment that relies on a higher level segment for its full hierarchical meaning. A child is a dependent segment of its parent.

**dependent service element (DSE).** A service element (MVS, VTAM, or the CPC) in the XRF complex that has an alternate computing system but is unable to initiate a takeover. A DSE depends on IMS to recognize a failure in its processing and request that the alternate take over its operation.

**descriptor.** A skeleton from which an IMS control block is dynamically built. A user desriptor can provide user options and queue names.

**destination.** In IMS TM, a destination represents an application program or a logical terminal, or an operator command associated with the control region.

**destination name type.** A special name type used for destination type resources to provide uniqueness for all names included for that set of resources. The set of resources included are LTERMs, transactions, and MSNAMEs. The name type for these resources is 01.

**destination parent.** In a database, the physical or logical parent reached by the logical child path.

**destination system.** In an IMS multisystem environment, the system in which the logical destination resides.

**device characteristics table.** An MFS table generated for IBM 3270 or SLU type 2 devices with symbolic names. An entry is generated for each symbolic name and its associated screen size and physical terminal features. Different combinations of features for the same symbolic name cause separate entries in the table to be created.

**device field (DFLD).** In MFS, the smallest area in a device input or output format whose content and structure are defined by the user.

**device input format (DIF).** The MFS control block that describes the format of the data entered on the device and presented to MFS.

**device output format (DOF).** The MFS control block that describes the format of the output data to be presented to the device.

**device page (DPAGE).** In MFS, a user-defined group of device field definitions that comprise one or more physical pages to be presented to or received from the device.

**DFLD.** See device field.

**DIF.** See device input format.

**direct dependent segment.** In a DEDB, a segment chained off a root segment. A direct dependent segment is stored either in the root addressable or the overflow portion of a DEDB area.

**directed routing.** In an IMS multisystem environment, the routing of response messages to other than the originating terminal as directed by a link receive routing exit routine.

**directory entry name.** A means of identifying the directory entry of a named object to the coupling facility. The directory, all of its entries, and all of the objects associated with those entries are contained in a single structure.

**distributed presentation management (DPM).** An MFS option that allows programs to communicate with device independence by sharing message formatting functions between MFS and a user-written remote program. The user-written remote program performs device-dependent formatting.

**distributed recovery.** Resource recovery in which the resources and participants reside on multiple systems.
**DL/I.** See Data Language/I.

**DL/I address space.** An address space used by the online IMS control program to contain most of the DL/I code and control blocks. This option can be selected for the online IMS environment to provide an alternative virtual storage configuration.

**DLT.** See database-level tracker.

**DMB.** See data management block.

**DOF.** See device output format.

**DPAGE.** See device page.

**DPM.** See distributed presentation management.

**DRA.** Database resource adapter

**DSCA.** See default system control area.

**DSE.** See dependent service element.

**DSSN.** See data set sequence number.

**dual logging.** An optional facility that produces a duplicate copy of log data.

**dynamic allocation/deallocation.** A function that removes the requirement to allocate IMS databases, area data sets, and certain system data sets through JCL. A data set is allocated during IMS initialization or when it is first used and is deallocated when it is no longer used (that is, closed or stopped).

**dynamic backout.** A process that automatically cancels all activities performed by an application program that terminates abnormally.

**dynamic directory.** See MFS dynamic directory.

**dynamic node.** A VTAM node created dynamically. See dynamic terminal.

**dynamic terminal.** A terminal created through the Extended Terminal Option (ETO). This is a terminal that has not been defined within the IMS system definition, and for which no control blocks exist at IMS initialization time. See also static terminal.

**dynamic user.** A user created dynamically.

**Emergency restart.** A restart of IMS following an IMS or MVS failure.

**EMH.** See expedited message handler.

**EMHQ.** See expedited message handler queues.

**end-user significant status.** A type of significant status that relates to the work associated with a resource. IMS defines conversations, STSN, and Fast Path as end-user significant status for nodes and users.

**end-user terminal.** A terminal where an IMS user can issue transactions, some commands (based upon security authorization), and message switches.

**entryid.** See list entry ID.

**entrykey.** A key value assigned to a coupling facility list structure list entry by the originator. For example, CQS uses the client queue name for queues on a queue structure or the client resource name for resources on a resource structure.

**EPST.** See extended partition specification table.
**EQE**. See error queue element.

**error queue element (EQE).** Indicates that an I/O error occurred on a data set.

**ESAF.** See External Subsystem Attach Facility.

**ESCD.** See extended system contents directory.

**ETO.** See Extended Terminal Option.

**ETO descriptor.** A template that contains information about the physical characteristics of terminals, user options and message queue names, and remote LTERMs associated with MSC links. See also logon descriptor, MFS device descriptor, MSC descriptor, and user descriptor.

**exclusive access.** An access intent that establishes the intent of an application to reserve the exclusive use of the database. If a subsystem requests and DBRC grants exclusive access to a subsystem, then no other subsystem may access the database concurrently, regardless of the share level of the database.

**exclusive mode.** An optional mode of terminal operation in which a terminal may receive no output other than a response to an input. Any output excluded from being sent is held for transmission until the terminal is removed from exclusive mode.

**expedited message handler (EMH).** The IMS Fast Path facility that processes single-segment input and output messages. It bypasses the normal IMS transaction message queuing and application scheduling and is faster.

**expedited message handler queues (EMHQ).** The expedited message handler shared queues on a coupling facility list structure.

**explicit literal.** In MFS, a literal field defined by the user for inclusion in an input or output message. See also default literal and system literal.

**express alternate PCB.** An alternate PCB to which output messages are sent before termination of the application program.

**extended checkpoint/restart.** The facility that allows batch processing programs to establish database positioning and initiate user-specified areas with a DL/I call in place of an OS CHKPT macro.

**extended partition specification table (EPST).** For Fast Path, an extension of the PST. It contains information for a dependent region that is unique to Fast Path.

**extended pointer set (EPS).** In a HALDB, an expanded segment prefix that includes information that allows the use of indirect pointers. An EPS is created for logical child segments and secondary index segments.

**Extended Recovery Facility (XRF).** A function of IMS that minimizes the impact of IMS failures by having an alternate IMS monitor an active IMS and take over production if the active IMS fails.

**extended system contents directory (ESCD).** An extension of SCD that is used for Fast Path.

**Extended Terminal Option (ETO).** A function of IMS TM that improves an IMS’s availability by reducing the scheduled outages needed to add or delete ACF/VTAM terminals or message queues (LTERMs).

**external subsystem.** A subsystem that provides a set of resources to be used by IMS, but not controlled by it.

**External Subsystem Attach Facility (ESAF).** A facility that allows applications running under IMS to obtain data from external subsystems, such as DB2.

---

**F**

**Fast Database Recovery (FDBR) region.** A separate IMS control region that monitors IMS, detects failure, and recovers any database resources that are locked by the failed IMS, making them available for other IMSs.

**Fast Path.** IMS functions for applications that require good response characteristics and that may have large transaction volumes. Programs have rapid access to main-storage databases (to the field level), and to direct-access
data entry databases. Message processing is grouped for load balancing and synchronized for database integrity and recovery. See also MSDB, DEDB, and load balancing group.

**Fast Path databases.** Two types of databases designed to provide high data availability and fast processing for IMS applications. They can be processed by the following types of programs: MPPs, BMPs, and IFPs. See also main storage database and data entry database.

**Fast Path dependent region.** See IMS Fast Path region.

**Fast Path exclusive transaction.** A transaction type whose messages are routed to EMH for processing. See also Fast Path potential transaction.

**Fast Path potential transaction.** A transaction type that can be routed to either EMH or TM processing. See also Fast Path exclusive transaction.

**FDBR.** See Fast Database Recovery (FDBR) region.

**field.** In a database, a portion (as defined during DBDGEN) within a segment that is the smallest unit of the data that can be referred to. See also key field.

**field-level sensitivity.** The ability of an application program to access data at the field level. See sensitivity.

**field search argument (FSA).** For Fast Path, the I/O area that is constructed by an application program to identify a field within a segment that is to be processed with a FLD call.

**field tab (FTAB).** In MFS, a character defined for operator use in separating input fields if the length of the entered data is less than the defined field length, or there is no data for a field.

**fill characters.** In MFS, the characters used to pad input message fields or output device fields when the length of the received data is less than the length defined for the field or no data is received for the field.

**FINDDEST.** See Find Destination.

**Find Destination (FINDDEST).** Find Destination is an internal service in IMS used for finding certain IMS resources (CCB, CVB, SMB, CNT, RCNT, LNB, and QAB), most of which represent IMS destinations. For searches other than CVBs and CCBs, if the block is not found, then if requested, a search for an LU6.2 descriptor is made. If LU6.2 is not requested, or the search fails, then if ETO is active and the caller of FINDDEST request creation, a call is made to create a new user structure for the given destination name.

**format set.** In MFS, a format definition, all message definitions that refer to the format definition, and any table referred to by the format.

**front-end system.** An IMS in an MSC network in which all terminals are connected, messages are routed to the proper processing IMS, and all replies are routed to the terminals. A front-end system may also perform back-end processing. See also back-end system, balanced system, pseudo-front-end system, and transaction processing system.

**FSA.** See field search argument.

**FTAB.** See field tab.

**full-function database.** Hierarchic database that is accessed through Data Language I (DL/I) call language and can be processed by all six types of application programs: IFP, MPP, BMP, JMP, JBP, and batch. Full-function databases include HDAM, PHDAM, HIDAM, PHIDAM, HSAM, HISAM, SHSAM, and SHISAM.

**G**

**gap.** Active-site log data that is not available to the tracking IMS. The log data might be missing either because it was not sent or because an I/O error occurred at the tracking site.

**Generalized Sequential Access Method (GSAM).** A database access method providing accessing support for simple physical sequential data sets, such as tape files, SYSIN, SYSOUT, and other files that are not hierarchical in nature. Available only in BMP and Batch.
Generalized Sequential Access Method program communication block (GSAM PCB). The PCB that describes an application program’s interface to a GSAM data set. One GSAM PCB is required for each GSAM data set view used by the application program.

generic resource group. A set of IMS systems that have the same generic resource name, enabling VTAM to distribute terminal sessions among them.

generic resource member. An IMS system that belongs to a generic resource group.

global lock. An IRLM lock that interests two IRLMs; both must coordinate to grant it.

global lock management. Lock management that controls access to resources shared among IMS systems participating in block level sharing.

global online change. An IMS function that changes resources online for all IMSs in an IMSplex.

global service group. The collection of all IMS subsystems that can access a particular set of databases. A global service group can span several MVS systems at more than one geographical location.

group member. The name of an entity that joins an XCF group and communicates with IMS using the OTMA protocol. A member can be either a server (IMS) or a client.

GSAM. See Generalized Sequential Access Method.

GSAM PCB. See Generalized Sequential Access Method program communication block.

GSG. See global service group.

H

HALDB. See High Availability Large Database.

HALDB master. A named entity of a High Availability Large Database that represents only the structural definition of data and refers to the entire collection of partitions.

HALDB partition. A named entity of a High Availability Large Database that represents a partition of a HALDB.

Hierarchical direct (HD) organization. The physical storage organization in which database segments that represent a physical database record are related by direct address pointers in the segment’s prefix.

Hierarchical Direct Access Method (HDAM). A database access method using algorithmic addressability to records in a hierarchical direct organization. A choice of OSAM or VSAM ESDS is available as a base for HDAM.

Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method (HIDAM). A database access method used for indexed access to records in a hierarchical direct organization. It provides indexed access to the root segments and pointer access to subordinate segments.

Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method (HISAM). A database access method used for indexed access to records in a hierarchical sequential organization.

Hierarchical sequence. In a database, the sequence of segment occurrences in a database record defined by traversing the tree top to bottom, front to back, and left to right.

Hierarchical sequential (HS) organization. The physical storage organization in which database segments that represent a physical database record are related by adjacency.

Hierarchical Sequential Access Method (HSAM). An IMS HS organization that is used for sequential storage and access of segments on tape or direct access storage. BSAM and QSAM are used as the basis for HSAM.

Hierarchy. The tree-like arrangement of segments in a database, beginning with the root segment and proceeding down to dependent segments.

High Availability Large Database (HALDB). A partitioned full-function DL/I database. The supported database organizations are PHDAM, PHIDAM, and PSINDEX.
**High-speed sequential processing (HSSP).** An option, available only to batch message programs, for optimizing the sequential processing of DEDB areas. A simultaneous image copy can also be created.

**HSSP.** See high-speed sequential processing.

**IC.** See image copy.

**IFP.** IMS Fast Path program, a type of program designed to operate with expedited message handling (EMH) in a Fast Path region.

**ILDS.** See indirect list data set.

**ILE.** See indirect list entry.

**ILK.** See indirect list entry key.

**ILS.** See isolated log sender.

**Image copy.** (1) The process of creating a backup of a DBDS. (2) The backup data set created by the image copy process.

**Immediate checkpoint.** The facility that writes simple checkpoint information without requiring termination of MPPs.

**IMS DB.** The IMS Database Manager licensed program, which processes concurrent database calls and offers high performance for a variety of applications.

**IMS.** Information Management System. Any of several system environments available with Database Manager and Transaction Manager, capable of managing complex databases and terminal networks.

**IMS Fast Path region.** An online environment in which message-driven programs and DEDB online utilities operate.

**IMS generic resource name.** The name by which IMS systems in a generic resource group are known to VTAM.

**IMSID.** The 4-byte subsystem identification used by a given IMS job. For the shared-queues and data-sharing environment, the IMSID must be unique; in other cases, the IMSID does not need to be unique.

**IMS instance.** A particular, unique IMS subsystem within an OS/390 system. Examples of IMS instances could be a particular DBCTL subsystem, a DB/TM subsystem, a DCCTL subsystem, a batch DL/I job, or batch utility job.

**IMS Java™.** A Java library that allows JDBC access to IMS databases from JMP or JBP applications, WebSphere® Application Server for z/OS™ EJBs, CICS JClCS applications, and DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures.

**IMS Monitor.** An optional facility that records the activity within the IMS control region and dependent regions.

**IMS partner name.** An 8-byte name that uniquely identifies a particular IMS to DBRC and to IRLM.

**IMSpex.** One or more IMS address spaces that work together as a unit. Typically (but not always), these address spaces share either databases or resources or message queues (or any combination), run in an S/390® Sysplex environment, and include an IMS Common Service Layer (CSL). The address spaces that can participate in the IMSpex are control region address spaces, IMS manager address spaces (OM, RM, SCI), and IMS server address spaces (CQS).

**IMSpex command.** A command intended for use in a V8 and above IMSpex environment including a CSL.

**IMSpex component.** An entity (typically running in its own address space) that manages resources, operations, or facilitates communications between other IMS-defined entities. Examples of IMSpex components are IMS subsystems (DB/DC, DBCTL, DCCTL), the Resource Manager, the Operations Manager, and the Structured Call Interface. A DLIBATCH or DDBBATCH region is considered a IMSpex component even though it does not interact with the Common Service Layer managers.

**IMSpex member.** Any IMS-defined entity in an IMSpex that typically runs in its own address space and is managed by the IMS Common Service Layer.
**IMS subsystem.** An individual batch or online IMS control program executing in an address space. Examples of IMS subsystems are the IMS control region, OM, RM, SCI, and CQS.

**IMS system log.** Logically, a single log made up of on-line data sets (OLDSs) and write-ahead data sets (WADSs).

**IMS TM.** The IMS Transaction Manager licensed program, a data communication system that provides high-volume, high-performance, high-capacity, low-cost transaction processing for both IMS DB and DB2 databases.

**inactive libraries.** Those libraries not currently in use by the online IMS system in a system using online change. These libraries may be at a different level than the current or active libraries.

**index pointer segment.** In a secondary index, the segment that contains the data and pointers used to index the index target segments.

**index source segment.** In a database, the segment containing the data from which the indexing segment is built. It can be the same as the indexed segment or one of its dependents.

**index target segment.** In a database, the segment pointed to by a secondary index entry, that is, from an index pointer segment.

**indexed segment.** In a database, a segment that is located by an index and termed an index target segment.

**indexing segment.** The segment in an index database that contains a pointer to a segment containing data (the indexed segment), and termed an index pointer segment.

**indirect list data set (ILDS).** In a HALDB, an IMS system index data set. The ILDS is a repository for the indirect pointers used for PHDAM and PHIDAM databases. There is one ILDS per partition in PHDAM or PHIDAM databases.

**indirect list entry (ILE).** In a HALDB, an entry in an indirect list data set.

**indirect list entry key (ILK).** In a HALDB, a unique token that is assigned to a segment in PHDAM and PHIDAM databases when the segment is created. Eight bytes in length and stored in the prefix of the segment, the ILK uniquely identifies every segment in PHDAM and PHIDAM databases.

**indirect pointer.** In a HALDB, a pointer stored in the indirect list data set and used to eliminate the need to update pointers throughout other database records when a single partition is reorganized. Indirect pointers are stored in an Indirect List Data Set.

**in-doubt unit of work.** A transaction or database update that has been prepared for commit, but is not yet committed. If a failure occurs before the in-doubt unit of work is committed, IMS must resolve all the work whose status is in doubt.

**in-flight.** The state of a resource or unit of recovery that has not yet completed the prepare phase of the commit process.

**input message.** Any valid command, transaction, or message switch.

**input mode.** In MFS, the way in which input fields from certain devices are defined by the user to be scanned by MFS. See also record mode and stream mode.

**input/output program communication block (I/O PCB).** A TP PCB provided automatically by IMS to an application program that executes in a communication system with TM. The I/O PCB is the mechanism by which a program obtains an input message from a terminal and returns a reply to the terminal that originated the input message. See also alternate program communication block.

**input system.** In an MSC network, the system to which the input terminal is attached.

**input terminal.** In an MSC network, the terminal from which a primary request originated.

**inquiry logical terminal.** A type of logical terminal that is created automatically by IMS and restricted to non-update transactions. Inquiry logical terminals are created for non-VTAM switched lines. See also logical terminal.

**installation verification procedure (IVP).** A procedure integral to the IMS installation process that tests the newly-installed IMS system to verify that the basic facilities of IMS are functioning correctly.
intelligent remote station support (IRSS).  The IMS facility that supports the IBM System/3 and IBM System/7.

intent propagation.  A condition handled internally by IMS by which processing intent for one segment can propagate to related segments depending on the type of processing and the kind of relationship. It determines the compatibility of scheduling processing applications in parallel or serially.

interactive dump formatter.  An enhancement to the IMS offline dump formatter that allows you to format your IMS dumps through a series of interactive menu-driven panels rather than by creating or editing a DFSFRMAT data set.

intermediate system.  In an MSC network, a system through which a message passes on its way from the input system to the destination system, or vice-versa, in which no processing other than routing is performed.

Internal Resource Lock Manager (IRLM).  A subsystem in an OS/390® environment that provides lock management, used by IMSs to share data.

intersection data.  Any user data in a logical child segment that does not include the logical parent’s concatenated key.

Intersystem Communication (ISC).  An extension of IMS Multiple Systems Coupling that permits the connection of IMS to another IMS subsystem, to CICS/MVS®, or to a user-written subsystem, provided both subsystems use ISC. Also known as LU 6.1.

I/O PCB.  See input/output program communication block.

I/O prevention.  The OS/390 process that, during an XRF takeover, ensures that the failing active IMS cannot change the databases during the takeover.

I/O toleration.  The IMS process that, during an XRF takeover, allows transaction processing after a takeover before I/O prevention has completed.

IRLM.  See internal resource lock manager.

IRLM session.  An IRLM may have two kinds of VTAM sessions with another IRLM: a primary session and a secondary session (also called an alternate session).

IRSS.  See intelligent remote station support.

ISC.  See Intersystem Communication.

ISC static user.  An ISC user defined via the SUBPOOL macro in an IMS system definition.

isolated log sender.  In an RSR environment, a component of the Transport Manager Subsystem that sends gap data to the tracking subsystem.

IVP.  See installation verification procedure.

J

Java message processing (JMP) region.  An IMS dependent region with a persistent JVM that allows the scheduling of message-driven Java applications, similar to a MPP.

Java batch processing (JBP) region.  An IMS dependent region with a persistent JVM that allows the scheduling of online non-message-driven batch Java applications, similar to a BMP.

K

key.  See list entry key.

key field.  The field in a database segment used to store segment occurrences in sequential ascending order. A key field is also a search field. See also search field.
latch. A programming device that provides short-term serialization for IMS tasks running in the online IMS system. Similar in function to an MVS lock.

LBG. See load balancing group.

LEID. See list entry ID.

level. In a database, the successive vertical dependencies in a hierarchical structure.

level zero. Also called exclusive level sharing. The level of data sharing in which DBRC allows only one subsystem (for example, one online IMS) to access the database.

level one. Also called database level sharing and area level sharing. For DEDB areas, DBRC may authorize only one subsystem to update the database and multiple subsystems that do not need to be protected from incomplete changes made by the updater to read it, or it may authorize multiple subsystems to read the database. For area level sharing, DBRC may authorize the update or read of an area.

level two. Also called intraprocessor block level sharing. DBRC and one IRLM may concurrently authorize and protect multiple subsystems on the same MVS system for updating or reading the database.

level three. Also called interprocessor block level sharing. DBRC and one IRLM and VTAM on each MVS system may concurrently authorize and protect multiple subsystems on different MVS systems for updating or reading the database. The IRLMs may reside in one or more MVSs.

limit count. The number that determines whether the normal or limit priority value is assigned to a transaction during the scheduling process. See also normal priority and limit priority.

limit priority. The priority to which a transaction is raised when the number of transactions enqueued and waiting to be processed is equal to or greater than the limit count value. See also normal priority and limit count.

line response mode. A variation of response mode where all operations on the communication line are suspended while the application program output message is being generated. See also response mode and terminal response mode.

link. In an IMS multisystem environment, the connection between two systems. See also physical link and logical link.

list entry. An entry on an coupling facility list structure list.

list entry controls. Part of a coupling facility list structure list entry that contains control information associated with the list entry such as the entrykey and entryid.

list entry ID (LEID). A unique identifier permanently assigned to each list entry in a coupling facility list structure by the system.

list header. Anchors the list to a coupling list structure and contains control information associated with the list.

list header number. The number of the list header, which identifies the particular list. The list header number ranges from 0 to the maximum defined by the first connector to the CF list structure. The list header number must be specified on IXL requests that access the list structure, to identify to which list the request is applicable.

list structure. A coupling facility structure that enables multisystem applications in a sysplex to share information organized as a set of lists or queues. A list structure consists of a set of lists and an optional lock table, which can be used for serializing resources in the list structure. Each list consists of a queue of list entries.

literal field. In MFS, a message field or device output field defined to contain specific data. See also default literal, explicit literal, and system literal.

LLC/CC. See low level code/continuity check.

load balancing. See application load balancing and transaction load balancing.
load balancing group (LBG).  For Fast Path, the grouping of Fast Path input messages for balanced processing by one or more copies of a Fast Path program. There is one LBG for each unique Fast Path message-driven application program.

local cache.  A user-allocated and user-managed storage area on the local system.

local destination.  In an IMS multisystem environment, a destination that resides in the local system. See also remote destination.

local lock.  An IRLM lock that interests the IRLM that grants it only.

local lock management.  Lock management that controls access to database records used by application programs in the same online IMS system.

local recovery.  Resource recovery in which all resources and participants reside on the same system.

local system.  In an IMS multisystem environment, a specific system in the multiple configuration. The local system is often used synonymously with front-end system, or the system where the inputting terminal exists. See also remote system.

local transaction (LTRAN).  In a multisystem environment, a transaction that is processed totally by the system in which it is defined. See also remote transaction.

local view.  A description of the data that a particular business process requires. It includes a list of the data elements, a conceptual data structure that shows how the data elements are grouped according to the entities they describe, and the relationships among the groups of data elements.

lock management.  The reservation of a segment by a program. Other programs are kept from using the segment until the program using it is done.

lock sequence number (LSN).  A unique number, issued sequentially, given to a database resource to identify that it is in use (locked) by a requestor. A locked resource cannot be used until the current requestor has finished using it.

logical child.  In a database, a pointer segment that establishes an access path between its physical parent and its logical parent. It is a physical child of its physical parent; it is a logical child of its logical parent.

logical database.  A set of logical database record occurrences. It is composed of one or more physical databases; it represents hierarchic, structured relationships between data segments that can be different from the physical structure in which the segments were loaded.

logical database record.  In a database, a set of hierarchically related segments of one or more segment types. As viewed by the application program, the logical database record is always a hierarchical tree structure of segments. All of the segments that exist hierarchically dependent to a given root segment and that root segment.

logical data structure.  In a database, a hierarchical structure of segments. Application programs written to use IMS deal only with logical data structures.

logical destination.  See destination, local destination, and remote destination.

logical link.  In a multisystem environment, the means by which a physical link is related to the transactions and terminals that can use that physical link.

logical link path.  In a multisystem environment, the path between any two systems. One or more logical link paths must be defined for each logical link.

logical logging.  The process of moving log records into the log buffers. See also physical logging.

logical messages.  Input or output messages that are in a queue associated with a logical rather than a physical terminal. The message queue can be moved, independent of an application, from device to device.

logical page (LPAGE).  In MFS, a user-defined group of related message segment and field definitions.

logical paging.  In MFS, the means by which output message segments are grouped for formatting. See also operator logical paging.
**logical parent.** In a database, it is the segment a logical child points to. It can also be a physical parent. Furthermore, it contains the common reference data. The pointer in the logical child to the logical parent can be symbolic or direct.

**logical relationship.** In a database, a user-defined path between two independent segments.

**logical terminal (LTERM).** A message destination logically associated with a physical terminal or user. An LTERM is represented by a CNT control block. See also remote logical terminal.

**logical terminal pool.** A user-defined group of logical terminals to be associated with non-VTAM switched communication lines through the /IAM command. Each logical terminal pool consists of one or more logical terminal subpools.

**logical terminal subpool.** A user-defined group of logical terminals within a logical terminal pool. Each usage of the /IAM command from a non-VTAM switched terminal causes one logical terminal subpool to be associated with one physical terminal.

**logical twins.** In a database, all occurrences of one type of logical child with a common logical parent occurrence. See also physical twins.

**logical unit of work.** The processing a program performs from one sync point to the next.

**log initiated checkpoint.** See simple checkpoint and system scheduled checkpoint.

**logoff.** The act a terminal user performs in order to end a session with IMS.

**logon.** The act a terminal user performs in order to establish a session with IMS.

**logon descriptor.** An ETO descriptor that provides information required by IMS to build terminal-related control blocks.

**log record identifier (LRID).** A sequence number used to identify a log record and to maintain the order of log records for a subsystem.

**log router.** In an RSR environment, the component of the tracking subsystem that receives log data from active subsystems, stores the data in tracked log data sets, and routes the log records to tracking components.

**log sequence number (LSN).** Equivalent to the log record identifier (LRID). See log record identifier.

**log token.** A token that identifies a particular log record in the MVS log stream that is used to locate that log record.

**log write-ahead (LWA).** The process of logging records of completed operations to the write-ahead data set before entering them in the online log data set.

**looptest mode.** The test mode that permits the establishment of an output write loop, whereby continuous attempts are made to transmit a user-entered message to the test terminal.

**low-level code/continuity check (LLC/CC).** An IMS application support program that can generate and update low-level codes in a database, and thereby ensure the continuity of an iterative parts structure.

**LPAGE.** See logical page.

**LRID.** See log record identifier.

**LSN.** See lock sequence number or log sequence number.

**LTERM.** See logical terminal.

**LTRAN.** See local transaction.

**LU 6.2 destination.** An LU 6.2 application program defined by an LU (logical unit) name plus a TP (transaction program) name.
MADS. See multiple area data sets.

**main storage database (MSDB).** A root-segment database that resides in virtual storage. The data in an MSDB is stored in segments. Each segment can be available to all terminals or assigned to a specific terminal; however, segments cannot be assigned to a terminal that is defined through ETO.

**marooned log data.** In an RSR environment, the active IMS log data, at the remote site, that follows a gap in the log data. Marooned log data cannot be processed by the tracking IMS until the log data that fills the gap has been received.

**master.** The client that initiates a process step.

**master CQS.** The CQS that coordinates a sysplex-wide task. The other CQSs sharing in the task are participants. If the master CQS fails for any reason, another CQS takes over the role of master and either continues or aborts the task.

**master database.** In an RSR environment, a database at the active site. If a remote takeover occurs, the shadow database becomes the master database.

**master terminal.** The IMS logical terminal that has complete control of IMS resources during online operations.

**master terminal formatting option.** An MFS option that provides a format for a 3270 master terminal.

**member.** See group member, IMSplex member, generic resource member.

**message.** Data transmitted between any two terminals, application programs, and IMS systems. Each message has one or more segments.

**message class.** A class, assigned to a transaction code, that determines within which message region an application program is to process that transaction. See also region class.

**Message Control Information.** The part of the OTMA message prefix that contains such information as the transaction pipe name and the message typ. It is not contiguous with the rest of the message prefix and it must be specified for every OTMA message.

**message delete option.** An option that may be defined to prevent nonessential messages from being sent to a specific terminal.

**message destination.** A destination that is a transaction, an LTERM, an MSNAME, or a command.

**message-driven program.** An application program that is initiated by the scheduling of an input message. The types of message-driven programs are MPP, IFP, and JMP. See also non-message-driven program.

**message editing.** The process by which messages are formatted for presentation to an application program or terminal. Additional message editing routines may be written by the user. See also basic edit and Message Format Service.

**message field (MFLD).** In MFS, the smallest area in a message input or output descriptor whose content and structure are defined by the user.

**Message Format Service (MFS).** An editing facility that allows application programs to deal with simple logical messages instead of device-dependent data, thus simplifying the application development process.

**Message Format Service (MFS) control block.** In MFS, the representation of a message or format that is stored in the IMS.FORMAT library and called into the MFS buffer pool as needed for online execution. See also intermediate text block, message input descriptor, message output descriptor, device input format, and device output format.

**message input descriptor (MID).** The MFS control block that describes the format of the data presented to the application program.

**message mode.** A transaction attribute that describes how the transaction is handled by the application program. See also single message mode and multiple message mode.
message output descriptor (MOD).  The MFS control block that describes the format of the output data produced by the application program.

message prefix.  Each message in IMS contains a message prefix. This is a structured set of areas that define information needed for processing each message. Some parts of the message prefix always exist, while others are only included if the IMS system is defined with a particular function.

message processing program (MPP).  An IMS application program that is driven by transactions and has access to online IMS databases and message queues. See also batch message processing program and batch processing program.

message queue.  The data set in which messages are queued before being processed by an application program or sent to a terminal.

message recovery point.  The last inbound message for which IMS returned a definite response or the last outbound message for which IMS requested a definite response.

message resynchronization.  A facility that detects and corrects a lost message condition if a network failure occurs.

message retention area.  An IMS save area for each 3614 Consumer Transaction Facility in the IMS 3600 system.

message segment.  The unit of access when referring to a message to or from a terminal.

message switch.  A terminal input message directed to another terminal without being processed by a message processing program. See also program-to-program message switch.

MFLD.  See message field.

MFS.  See Message Format Service.

MFS device descriptor.  A descriptor used by ETO to update screen size in the DCT and generate new MFS default formats without system generation.

MFS dynamic directory.  A technique used by the online IMS control program when operating under MVS to manage message format control blocks stored in extended private storage.

MFSTEST.  An optional MFS facility that allows MFS control blocks to be created and tested online without disrupting production activity.

MID.  See message input descriptor.

missing log data.  See gap.

mixed-mode BMP.  An IMS batch messaging program that has access to Fast Path and full-function databases.

MOD.  See message output descriptor.

modifiable alternate PCB.  An alternate PCB for which the destination can be changed by the application program during execution.

modified standard DL/I application program.  An application program that uses CPI-C calls to allocate additional LU 6.2 conversations to the same or different LU 6.2 devices, and sends and receives data.

MPP.  See message processing program.

MSC.  See Multiple Systems Coupling.

MSC descriptor.  A descriptor used by ETO to relate LTERMs to statically defined MSC links.

MSDB.  See main storage database.

MSNAME.  An IMS macro used to define a name that represents remote and local system identifiers (SYSIDs). This name is a destination name for IMS messages sent to remote IMS systems with MSC. The linkname on the MSNAME macro, transaction names, and LTERM names must be unique. The MSNAME is represented by the LNB control block.
MTO. See master terminal.

multiple area data sets (MADS). Multiple data sets that contain shadow copies of DEDB areas. See also area data sets.

multiple message mode. A processing mode in which synchronization points occur only at DL/I CHKP calls or application termination. See also single message mode, synchronization point.

Multiple Systems Coupling (MSC). An IMS facility that permits geographically dispersed IMSs to communicate with one another. See also IMSplex.

multisystem environment. Two or more (up to 255) IMS systems that run on any supported systems in one or more CPCs; the environment in which Multiple System Coupling runs.

name type. A 1-byte number from 1 to 255 that the client specifies as the first byte of the resource ID. The name type guarantees uniqueness of names for all resources of that name type. This prevents clients from putting more than one resource with the same name and name type out on the resource structure. The resources within the name type may have different data resource types.

node. An IMS resource that represents a physical VTAM terminal. The node is represented by a VTCB control block.

noncloned IMSplex. A group of IMSs in a sysplex sharing databases and or sharing queues, where the resource definitions are not identical. Also known as partitioned IMSplex, or asymmetric IMSplex.

non-ISC static user. A user signed on to a static terminal. The user is represented by a user ID that is defined to an enhanced security product such as RACF®.

non-message-driven program. An application program that is initiated by the submission of a batch job. This program runs in either a BMP region, JBP region, or an IFP utility region. See also message-driven program.

nonrecoverable status. Any resource status that cannot be recovered after a terminal logoff, a user signoff, or an IMS restart. Non-recoverable status only exists while the resource is active and is deleted when that resource becomes inactive.

nonrecoverable transaction. An inquiry transaction that is not recovered in the event of a failure.

non-terminal-related MSDB. A type of MSDB characterized by data that is used or updated frequently and segments that are not owned by specific logical terminals. Direct update of segment fields is allowed but no insertion or deletion of segments is permitted.

normal priority. The priority assigned to a transaction when the number of transactions enqueued and waiting to be processed is less than the limit count value. See also limit count, limit priority.

normal restart. The restart of IMS after a termination initiated by a /CHECKPOINT command. See also emergency restart.

normal XRF operations. The period of XRF processing when the active IMS is processing the IMS workload and the alternate IMS is tracking the active IMS.

null output message. The message IMS sends to a terminal when no other output is immediately available to satisfy terminal requirements.

O

ODBA. See Open Database Access.

OFR. See online forward recovery.

OLCSTAT. A shared dataset that contains the global online change status.

OLDS. See online log data set.
OLIC. See online image copy.

OM. See Operations Manager.

OM API. The API that enables users to write single points of control that communicate with OM.

online. Applicable in the IMS DB/DC, DBCTL, and DCCTL environments, unless otherwise indicated.

online change. An IMS function that supports adding, changing, or deleting of resources online such as transactions, database directories, program directories, DMBs, PSBs, Fast Path routing codes, and SMU security, without stopping the system to define them.

online forward recovery. In an RSR environment, the process by which a stopped shadow database or area is brought to currency by the tracking IMS with the database or area on the active IMS.

online image copy. (1) The process of creating an image copy while the database is online. Also, the image copy created by the process. (2) The image copy created by the online image copy process.

online log data set (OLDS). A data set on direct access storage that contains the log records written by an online IMS system.

Open Database Access (ODBA). A callable interface that can be used by an OS/390 application program to issue DL/I calls to an IMS DB system. The application program must use the RRS of OS/390 as a sync-point manager.

Open Transaction Manager Access (OTMA). A transaction-based, connectionless client/server protocol. Its implementation is specific to IMS in a sysplex environment. The domain of the protocol is restricted to the domain of the Cross-System Coupling Facility (XCF). OTMA is designed to be a high-performance comprehensive protocol that allows clients (OS/390 applications) to submit transactions to IMS or issue IMS commands and receive output from IMS application programs and from IMS itself.

Operations Manager (OM). In an IMSplex, a CSL component that receives commands from AOPs, routes the command to IMSplex members, consolidates commands responses, and sends the responses to the AOP.

operator control function. In MFS, the means by which a terminal operator controls the display of output messages. Specific operator control functions are provided by IMS, but their use must be defined by the user in an operator control table.

operator control table. In MFS, a user-defined table of operator control functions; when a table is used, a specific control function is invoked when the input device data or data length satisfies a predefined condition.

operator logical paging. An MFS facility that allows the device operator to request a specific logical page of an output message.

origin system. See input system.

OSAM. See Overflow Sequential Access Method.

OTMA. See Open Transaction Manager Access.

output message. A valid response mode message, a conversational mode message, an exclusive mode message, an IMS system message, an application program message, or a message switch.

output total. The total number of messages sent on a line or terminal, including IMS-generated messages that may not have been queued.

Overflow Sequential Access Method (OSAM). An IMS data management access method that combines selected characteristics of BSAM and BDAM. OSAM is used by the following IMS database access methods: HISAM, HIDAM, and HDAM if VSAM is not used. OSAM is also used by some of the online pool management routines.

overflow structure. A coupling facility list structure that contains shared queues when the primary structure reaches a user-specified overflow threshold. The overflow structure is optional. See also primary structure.

overlapped read. A read that is performed concurrently with other I/O operations and CPC processing.
parallel DL/I. A facility that permits all database calls to be processed in each message processing region or batch message processing region.

parent segment. In a database, a segment that has one or more dependent segments (its children) hierarchically below it.

PARLIM (PARLM). Parallel Limit. A parameter that specifies the threshold value to be used when SCHDTYPE=PARALLEL is specified in an APPLCTN macro. An additional region is scheduled whenever the current transaction enqueue count exceeds the PARLIM value multiplied by the number of regions currently scheduled for this transaction.

partition. Refers to that part of a display used as the viewport, its associated window, and its display data buffer when in partitioned state.

partition descriptor (PD). This represents an entry in the PDB for a partition in a partition set. The entry is created by the MFS Language Utility via the PD statement and is referenced by the DPAGE statement PD operand. It contains all of the information necessary to issue the "CREATE PARTITION" Write Structured Field Command for the partition.

partition descriptor block (PDB). A collection of partition descriptor entries representing a partition set. An intermediate text block (ITB) for the PDB is created by the MFS Language Utility. This PDB ITB is used in creating a part of the DOF.

partition set. All of the partitions that are defined in the partition descriptor block (PDB).

partition specification table (PST). An IMS control block that contains dependent-region information.

partitioned HDAM (PHDAM). A partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access Method database organization, one type of High Availability Large Database (HALDB).

partitioned HIDAM (PHIDAM). A partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method database organization, one type of High Availability Large Database (HALDB).

partitioned secondary index (PSINDEX). A partitioned secondary index database organization, one type of High Availability Large Database (HALDB).

partner LU. A remote LU with which a local LU establishes a session or allocates a conversation.

partner systems. In an IMS multisystem environment, two IMS online systems that are connected by an MSC link.

password security. The use of system definition macros and security maintenance utility control statements to restrict the use of IMS resources (databases, application programs, physical and logical terminals, transactions, and commands) to a person or persons who can supply the correct password.

path. (1) In a database, a sequence of segment occurrences from the root to an individual segment. (2) In an online IMS system, the route a message takes from the time it is originated through processing; in a multisystem environment, the route can include more than one IMS system.

PCB. See program communication block (PCB).

PCB mask. A data structure in an application program in which IMS puts the status of the application program’s DL/I calls. See also status codes.

PD. See partition descriptor.

PDB. See partition descriptor block.

PHDAM. See partitioned HDAM.

PHIDAM. See partitioned HIDAM.
**physical child.** In a database, a segment type that is dependent on a segment type defined at the next higher level in the database hierarchy. All segment types in a database, except the root, are physical children since each is dependent on at least the root.

**physical database.** An ordered set of physical database records.

**physical database record.** In databases, a physical set of hierarchically related segments of one or more segment types.

**physical database record occurrence.** An instance of a root segment and the hierarchical arrangement of all its dependent segment occurrences.

**physical data structure.** A hierarchy representing segment types and the hierarchical arrangement of those segment types in a physical database.

**physical link.** In an MSC network, the actual hardware connection between two systems. See also logical link.

**physical logging.** The process of writing log records from the log buffers to the system log. See also logical logging.

**physical page.** In MFS, all or part of a logical page that is defined to be entered (input) or displayed (output) at one time.

**physical paging.** An MFS facility that permits data from a logical page to be displayed in several physical pages on the device.

**physical parent.** In a database, a segment type that has a dependent segment type defined at the next lower level in the physical database hierarchy.

**physical relationship.** In a database, the description of the relationship that exists between two or more physical segments.

**physical segment.** In a database, the smallest unit of accessible data.

**physical terminal (PTERM).** A hardware device attached to the computer and supported by the DC feature as a terminal. A physical terminal usually has one or more logical terminals associated with it.

**physical twins.** In a database, all occurrences of a single physical child segment type that have the same (single occurrence) physical parent segment type. See also twin segments and logical twins.

**Pl.** See program isolation.

**planned remote takeover.** In an RSR environment, a remote takeover initiated by the IMS operator as part of shutting down the IMSs at the active site in order to transfer the active IMS workload to the remote site.

**planned takeover.** An XRF takeover that an operator initiates.

**PLEID.** See programmable LEID.

**position.** See database position.

**post-takeover.** The XRF phase, immediately following takeover, when the new active IMS system does not have alternate.

**preload.** To load the root addressable portion and independent overflow portion of a VSO DEDB area into a data space when the area is opened.

**preopen.** To open a DEDB area after the first checkpoint following IMS control region initialization or during /START AREA command processing. If an area is not preopened, it will be opened during the first read request for the area.

**presentation space.** The display data buffer associated with a partition. The size of the presentation space is defined as equal to, or larger than, the size of the viewport. When the presentation space is equal to the viewport size, all the data in the presentation space is displayed. When the presentation space is larger than the viewport, the user must move the scrolling window within the presentation space to display the data within the viewport. See also viewport.
preset destination mode. An optional mode of terminal operation that allows the destination of terminal input to be fixed as a specific transaction code or logical terminal. It is activated by the /SET command and reset by the /RESET command, the /STOP command, ETO user signoff, static terminal logoff, and an IMS restart.

primary data set group. In a database, the first or only data set group defined. The root segment type always resides in the primary data set group. See also secondary data set group.

primary request. In an MSC network, a message entered into a terminal before it is processed. See also secondary request and response.

primary session. The session between a class–1 terminal and the active IMS.

primary structure. A coupling facility list structure that contains shared queues or shared resources. See also overflow structure.

private buffer pool. An area of local storage, used for VSO DEDB data, that can provide lookaside capability for shared VSO areas.

processing intent. An application program attribute, defined in the PSB, that specifies the program's database access privileges such as, insert, delete, and replace.

processing limit. A transaction attribute that defines how many messages the application program is allowed to process during one program execution.

program communication block (PCB). An IMS control block that describes an application program's interface to and view of an IMS database or, additionally for message processing and batch message processing programs, to the source and destinations of messages. PCBs are defined by the user during PSB generation. See also database program communication block (DB PCB) and telecommunication-program program communication block (TP PCB).

program isolation (PI). An IMS facility that separates all the activity of an application program from any other active application program until that application program indicates, via a synchronization point, that the data it has modified or created is consistent and complete.

program isolation (PI) lock manager. The facility that was formerly known as PI enqueue-dequeue. The PI lock manager is used for local locking in systems for which no IRLM has been defined. Otherwise, the IRLM is used for all lock management, including local.

programmable LEID. A list entry ID that the IXLLIST requestor specifies, rather than OS/390 assigning the LEID to a list entry.

program specification block (PSB). The control block that describes databases and logical message destinations used by an application program. A PSB consists of one or more PCBs.

program specification block generation (PSBGEN). The process by which a PSB is created.

program-to-program message switch. An IMS output message sent by one application program to another application program.

prompt facility. An optional facility for notifying a terminal operator that a current page of output is the last page of a message.

protected conversation. A communication session that is allocated between two programs processing a transaction, that uses the sync point option, and that uses the two-phase commit and resynchronization protocols.

protected resource. A local or distributed resource for which updates are synchronized and controlled.

PSB. See program specification block.

PSBGEN. See program specification block generation.

pseudo-front-end system. An IMS in a multisystem environment in which all terminals are handled and a small number of time-consuming transactions are routed to a transaction processing system. See also balanced system, front-end system, and transaction processing system.

PSINDEX. See partitioned secondary index.
PST. See partition specification table.

PTERM. See physical terminal.

Q

Qbuffer. Queue Buffer. An IMS Queue Manager incore buffer that is used to keep the working copy of an IMS message segment.

Qname. Queue Name. The name of a queue on Shared Queues upon which data objects reside. The queue name is 16 bytes long, left justified, padded with blanks. The first byte of the client queue name is the queue type. A client queue name of blanks or zeroes is supported.

QMGR. See Queue Manager.

qualified call. A DL/I call that contains at least one segment search argument.

qualified segment search argument (SSA). An SSA that contains, in addition to the segment name, one or more qualification statements. A qualified SSA describes the segment type and occurrence that is to be accessed.

queue. A constructed and maintained list of items that are waiting to be processed. A collection of data objects with the same name in a Shared Queue. Sometimes used synonymously with LTERM.

Queue Manager (QMGR). An IMS component that manages IMS messages and the space the messages occupy. The IMS Queue Manager is part of a DB/DC or DCCTL environment.

queue structure. A structure managed by CQS that contains data in queues.

queue type. A grouping of shared queues on the coupling facility list structure whose meaning is client defined or CQS defined.

R

random read. A read of one single block.

Rapid Network Reconnect (RNR). A function of IMS that automatically reconnects IMS VTAM terminal sessions across outages (IMS, OS/390, or VTAM) and subsequent IMS restarts on the same or different OS/390 within a sysplex.

RDS. See restart data set.

read access. An access intent that establishes the intent of an application to read the database (without making modifications) and to be protected from an updater’s incomplete changes. It allows other applications to share the database. It can also be called read with integrity.

readiness level. For an RSR database-level tracker, the level that determines whether a shadow database is ready to apply database changes as they are received from the active IMS. See also database-readiness-level database, recovery-readiness-level database.

read-only access. This access intent establishes the intent of an application to read the database without being protected from an updater’s incomplete changes. It may also be called read without integrity.

read with integrity. See read access.

read without integrity. See read-only access.

RECON. See recovery control data sets.

record mode. In MFS, the default input mode in which fields are defined as occurring within a specific record sent from the device. See also stream mode.

recoverable resource. See protected resource.
recoverable status. Any resource status that can be recovered after a terminal logoff, a user signoff, or an IMS restart.

recoverable service element (RSE). A service element (IMS) that is backed up and that can initiate a takeover.

recoverable transaction. An IMS transaction that is recovered in the event of a failure.

recovery control (RECON) data set. Data sets in which DBRC stores information about logging activity and events that might affect the recovery of databases.

recovery-level tracker. In an RSR environment, a tracking IMS that does not track the active IMS's databases or areas, but instead saves all database changes on tracked logs on the tracking IMS until recovery or remote takeover is performed. See also database-level tracker.

recovery log data set (RLDS). A log data set that contains only the log records that are required for database recovery.

recovery-readiness-level database. In an RSR environment, a database or area to which database changes are not applied as they are received from the active IMS, but instead are saved on tracked logs on the tracking IMS until recovery or remote takeover is performed, or until the database's (or area's) readiness level is changed to database readiness level. See also database-readiness-level database.

region class. The class IMS assigns to a message region that indicates the message classes that can be processed within the region. See also message class.

remote destination. In an MSC network, a destination that resides in a remote system. See also local destination.

remote logical terminal. An IMS queue associated with an MSC logical link to allow routing of asynchronous output messages to the local LTERM in another IMS.

remote site. In an RSR environment, the physically remote location of the tracking IMS and shadows databases. If a remote takeover occurs, it becomes the active site.

Remote Site Recovery (RSR). A feature of IMS that minimizes the impact of active site failures by having a geographically remote IMS track active IMSs. Production work is taken over at the remote site in the event of a disaster or site-wide failure at the active site. See also tracking IMS.

remote system. In an MSC network, any IMS other than the local IMS.

remote takeover. In an RSR environment, an action initiated by an IMS operator to transfer the active IMS workload from the active site to the remote site. See also planned remote takeover, unplanned remote takeover.

remote terminal. A terminal that is not attached to the host system through an I/O channel.

remote transaction. In a multisystem environment, a transaction whose total processing is shared between two or more systems. See also local transaction.

reply. Synonymous with response in a non-VTAM environment.

resource access security. The use of system definition macros and security maintenance utility control statements to limit the IMS resources that can be used by application programs and utilities executing in dependent regions.

resource class. A category of similar resources that are defined in the IBM-supplied class descriptor table (CDT).

resource ID. The PLEID that IMS specifies for a resource to insure name uniqueness. The first byte is the name type, and the remaining 11 bytes are the resource name padded with blanks.

Resource Manager (RM). A CSL component that manages resources and coordinate online change for IMSs in an IMSplex.

resource name. An 11-byte unique name of a client-defined resource. An example of an IMS resource name is a transaction name.
resource structure. A coupling facility list structure, used by the Common Service Layer’s Resource Manager and managed by CQS, that contains uniquely named resources. This structure is typically used to maintain global resource information when multiple Resource Managers exist in an IMSplex.

resource type. A CQS defined resource. CQS groups list headers into resource types. The resource types allow CQS and its clients to physically group resources of a particular type on a coupling facility list structure.

glossary

response. A message inserted to a logical terminal destination specified by an I/O PCB or an alternate response PCB. When VTAM is used, the term reply is substituted for response because response has a separate meaning in VTAM communications. See also primary request, secondary request, and reply.

response alternate PCB. Synonym for alternate response PCB.

response mode. A mode of terminal operation that synchronizes operations between the terminal operator and the application program. When IMS receives an input transaction that causes response mode to be entered, no more input is allowed until the application program response has been transmitted back to the terminal. Response mode is activated when a transaction is entered at a terminal, if either the transaction or the terminal is defined as response mode. Reset by the /STOP command, ETO user signoff, static terminal logoff, and an IMS restart. See also line response mode and terminal response mode.

restart. See emergency restart and normal restart.

restart data set (RDS). The direct-access data set that contains the information necessary to restart IMS.

REXX SPOC API. An API that enables users to write REXX programs that communicate with OM.

RLDS. See recovery log data set.

RLT. See recovery-level tracker.

RM. See Resource Manager.

RM affinity. When RM and a resource structure are used, an association between an IMS and a user or node with LOCAL status recovery mode. If RM indicates that the user or node has RM affinity to an IMS, the user or node cannot log or sign on to another IMS. This affinity occurs because end-user significant status (conversation, STSN, or Fast Path) is being recovered on an IMS.

RNR. See Rapid Network Reconnect.

root anchor point (RAP). In an HDAM database or DEDB, a pointer at the beginning of each physical block that points to a root segment that belongs in that block.

root segment. The highest segment in the database hierarchy. The database is normally sequenced on the key of this segment. All other segments depend upon the root segment and reference it as part of their complete identity. See also dependent segment.

routing code. For EMH, a user-defined code that allows transactions to be routed to programs within a load balancing group.

routing path. In an MSC network, the route through which IMS passes a message from its origination through processing. One or more systems may be included in a routing path.

RSR. See Remote Site Recovery.

S

SB. See sequential buffering.

SCA. See system control area.

SCD. See system contents directory.

Scheduler Message Block (SMB). An IMS control block that represents a transaction.
scheduling intent. An application program attribute defined in the PSB that specifies how the program should be scheduled if multiple programs are contending for scheduling. See also exclusive intent, read-only intent, read intent, and update intent.

scheduling priority. A transaction attribute that is used in calculating which transaction is selected for scheduling. See also normal priority and limit priority.

SCI. See Structured Call Interface.

scratchpad area (SPA). A work area used in conversational processing to retain information from an application program across executions of the program.

scrolling window. The portion of the presentation space that is mapped to the viewport at any given time. The window can be moved vertically within the presentation space by scrolling. See also presentation space.

SCS. See SNA character string.

SDEP. See sequential dependent segment.

search field. In a DL/I call, a field that is referred to by one or more SSAs.

secondary data set group. In a database, the data set group or groups defined in addition to the primary data set. A secondary data set group is normally defined to improve utilization of auxiliary storage. See also primary data set group.

secondary index. See secondary index database.

secondary index database. An index used to establish accessibility to a physical or logical database by a path different from the one provided by the database definition. It contains an index pointer segment type defined in a secondary index database.

secondary logical unit (SLU). A nonhost port through which the end user gains access to the services of the network. Normally, a nonhost program that resides within a controller or control unit.

secondary processing sequence. In a database, the hierarchical order of segment types in a physical or logical database that results automatically when a database is accessed through a secondary index.

secondary request. In a multisystem environment, a message inserted to a transaction code destination by an application program. See also primary request and response.

security. See password security, resource access security, signon verification security, terminal security, and transaction command security.

security maintenance. The process by which the control blocks that describe the user's data processing security requirements are created.

segment. The unit of access; for the DB system, the smallest amount of data that can be transferred by one IMS operation. For input terminal operations using IMS TM, a segment is defined by the particular terminal type and is obtained by an application program with one call. See also segment occurrence and message segment.

segment occurrence. In a database, an instance of a segment type.

segment search argument (SSA). The portion of a DL/I call that identifies a segment or group of segments to be processed. Each SSA contains a segment name and, optionally, one or more command codes, and one or more qualification statements. Multiple SSAs may be required to identify the desired segment.

segment type. In a database, a user-defined category of data. See also segment occurrence.

selection priority. See scheduling priority.

sensitive segment. A segment type in a database to which an application program is sensitive.

sensitivity (program). An IMS capability that ensures that only data segments or fields predefined as "sensitive" are available for use in a particular application. The sensitivity concept also provides a degree of control over data.
security, inasmuch as users can be prevented from accessing particular segments or fields by omission of those segments or fields from the logical database. Sensitivity is implemented through the DB PCB.

**sequence field.** See key field.

**sequential buffering (SB).** Efficient sequential input buffering techniques that reduce the elapsed time required to sequentially process large IMS OSAM databases.

**sequential dependent segment (SDEP).** A segment of a data entry database that is chained off the root segment and inserted (last-in first-out) into the last part of a DEEB area. After being inserted by an online program, the SDEP cannot be modified.

**sequential read.** A set of several consecutive blocks that are read with a single read I/O operation. Sequential reads are issued by the Sequential Buffering (SB) component of IMS in order to reduce the elapsed time required to sequentially process large IMS OSAM databases.

**service elements.** The discrete hardware and software products that provide a terminal user with processing ability.

**service group.** In an RSR environment, a collection of all IMSs that access RSR-covered databases at an active or at a remote site, including the RECON data set. A service group usually includes one or more IMSs at a single site, with the databases and RECON data set shared between the IMSs.

**session recovery.** The XRF process in which IMS switches primary sessions on class 1 terminals to backup sessions or reestablishes service on class 2 terminals during takeover.

**set-and-test-sequence-numbers terminal (STSN).** A programmable terminal, defined to IMS as Finance (3600), SLU P, or LU 6.1 (ISC).

SG. See service group.

**shadow database.** In an RSR environment, a database maintained at the tracking site as a remote copy of a database at the active site. If a remote takeover occurs, the shadow database becomes the master database.

**share levels.** When you register a database to the Data Base Recovery Control (DBRC), you assign to the database one of four share levels: level zero, level one, level two, or level three.

**shared index database.** A secondary index database containing more than one secondary index in the same physical operating system data set.

**shared queue.** A coupling facility structure, managed by the Common Queue Server, that contains IMS messages that are available to all IMSs in a Parallel Sysplex® shared-queues group.

**sharing complex.** A group of subsystems using IMS and DBRC that share the same RECON data sets. Also called data sharing complex.

SHISAM. See simple HISAM.

SHSAM. See simple hierarchical sequential access method (SHSAM).

**sibling segment types.** Two or more segment types having a common parent segment type.

**sibling segments.** Two or more occurrences of different sibling segment types having a common parent segment occurrence.

**significant data.** IMS state data that keeps a resource from being deleted in RM when the resource is no longer active on any IMS. This term was introduced by ETO, when deciding whether status was significant enough to prevent the dynamic control block from being deleted when the user signed off or the node logged off. See also state data.

**significant status.** A resource status classified as significant. In addition to being recoverable, if the resource status is specified as significant, the resource cannot be deleted after a terminal logoff, a user signoff, or an IMS restart.

**signoff.** The act a terminal user performs in order to end an identification of a user to IMS. When the terminal is an ETO terminal, the signoff process usually disconnects the user structure from the terminal structure and deletes the user structure.
signon. The act a terminal user performs in order to identify a user to IMS. When the terminal is an ETO terminal, the signon process also creates a user structure and connects the user structure to the terminal structure.

signon verification security. The use of system definition macros and security maintenance utility control statements to identify a particular user to IMS.

simple checkpoint. The periodic recording of control information and system status on the system log at user-specified intervals.

simple HISAM. The support for a HISAM database that contains only one segment type.

simple hierarchical sequential access method (SHSAM). A type of HSAM database that contains only root segments, which have no prefixes.

single lock manager. A concept where locks for database resources shared between programs or subsystems are handled by one control point. Either an IRLM or a Program Isolation locking function can be invoked for the subsystem.

single-message mode. A processing mode in which synchronization points occur as each message is read from the queue, as well as at application termination. See also multiple message mode and synchronization point.

single point of control (SPOC). The control interface that sends commands to one or more members of an IMSplex and receives command responses.

SLDS. See system log data set.

SLU. See secondary logical unit.

SMU. Security Maintenance utility.

SMB. See Scheduler Message Block.

SNA character string (SCS). A string of control codes (X’00’ to X’3F’ and X’FF’) and graphic characters (X’40’ to X’FE’).

source segment. A database segment containing the data used to construct the secondary index pointer segment.

SPA. See scratchpad area.

SPOC. See single point of control.

SPQB. See Subpool Queue Block.

SSA. See segment search argument.

stage 1 system definition. The first part of the process of defining an IMS system. Stage 1 checks input specifications and generates a series of MVS job steps that are the input to stage 2.

stage 2 system definition. The second part of the process of defining an IMS system. Stage 2 builds IMS system libraries, execution procedures, and the IMS online control program tailored to support the desired set of IMS functions. Stage 2 then stores these in an IMS library.

staging libraries. Those libraries that are modified by offline functions in a system using online change. Changes are first applied to the staging libraries, which are then copied to the inactive libraries.

state data. IMS state data is information that needs to be kept in RM, so that a user can sign onto another IMS and resume his state.

static node. A VTAM node defined by the IMS system definition.

static terminal. A terminal created through the system definition process.

static user. Non-ISC user or ISC user defined statically through the IMS system definition process.

status code. A two-character code in the PCB mask that indicates the results of a DL/I call. See also PCB mask.
status recovery mode. The scope of recovery for a resource, it determines where the resource status can be recovered from. GLOBAL indicates the status is managed by RM, LOCAL indicates the status is managed by IMS in local control blocks and log records, and NONE indicates the status is not recovered.

stream mode. In MFS, the input mode in which fields are defined as a stream of data without record boundaries. See also record mode.

structure. A serialized list structure. To CQS, either the primary list structure, the overflow list structure, or the resource structure.

Structured Call Interface (SCI). A CSL component that manages communications between the IMSplex members.

structure pair. A primary queue structure and its associated overflow structure.

structure recovery data set (SRDS). Shared data sets that contain structure checkpoint information for shared queues on a structure pair. There are two SRDS data sets per structure pair.

STSN. See set-and-test-sequence-numbers terminal (STSN).

subpool. A collection of logical terminals (LTERMs) that can be allocated to an ISC node and can be used with parallel sessions.

Subpool Queue Block (SPQB). An IMS control block that represents a user.

subsequence field. In a secondary index, a field added to the index segment key data to make the pointer segment key unique.

surveillance mechanism. A way for IMS in the alternate to determine that the active is processing satisfactorily.

Surveyor. See Database Surveyor utility.

symbolic pointer. The concatenation of the keys in the sequence fields of all segments that must be retrieved to reach the desired segment including the sequence field key of the desired segment.

synchronization phase. The XRF phase, immediately after initialization, when the alternate IMS builds the IMS control blocks to mirror those in the active IMS.

synchronization point. A point in time from which IMS or an application program can start over if a failure makes recovery necessary. The two types of synchronization points are system checkpoints done by IMS itself, and application program synchronization points (also known as commit points) done on behalf of individual application programs. See also commit point, system checkpoint.

sync point. See synchronization point.

SYSGEN. System generation.

sysplex data sharing. The ability of multiple IMSs to share data across multiple OS/390 images. Sysplex data sharing differs from two-way data sharing in that the latter allows sharing across only two OS/390 images.

system administration. The task of planning for and controlling the IMS systems at an installation.

system checkpoint. A point at which IMS records its internal status—control information, plus a unique checkpoint ID—and writes the checkpoint table to the restart data set (RDS). This information allows IMS to reconstruct its condition if recovery is later necessary. System checkpointing is done automatically each time a user-selected number of records is written to the log.

system contents directory (SCD). A data area whose primary function is to contain major entry pointers for all IMS facilities. Its secondary function is to contain system data and the status of the log functions and commands.

system control area (SCA). In MFS, a message field that allows an application program to control specific terminal features when the features apply to the terminal for which the message is destined. See also default system control area.

system definition. An IMS process, similar to OS/390 system generation, by which the IMS user describes items such as databases, application programs, and terminals that make up the IMS system.
**system definition preprocessor.** An optional step in the system definition process that performs resource name checking, thus bypassing that procedure in stage 1.

**system identification.** In an IMS multisystem environment, the means by which a system that is part of a logical link path is identified.

**system literal.** In MFS, a literal field provided by MFS and defined by the user for inclusion in an output message.

**system log data set (SLDS).** The permanent destination data set for IMS log records. The SLDS is usually on tape or MSS. In an IMS batch region, the SLDS is created at execution time. In an IMS online region, the SLDS is created by copying the online log data set to it by means of the Log Archive utility.

**system message field.** In MFS, an output device field on 3270 display devices that can be defined to receive system messages, thereby preventing unsolicited IMS messages from destroying a screen format.

**T**

**takeover.** In an XRF environment, the process by which the failing active IMS is released from its XRF sessions with terminal users and replaced by an alternate IMS.

**takeover condition.** An event in the active IMS that causes the alternate IMS to request a takeover.

**takeover phase.** The replacement of the failing active IMS by the alternate IMS.

**target segment.** In secondary indexing, the segment to be retrieved.

**TCO.** Time-controlled operations.

**telecommunication-program PCB (TP PCB).** The PCB that supports communication between an application program and a terminal or other application program. There are two types of TP PCBs: I/O PCB and alternate PCB.

**terminal-related MSDB.** A type of MSDB in which: (1) each segment is assigned to and owned by one logical terminal (LTERM); (2) the owner with terminal security may alter or update that segment; and, (3) a segment may be referenced by other than the owner. Terminal-related MSDBs are: (1) fixed, which allows changes, or (2) dynamic, which permits segment insertion and deletion.

**terminal response mode.** The type of response mode that suspends all input operations from the terminal until the application program has generated the output message. See line response mode.

**terminal security.** The use of system definition macros and security maintenance utility control statements to authorize a particular logical or physical terminal to issue some or all of the operator commands and to send or receive some or all of the currently defined transactions.

**termination phase.** The XRF phase in which an IMS shuts down.

**test mode.** The mode that causes any input message entered into a terminal under test to be returned to the test terminal, with error analysis procedures bypassed.

**thread.** A link between an IMS subsystem and a DB2 subsystem. Resources in the external DB2 subsystem are allocated to that link or thread.

**TM.** The IMS Transaction Manager.

**Tmember.** The name of a client that connects to an OTMA group.

**TMS.** See Transport Manager Subsystem.

**Tpipe.** See transaction pipe (Tpipe).

**TP PCB.** See telecommunication-program program communication block.

**track recovery.** An option for recovery from permanent read/write errors on VSAM data sets. Track recovery permits database reconstruction at the track level rather than the data set level.
| tracked log. | In an RSR environment, the system log data set on the tracking IMS to which the log records received from the active IMS are written. |
| tracker. | See tracking IMS. |
| tracker’s log. | In an RSR environment, the online log data set for the tracking IMS’s log. |
| tracking IMS. | In an RSR environment, an IMS that tracks the activities of active IMSs to provide disaster recovery support. A tracking IMS is usually geographically remote from the active IMSs. See also active IMS. |
| tracking phase. | The XRF phase during which the active IMS processes the IMS workload and the alternate IMS monitors the active IMS activities. The alternate IMS uses surveillance to check the active IMS for signs of failure. |
| tracking subsystem. | See tracking IMS. |
| transaction. | A specific set of input data that triggers the execution of a specific process or job. A transaction is a message destined for an application program. |
| transaction code. | A 1- to 8-character alphameric code that invokes an IMS message processing program. |
| transaction command security. | The use of system definition macros and security maintenance utility control statements to permit specific application programs to issue some of the IMS operator commands. |
| transaction load balancing. | An optional facility that enables a transaction to be scheduled into more than one message, or batch message, region at the same time. |
| transaction-oriented BMP. | A BMP that performs transaction-type processing in a batch environment. A transaction-oriented BMP gets its input from the IMS message queues and may also use the message queues for output. See also batch-oriented BMP. |
| transaction pipe (Tpipe). | A named IMS process management resource. An OTMA client must specify this resource when submitting a transaction to IMS. A Tpipe is analogous to an LTERM. |
| transaction processing system. | An IMS in a multisystem environment that accepts transactions from the front-end system, calls application programs for transaction processing, and routes all replies back to the front-end system for response to the terminal. See also balanced system, front-end system, and pseudo-front-end system. |
| Transport Manager Subsystem. | In an RSR environment, the subsystem that provides communication services to IMS components. |
| TSO SPOC. | Time Share Option (TSO) Single Point of Control (SPOC). An IBM-supplied application from which a user can manage operations of all IMS systems within an IMSplex. |
| twin segments. | In a database, all child segments of the same segment type that have a particular instance of the same parent segment type. Root segments are also considered twins to each other. See also sibling segments. |
| two-phase commit. | A two-step process by which recoverable resources in an IMS and an external subsystem are committed. During the first step, the subsystems are polled to ensure that they are ready to commit. If all subsystems respond positively, they are then told to execute commit processing. |

**U**

UCF. See utility control facility.

unit of recovery (UOR). Work done on a protected resource between one sync point and the next.

unit of work (UOW). (1) For IMS DB, all of the input and output messages associated with a transaction. (2) For IMS TM, a single IMS message. (3) For CQS, a client-defined grouping of data objects.

unplanned remote takeover. In an RSR environment, a remote takeover initiated by the tracking IMS to transfer the workload from the active IMS to the tracking IMS at the remote site without waiting for an orderly shutdown of the active IMS.

unqualified call. A DL/I call that does not contain a segment search argument.
unqualified segment search argument (SSA). An SSA that contains only a segment name that specifies the segment type to be accessed.

unrecoverable transaction. See nonrecoverable transaction.

UOR. See unit of recovery.

UOW. See unit of work.

update access. This access intent establishes the intent of an application to modify the database. Other applications may read the database if they do not need to be protected from the updater's incomplete changes.

update-only recovery. A facility that allows the user to define inquiry transactions as unrecoverable.

update transaction. A transaction in the DC feature system with capabilities to update a database. Update transactions are recoverable.

user. Either a person signed onto a terminal or an ISC subpool. A user is represented by a user structure. See also user structure.

user descriptor. There are three types of user descriptors: installation-created, DFSUSER, and node user. DFSUSER and node user descriptors are created from system definition options; installation-created descriptors are created in the installation process.

user message table. A table of messages generated by the user and used by certain user-written edit routines.

user structure. Represents a user in IMS. The user structure is made up of an SPQB control block and one or more CNT control blocks (one for each LTERM). If a user is in an IMS conversational mode, the user structure could contain one or more CCBs (one per conversation).

utility control facility (UCF). An optional facility that provides a method of performing most database utility and maintenance operations in preparation for recovery and reorganization.

V

version. An eight-byte field in the list entry controls that contains the data's version. RM uses the version to indicate the number of times the resource has been updated. When the resource is created, its version is set to one. When the resource is updated, its version is incremented by one.

VGR. See VTAM Generic Resources.

VGR affinity. For VTAM Generic Resources, an association, managed by VTAM or IMS, that a VTAM logical unit has with a specific IMS in a generic resource group.

video terminal paging. A facility that allows the application programmer to send multiple screens of information to a display device, which may then be viewed by the terminal operator either in or out of sequence and as many times as desired.

viewport. That portion of a partition defined for display of data to the operator. The viewport has a predefined size and position on the screen and is related to a presentation space through a specified window.

Virtual Storage Option. An option for DEDB areas that maps an area into a data space or a coupling facility structure, when the area is opened. The share level of the database determines which is used. Any VSO area CI that has been loaded into a data space is subsequently read from the data space rather than from DASD.

VSO. See Virtual Storage Option.

VTAM application name. The name an installation gives to an IMS subsystem to identify the IMS to VTAM.

VTAM Generic Resources (VGR). IMS VGR, together with VTAM V4R2, enable VTAM to automatically distribute terminal sessions among a cooperative set of IMS systems known as a generic resource group.

VTAM Terminal Block (VTCB). This IMS control block represents a VTAM terminal, both static and dynamic. The VTCB contains the following IMS control blocks and data areas: CLB, CTB, CRB, CIB, DDM workarea, and CTT.
VTB. See VTAM Terminal Block.

W

Warm start. See normal restart.

Write-ahead data set (WADS). A data set containing log records that reflect completed operations and are not yet written to an online log data set.

X

XRF. See Extended Recovery Facility.

XRF-capable IMS subsystem. An IMS defined so that it can work with an alternate subsystem.

XRF complex. The CPCs and the licensed programs in the active and alternate sites that provide XRF for IMS users.

XRF takeover. See takeover.
Index

Special characters

!token
   IMSQUERY function APDB–274, APTM–330
   STORAGE command APDB–272, APTM–328

//DFSSTAT report
   OSAM-Buffer-Pool Report URS–441
   PST-Accounting Report URS–439
   Sequential-Buffering-Detail Report URS–445
   Sequential-Buffering-Summary Report URS–443
   Specifying URS–439
   Types of Reports URS–439
   VSAM-Buffer-Pool report URS–440

//DFSSTAT reports OG–99
/ACTIVATE command OG–109
/ACTIVATE command
   description CR–93
   environments CR–93
   examples CR–93
   syntax diagram CR–93

/ALLOCATE command
   description CR–95
   environments CR–95
   syntax diagram CR–95

/ASSIGN command
   cold starting ISC sessions ATM–304
   description CR–99
   environments CR–98
   ETO OG–109
   ETO limitations ATM–180
   examples CR–108
   restriction CR–100
   syntax diagram CR–97
   terminals OG–108

/BROADCAST command
   description CR–114
   environments CR–113
   examples CR–115
   syntax diagram CR–113

/CANCEL command AS–287
/CANCEL command
   description CR–119
   environments CR–119
   example CR–119
   syntax diagram CR–119

/CHANGE command AS–74, OG–110
/CHANGE command
   description CR–123
   environments CR–122
   examples CR–131
   syntax diagram CR–121

/CHANGE command, initiating an ISC session ATM–304
/CHANGE SURVEILLANCE command AS–259

/CHECKPOINT command AS–27
/CHECKPOINT command
   description CR–138
   DUMPQ OG–141

/CHECKPOINT command (continued)
   environments CR–137
   examples CR–141
   FREEZE OG–140
   PURGE OG–141
   QUIESCE OG–142
   shutdown description CR–137
   simple description CR–137
   SNAPQ OG–237
   statistics description CR–137
   using OG–139

/CK operand ADB–194
/CLSDST command OG–142
/CLSDST command
   description CR–144
   environments CR–143
   example CR–145
   syntax diagram CR–143

/COMPT command OG–108
/COMPT command
   description CR–148
   environments CR–147
   examples CR–148
   syntax diagram CR–147

/CQCHRPT command
   description CR–151
   environments CR–151
   examples CR–152
   syntax diagram CR–151

/CQUERY command
   description CR–153
   environments CR–153
   examples CR–154
   STATISTICS keyword CR–153
   STRUCTURE keyword CR–153
   syntax diagram CR–153

/CQSET command
   description CR–155
   environments CR–155
   examples CR–156
   syntax diagram CR–155

/DBD AREA command ADB–265
/DBD DATABASE
   HALDB CR–805

/DBDUMP command DBRC–25, OG–109
/DBDUMP command
   description CR–157
   environments CR–157
   examples CR–159
   syntax diagram CR–157

/DBR command
   See /DBRECOVERY

/DBR command (/DBRECOVERY command) ADB–417
/DBR DATABASE
   HALDB CR–805
/DBR.
See /DBRECOVERY
/DBRECOVERY ADB–414
/DBRECOVERY command ADB–414
/DBRECOVERY command description CR–161
effects OG–275
environments CR–161
examples CR–165
HALDB OG–274
stopping database access OG–109
syntax diagram CR–161
/DELETE command
description CR–170
environments CR–169
examples CR–170
syntax diagram CR–169
/DEQUEUE command description CR–182
environments CR–181
examples CR–186
syntax diagram CR–181
/DIS DB PART2 Command
HALDB CR–290
/DIS DB PARTMAST Command
HALDB CR–290
/DISPLAY command output OTMA–91
TMEMBER command OTMA–45
TRANSACTION command OTMA–2
/DISPLAY ACTIVE command
time examples CR–274
/DISPLAY AFFINITY command
time examples CR–278
/DISPLAY AOITOKEN command
time examples CR–278
/DISPLAY APPC command
time examples CR–278
/DISPLAY AREA command
EEQECT keyword CR–212
MADSIO keyword CR–211
/DISPLAY command ACTIVE keyword
CLASS CR–208
DC CR–205
description CR–204
JOBNAME CR–206
OTMA GROUP CR–205
PROGRAM CR–207
REGID CR–206
REGION CR–205
STATUS CR–206, CR–207
TRANSACTION/STEP CR–207
TYPE CR–206
VTAM ACB CR–205
/DISPLAY command (continued)
AFFINITY keyword
description CR–208
AOITOKEN keyword
description CR–209
APPC keyword
description CR–209
AREA keyword
description CR–210
ASSIGNMENT keyword
description CR–213
CCTL keyword
description CR–214
CMD-generated CG–451
CONV OG–110
CONVERSATION keyword
description CR–215
CPLOG keyword
description CR–215
CQS keyword
description CR–215
DATABASE keyword
description CR–216
DATABASE keyword with BKERR
description CR–217
DBD keyword
description CR–218
description CR–204
DESCRIPTOR keyword
description CR–218
environments CR–202
FDR keyword
description CR–219
FPVIRTUAL keyword
description CR–219
HALDB OG–274
HSB keyword
description CR–220
HSSP keyword
description CR–221
LINE keyword
description CR–222
LINK keyword
description CR–223
LTERM keyword
description CR–223
LUNAME INPUT keyword
description CR–223
EMHQ CR–224
QCNT CR–224
LUNAME INPUT keyword
description CR–225
LUNAME keyword
description CR–224
LUNAME keyword
description CR–224
LUNAME OUTPUT keyword
description CR–225
LUNAME TPNAME keyword
description CR–225
MASTER keyword
description CR–226
MODIFY OG–119
MODIFY keyword
description CR–226
/EXIT command ATM–37, ATM–318, OTMA–41
/EXIT command
description CR–359
environments CR–359
examples CR–360
syntax diagram CR–359
/FOR IVTNO command IVV–133, IVV–162
/FORMAT command APTM–176, APTM–202, APTM–243
/FORMAT command
description CR–363
environments CR–363
example CR–364
syntax diagram CR–363
/GENJCL command, generating JCL DBRC–6
/HOLD command
description CR–365
environments CR–365
example CR–365
syntax diagram CR–365
/IAM command
description CR–367
environments CR–367
examples CR–368
syntax diagram CR–367
/IDLE command ATM–227, OG–109
/IDLE command
description CR–369
environments CR–369
examples CR–371
syntax diagram CR–369
/LOCK command
description CR–399
environments CR–399
examples CR–401
syntax diagram CR–399
/LOCK DATABASE
HALDB CR–805
/LOG command
description CR–403
environments CR–403
example CR–403
syntax diagram CR–403
/LOGON APPLID command AS–261
/LOOPTEST command
description CR–405
environments CR–405
example CR–405
syntax diagram CR–405
/MODIFY
invalid for RACF data spaces AS–128
/MODIFY command AS–261, AS–274, OG–119
/MODIFY command
description CR–407
environments CR–407
examples CR–411
PREPARE OG–127
syntax diagram CR–407
/MODIFY COMMIT command APTM–202, AS–315
/MODIFY PREPARE command APTM–202, AS–315
/MONITOR command
description CR–415
environments CR–415
example CR–415
syntax diagram CR–415
/MSASSIGN command ATM–196, ATM–228, OG–110
/MSASSIGN command
description CR–417
environments CR–417
examples CR–418
syntax diagram CR–417
/MSVERIFY command
error responses ATM–225
/MSVERIFY command ATM–224, ATM–225, OG–110
/MSVERIFY command
description CR–421
dynamic validation ATM–224
environments CR–421
examples CR–421
syntax diagram CR–421
/NRE command ADB–274, IVV–53
/NRESTART
INIT.DB DBRC–228
restart after IMS failure DBRC–38
/NRESTART command
cold start OG–88
description CR–427
environments CR–427
examples CR–432
message queue recovery OG–103
syntax diagrams CR–425
warm start OG–79, OG–89
/OPNDST command ATM–61, ATM–171, ATM–180, IVV–75
/OPNDST command
description CR–438
environments CR–437
examples CR–440
syntax diagram CR–437
/PSTOP command
description CR–444
environments CR–444
examples CR–446
syntax diagram CR–443
/PSTOP LINK command ATM–227
/PURGE command
description CR–452
environments CR–451
examples CR–453
syntax diagram CR–451
/QUIESCE command
description CR–507
environments CR–507
example CR–508
syntax diagram CR–507
/RCLSDST command
description CR–509
environments CR–509
example CR–510
syntax diagram CR–509
/RECOVER ADD command
- environments CR–517
- examples CR–527

/RECOVER command
- ADD keyword CR–518
- ADD keyword
  - RCVTOKEN CR–519
  - USEAREA CR–519
- REMOVE keyword CR–521
- REMOVE keyword
  - usage CR–521
- START
  - ERRORABORT keyword CR–524
  - START keyword CR–523
- STOP keyword CR–525
- STOP keyword
  - syntax diagram CR–525
  - usage CR–525
- TERMINATE keyword CR–527
- TERMINATE keyword usage CR–527

/RECOVER REMOVE command
- examples CR–528

/RECOVER START command
- examples CR–529

/RECOVER STOP command
- examples CR–531

/RELEASE command
- description CR–533
- environments CR–533
- example CR–533
- syntax diagram CR–533

/REPRO
- using for backup DBRC–58

/REPRO command
- restoring RECONs DBRC–62

/RESET command APTM–290

/RESET command
- description CR–535
- environments CR–535
- example CR–535
- syntax diagram CR–535

/RMCHANGE command
- description CR–537

/RMDELETE command
- description CR–537

/RMxxxxxx command
- DBRC modifiers CR–538
- description CR–537
- environments CR–537
- examples CR–539
- LTERM keyword CR–538
- parameters passed to DBRC CR–539
- syntax diagram CR–537

/RMxxxxxx commands DBRC–98

/RSTART command
- description CR–546
- environments CR–545
- examples CR–548
- syntax diagram CR–545

/RSTART LINK command ATM–226, ATM–228

/RTAKEOVER command
- description CR–551

/SECURE command
- description CR–555
- environments CR–555
- examples CR–556
- syntax diagram CR–555

/SECURE OTMA NONE command OTMA–47

/SET command APTM–183

/SET command
- description CR–559
- environments CR–559
- examples CR–560
- syntax diagram CR–559

/SIGN command
- description CR–563
- environments CR–563
- examples CR–566
- syntax diagram CR–563

/SIGN command for ETO STSN devices ATM–190

/SIGN ON/OFF Security exit routine AS–140

/SMCOPY command
- description CR–569
- environments CR–569
- example CR–570
- syntax diagram CR–569

/SSR command CG–504, ISDT–458

/SSR command
- description CR–571
- environments CR–571
- example CR–571
- syntax format CR–571

/STA.

See /START

/START AREA
- command ADB–417, ADB–419
- usage ADB–419, ADB–420
* (asterisk)

BPE trace table type BPE–6
CQS trace table type BPE–8
OM trace table type BPE–9
RM trace table type BPE–9
SCI trace table type BPE–10
*mapname APDB–268, APDB–269, APTM–324, APTM–325

%ALLDSSN keyword DBRC–329
%ALLSEL keyword DBRC–329
%ALLTIME keyword DBRC–329
%ALLUSID keyword DBRC–329
%CADSN keyword DBRC–328
%CAFSEQ keyword DBRC–328
%CALGTM keyword DBRC–328
%CAODSN keyword DBRC–320
%CASEL keyword DBRC–328
%CATIME keyword DBRC–328
%CAUNIT keyword DBRC–328
%CAVCNT keyword DBRC–328
%CNTR keyword
description DBRC–333
%COPIES keyword DBRC–358
%DALTIME keyword DBRC–329
%DATE keyword
description DBRC–333
%DATE7 keyword
description DBRC–333
%DBADSAV keyword DBRC–330
%DBADSN keyword DBRC–330
%DBDDN keyword DBRC–329, DBRC–330
%DBDSN keyword DBRC–330
%DBDSSNRV keyword DBRC–330
%DBDSSEL keyword DBRC–330
%DBNAME keyword DBRC–329, DBRC–330
%DBTYPE keyword DBRC–330
%DBUSID keyword DBRC–330
%DDNAME keyword DBRC–317
%DELETE keyword DBRC–315, DBRC–318
%ENDDEL keyword DBRC–315, DBRC–318
%ENDESEL keyword DBRC–315, DBRC–316
%GRPINIDX keyword
description DBRC–333
%iC2DSN keyword DBRC–327
%iC2FSEQ keyword DBRC–327
%iC2SEL keyword DBRC–327
%iC2UNIT keyword DBRC–327
%iC2VCNT keyword DBRC–327
%iC2VOLS keyword DBRC–327
%iCCAT keyword DBRC–327
%iCDSN keyword DBRC–327
%iCSDS2 keyword DBRC–358
%iCSDSN3 keyword DBRC–358
%iCSDSN4 keyword DBRC–358
%iCFSEQ keyword DBRC–327
%iCSEL keyword DBRC–327
%iCTOP keyword DBRC–327
%iCTIME keyword DBRC–327
%iCTYPE keyword DBRC–327
%iCUNIT keyword DBRC–327
%ICUNIT2 keyword DBRC–358
%ICUNIT3 keyword DBRC–358
%ICUNIT4 keyword DBRC–358
%ICUSID keyword DBRC–327
%ICVCNT keyword DBRC–327
%ICVCNT2 keyword DBRC–358
%ICVCNT3 keyword DBRC–358
%ICVCNT4 keyword DBRC–358
%ICVOLS keyword DBRC–327
%ICVOLS2 keyword DBRC–358
%ICVOLS3 keyword DBRC–358
%ICVOLS4 keyword DBRC–358
%LOGDSN keyword DBRC–325
%LOGETIM keyword DBRC–326
%LOGFGRID keyword DBRC–326
%LOGFSEQ keyword DBRC–326
%LOGFLRID keyword DBRC–326
%LOGMERG keyword DBRC–326
%LOGONL keyword DBRC–326
%LOGRMT keyword DBRC–326
%LOGSEL keyword DBRC–326
%LOGSTIM keyword DBRC–326
%LOGUNIT keyword DBRC–326
%LOGVOLS keyword DBRC–326
%OLDCTIM keyword DBRC–322
%OLDFGRID keyword DBRC–322
%OLDLRID keyword DBRC–322
%OLDOTIM keyword DBRC–322
%OLDSDNN keyword DBRC–322
%OLDSDSN keyword DBRC–322
%OLDSEL keyword DBRC–322
%OLDSTYP keyword DBRC–322
%PLGTIME keyword DBRC–329
%RCNDSN1 keyword
description DBRC–332
%RCNDSN2 keyword
description DBRC–332
%RCNDSN3 keyword
description DBRC–332
%SELECT keyword DBRC–323
%SELECT keyword specifying the record types DBRC–317
specifying the syntax DBRC–321, DBRC–330
%SET MEMBER keyword DBRC–315, DBRC–320
%SET TIMEFMT keyword DBRC–315, DBRC–320
%SLDCHKT keyword DBRC–324
%SLDETIM keyword DBRC–323
%SLDFRID keyword DBRC–324
%SLDFSEQ keyword DBRC–323
%SLDLRID keyword DBRC–324
%SLDSTM keyword DBRC–324
%SLDSTYP keyword DBRC–323
%SSID keyword DBRC–314
%STPNO keyword
description DBRC–333
%TIME keyword
  as a simple keyword DBRC–314
  description DBRC–333
&DPN= operand (DIV statement), specifying APTM–298

Numerics
119ABEND code OTMA–20
12-byte time stamp, field in I/O PCB APDB–90,
  APTM–49
2 Edit exit routine (DFSLUEE0).
  See LU 6.2
2305 device ISDT–84, ISDT–118
2740 terminal
  fast path terminal ISDT–141
  LINE macro statement, specifying ISDT–110
  LINEGRP macro statement, specifying ISDT–113
  master terminal devices, choosing ISDT–23
  system definition example ISDT–465, ISDT–472,
    ISDT–479
  TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
2741 terminal
  LINEGRP macro statement, specifying ISDT–113
  system definition example ISDT–465, ISDT–473,
    ISDT–479
  TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
274X
  defining to operate with MFS APTM–177
  entering and exiting formatted mode APTM–181,
    APTM–182
  operating with MFS
    FTAbs APTM–193
    input modes APTM–192
2780 terminal
  LINEGRP macro statement, specifying ISDT–113
  TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
2848 control unit ISDT–77
2972 control unit ISDT–77
2972/2980 Input edit routine (DFS29800)
  attributes CG–441
  data format on entry CG–442
  description CG–441
  example CG–441
  IMS environments CG–441
  including the routine CG–441
  interfaces CG–442
  link editing CG–441
  naming convention CG–441
  registers
    contents on entry CG–442
    contents on exit CG–442
  required functions CG–441
  sample routine location CG–441
  system definition requirements CG–441
  using callable services CG–441
2972/2980 Input Edit Routine (DFS29800)
  IMS callable services CG–441
  IMS environments CG–441
  including the routine CG–441
  link-editing CG–441
  naming convention CG–441
  sample routine location CG–441
3180
  in partitioned format mode
    clearing the display APTM–243
    paging APTM–243
    restrictions APTM–243
    scrolling APTM–243
3270 copy command ATM–89
3270 error recovery
  BTAM DDM DGR–305
  sense-status message DGR–305
3270 Information Display System OG–347
3270 Information Display System
  compatibility with 5550 APTM–360
  copy function
    bit 4 of SCA, byte 1 APTM–277
    description APTM–235
    remote terminals URDBTM–496
  default literal input message fields APTM–191
  defining IMS TM password APTM–192
  defining system message field APTM–219
  display screen CR–3
  entering and exiting formatted mode APTM–182
  increasing performance APTM–265
  master terminal format
    display area APTM–245
    literals defined for PF keys APTM–245
    MFS bypass CR–28
    multiple physical page input APTM–198
    multisegment command input
      description CR–7
      example CR–8
    PA (program access) key, control functions
      APTM–235
    printed page format control APTM–220
    printer CR–3
    screen formatting APTM–259
    selector pen
      effect on input fields APTM–272
      for control functions APTM–235
      pen detect byte URDBTM–503
      specifying URDBTM–468, URDBTM–497
      specifying attributes URDBTM–451
3270 operator identification card reader
  application program device-dependent information
    APTM–273
  CARD= operand (DEV statement) URDBTM–466
  CARD= operand (DIV statement) URDBTM–468
  defining IMS TM password APTM–192
  system message field APTM–220
3270 terminal
  FORMAT command CR–363
  LINE macro statement, specifying ISDT–110
  LINEGRP macro statement, specifying ISDT–113
  master terminal devices, choosing ISDT–23
  TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
3270P Printer
  defining to operate with MFS APTM–177
  printed page format control APTM–222
3271 control unit ISDT–77
3275 terminal
  COMPONENT keyword CR–102
3275 terminal (continued)
  LINE macro statement, specifying ISDT–110
  LINEGRP macro statement, specifying ISDT–113
3275/3277 Display Station
  physical paging APTM–207
  using default formats with APTM–257
3276 Control Unit/Display Station
  physical paging APTM–207
  using default formats with APTM–257
3278 Display Station
  compatibility with 5550 APTM–360
  physical paging APTM–207
  using default formats with APTM–257
3279 Display Station, default formats APTM–257
3284 Model 3 Printer OG–360
3290 Display Panel APTM–177
3290 Display Panel
  defining to operate with MFS APTM–177
  in partitioned format mode APTM–219
  in standard format mode APTM–262
  screen formatting APTM–261
3290 Information Panel OG–369
33/35 teletypewriter OG–362
3340 device ISDT–117
3350 device ISDT–117
3375 device ISDT–117
3390 device ISDT–117
3600 terminal, supported as Finance or SLU P ATM–434
3600 work station ISDT–140
3601 workstation, defining to operate with MFS
  APTM–177
3650 system, supported as SLU P ATM–434
3770 Data Communication System
  defining to operate with MFS APTM–177
  entering and exiting formatted mode APTM–181
  printed page format control APTM–221
3770 terminal
  COMPONENT keyword CR–102
3790 Communication System
  defining to operate with MFS APTM–177
  operating with MFS
  FTABs APTM–193
  input modes APTM–192
37x5 Communication Controllers
  as ISC link between active and alternate IMS
  AS–259
  gateway considerations AS–300
  requirement for XRF AS–256
3814 switching unit AS–314
4700 terminals, supported as Finance or SLU P ATM–434
4701 Transaction Input edit routine (DFS36010)
  naming convention CG–443
  registers
    contents on entry CG–443
    contents on exit CG–443
  sample routine location CG–443
  using callable services CG–443
4701 Transaction Input Edit Routine (DFS36010)
  IMS callable services CG–443
  IMS environments CG–443
  including the routine CG–443
  link-editing CG–443
  naming convention CG–443
  sample routine location CG–443
4730 Personal Banking Machine, connecting in the XRF
  environment ATM–440
5550 Family (as 3270) APTM–213
5550 Family (as 3270)
  compatibility with other devices APTM–360
  field outlining URDBTM–502
  using DBCS fields APTM–213
  using DBCS/EBCDIC fields APTM–213
6670 Printer, defining to operate with MFS APTM–177
6701-MRQB records (command for obtaining) DGR–289
6701-MRQE diagnostic records
  control blocks and mapping macros DGR–288
  description DGR–287
  sample JCL for printing DGR–288
67D0 log record DGR–123, DGR–346, DGR–347
  8-blanks (null) APDB–148
8100 system, supported as SLU P ATM–434

A
abbreviation list DGR–571
ABDUMP keyword
  CHECKPOINT command CR–138
  definition CR–47
  STOP command CR–607
  SWITCH command CR–630
abend
  CICS ATM–573
  IMS ATM–573
  MSC conversations ATM–217
abend codes BPE–2
abend codes
  pseudo- APDG–45
  S201 APDG–136
  U0069 APDG–136
  U0777 APDG–47
  U119 APDG–127
  U2468 APDG–39
  U2479 APDG–39
  U261 APDG–136
  U3301 APDG–43
  U3303 APDG–39
  U476 APDG–136
  U711 APDG–97, APDG–128

Index  47
ABEND control statement
  Database Prefix Update utility (DFSURGP0)
  URDBTM–134
abend dump, cause DGR–222
abend formatting IIV–71
abend formatting module
  DFSAFMD0 IIV–71
abend formatting routine
  DFSAFMD0 IIV–68
ABEND parameter
  Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0)
  URDBTM–110
  HISAM Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURRL0)
  URDBTM–38
  HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0)
  URDBTM–27
abend processing for Spool API support DGR–346
abend statement APDB–305, APTM–375
ABEND statement
  Batch Backout utility (DFSBBO00) URDBTM–256
  Database Recovery utility (DFSURDB0)
  URDBTM–243
abend U3303
  resetting stopped PSBs AS–67
  resetting stopped transactions AS–67
abend, avoiding an APCICS–69
ABEND= statement
  Database Scan utility (DFSURGS0) URDBTM–119
ABENDMSG statement
  Batch Backout utility (DFSBBO00) URDBTM–256
ABENDOFF parameter
  Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0)
  URDBTM–110
  HISAM Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURRL0)
  URDBTM–38
  HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0)
  URDBTM–27
abends
  U3303
    stopping transactions and PSBs after ten AS–65
abends in user exit routines BPE–62
ABENDU1026
  Fast Path problem analysis
  description DGR–353
  procedure DGR–353
ABENDUxxxx keyword procedure DGR–21
ABENDxxx keyword procedure DGR–20
ABNORMAL parameter commands
  CHANGE.SUBSYS DBRC–161
  NOTIFY.SUBSYS DBRC–303
abnormal save area set DGR–33
abnormal termination APCICS–8, AS–29
abnormal termination in logical relationships ADB–461, ADB–463
abnormal termination or restart, client processing after CQS–173
Abort Continue exit routine CG–517
ABORT keyword
  definition CR–47
  MODIFY Command CR–408
ABTTERM request CG–574

ACB (application control block)
  ACBLIB library URS–156
  building by IMS ADB–299
  definition URS–155
  maintenance utility (DFSUACB0) ADB–300
ACB Maintenance utility (DFSRRRC0)
  ACBGGEN procedure, process URS–157
  control statements
    BUILD URS–160
    BUILD DBD URS–161
    DELETE URS–160
    format URS–160
    requirements URS–159
  description URS–156
  DFSACBCP control statement URS–159
  examples URS–163
  IMS.ACBLIB URS–156
  input URS–156
  JCL URS–157
  output URS–156
  return codes URS–163
ACB passwords AS–302
ACBGGEN IIV–11
ACBGGEN (Application Control Block Generation) utility
  ADB–417, ADB–418, ADB–419
ACBGGEN description ADB–299
ACBGGEN procedure URS–157
ACBGGEN procedure
  DD statements URS–158
  EXEC statement URS–158
ACBGGEN utility, PSB pools and ISDT–5, ISDT–67
ACBLIB IIV–62
ACBLIB
  online change procedure ADB–417, ADB–418, ADB–419
ACBLIB data set URS–197
ACBLIB data set
  ACB Maintenance utility URS–156
ACBLIB library ADB–299, URS–197
ACBLIB library
  switching to inactive libraries
    MODIFY command CR–407
ACCEPT command
  description APCICS–69
  examples APCICS–69
  format APCICS–69
  options APCICS–69
  usage APCICS–69
access control environment element OTMA–148
ACCESS keyword
  definition CR–48
  START command CR–581, CR–584
access management, sharing data AS–359
access method services (AMS) DBRC–58, DBRC–61
access methods
  BSAM (Basic Sequential Access Method) ADB–473
  changing ADB–354
  DEDB APDG–71
  description APDG–67
  GSAM APDG–74
  HDAM APDG–69
access methods (continued)
HIDAM APDG–70
HISAM APDG–73
HSAM APDG–72
IMS access methods ADB–11, ADB–60
introduction ADB–11
MSDB APDG–71
MVS access methods
used by HISAM ADB–65
OS/390 access methods ADB–11
OS/390 access methods
used by HD ADB–78
used by HSAM ADB–61
OSAM (Overflow Sequential Access Method)
ADB–473
OSAM (overflow sequential access methods)
used by HD ADB–90
PHDAM APDG–67, APDG–69
PHIDAM APDG–67, APDG–70
OSAM (Queued Sequential Access Method)
ADB–473
SHISAM APDG–74
SHSAM APDG–74
access of
IMS databases through MVS APDG–74
segments through different paths APDG–80
ACCESS= parameter
DBD statement URS–22
accessing
GSAM databases APDB–213
accessing control blocks CG–7
accessing real storage
register save conventions CG–8
accessing segments
HDAM (Hierarchical Direct Access Method) ADB–99
HIDAM (Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method)
ADB–99
HISAM (Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access
Method) ADB–68
HSAM (Hierarchical Sequential Access Method)
ADB–63
PHDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access
Method) ADB–99
PHIDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Direct
Access Method) ADB–99
ACEE
See access control environment element
ACF/VTAM
dynamic nodes
LOCK NODE command CR–400
ACK option
Finance Communication System ATM–487, ATM–488
SLU P ATM–487, ATM–488
acronym list DGR–571
action statement
MSDB Maintenance utility (DBFDBMA0)
URDBTM–149
ACTIVATE (/ACTIVATE) command OG–109
ACTIVATE command
description CR–93
environments CR–93
ACTIVATE command (continued)
examples CR–93
LINK keyword CR–93
NODE keyword CR–93
syntax diagram CR–93
active and inactive libraries IIV–13
active IMS AS–248
active IMS
bringing up AS–266
cycle of processing AS–280
definition AS–319
initializing entry in USERVAR table AS–262
procedures at takeover AS–259, AS–272
processing during tracking phase AS–250, AS–269
processing of AS–259
surveillance signals, sending AS–257, AS–270
tracking by alternate IMS AS–258, AS–269
active IMS subsystem
processing of AS–260
ACTIVE keyword
/DISPLAY command
CLASS CR–208
DC CR–205
JOBNAME CR–206
OTMA GROUP CR–205
PROGRAM CR–207
REGID CR–206
REGION CR–205
STATUS CR–206, CR–207
TRANSACTION/STEP CR–207
TYPE CR–206
VTAM ACB CR–205
BROADCAST command CR–114
definition CR–48
DISPLAY command
description CR–204
examples CR–277
SWITCH command CR–630
SWITCH command CR–630
active libraries AS–81
ACTIVE parameter
CHANGE.DB command DBRC–115
active region messages
active region report fields URS–240
Log Recovery utility (DFSULTR0) URS–240
active save set
finding during DC analysis DGR–304
ACTIVE statement
Batch Backout utility (DFSBBO00) URDBTM–256
active system
master terminal display screen CR–632
status CR–204
ACTVPID= operand (DPAGE statement)
cursor positioning (3290 only) APTM–219
specifying APTM–306, URDBTM–486
use APTM–242
AD/Cycle C/370 APDB–113
ADD parameter
CHANGE.CAGRP command DBRC–107
add programs, use in loading a database ADB–315
ADDB parameter
CHANGE.DBDSGRP command DBRC–123
ADDEQE parameter
CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–117
adding
a segment sequentially APCICS–71
segments to a database APCICS–53
adding information to the RECON
allocation or deallocatation DBRC–267
backout records DBRC–269
Database Change Accumulation utility DBRC–270
database data set or area recovery DBRC–287
database reorganization DBRC–290
image copy DBRC–272
nonstandard image copy data sets DBRC–304
primary online log data set DBRC–275
primary recovery log data set DBRC–279
primary system log data set DBRC–283
secondary online log data set DBRC–293
secondary recovery log data set DBRC–295
secondary system log data set DBRC–299
subsystem DBRC–302
tracking subsystem log data set DBRC–283
adding segments to change DEDBs ADB–422
ADDN parameter commands
CHANGE.ADS DBRC–102
DELETE.ADS DBRC–165
INIT.ADS DBRC–224
NOTIFY.RECOV DBRC–288
ADDNNEW parameter
CHANGE.ADS command DBRC–102
ADDRECOV parameter
CHANGE.DBDSSGRP command DBRC–123
address space
dispatching priority AS–176
relative importance AS–176
workload management AS–176
address spaces
customizing BPE–43
monitoring BPE–43
addressability to UIB, establishing APDB–99
addressing environments APDB–256, APDB–261,
APT–312, APTM–317
addressing mode (AMODE) APDB–115, APTM–59
ADDS keyword
/DISPLAY MODIFY command CR–228
ADFSCLST IIV–62
ADFSEXEC IIV–62
ADFSISRRC IIV–62
ADFSLOAD IIV–62
ADFSMAC IIV–62
ADFSMLIB IIV–62
ADFSPLIB IIV–62
ADFSRESL IIV–62
ADFSRTRM IIV–62
ADFSSSLIB IIV–62
ADFSSSRC IIV–62
ADFSSTLIB IIV–62
adjustable character string APCICS–10
adjusting HDAM options ADB–239
adjusting P HDAM options ADB–239
administering
Fast Path OTMA–42
administering (continued)
IMS
conversations OTMA–41
restart processing OTMA–42
MSC OTMA–41
queue control facility OTMA–42
XRF OTMA–42
administration
application documentation AS–33, AS–36
CPI-C driven application programs
security considerations AS–127
database
task description ADB–3
design reviews AS–34
documenting the system AS–37
ETO ATM–145
Fast Path
defining the system AS–50
security considerations AS–127
including Fast Path in
DCCTL AS–49
initializing IMS system data sets AS–80
managing system definition AS–43
MFS ATM–76
monitoring AS–166, AS–173
MSC ATM–213
ODBA application programs
security considerations AS–127
online system design AS–41
overview AS–5, AS–6
performance management AS–192
related activities AS–6
responding to design changes AS–223
RSR complex AS–317, AS–353
system data sets, online change function AS–80
tailing IMS procedures AS–89
testing
MFS formats AS–169
operational procedures AS–165
setting up test system AS–164
tuning AS–191
ADS keyword
definition CR–48
STOP command CR–605
ADSC definition/mapping macro DGR–55
ADSN parameter commands
CHANGE.ADS DBRC–102
INIT.ADS DBRC–224
Advanced Function Printing (AFP) APDG–182
advanced program-to-program communication/IMS
See APPC (advanced program-to-program
communication)/IMS
affinity
definition ATM–18
in an MSC-IMSplex configuration ATM–240
management, bypassing ATM–126
AFFINITY keyword
definition CR–48
DISPLAY command
description CR–208
AFPDS and IMS Spool API APDG–181
aggregate functions JGR–83
aggregate functions
  AS JGR–83
  ASC JGR–83
  AVG JGR–83
  COUNT JGR–83
data types JGR–84
  DESC JGR–83
  GROUP BY JGR–83
  MAX JGR–83
  MIN JGR–83
  ORDER BY JGR–83
  renaming JGR–84
  result set column JGR–84
  result set type JGR–84
  SUM JGR–83
aggregates, data APDG–16
AGN (application group name) CG–215
AGN (application group name)
  as batch message region parameter AS–107
  as message region parameter AS–102
AIB (application interface block)
  language interfaces, relationship with APTM–12
AIB (application interface block) APTM–11
AIB (application interface block)
  address return APDB–110, APTM–56
AIB identifier (AIBID) APDB–94, APTM–51
AIB identifier (AIBID)
  in APSB call APDB–144
  in CHKP (basic) call APDB–145
  in CHKP (symbolic) call APDB–146
  in DPSB call APDB–147
  in GMSG call APDB–148
  in GSCD call APDB–150
  in ICMD call APDB–151
  in INIT call APDB–153
AIB Identifier (AIBID)
  in INQY call APDB–158
AIBOLEN (maximum output area length)
  in ICMD call APDB–151
  in INIT call APDB–153
AIB (application interface block) (continued)
AIBOAUSE (used output area length) APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBOAUSE (used output area length)
  in GMSG call APDB–149
AIBOLEN (maximum output area length)
  in ICMD call APDB–151
AIBREAASN (reason code) APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBRSN1 (resource address) APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBRSN1 (resource name) APDB–95, APTM–51
AIBRSN1 (resource name)
  in APSB call APDB–144
  in CHKP (basic) call APDB–145
  in CHKP (symbolic) call APDB–146
  in DPSB call APDB–147
  in GMSG call APDB–149
  in INQY call APDB–158
AIBRSN1 (resource name)
  in APSB call APDB–144
  in CHKP (basic) call APDB–145
  AIBSFUNC (function code) APDB–94, APTM–51
  AIBSFUNC (function code)
    in INQY call APDB–158
AIBTDLI APTM–12
  and program entry statement APDB–110, APTM–56
  defining storage APTM–53
  description APDB–107, APTM–11, APTM–53
  DFSAIB allocated length (AIBLEN) APDB–94, APTM–51
  fields APDB–94, APTM–50
  interface, REXX APDB–261, APTM–317
  mask APDB–94, APDB–95, APTM–51, APTM–52
  specifying APDB–94, APTM–50
  storage, defining APDB–108
  subroutine, setting APDB–271, APTM–327
AIB (Application Interface Block)
  AIB mask APCS–5
  restrictions APCS–5
  supported commands APCS–5
AIB interface APDG–6
AIB Interface
  DL/I calls
    Data Capture exit routine CG–45
AIB mask
  specifying APDB–94
AIBERRXT (reason code) APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBID (AIB identifier) field, AIB mask APDB–94, APTM–51
AIBLEN (DFSAIB allocated length) field, AIB mask APDB–94, APTM–51
AIBLEN (DFSAIB allocated length) field, AIB mask APDB–94, APTM–51
AIBOAUSE (used output area length) field, AIB mask APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBOAUSE (used output area length) field, AIB mask APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBOAUSE (used output area length) field, AIB mask APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBOAUSE (used output area length) field, AIB mask APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBREASN (reason code)
AIB mask, field APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBREASN (reason code) field, AIB mask APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBREASN Codes DGR–469
AIBREASN Codes
list DGR–472
Set by DFSQMRQ0 DGR–469
AIBREASN codes (Queue Control Facility/Message Requeuer)
description DGR–288
AIBRSA1 (resource address) field, AIB mask APDB–95, APTM–52
AIBRSNM1 (resource name) field, AIB mask APDB–95, APTM–51
AIBSFUNC (subfunction code) field, AIB mask APDB–94, APTM–51
AIBTDLI interface APDG–47
AIBTDLI interface
See AIB (application interface block)
aids
for test databases
Data Extraction, Processing and Restructuring System ADB–303
DL/I test program ADB–304
VisualAge Generator ADB–303
aids for debugging and diagnosing Spool API.
See debugging and diagnostic aids for Spool API
AJ status code APCICS–101
AL (available length) field ADB–92
ALDS definition/mapping macro DGR–55
ALL action request
panel IIV–112
specifying values for IIV–112
ALL parameter
/DISPLAY RECOVERY command CR–250
ALLOCATE command
description CR–95
evironments CR–95
LUNAME keyword CR–95
MODE keyword CR–95
syntax diagram CR–95
TPNAME keyword CR–96
Allocate PSB (APSB) call APDB–144
Allocate PSB (APSB) call
format APDB–144
parameters APDB–144
usage APDB–144
allocate PSB call
See APSB call
allocated output parameter CSL–196
allocating
OLDS
defining OLDS OG–45
SLDS OG–47
WADS OG–46
allocating a session, CICS ATM–552
allocating communication (MFS) pool space ISDT–7
allocating IMS system data sets
IMS.MATRIX AS–139
LGEN environment AS–48
message queue
data set AS–84
secondary allocation AS–85
OLDS AS–83
OSAM data set extents AS–86
RECON data set for DBRC AS–88
restart data set AS–86
spooled SYSOUT AS–87
allocation
changes to processing DBRC–18
database record DBRC–57
DBRC RECONs DBRC–41
IMS data sets ADB–312
log record DBRC–56
OSAM data sets ADB–312
allocation macro
See Dynamic Allocation Macro (DFSMDA)
allocation of data sets
considerations for
global resource serialization IIV–62
JES IIV–63
RACF IIV–63
XRF IIV–60
direct output data sets IIV–47
global resource serialization considerations IIV–62
JES considerations IIV–63
log data set.
See OLDS (online log data set)
message queue IIV–53
OLDS IIV–48
online change data sets IIV–55
OSAM data sets IIV–54
RACF considerations IIV–63
SLDS IIV–48
SPOOL SYSOUT IIV–58
VSAM data sets IIV–55
allocation of data sets (continued)
WADS II–48, II–51
with online change II–55
without online change II–57
XRF data set considerations
  dynamic allocation considerations II–62
  mandatory replication data sets II–60
  mandatory shared data sets II–60
  optional replication data sets II–61
  other data sets impacted by XRF II–62
requirements for placing IMS data sets II–60
allocation, dynamic APDG–47
allowed commands, EXEC DLI APCICS–34
ALLTIME parameter
  NOTIFY.ALLOC command DBRC–267
alpha character generation URDBTM–510
ALPHA statement (language utility) URDBTM–435,
URDBTM–510
alphanumeric character display ADB–293
altering structures CQS–38
alternate destinations, sending messages to APTM–128
alternate facility, CICS ATM–557
alternate IMS AS–248
alternate IMS
  active IMS, becoming AS–272
  allocating databases AS–257
  allocating IMS system log AS–268
  availability for non-XRF work AS–251
  closing backup sessions for class-1 terminals
    AS–257, AS–261
  considering a takeover AS–258, AS–271
  cycle of processing AS–280
  databases, allocating AS–257
  definition AS–319
  detecting problems in active IMS AS–257, AS–270
  executing new transactions at takeover AS–275
  loading MSDBs AS–268
  logging on to AS–264
  non-XRF workload
    at takeover AS–287
    available for AS–251
  opening backup sessions for class-1 terminals
    AS–257, AS–261
  opening databases AS–257
  performing I/O toleration AS–273
  planning workload on AS–251
  processing during a takeover AS–270, AS–278
  starting up AS–267
  synchronization with active IMS AS–268
  system log, allocating AS–268
  takeover, considering AS–258, AS–271
  third system as AS–279
  updating its control blocks AS–257, AS–269
alternate IMS subsystem
  executing new transactions at takeover AS–258
  logging on to AS–257
  processing during post-takeover phase AS–278
  processing during tracking phase AS–250, AS–269
  termination, at AS–280
  tracking the active IMS AS–258, AS–269
alternate PCB APCICS–31
alternate PCB
  defining in ISRT call APTM–127
  express
    See express alternate PCB.
  modifiable
    description APTM–127
    use APTM–128
    using the CHNG call with APTM–129
  response APTM–139
  SAMETRM=YES APTM–139
  sending messages to other terminals APTM–128
  to alternate destinations APTM–128
  types and uses APTM–50
  use with program-to-program message switching
    APTM–130
  using the PURG call with APTM–128
alternate PCB mask
  description APTM–50
  format APTM–50
alternate PCB statement ADB–297
alternate PCB statement, PSB generation URS–115
alternate PCB, secondary transaction ATM–30
alternate PCBs APDG–99
alternate response PCB
  message switches, use ATM–273
  modifying ATM–444
  use ATM–444
alternate response PCBs APDG–99
alternate system
  master terminal display screen CR–631
  alternate terminals, responding to APTM–128
  alternative versions of an online system AS–47
ALTRESP= parameter
  PCB TYPE=TP control statement URS–116
AM status code ADB–434, ADB–441, APCICS–101
AMODE APDB–115
AMODE(31) APCICS–29
AMPB definition/mapping macro DGR–55
AMS
  See access method services (AMS)
analysis of
  processing requirements APDG–27
  required application data APDG–11
  user requirements APDG–9
analyzing problems
  using log records DGR–113
analyzing requirements for data sharing, assigning a
  sharing level with DBRC DBRC–19
analyzing requirements for logical relationships ADB–52
anchor point area ADB–92
anchor point, root APDG–69
AND
  dependent APDB–206
  independent APDB–207
  logical APDB–193
AND operator
  IMS rules JGR–83
AO (automated operator) application CG–449
AO (automated operator) application
/DISPLAY command CG–461
AO (automated operator) application (continued)

after status codes
  CMD call CG–451
  GCMD call APTM–76
  GU call CG–451
allowed commands CG–449
AOI token CG–458
CMD call CR–26
CMD call
  format CG–450
  status codes CG–450
  use CG–447
command editor CG–245
command format
  CMD call CG–450
  GCMD call CG–450
command response
  no response segment CG–450
  response segment CG–450
  size CG–450
commands supported CR–26
cross-reference of commands to responses CG–453, CG–462
definition CG–447
  described CG–447, CG–457
DISPLAY command
  command CG–451
  environment CG–459
  environments CG–448
  functions CG–447
GCMD call
  format CG–450
  status codes APTM–76
GMSG call APDB–148, APTM–96, CG–457
GU call status codes CG–451
issuing commands CG–458, CG–459
RCMD call APDB–166, APTM–115, CG–458
recovery CG–465
responses to commands CG–450, CG–460
restart CG–465
restriction CG–458
retrieving command responses CG–458
retrieving messages CG–457
sample application
  DFSAOPGM CG–465
  UETRANS CG–455
security CG–449, CG–459
segments
  no response CG–450
  response CG–450
  size CG–450
shared queues CG–458
synchronization processing
  occurrences CG–451
  rescheduling CG–451
using CMD CR–26
using ICMD CR–28
with shared queues CG–448
AO (automated operator) application program
CMD call AS–124
AO (automated operator) application program (continued)
description AS–25
dynamic monitoring AS–179
ICMD call AS–125
security
  description AS–126
  input examples AS–124
  transaction command security AS–124
AO (automated operator) exit routine
activating CG–249
commands and responses passed to exit routine
  asynchronous messages CG–245
  editing IMS CG–245
  commands and responses passed to the exit
  entering CG–245
  IMS-generated CG–245
data fields
  on entry CG–251
  on exit CG–252
edited command buffer CG–248
exit routine interface
  entry codes CG–250
  exit codes CG–251
  exit codes validation CG–252
Extended Terminal Option (ETO) considerations
  CG–248, CG–251
messages not passed to exit routine CG–246
messages passed to exit routine
  format CG–247
network-qualified LU name CG–245
registers
  contents on entry CG–250
  contents on exit CG–251
restrictions
  queue unavailable CG–246
  use with secondary master terminal CG–246
sample exit routine CG–242
system messages passed to exit routine CG–244
type 1 (DFSAOUE0)
  callable services CG–242
  described CG–241, CG–267
  functions CG–241
  naming CG–242
  specifying CG–242
type 2 (DFSAOE00)
  activating CG–140
  attributes CG–135
  callable services CG–135
  command editor CG–137
  communicating with an AO application CG–136
  communicating with IMS CG–140
  described CG–135
  function-specific parameter list CG–141
  functions CG–135
  message buffer CG–144
  naming CG–135
  network-qualified LU name CG–138
  registers on entry CG–140
  registers on exit CG–145
  restrictions CG–136
AO (automated operator) exit routine (continued)
type 2 (DFSQAEO0) (continued)
sample exit routine CG–135
specifying CG–135
standard exit parameter list CG–141
types of messages received CG–137
UEHB
contents CG–261
flags CG–261
AO exit routine OG–198
AOI (automated operator interface)
See AO (automated operator) CG–135
See AO application CR–26
See AO exit routine or AO application CG–241
AOI (Automated Operator Interface)
application program OG–195, OG–196
command responses OG–193
commands OG–192
comparison of types OG–200
DL/I calls OG–193
exit routines OG–194, OG–196
messages OG–192
overview OG–190
type-1 OG–194
type-2 OG–196
types, comparison OG–200
uses OG–191
AOI (automated operator interface) callable services
CG–23
AOI (Automated Operator Interface), IOASIZE
requirement URS–134
AOI application programs
UNLOCK DATABASE command CR–670
UNLOCK PROGRAM command CR–670
UNLOCK SYSTEM command CR–670
UNLOCK TRANSACTION command CR–670
AOI token CG–458
AOI token
usage APDB–149
AOI transactions
scheduling ATM–115
AOIS parameter AS–125
AOITOKEN keyword CR–48
AOITOKEN keyword
DEQUEUE command CR–182
DISPLAY command
description CR–209
AOP clients CSL–88
AOS= parameter ISDT–327
APAR (Authorized Program Analysis Report)
using SMP/E IV–77
APARs
preparing DGR–49
procedure DGR–49
searching for DGR–48
APF (authorized program facility)
specifying in batch procedures ISDT–192
APF authorization
for OS/390 interface IV–65
required by OS/390 IV–72
required for IRLM IV–73
API (application program interface)
explicit ATM–9
implicit ATM–9
API (application program interface), ISC
asynchronous, CICS ATM–533, ATM–555
IMS use of VTAM ATM–265
synchronous, CICS ATM–533, ATM–555
API (application programming interface)
description APTM–7
API (application programming interface) for LU 6.2
devices
explicit API APDG–113
implicit API APDG–112
APPC
application program types for LU 6.2 devices
APDG–104
APSB (allocate program specification block)
APDG–103
basic conversation APDG–106
description APDG–103
DPSB (deallocate program specification block)
APDG–138
LU 6.2 partner program design
DFSAPPC message switch APDG–133
flow diagrams APDG–113, APDG–124
integrity after conversation completion APDG–131
mapped conversation APDG–106
RRS/MVS APDG–135
APPC (advanced program-to-program communication)
APPC/IMS ATM–27
communications manager as the ATM–402
descriptor ATM–129
destination code ATM–28
destination structure ATM–28
DFSAPPC ATM–27
editing and formatting ATM–71
generic resource name, specifying ATM–122
IMS messages ATM–27
input segment ATM–28
LU 6.2 messages ATM–27
queuing, SERIAL= YES option ATM–28
segments, single or multiple ATM–28
structure ATM–28
switching ATM–32
SYNCLVL=SYNCPT ATM–402
types ATM–27
APPC (advanced program-to-program communication)/IMS ATM–9
APPC (advanced program-to-program communication)/IMS
API ATM–9
API
explicit ATM–9, ATM–404
implicit ATM–9, ATM–404
application programs
CPI-C driven ATM–405
modified IMS ATM–405
remote standard IMS ATM–407
standard IMS ATM–405
asynchronous output delivery ATM–428
CPI Communications application program ATM–395
APPC (advanced program-to-program communication)/IMS (continued)
CPI-C initialization ATM–26
default conversation characteristics ATM–428
description AS–21
DFSAPPC ATM–425
DFSAPPC
  message switching ATM–425
  option keywords ATM–426
discardable messages ATM–405
establishing APPC/IMS ATM–410
establishing APPC/IMS
  APPC=Y or N ATM–410
  system definition ATM–410
introduction ATM–403
local service for remote APPC transaction ATM–406, ATM–408
LTERM interface ATM–409
LU 6.2
  devices ATM–9
  relationship to APPC/IMS ATM–403
terminal support ATM–26
LUADD option keywords ATM–415
MOD name ATM–409
mode name ATM–414
modified IMS application programs ATM–407
MSC ATM–418
MSC
  recovering transactions in APPC ATM–418
  standard IMS applications ATM–406
MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling)
  processing remote transactions in an IMSplex ATM–245
MSC and modified IMS applications ATM–408
MVS system file manager utility example (ATBSDFMU) ATM–412
network-qualified LU name ATM–424
nondiscardable messages ATM–405
PARMLIB ATM–414
partner LU name ATM–414
RACF ATM–429
recoverability ATM–65
recoverable versus irrecoverable transactions ATM–418
remote service for remote APPC transaction ATM–408
restrictions ATM–406
security AS–130
shared-queues environment ATM–112
shared-queues environment
  asynchronous messages ATM–113
  synchronous messages ATM–113
SIADD ATM–414
side information ATM–26, ATM–27
side information
  mode_name ATM–26, ATM–413
  partner_LU_name ATM–26, ATM–413
  TP_name ATM–26, ATM–413
  sym_dest_name ATM–414
Sync_Level options (NONE, CONFIRM, SYNCPT) ATM–406, ATM–407
APPC (advanced program-to-program communication)/IMS (continued)
SYS1.APPCSI ATM–414
SYS1.APPCTP ATM–411
SYS1.PARMLIB(APPCPMxx) example ATM–414
TP name ATM–414
TP Profile ATM–408
TP Profile
  ATBSDFMU utility ATM–410
  definition ATM–408
  DFSTPPE0 ATM–412
  DFSTPROF ATM–412
dialog example ATM–411
TSO ICQASRM0 ATM–411
VSAM data set ATM–410
TPN ATM–426
TPN (transaction program name) ATM–413, ATM–426
transaction profile names AS–38
transaction retry characteristics ATM–424
transaction retry characteristics
  deadlock ATM–424
  Fast Path retry conditions ATM–424
  lock reject ATM–424
transaction security ATM–429
transaction security
  ACCESS (EXECUTE) ATM–429
  UACC (NONE) ATM–429
XRF ATM–424
APPC conversational program
CPI-C driven APTM–147
ending the conversation APTM–145
message switching APTM–143
modified IMS application APTM–146
APPC environment APDB–256, APTM–312
APPC keyword OG–85
APPC keyword
  definition CR–48
  DISPLAY command
    description CR–209
  PURGE command CR–452
  SECURE command CR–555
  START command CR–578
  STOP command CR–605
APPC problem, diagnosing DGR–14
APPC TIMEOUT keyword
  CHANGE command CR–124
APPC/IMS
  connecting to OG–85
  enhancements
    introduction to RPG–11
    overview RPG–87
  stopping OG–137, OG–143
APPC/MVS administration dialog updates IIV–72
APPC/OTMA
  enhancements
    introduction to RPG–11
    overview RPG–89
APPCIOIT= parameter ISDT–327
APPL keyword
  SIGN command CR–564
APPLCOUNT keyword
SET command CR–745
APPLCTN macro
CRET, use with ISDT–9
description ISDT–59
dynamic reassignment ISDT–61
MSNAME macro, and ISDT–64
ODBA, use with ISDT–9
parameters ISDT–62
parameters
FPATH= ISDT–62
GPSB= ISDT–63
LANG= ISDT–63
PGMTYPE= ISDT–63
PSB= ISDT–64
SCHDTYP= ISDT–65
SYSID= ISDT–64
syntax diagram ISDT–60
TRANSACT macro, and ISDT–59, ISDT–63,
ISDT–64
APPLCTN macro statement
DOPT keyword AS–55
for Fast Path AS–50
RESIDENT keyword AS–55
system definition, in AS–53
used for online change AS–230
application call processing CG–502
application change control, checklist AS–224
application changes
introducing in an active IMS system AS–226
application control block (ACB) ADB–299
Application Control Blocks (ACBs)
maintaining
control statements URS–159
input and output URS–156
overview URS–155
restrictions URS–156
Application Control Blocks Maintenance utility
See ACB Maintenance utility
application data
analyzing required APDG–11
identifying APDG–11
application design
analyzing
processing requirements APDG–49
the data a program must access APDG–51
user requirements APDG–9, APDG–11
data dictionary, using APDG–15
DataAtlas APDG–15
DB/DC Data Dictionary APDG–15
debugging APDG–184
designing a local view APDG–16
documenting APDG–10, APDG–178
overview APDG–9
Spool API interface APDG–179
application development
IMS Application Development Facility II ADB–303
VisualAge Generator ADB–303
application documentation AS–33, AS–36
application group name
See also AGN
See AGN (application group name)
application interface block
See AIB (application interface block)
application preload
as online execution parameter AS–100
guidelines AS–207
application processing intent AS–359
application program APDG–109
application program
DB Batch environment, in APDB–12
DBCTL environment, in APDB–10
DBD, using APDB–19
deadlock occurrence, in APDB–157
declaring in system definition AS–53
design reviews AS–34
documentation APDG–178
environments APDB–9
failures OG–156
Fast Path restrictions AS–49
HALDB environment
scheduling APDB–114
I/O areas, specifying APTM–52
interface APDB–9
message-driven AS–24
online changes AS–230
participating in data sharing AS–359
PSB, using APDB–19
recording activity for OG–308
recovery OG–156
sample hierarchies APDB–20
sync point OG–14, OG–39
test APDG–141, APDG–163
TSO APDG–40
with XRF AS–256
application program interface
See API (application programming interface)
application programming
reporting OG–99
application programming interface (API) APDG–112
application programming, with OTMA OTMA–50
application programs APTM–32
application programs
abnormal termination and MSC ATM–232
assembler language APTM–32
C language APTM–34
CICS, with IMS ATM–554
COBOL APTM–37
converting Finance to SLU P ATM–436
definition ATM–7
environments
DB/DC APTM–8
DCCTL APTM–8
introduction APTM–7
TM Batch APTM–9
existing programs, with ISC ATM–276, ATM–278
functions IMS provides ATM–9
interface APTM–7
ISC sample ATM–589
online applications, defining ISDT–8
application programs (continued)
  output limits ISDT–13
  Pascal APTM–40
  PL/I APTM–42
  program resource requirements, defining ISDT–59
  remote ATM–8
  scheduling APTM–10
  SLU P controller ATM–436
  XRF considerations, SLU P ATM–436
application programs, IFP APCICS–32
application programs, IMS OTMA–2
application programs, loading ADB–320
application programs, OS/390
  using the ODBA interface ISDT–447
application requirements, analyzing ADB–4, ADB–45, ADB–53
application threads CG–501
application view (diagram) APTM–9
Application-Accounting report
  example URS–464
  use for accounting URS–463
application-data section of message prefix OTMA–87
applications
  changing
    in an active IMS system AS–226
  message processing, building JGR–16
  programming JGR–135
applications, sample APDB–45, APTM–28
APPLID keyword
  SET command CR–745
  APPLID name, definition ATM–18
  APPLID= parameter, ISC session definition ATM–291
APSB (allocate program specification block) APDG–113, APDG–137
APSB (Allocate PSB) call APDB–144
APSB (Allocate PSB) call
  format APDB–144
  parameters APDB–144
  usage APDB–144
APSB call APTM–92
APSB call
  description APTM–92
  format APTM–92
  parameters APTM–92
  restrictions APTM–92
  summary APTM–347
  usage APTM–92
APSB SAF security
  disabling AS–143
  enabling AS–143
ARC, online execution parameter AS–101
architected message OTMA–56
architected transaction attributes OTMA–91
architecture level OTMA–69
archive utility
  See Log Archive utility (DFSUARCO)
ARCHIVE, GENJCL
  archiving OLDS DBRC–11
  archive, OLDS AS–26, AS–101
ARCHIVED parameter
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for OLDS) command DBRC–131
archiving
  customizing OG–50
  log records
    automatic OG–49
    customizing OG–50
    manual OG–50
  manual OG–50
  OLDS OG–45
  online log data sets, DBRC DBRC–11
archiving SLDs OG–271
ARCHJCL skeletal JCL execution member DBRC–342
area
  adding ADB–423
  DEDB, in ADB–110, ADB–264
  deleting ADB–423
  in CHK (symbolic) call APDB–146
  UOW structural definition ADB–420
area data set
  referring to CR–48
area data set replication ADB–112
area data sets AS–311
AREA keyword
  DBRECOVERY command CR–162
  definition CR–49
  DISPLAY command
    description CR–210
    example CR–279
  RECOVER command CR–520
  RECOVER command
    REMOVE keyword CR–522
    STOP keyword CR–526
    START command CR–578
    STOP command CR–605
area length
  in CHK (symbolic) call APDB–146
AREA parameter
commands
  CHANGE.ADS DBRC–102
  CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–117
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–125
  CHANGE.UIC DBRC–163
  DELETE.ADS DBRC–165
  DELETE.ALLOC DBRC–166
  DELETE.DBDS DBRC–169
  DELETE.IC DBRC–171
  DELETE.RECOV DBRC–176
  DELETE.UIC DBRC–178
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–194
  GENJCL.OIC DBRC–203
  GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–208
  GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–212
  INIT.ADS DBRC–224
  INIT.DBDS DBRC–231
  INIT.IC DBRC–237
  LIST.DBDS DBRC–253
  LIST.HISTORY DBRC–257
  NOTIFY.ALLOC DBRC–268
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–273
  NOTIFY.RECOV DBRC–288
  NOTIFY.UIC DBRC–304
DEDB online utilities URDBTM–531
AREA parameter (continued)
defining a data set DBRC–223
deleting information from RECON DBRC–165
AREA statement ADB–289
AREA statement
format URS–44
keywords URS–45
parameter description URS–45
area-level data sharing AS–360
area, I/O APDG–6
AREANEW parameter
CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–118
areas
I/O APDB–101
ARM
See Automatic Restart Manager
ARM (automatic restart manager) OG–92
ARNEEDED parameter
CHANGE.PRILOG (for OLDS) command DBRC–131
array, connected APCICS–10
ARSTART/parameter
CHANGE.PRILOG (for OLDS) command DBRC–131
ARM
See Automatic Restart Manager
ARM (automatic restart manager) OG–92
ARNEEDED parameter
CHANGE.PRILOG (for OLDS) command DBRC–131
array, connected APCICS–10
ARSTART/parameter
CHANGE.PRILOG (for OLDS) command DBRC–131
AS keyword JGR–83, JGR–84
ASC keyword JGR–83
ASR keyword
definition CR–49
assembler language
application programming for APTM–32
DL/I call format, example APDB–76
DL/I call formats APTM–34
DL/I call-level sample APDB–53
DL/I command-level sample APCICS–12
DL/I program structure APDB–50
entry statement APDB–108
I/O area APCICS–10
MPP coding APTM–156
parameters, DL/I call format APDB–75
program entry APDB–108, APTM–54
register 1 at program entry APTM–54
register 1, program entry APDB–108
return statement APDB–108
skeleton MPP APTM–156
SSA definition examples APDB–103
syntax diagram, DL/I call format APDB–74
UIB, specifying APDB–99
assembler language program
DIB fields APCICS–6
variable names, mandatory APCICS–6
assembling a client program CQS–81
assembling system generation AS–48
ASSIGN (/ASSIGN) command OG–108, OG–109
ASSIGN (/ASSIGN) command
ETO OG–109
terminals OG–108
ASSIGN command
CLASS keyword CR–101
COMPONENT keyword CR–101
CPRI keyword CR–102
description CR–99
ASSIGN command (continued)
environments CR–98
examples CR–108
ICOMPONENT keyword CR–102
IMSplex, using in CR–100
INTERFACE keyword CR–102
LINE keyword CR–102
LMCT keyword CR–102
LPRI keyword CR–102
LTERM keyword
data considerations CR–105
description CR–103
master terminal CR–103
physical terminal CR–103
PRIMARY parameter CR–104
master terminal CR–99
master terminal BTAM line CR–138
NODE keyword CR–106
NOSAVE keyword CR–106
NPRI keyword
BMP transactions CR–106
OUTPUT keyword
description CR–106
PARLIM keyword
description CR–106
PLMCT keyword
description CR–106
PTERM keyword CR–107
REGION keyword CR–107
SAVE keyword CR–107
SEGNO keyword
description CR–107
SEGSIZE keyword
description CR–107
syntax diagram CR–97
TRANSACTION keyword CR–107
USER keyword CR–107
VTAMPOOL keyword CR–108
assigning a sharing level with DBRC DBRC–19
assignment changes
losing when control blocks are deleted CR–61,
CR–106
ASSIGNMENT keyword
definition CR–49
DISPLAY command
description CR–213
example CR–280
associated printing CG–405
association, data APDG–3
asynchronous conversation, description for LU 6.2
transactions APDG–106
Asynchronous Data Capture CG–469
Asynchronous Data Capture
Changed data log record CG–469
description ADB–18
End of Job Call log record CG–472
procedure for adding ADB–413
using ADB–413
asynchronous processing
ATTACH EB ATM–270
IMS–CICS session ATM–542
asynchronous processing  (continued)
ISC execution mode ATM–270
SCHEDULER FM header ATM–358
ATCCONxx member (VTAM nodes) ATM–62
ATCSTRyy member (VTAM start lists) ATM–62
ATTACH FM header APTM–226, APTM–298, URDBTM–478
ATTACH FM header
See also synchronous processing
bit contents ATM–373, ATM–374
EB indicator ATM–270
format ATM–373, ATM–381
MFS ATM–367
parameter description ATM–374, ATM–381
process initiation ATM–357
with CICS ATM–562
ATTACH manager
blocking algorithms APTM–227
deblocking algorithms APTM–201
attention notice
file-tailoring II–111, II–113
IMS.RESLIB II–10
IMS.SDFS/MAC II–25
IMSGEN SUFFIX II–10
installing preventive service
ACCEPT before APPLY II–83
ACCEPT without APPLY II–79
interface considerations II–65
SYS1.NUCLEUS II–70
VTAM interface considerations II–75
ATTIU parameter, FM header length ATM–357
ATTR= operand, FM header length ATM–357
ATTR= operand (DFLD statement)
parameters
ALPHAINUM URDBTM–496
nn URDBTM–498
NO URDBTM–498
NODET/DET/IDET URDBTM–497
NODIS/PHI URDBTM–497
NOMODIMOD URDBTM–497
NOPROT/PROT URDBTM–496
STRIP/INOSTRIP URDBTM–497
YES URDBTM–498
YES, nn URDBTM–498
with copy lock URDBTM–496
ATTR= operand (MFLD statement)
example APTM–285
specifying URDBTM–451
use APTM–210
attribute data
defaults URDBTM–496
input message fields
ATTR= operand (MFLD statement) URDBTM–451
description APTM–191
output device fields
ATTR= operand (MFLD statement) URDBTM–451
description APTM–209
dynamic modification APTM–279
for cursor positioning APTM–219, APTM–278
specifying URDBTM–496
attribute simulation
description APTM–210
restrictions APTM–279
specifying URDBTM–496
attributes
DISPLAY command CR–793
attributes.
See data sets
auditing operational control OG–316
auditing operations AS–146
AUTH call APDG–92, APTM–61
AUTH call
description APTM–61
format APTM–61
I/O area format APTM–62
parameters APTM–62
restrictions APTM–66
summary APTM–347
usage APTM–65
authorization
ID, DB2 APDG–92
requests CQS–74
security APDG–92
authorization call
See AUTH call
authorization checking
/SIGN ON CG–417
commands CG–151
resource CG–433
transaction CG–433
authorization checking, resource access CG–215
authorization commands
CHANGE.DB DBRC–109, DBRC–111
CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–116, DBRC–118
authorization level CSL–21
authorization, changing database DBRC–77
authorized clients
environmental requirements CSL–19
authorizing CQS
connections CQS–37
registration CQS–37
AUTO keyword
description CR–49
AUTOARCH keyword
definition CR–49
AUTOLOGON keyword
/DISPLAY command
examples CR–341
automated operations
advantages OG–18
introduction OG–7, OG–181
overview OG–18
specifying exit routine OG–198
TCO OG–181
what to automate OG–18
automated operator interface (AOI)
  See AO application CR–26
Automated Operator Interface (AOI)
  See AOI (Automated Operator Interface), IOASIZE requirement
automated operator program clients CSL–88
automated operator program requests CSL–54
automated operator programs ATM–22
automated procedures
  Single Point of Control CSL–6
  supported consoles CSL–6
automatic archiving OG–49
automatic RECON loss notification
  configuration AS–403
  initialization AS–406
  maintaining AS–413
  shutting down AS–414
Automatic RECON Loss Notification
  DSPSCIX0 DBRC–145
automatic restart
  as online execution parameter AS–102
  effect of AS–27
Automatic Restart Manager
  element name CSL–28
  enabling CSL–28
  policy CQS–36
  using CQS–35, CSL–28
automatic restart manager.
  See ARM
automatic storage APCICS–22
autopaged output, synchronous ATM–537
AUTOSCH option IIV–59
auxiliary storage requirements for MSDBs ADB–275
AVAIL parameter commands
  CHANGE.ADS DBRC–102
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–131
  CHANGE.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–150
  INIT.ADS DBRC–224
availability manager OG–235
availability manager
  bringing up AS–266
  definition of AS–259
  messages during takeover AS–272, AS–292
  performing I/O prevention AS–260, AS–272
  sending messages to operator AS–259, AS–260
availability of data APDG–4, APDG–44, APDG–63
availability requirements OG–310
available length (AL) field ADB–92
AVG keyword JGR–83
AVM prefix for messages AS–259
avoiding an abend APCICS–69
AWE (asynchronous work element) BPE–7
AWE server type BPE–54
AWE services statistics area BPE–53

B
B= parameter
  DFSERA10 OPTION statement URS–267
BA status code APCICS–7
back-end subsystem
  CICS ATM–540
back-end subsystem (continued)
  definition ATM–255
  IMS ATM–537, ATM–539
  routing transactions ATM–287
back-out database changes APDG–61
backing out
  database changes APCICS–88
backing out changes dynamically APCICS–75, APCICS–76
BACKIRLM parameter commands
  CHANGE.SUBSYS DBRC–161
  NOTIFY.SUBSYS DBRC–303
backout
  batch
    system failure during OG–72
    batch considerations OG–221
    batch utility OG–71, OG–221
    definition OG–6
    dynamic
      batch OG–71
      because of abend OG–70
      commit point OG–69
      data sharing OG–221
      overview OG–69
      restarting transactions after OG–70
      XRF OG–253
  error
    emergency restart OG–74
    I/O OG–72
    recovery OG–73
    overview OG–17
    recovery OG–73
    XRF OG–255
BACKOUT parameter
  CHANGE.DB command DBRC–111
backout point
  description APTM–148
  intermediate APCICS–88
  intermediate (SETS/SETU) APTM–152
  ROLB, ROLL, ROLS APTM–148
  setting APCICS–78
  unconditionally setting APCICS–79
backout point, intermediate
  backing out APDB–248
backout work unit, message resynchronization ATM–302
backout, BACKOUT record for recovery DBRC–51
backout, dynamic APDG–32
backout, with data sharing
  batch DBRC–36
  dynamic DBRC–36
backspacing ADB–64
backup
  creating a copy of RECON DBRC–99
  database DBRC–23, OG–14, OG–61
  database
    command for DBRC–24
    description DBRC–23
    message queue OG–15
    overview OG–14
    RECON DBRC–58
backup (continued)
  system data set OG–15
BACKUP keyword
  definition CR–49
  ERESTART command CR–348
  STOP command CR–607
  SWITCH command CR–630
backup operations, MFS library URDBTM–394
backup sessions for class-1 terminals
  closing AS–257, AS–261
  logging on to AS–257
  opening AS–257, AS–261
  termination, at AS–280
BACKUP term AS–264
BACKUP.RECON command DBRC–58
BACKUP.RECON command
  description DBRC–99
  example DBRC–99
  parameters
    BOTH DBRC–99
    RECON1 DBRC–99
    RECON2 DBRC–99
balancing group
  definition ATM–20
  routing codes and ATM–21
balancing resource demand in MSC ATM–214
BALG definition/mapping macro DGR–55
BALGRP keyword
  definition CR–49
  DISPLAY command CR–248
Base Primitive Environment
  and the CSL CSL–2
  RM exit routines CSL–103
Base Primitive Environment (BPE)
  enhancements
    introduction to RPG–15
    overview RPG–93
Base Primitive Environment.  
  See BPE
basic checkpoint APDG–41, APDG–60, APDG–62
basic checkpoint
  issuing APCICS–69, APCICS–87
Basic Checkpoint (CHKP Basic) APDB–144
Basic Checkpoint (CHKP Basic)
  format APDB–145
  parameters APDB–145
  usage APDB–145
basic checkpoint call
  See Basic CHKP call
Basic CHKP call APTM–93
Basic CHKP call
  description APTM–93
  format APTM–93
  parameters APTM–93
  restrictions APTM–94
  summary APTM–347
  usage APTM–93
basic conversation, APPC APDG–106
basic edit ATM–72
basic edit
  bypassing ATM–84
basic edit (continued)
  editing options with ISC ATM–82
  IMS functions ATM–81
  IMS systems ATM–72
  input message segments ATM–85
  input messages ATM–81
  ISC messages ATM–268
  non-MFS programs ATM–277
  output message segments ATM–85
  output messages ATM–82
  SLU 1 transparent data ATM–82
Basic edit
  IMS TM APTM–167, APTM–202
Basic Edit
  input message APTM–20
  output message APTM–21
  translation to uppercase APTM–20
basic edit, overview of APDG–94
basic initial load program, writing ADB–318
Basic Sequential Access Method
  See BSAM (Basic Sequential Access Method)
ADB–61
basic telecommunications access method
  See BTAM (basic telecommunications access method)
basic telecommunications access method.
  See BTAM (basic telecommunications access method)
batch backout utility DBRC–36, DBRC–39
batch backout utility
  adding backout records to RECON DBRC–269
  changing backout records in RECON DBRC–102
  deleting from RECON DBRC–167
  limitations DBRC–37
  SSID naming convention DBRC–77
Batch Backout utility APDG–32, OG–71
Batch Backout utility (DFSBBO00)
  description URDBTM–249
  example URDBTM–261
  in an RSR environment URDBTM–250
  input and output URDBTM–251
  JCL requirements
    DD statements URDBTM–253
    EXEC statement URDBTM–252
  Remote Site Recovery URDBTM–250
  restrictions URDBTM–251
  return codes URDBTM–259
utility control statement
  ABEND URDBTM–256
  ABENDMSG URDBTM–256
  ACTIVE URDBTM–256
  BYPASS LOGVER URDBTM–257
  BYPASS SEQVER URDBTM–257
  CHKPT URDBTM–257
  COLDSTART URDBTM–258
  description URDBTM–255
  READBACK URDBTM–259
batch dynamic allocation, disabling ISDT–391
batch environment APDG–29, IIV–99
batch environment
  call image capture trace DGR–221
batch environment (continued)
command
LIST.SUBSYS DBRC–264
NOTIFY.SUBSYS DBRC–303
NOTIFY.SUBSYS command DBRC–302
example AS–19
overview AS–19
TM AS–20
TM
DB2, connecting AS–20
regions valid AS–20
batch environments
DB
TM APDB–9
batch job authorization DBRC–63
batch jobs
restarting OG–93
using DBRC to track OG–51
without logging OG–62
batch jobs, converting to BMPs AS–385
batch message processing
See see BMP
batch message processing program.
See BMP (batch message processing) program
batch mode (MFS Language utility) URDBTM–390
batch programs
assembler language APDB–50
C language APDB–55
COBOL APDB–57
converting to BMPs APDG–35, APDG–55
databases that can be accessed APDG–28, APDG–51
DB batch processing APDG–31
deadlock occurrence, in APDB–157
description APDG–54
differences from online APDG–31, APDG–54
I/O PCB, requesting during PSBGEN APDG–59
issuing checkpoints APCICS–87, APDG–44, APDG–59
maintaining integrity APDB–247
overview APDB–12, APTM–10
Pascal APDB–65
PL/I APDB–68
recovery APDG–32, APDG–59
recovery of database APDG–61
structure APDB–12, APTM–10
batch programs, command-level samples
assembler APCICS–12
C APCICS–23
COBOL APCICS–15
PL/I APCICS–19
Batch Terminal Simulator
See BTS (Batch Terminal Simulator)
Batch Terminal Simulator II (BTS II) APDG–142
batch updaterscheduling OG–214
batch-oriented BMPs. APDG–36
batching messages AS–63
BB (begin bracket) indicator
definition ATM–275
LUSTATUS command ATM–341

BB (begin bracket) indicator (continued)
use (figure) ATM–441
BC status code APCICS–7
benefits of using CQS CQS–5
BFSP definition/mapping macro DGR–55
BFUS definition/mapping macro DGR–55
BGNRETRY trace entry DGR–385
BGWRT parameter ADB–256
BHDFR definition/mapping macro DGR–55
BID command ATM–327, ATM–447, ATM–456
BID option
caused by session termination ATM–490
design considerations ATM–447, ATM–456
effects
display screen protection ATM–451
MFS paging ATM–451
output messages ATM–448
bidirectional physically paired logical relationship
ADB–150
bidirectional virtually paired logical relationship ADB–153
BIGINT data type JGR–86
BILLING segment APCICS–3, APDB–21
BINARY data type JGR–86
bind
action/response matrix ATM–308
IMS-CICS session ATM–570
ISC session
parallel ATM–301
single ATM–301
negotiable ATM–301
nonnegotiable ATM–301
parameters
Finance Communication System ATM–501
ISC, IMS as primary half session ATM–503
ISC, IMS as secondary half session ATM–508
SLU 1 ATM–513
SLU P ATM–501
rejected, ISC ATM–349
requesting asynchronous process ATM–359
BIND race ATM–301
binder order statements ISDT–50
BINPDSB1= parameter, BINTRNDS option ATM–82
BIS (bracket initiation stopped) command ATM–353
BIS (bracket initiation stopped) command
IMS-CICS session ATM–554
session shutdown ATM–353
BISYNC link
resetting continuous mode CR–444
BIT data type JGR–86
bit maps
calculating space ADB–311
description ADB–91
bits in delete byte ADB–471
BKERR keyword
definition CR–49
DISPLAY command
description CR–217
BKO (backout) parameter commands
CHANGE.BKOUT DBRC–104
NOTIFY.BKOUT DBRC–269
BKO execution parameter APDG–32
BLDL list for dependent regions AS–196
BLDQ procedure IV–53
BLKSIZE= parameter
  DFSMDA TYPE=DFSDCMON statement URS–174
block descriptor word (BDW), IMS Spool API APD–181
block error message format APTM–244
block size
  OLDS OG–55
  relationship to number of tracks OG–56
  SDLs OG–59
block-level data sharing ADB–107
block-level data sharing
  CI reclaim ADB–234, ADB–338
  SHISAM restriction ADB–234, ADB–338
block-level sharing AS–361, AS–363
block-level sharing
  VSO DEDB areas AS–378
BLOCK= parameter
  DATASET statement URS–36
BLOCKHDR definition/mapping macro DGR–55
blocks
  calculating number needed ADB–308
  determining size ADB–62
  determining size of ADB–244
  HIDAM (Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method) ADB–96
  HISAM (Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method) ADB–66
  PHIDAM ADB–96
BMP
  declaring ISDT–11
  EXEC parameters ISDT–407
BMP (batch message processing program)
  deferring backout of OG–91
  restarting OG–92, OG–157
  starting OG–83
BMP (batch message processing) program APD–36
BMP (batch message processing) program
  batch-oriented APD–36
  batch-oriented
    checkpoints in APD–43, APD–59
    converting batch programs to BMPs APD–55
    databases that can be accessed APD–34, APD–55
    description of APD–34, APD–55
    limiting number of locks with LOCKMAX=
      parameter APD–43
    recovery APD–35, APD–56
    databases that can be accessed APD–29, APD–51
    no backout of updates CR–351
    transaction-oriented
      checkpoints in APD–42
      databases that can be accessed APD–36
      recovery APD–37
BMP (batch message processing) programs
  issuing checkpoints APCICS–87
  PCBs APCICS–32
BMP (batch message processing) region
  application program AS–151
  application programs AS–12
  characteristics AS–12
  converting batch jobs to AS–385
  DBCTL environment AS–25
  definition AS–9
  Fast Path AS–25
BMP transactions
  ASSIGN command
    NPRI keyword CR–106
    LPRI keyword CR–102
BMPs
  and CCTL threads ADB–283
  batch message processing ADB–125
  data sharing ADB–56
  DBCTL environment ADB–56
  normal buffer allocation ADB–282
  OBA values ADB–383
  overflow buffer allocation ADB–283
  to access DEDBs ADB–384
  updates in a sync interval ADB–385
BMPs, transaction-oriented
  ROLB APDB–246
Boolean operators
  dependent AND ADB–206
  independent AND ADB–207
  logical AND ADB–193
  logical OR ADB–193
  SSA, coding APD–103
BOTH parameter
  BACKUP.RECON command DBRC–99
BOUND= operand (DO statement), specifying URDBTM–488
BPE
  commands in CSL CSL–23
  configuration PROCLIB member CSL–15
  procedures for CSL CSL–15
  user exit PROCLIB member CSL–15
BPE (Base Primitive Environment) AS–397, CQS–1
BPE (Base Primitive Environment)
  associating exit types with exit routines BPE–14
  components that use BPE BPE–1
  customizing address spaces BPE–43
  defining BPE–3, CQS–15
  definition CQS–1
  gathering statistics BPE–45
  List PROCLIB Member AS–409
  monitoring address spaces BPE–43
  sample configuration BPE–12
  service provided BPE–1
  sharing configuration parameters BPE–4
  specifying a language BPE–4
  specifying a trace level BPE–4
  system statistics area BPE–46
  trace table types BPE–6
  tracing processing BPE–6
BPE commands
  DISPLAY USEREXIT BPE–32, CR–763
  invocation BPE–22, CR–753
  REFRESH USEREXIT BPE–37, CR–769
BPE commands (continued)

- specifying IMS component command parameters
  BPE–22, CR–754
- syntax BPE–21, CR–753
- Syntax, verb only format BPE–21, CR–753
- Syntax, verb-resource type BPE–21, CR–753
- wildcard character support BPE–22, CR–754

BPE configuration PROCLIB member

- keywords BPE–3
- recommendations BPE–4
- specifying BPE–3

BPE DISPLAY VERSION command

- BPE DISPLAY VERSION command BPE–30, CR–762
- format BPE–31, CR–762
- output BPE–31, CR–763
- Usage BPE–31, CR–762

BPE exit routine PROCLIB member

- EXITMBR parameter BPE–11

BPE statistics area

- BPE AWE statistics area BPE–53
- BPE CBS statistics area BPE–52
- BPE dispatcher statistics area BPE–50
- BPE storage services statistics area BPE–55
- BPE system statistics BPE–47
- BPE TCB statistics table BPE–51
- recommendations BPE–47
- statistics offset table BPE–49

BPE Statistics exit routine BPE–45

BPE Statistics user exit CQS–71

BPE trace table types

- * (asterisk) BPE–6
- AWE BPE–7
- CBS BPE–7
- CMD BPE–7
- DISP BPE–7
- ERR BPE–7
- HASH BPE–7
- LATC BPE–7
- SSRV BPE–7
- STG BPE–7
- USRX BPE–7

BPE user-supplied exit routines

- abends in BPE–62
- and Language Environment BPE–43
- BPEUXCSVS macro BPE–62
- callable services BPE–62
- calling subsequent exit routines BPE–60
- dynamic work areas BPE–60
- environment BPE–61
- execution environment BPE–57
- general information BPE–57
- Initialzation-Termination BPE–43
- initialization sample BPE–77
- interface information BPE–57
- interfaces and services BPE–57
- performance considerations BPE–61
- processing sample BPE–78
- recommendations BPE–43, BPE–57, BPE–62
- reentrant BPE–61
- refreshing BPE–37, CR–769
- registers BPE–61

BPE user-supplied exit routines (continued)

- sharing data BPE–76
- standard parameter list BPE–58
- static work areas BPE–59
- Statistics exit routine BPE–45
- termination sample BPE–79
- work areas BPE–59

BPEINIT00 CSL–13

BPEINIT00 AS–406

BPEUXCSVS macro BPE–62

BPEUXCSVS macro

- environmental requirements BPE–63
- examples BPE–65
- other macro requirements BPE–64
- performance implications BPE–64
- register information BPE–64
- restrictions and limitations BPE–64
- return from BPE–66
- syntax BPE–64

- bracket and send/receive management
  Finance Communication System
  - direction indicators ATM–441
  - protocol ATM–441
  - ISC, how determined ATM–274
  - SLU P
    - direction indicators ATM–441
    - protocol ATM–441

- bracket contention
  - invalid paging ATM–455
  - resolving ATM–301, ATM–454

- bracket initiation stopped (BIS) command
  See BIS

- bracket protocol
  - IMS ATM–328, ATM–471
  - input bracketing ATM–476
  - input messages, ISC ATM–328
  - output bracketing ATM–482
  - output messages, ISC ATM–331

- bracket rejection
  - Finance Communication System ATM–462, ATM–490
  - ISC ATM–350
  - SLU P ATM–462, ATM–490

BRAM terminals

- RSR environment CR–36

BREAK code X’0811’

- actions taken ATM–490
- output messages ATM–490

brM

- execution phase action command IIV–120
- file-tailoring action command IIV–112

BROADCAST command

- ACTIVE keyword CR–114
- CHECKPOINT command CR–138
- description CR–114
- environments CR–113
- examples CR–115
- LINE keyword CR–114
- LTERM keyword
  - ALL parameter CR–115
  - description CR–114
  - MASTER parameter CR–115
BROADCAST command (continued)
  MSNAME keyword CR–113
  NODE keyword CR–115
  PTERM keyword CR–115
  syntax diagram CR–113
  SYSID keyword CR–113
  USER keyword CR–115
brS, file-tailoring action command IIV–112
BSAM (basic sequential access method)
  using with Spool API APTM–81
BSAM (Basic Sequential Access Method)
  access to GSAM databases ADB–76
  access to HSAM databases ADB–61
  access to OSAM databases ADB–473
  access to SHSAM databases ADB–75
BSC (binary synchronous communication)
  logical link
    RSTART command CR–546
  BSIZ parameter ADB–278, ADB–282
  BSPH definition/mapping macro DGR–55
BTAM IIV–10
BTAM
  connecting to OG–85
  IMSplex, in an ATM–129
BTAM (basic telecommunications access method)
  DDM
    log record format DGR–305
    error recovery
    IEA000l message DGR–305
    master terminals, defining AS–302
    MFS error
diagnosing DGR–305
diagram of normal BTAM path DGR–305
terminal
  starting DC trace DGR–269
  stopping DC trace DGR–270
terminals controlled by
  procedures for reconnecting AS–258
  XRF support for AS–251
terminals in system definition AS–71
BTAM (Basic Telecommunications Access Method)
  link
    RSTART command CR–546
    multiple-page messages CR–138
    terminating input
  IDLE LINE NOSHUT command CR–369
BTS (Batch Terminal Simulator)
  highlights AS–168
  simulating online execution AS–168
BTS II (Batch Terminal Simulator II) APDG–142
BUFC definition/mapping macro DGR–55
BUFENTRY definition/mapping macro DGR–55
buffer
  MSC considerations ATM–213
  MSC linking ATM–196
buffer handler ADB–245
buffer handler
  function codes DGR–245
  module trace IDs DGR–247
  pool (VSAM) DGR–72
buffer handler (continued)
  return codes DGR–247
buffer invalidation AS–374
buffer pool
  defining OSAM subpools ISDT–376
  defining VSAM subpools ISDT–371
  description of ISDT–411
  HIOP OTMA–46
  LUMP OTMA–46
  MFS ISDT–507
  OSAM ISDT–411, ISDT–412
  OSAM buffer pool compatibility ISDT–413
  OSAM SB ISDT–411
  sizes ISDT–398
  specifying ISDT–411
  VSAM ISDT–411
buffer pool, STAT call and OSAM APDG–147
buffer pools
  allocating AS–204
  analyzing requirements AS–201
  description ADB–245
  designing a Fast Path ADB–278
  Fast Path AS–95
  Fast Path, use ADB–383
  in DBCTL environment ADB–281
  private
    defining with DFSVSMxx VSPEC member
    ADB–136
    for VSO, description ADB–139
    size determination for Fast Path ADB–280
    size for Fast Path determination ADB–284
buffer return request CSL–169
buffer sizes
  BUFSIZE parameter ATM–219
  IMS-to-IMS sessions ATM–287
  ISC ATM–293
  MSC LU 6.2 application transactions ATM–219
  MSC non-VTAM links ATM–219
  MSC VTAM links ATM–219
buffer subpool, statistics for debugging
  enhanced STAT call and
    OSAM APDG–151
    VSAM APDG–149, APDG–157
buffers
  allocation in Fast Path ADB–285
  choosing options ADB–245
  description ADB–270
  description of ADB–249
  fast path buffer allocation algorithm
    for CCTL threads ADB–283
  Fast Path buffer allocation algorithm ADB–279
  Fast Path buffer allocation algorithm
    for BMPs ADB–283
  fixing in storage ADB–248, ADB–258
  Hiperspace buffering for VSAM ADB–246
  OLDS OG–58
  OSAM buffer buffering ADB–248
  reporting OG–99
  specifying ADB–248
buffers (continued)

specifying

in DFSVSMxx member control statement
ISDT–367

system buffer allocation ADB–280, ADB–284

VSAM buffer sizes ADB–247

BUFMSTRA (message processing) trace
description DGR–365

BUFNO command

DEDB online utilities URDBTM–531

BUFNO= parameter

DFSMDA TYPE=DFSDCMON statement URS–174

BUFPOOLS
description ISDT–2

BUFPOOLS macro
description ISDT–65

MFS considerations ISDT–503

parameters ISDT–66

parameters

DMB= ISDT–66

EPCB= ISDT–66

FORMAT= ISDT–66

FRE= ISDT–67

obsolete keywords ISDT–65

PSBW= ISDT–67

SASPSB= ISDT–67

syntax diagram ISDT–66

BUFSIZE parameter for MSC LU 6.2 ATM–219

BUFSMVID trace description DGR–375

Build Security Environment Exit Parameter List CG–270

Build Security Environment exit routine (DFSBSEX0)

attributes CG–267

IMS environments CG–267

including the routine CG–267

link editing CG–267

naming convention CG–267

registers

c Contents on entry CG–268

contents on exit CG–269

sample routine location CG–267

using callable services CG–267

Build Security Environment Exit Routine (DFSBSEX0)

IMS callable services CG–268

IMS environments CG–267

including the routine CG–268

link-editing CG–268

naming convention CG–267

sample routine location CG–268

BUILDQ keyword OG–103

BUILDQ keyword

definition CR–49

ERESTART command CR–348

NRESTART command CR–428

business importance

Workload Manager AS–175

BWO(TYPEIMS) ADB–259

BWO(TYPEIMS)

KSDS ADB–259

BYPASS LOGVER statement

Batch Backout utility (DFSBB000) URDBTM–257

BYPASS SEQUER statement

Batch Backout utility (DFSBB000) URDBTM–257

byte data type JGR–86

bytes operand ADB–93

BYTES parameter ADB–172, ADB–195

BYTES= parameter

statements

FIELD URS–80

SEGM URS–57

C

c code standard header file APCICS–28

c language APDB–108

c language

__pcblist APDB–108, APTM–54

application programming APTM–34

batch program, coding APDB–55

DL/I call formats APTM–37

DL/I call formats, example APDB–79

DL/I program structure APDB–55

entry statement APDB–108, APTM–54

exit APDB–108, APTM–54

I/O area APDB–79

longjmp APTM–54

parameters, DL/I call format APDB–77

passing PCBs APTM–54

PCBs, passing APDB–108

return APTM–54

return statement APDB–108

skeleton MPP APTM–156

SSA definition examples APDB–104

syntax diagram, DL/I call format APDB–76

system function APDB–109, APTM–54

C program

DIB fields APCICS–6

DL/I command-level sample APCICS–23

variable names, mandatory APCICS–6

C/C++ for MVS/ESA APDB–113

C/MVS APDG–47

C= keyword

File Select and Formatting Print utility URS–267

Cache Structure name

defining a VSO ADB–135

registering with DBRC ADB–136

caching scheme, user ID OTMA–48

CADSECT definition/mapping macro DGR–55

CADSN parameter commands

CHANGE.CA DBRC–105

INIT.CA DBRC–225

NOTIFY.CA DBRC–270

CAGROUP keyword

definition CR–49

RECOVER command

ADD CR–520

REMOVE keyword CR–522

STOP keyword CR–526

CAJCL parameter

commands

CHANGE.CAGRP DBRC–107

INIT.CAGRP DBRC–226

Index 67
CAJCL parameter *(continued)*
skeletal JCL execution member DBRC–347
calculating space
See space calculations
call functions, DL/I APDB–315, APTM–385
call image capture trace
batch environment DGR–221
online environment DGR–222
retrieving data from log data set DGR–222
CALL statement APDB–306
CALL statement
CALL DATA APDB–309, APTM–379
CALL DATA statement internal field APDB–309
CALL FUNCTION APDB–306, APTM–376
CALL statement (DL/I test program) APDG–142
Call Summary report AS–166
Call Summary report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–361
IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–396
IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–418
call summary, transaction management APTM–347
call-level programs
comparing with command-level programs
command codes and options APCICS–108
commands and calls APCICS–107
DL/I calls available to IMS and CICS command-level
APCICS–107
call-level programs, CICS online APDB–13
call-level programs, scheduling a PSB APDG–56
Callable Interface (C/I) OTMA–95
Callable Interface (C/I)
error codes and messages OTMA–114
introduction to OTMA–95
otma_alloc API OTMA–104
otma_close API OTMA–113
otma_create API OTMA–101
otma_free API OTMA–112
otma_open API OTMA–102
otma_openx API OTMA–103
otma_receive_async API OTMA–111
otma_send_async API OTMA–108
otma_send_receive API OTMA–105
otma_send_receivex API OTMA–108
sample programs OTMA–122
callable services *(continued)*
global ATM–128
how they work CG–12
how to use CG–12
initializing CG–14
initializing callable services parameter list CG–14
INSERT function CG–23
invoking CG–15
linking to CG–13
LOAD module function CG–17
requesting CG–16
return and reason codes CG–25, CG–30
SCAN control block function CG–21
sharing data BPE–76
storage services CG–16
types CG–10
callable services parameter list
described CG–14
CALLER= parameter
FMTIMS statement example DGR–135
calls
See also DL/I calls
CHKP
benefits in GSAM databases ADB–76
benefits in SHISAM databases ADB–75
UOW size considerations ADB–266
GMSG CG–457
GU or GN
See DL/I calls
ICMD CG–458
RCMD CG–458
ROLB ADB–280, ADB–283
SYNC ADB–266
calls from IMS to DBRC, elements of DBRC DBRC–4
calls used with Spool API support
CHNG DGR–342
SETO DGR–342
calls, DB
CIMS APDB–117
CLSE APDB–119
DEQ APDB–119
DLET APDB–121
FLD APDB–122
GHNP APDB–129
GHU APDB–131
GN APDB–124
GNP APDB–129
GU APDB–131
ISRT APDB–134
OPEN APDB–137
POS APDB–138
REPL APDB–141
calls, DL/I APDG–6
calls, system service
APSB (allocate PSB) APDB–144
CHKP (basic) APDB–144
CHKP (symbolic) APDB–145
GMSG (get message) APDB–148
ICMD (issue command) APDB–151
INIT (initialize) APDB–153
INQY (inquiry) APDB–157
calls, system service  (continued)
LOG (log) APDB–163
PCB (schedule a PSB) APDB–165
RCMD (retrieve command) APDB–166
RLOB (roll back) APDB–167
SETS/SETU (set a backout point) APDB–170
SETS/SETU (set a backout point)
backing out to an intermediate backout point
APDB–248
using APDB–248
SNAP APDB–171
STAT (statistics) APDB–174
SYNC (synchronization point) APDB–176
TERM (terminate) APDB–177
XRST (extended restart) APDB–178
CANCEL command OG–145
CANCEL command
description CR–119
environments CR–119
example CR–119
paging errors ATM–344, ATM–351
protocol ATM–336
sender ERP ATM–349
SLU P session ATM–492
syntax diagram CR–119
CANCEL function CG–24
CANCEL keyword
definition CR–50
STOP command CR–605, CR–612
candidate printers ATM–88
capacity planning AS–229
card reader OG–364
CARD= operand (DEV statement)
specifying URDBTM–468
CARD= operand (DEV statement), specifying
URDBTM–466
CART CSL–216
catalog management of data sets in RECON DBRC–79
catch-up processing
RSR OG–282
catch-up processing, definition AS–320
CATDS parameter commands
CHANGE.RECON DBRC–141
INIT.RECON DBRC–244
category of records
listing records DBRC–260
CATIME parameter
GENJCL.CA command DBRC–188
CBLTDI procedure ISDT–248
CBPDDO (Custom-Built Product Delivery Offering) IIV–7
CBresynch OTMA–30
CBresynch command OTMA–71
CBS (control block service) BPE–7
CBS (control block services) statistics area BPE–52
CBT (control block table) pool DGR–567
CBT (control block table) pool
display abbreviations CR–241
DISPLAY POOL command CR–238
storage pool CR–239
CBT definition/mapping macro DGR–55
CCB definition/mapping macro DGR–55
CCTL
DBCTL databases, and ISDT–428
preparing ISDT–428
starting ISDT–429
CCTL (coordinator controller)
design recommendation APDB–367
failures OG–171
in DBCTL environment APDB–10
performance considerations
thread monitoring APDB–368
reconnecting OG–93
restrictions
when you encounter a problem APDG–161
with BTS II (Batch Terminal Simulator II)
APDG–142
with DL/I test program APDG–141
starting OG–83
status CR–214
with image capture APDG–166
CCTL keyword
CHANGE command CR–124
CHANGE command
ABORT CR–124
cctlname CR–124
COMMIT CR–124
prtkn CR–124
definition CR–50
DISPLAY command
description CR–214
examples CR–285
CCTL regions AS–13
CCTL regions
applications performance AS–200
contention for DRA resources AS–200
limiting access AS–154
monitoring AS–185
performance objectives AS–187
PSB requests AS–200
using RACF AS–158
CCTL thread
abnormal termination AS–29
deadlock AS–29
Fast Path AS–25
scheduling a PSB AS–25
CCTL, fast path buffer allocation algorithm ADB–283
CD (change direction) indicator ATM–328
CD (change direction) indicator
definition ATM–275
Finance Communication System ATM–439
LUSTATUS command ATM–341
send/receive protocol ATM–441, ATM–471
SLU P ATM–439
soliciting ATM–323
CEETDLI APDB–113
CEETDLI
address return APDB–110, APTM–55
interface to IMS APDB–113
overview APTM–12
program entry statement APDB–73, APDB–110,
APTM–55
CELLSIZE= operand (PD statement), specifying
URDBTM–507
CEMT command OG–85, OG–143
central processor complex
   See CPC (central processor complex)
CF
   See coupling facility
CFIRLM parameter AS–385
CFNAMES control statement AS–385
CFOSAM parameter AS–385
CFRM (coupling facility resource management)
couple data set format utility CQS–47
estimating CFRM list structure size ADB–146
policy CQS–12
policy, defining CQS–15, CQS–38
CFRM policy
defining ATM–101
defining
   example ATM–103
shared queues AS–376
shared queues
   Structure Alter definitions AS–390
CFRM policy for MADSIO T ADB–146
CFSizer CQS–15
CFSizer
   estimating CFRM list structure size ADB–146
CFSTR1 parameter CHANGE.DBDS command
   DBRC–117, DBRC–233
CFSTR12 naming convention ADB–135
CFSTR2 parameter CHANGE.DBDS command
   DBRC–118, DBRC–233
CFVSAM parameter AS–385
chained message communication sequence ATM–477
chains, logical terminal ATM–33
change
   online OG–269, OG–276
CHANGE (/CHANGE) command OG–110
change accumulation
data set
defining DBRC–224
   naming convention DBRC–20
   selecting DBRC–328
data sets
defining OG–53
reusing OG–53
group
changing information in the RECON DBRC–106
defining DBRC–33, DBRC–225
defining for future use DBRC–34
deleting information from RECON DBRC–168
listing DBRC–250
reusing DBRC–34
using DBRC–16
groups OG–53
record
group DBRC–51
run DBRC–52
stops processing logs, when DBRC–78
using for recovery OG–163
utility OG–52
change accumulation says nothing to process, when
DBRC–78
change accumulation stops processing logs, when
DBRC–78
Change Accumulation utility
   See Database Change Accumulation utility
   (DFSUCUM0)
change call
   See CHNG call
CHANGE command
   APPC TIMEOUT keyword CR–124
   CCTL keyword CR–124
description CR–123
   DESCRIPTOR keyword CR–124
DIRECTORY keyword CR–125
   environments CR–122
   examples CR–131
FDR keyword CR–126
   INTERVAL value CR–129
LINK keyword CR–126
   MAXRGN keyword CR–129
NODE keyword CR–127
   OUTBND keyword CR–124, CR–128
PASS WORD keyword CR–128
   SUBSYS keyword CR–128
SURVEILLANCE keyword CR–128
   TIMEOUT value CR–128
TRANSACTION keyword CR–129
   UOR keyword CR–130
   USER keyword CR–130
CHANGE command, initiating an ISC session ATM–304
Change Partition panel ADB–292
CHANGE.ADS command DBRC–101
CHANGE.BKOUT command DBRC–102
CHANGE.CA command DBRC–105
CHANGE.CAGRP command DBRC–106
CHANGE.DB command DBRC–109
CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–116
CHANGE.DBDSGRP DBRC–17
CHANGE.DBDSGRP command DBRC–122
CHANGE.DBDSGRP command
   parameter descriptions DBRC–123
CHANGE.IC command DBRC–125
CHANGE.PART command DBRC–127
CHANGE.PRILOG DBRC–11
CHANGE.PRILOG command
   changing RECON log control records DBRC–10
      for OLDS DBRC–131
      for RLDS DBRC–133
      for SLDS DBRC–137
      for TSLDS DBRC–137
CHANGE.RECON command DBRC–11, DBRC–141
CHANGE.RECON command
   allocating space for RECONS DBRC–46
   recovering RECONS DBRC–61
   reorganizing RECON DBRC–60
CHANGE.RECON command DBRC–11
CHANGE.RECON command
   changing RECON log control records DBRC–10
      for OLDS DBRC–150
      for RLDS DBRC–151
CHANGE.SECLOG command (continued)
for SLDS DBRC–155
for TSLDS DBRC–155
CHANGE.SG command DBRC–159
CHANGE.SUBSYS command DBRC–160
CHANGE.UIC command DBRC–162
CHANGE= statement
  HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0)
  URDBTM–26
Changed data log record CG–469
changed macros RPG–33
changed-data propagation CG–44
changes in allocation and deallocation DBRC–18
changing
  CI size ADB–424
  DEEBs by adding/deleting segments ADB–422
  exit routines ADB–416
  overflow space allocation ADB–423
  randomizer routines ADB–416
changing applications
  in an active IMS system AS–226
changing DL/I access methods
  changing from HDAM and PHDAM to HIDAM and PHIDAM ADB–360
  HISAM to HIDAM ADB–355
changing HALDB ADB–292
changing information
  area data set DBRC–101
  backout records DBRC–102
  CA group record DBRC–106
  database DBRC–109
  database change accumulation utility DBRC–105
  DBDS DBRC–116
  DBDSGRP DBRC–122
  IC data set DBRC–125
  nonstandard image copy data set DBRC–162
  primary online log data set DBRC–131
  primary RLDS DBRC–133
  primary SLDs DBRC–137
  primary TSLDS DBRC–137
  RECON header record DBRC–141
  secondary online log data set DBRC–150
  secondary RLDS DBRC–151
  secondary SLDs and TSLDS DBRC–155
  secondary subsystem entry DBRC–160
  service group DBRC–159
changing the number of data set groups ADB–377
changing the values of a segment’s fields APCICS–60
channel-end appendages IV–10
channel-to-channel (CTC) link in MSC ATM–195
channel-to-channel access method trace stack
  See MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling)
channel-to-channel.
  See CTC (channel-to-channel) channel-end appendages
CHAR data type JGR–86
character string
  adjustable APCICS–10
  fixed-length APCICS–10
character string controls ATM–521
CHASE command ATM–337
CHE FREEZE DGR–42
CHECK parameter
  SECURE command CR–555, CR–556
CHECK security level OTMA–48
CHECK17 parameter commands
  CHANGE.RECON DBRC–145
  INIT.RECON DBRC–245
CHECK44 parameter commands
  CHANGE.RECON DBRC–145
  INIT.RECON DBRC–245
checkpoint APDG–60
checkpoint
  basic APDG–41, APDG–60
  calls, when to use APDG–42
  command AS–27
  concept AS–27
  data sets ISDT–299
  for program synchronization AS–28
  for programs using data sharing AS–373
  frequency AS–75, AS–76, AS–197
  frequency of, setting ISDT–3
  frequency, specifying APDG–44, APDG–61
  IDs APDG–60
  IMSplex, in an ATM–133
  in batch programs APDG–44, APDG–61
  in batch-oriented BMPs APDG–43, APDG–61
  in MPPs APDG–42
  in transaction-oriented BMPs APDG–42
  issuing APDG–31
  monitoring processing effect
    DB/DC URS–359
    DBCTL URS–395
    DCCTL URS–416
  printing log records APDG–61
  restart APDG–43, APDG–62
  setting frequency AS–75, AS–76, AS–197
  structure, initiating CQS–39
  summary of APDG–41
  symbolic APDG–41, APDG–60
  system, initiating CQS–39
CHECKPOINT ISDT–3
CHECKPOINT
  restrictions ISDT–129
CHECKPOINT (/CHECKPOINT) command
  DUMPQ OG–141
  FREEZE OG–140
  PURGE OG–141
  QUIESCE OG–142
  SNAPQ OG–237
  using OG–139
checkpoint (CHKP)
  call, necessary information APDB–49
  EXEC DLI command
    basic APCICS–87
    current position APCICS–87
    issuing APCICS–2, APCICS–69
    symbolic EXEC DLI command, description
    APCICS–88
CI (control interval)  (continued)
DEDB problem  (continued)
type identification DGR–357
determining size of ADB–244
HIDAM (Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method) ADB–96
HISAM (Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method) ADB–66
number ADB–95
overhead ADB–307
PHIDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method) ADB–96
SDEP ADB–266
size determination in DEDB ADB–265
size, changing ADB–424
splits ADB–69
CI reclaim
block-level data sharing ADB–234, ADB–338
deleting records ADB–234, ADB–338
KSDS reorganization ADB–234, ADB–338
mass deletes ADB–234, ADB–338
SHISAM exclusion ADB–234, ADB–338
VSAM REPRO, using ADB–234, ADB–338
XRF environments ADB–234, ADB–338
CIB definition/mapping macro DGR–55
CIBSTRAC trace
content
  entry DGR–312
  example DGR–312
locating DGR–312
CIBTRACE trace
content
  entry DGR–313
  example DGR–313
locating DGR–313
CIC (concurrent image copy)
See concurrent image copy (CIC)
CIC parameter
commands
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–195
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–274
  for online image copy DBRC–26
CIC parameter, commands
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–195
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–274
CICS APDG–6
CICS
  _CXX_LSYSLIB environment variable JGR–67
  accessing IMS databases ISDT–451
  application
    sample JGR–69
  applications
    IVP JGR–68
    running JGR–70
    writing JGR–71
CICS PSB DLL JGR–67
command language translator APCICS–29
configuring for IMS Java JGR–67
connecting to OG–85
data sharing ISDT–451
DBCTL IVP II–11
CICS (continued)
DBCTL, and ISDT–453
DFHVMPR environment member JGR–68
dfjvmpr.props JGR–68
DL/I, and ISDT–453
HANDLE ABEND command APCICS–8
IMS Java overview JGR–67
intersystem communication, and ISDT–451
IRLM, and ISDT–451
ISC session
  connecting to OG–85
  terminating OG–143
IVP JGR–68
LIBPATH variable JGR–68
Makefile JGR–67
PSB coding considerations ISDT–451
running applications JGR–70
sample application JGR–69
sequential buffering, and ISDT–452
Transaction Server APCICS–2
writing applications JGR–71
CICS (Customer Information Control System)
background write ADB–257
database types not supported ADB–12, ADB–56
security ADB–31
sequential buffering
  benefits ADB–250
  SB Initialization exit routine ADB–256
  using ADB–254, ADB–255
  virtual storage ADB–253
  tasks not supported ADB–3
VisualAge Generator ADB–303
VSAM database buffers ADB–258
CICS DL/I call program, compiling APDB–49
CICS dump control APDG–164
CICS online programs APDB–165
CICS online programs
  assembler language, sample APDB–53
  COBOL, establishing addressability APDB–65
  COBOL, optimization feature APDB–65
  COBOL, sample APDB–60
  PCB call APDB–165
  PL/I, sample APDB–70
  structure APDB–13
  TERM call APDB–177
CICS resource definition ATM–545
CICS-DBCTL
  GSAM ADB–78
  SHISAM ADB–78
  SHSAM ADB–78
CICS-IMS communication
  alternate facility ATM–557
  application coding for ATM–554
  asynchronous processing flow ATM–542
  ATTACH parameters ATM–562
  CICS transactions ATM–552
  coding function management headers ATM–562
  coding system generation options ATM–545
  Command Level API ATM–533
  configuration ATM–258
  conversation mode ATM–557
CICS-IMS communication  (continued)
defining CICS transactions ATM–552
device mapping function ATM–258
facility
  alternate ATM–557
  principal ATM–557
functions
description ATM–533, ATM–535
overview ATM–259
IMS commands ATM–558
initiating sessions ATM–552
integrity of session ATM–570
LU 6.1 links
  compatible nodes ATM–546
  description ATM–545
  Macro-Level Resource Definition ATM–545
  multiple links ATM–550
  Resource Definition Online ATM–545
MFS support ATM–567
mirror transaction ATM–542
MSC links ATM–259
passing data to IMS with ISC ATM–261
preparing CICS tables ATM–545
principal facility ATM–557
processing flows
  RECEIVE ATM–540
  RETRIEVE ATM–542
  SEND INVITE ATM–537
  SEND LAST ATM–539
  SEND/RECEIVE ATM–538
  synchronous ATM–538
recovery and restart ATM–568
SCHEDULER parameters ATM–565
session
  binding ATM–570
  initiation ATM–552
  integrity ATM–570
  processing outstanding traffic ATM–571
  reestablishing ATM–570
  resynchronizing ATM–570
  sync points ATM–560
  termination ATM–553
sync points ATM–560
transaction
  abnormal termination ATM–556, ATM–573
  attributes supported ATM–535, ATM–556
  definition ATM–552
CICS-ISC installation options ATM–545
CICS, subsystems supported RPG–27
CIDF (control interval definition field) ADB–308
CIMS APDG–136
CIMS call
  description APDB–117
  format APDB–117
  parameters APDB–118
  usage APDB–118
CIRCA definition/mapping macro DGR–55
CKPNT= keyword  (continued)
control statements  (continued)
  UCF FUNCTION=DR URDBTM–350
Class 1 terminals
  overview ATM–50
  status recovery modes ATM–42
  XRF support ATM–49
Class 2 terminals
  overview ATM–50
  status recovery modes ATM–43
  XRF support ATM–49
Class 3 terminals
  overview ATM–51
  XRF support ATM–49
CLASS keyword
/DISPLAY command
  ACTIVE CR–208
ASSIGN command CR–101
definition CR–50
DISPLAY command CR–248
START command CR–579
STOP command CR–607
class-1 terminals
  backup sessions opening AS–261
defining priority of switching AS–302
definition of AS–251
how takeover affects AS–251, AS–261
in XRF complex AS–288
ownership of AS–299
recommended ownership of AS–300
session recovery AS–258
specifying backup option AS–292
switching to backup sessions at post-takeover AS–278
switching to backup sessions at takeover AS–261, AS–274
takeover viewed by user AS–292
XRF OG–240
class-2 terminals
  communicating through MSC links AS–275
defining priority of session recovery AS–302
definition of AS–251
establishing new sessions at post-takeover AS–278
establishing new sessions at takeover AS–274
how takeover affects AS–251, AS–274
in XRF complex AS–289
session recovery AS–258
takeover viewed by user AS–292
class-3 terminals
definition of AS–251
class-3 terminals (continued)
  how takeover affects AS–251, AS–274
  in XRF complex AS–290
class, record segment APDB–35
classes schedule, example APDG–23
Classic command
  format CR–15
Classic commands
  examples CR–14
classification rule AS–177
CLASSPATH ENVAR keyword JGR–60
CLB definition/mapping macro DGR–55
CLDST (/CLSDST) command OG–142
clean up process CSL–111
CLEAR key APTM–259
CLEAR PARTITION key APTM–259
client
  AOP CSL–88
  command processing CSL–88
  commands issued OTMA–30
  definition OTMA–2, OTMA–13
  high-performance access to IMS OTMA–3
  naming conventions for OTMA–14
  number that can connect to OTMA OTMA–3
  OTMA, in XRF environment OTMA–42
  routing OTMA–4
  running on host CSL–88
  security checking OTMA–47
  TSO SPOC CSL–88
  workstation CSL–89
  workstation SPOC CSL–88
Client Connection user-supplied exit routine, CQS
  CQS–53
client exit routines (CQS) CQS–171
client exit routines (CQS)
  Event CQS–171
  Structure Event CQS–173
  Structure Inform CQS–181
client program
  assembling CQS–81
  writing CQS–73
client requests CQS–9, CSL–54
client requests
  assembling a program CQS–81
  authorization CQS–74
  coding CQS–74
  CQSBRWSE CQS–86
  CQSCHKPT CQS–93
  CQSDEL CQS–102
  CQSDEREG CQS–106
  CQSDISC CQS–107
  CQSINFRM CQS–112
  CQSMOVE CQS–116
  CQSPUT CQS–120
  CQQUERY CQS–127
  CQSRREAD CQS–136
  CQSSRCVR CQS–141
  CQSSREG CQS–146
  CQSRSYNC CQS–148
  CQSSHUT CQS–155
  CQSUNLCK CQS–156
client requests (continued)
  CQSUPD CQS–161
  ECB, using CQS–78
  environmental requirements CQS–75
  introduction CQS–73
  lists, using CQS–79
  literals, coding CQS–78
  parameters, coding CQS–76
  requests
    CQSCONN CQS–96
    return and reason codes CQS–79
    sequence of CQS–74
Client Structure Event exit CQS–173
Client Structure Event exit
  parameters CQS–175
Client Structure Event exit
  Structure Inform exit CQS–181
Client Structure Inform exit
  parameters CQS–182
Client_Bid resynch OTMA–30
client-bid message flow OTMA–21
client, definition CQS–1
CLIST command options
  discussion of IIV–95
  DLT 1 IIV–97
  DLT 2 IIV–97
  DLT 3 IIV–97
  DLT 5 IIV–97
  DLT 6 IIV–97
  DLT 7 IIV–97
CLIST (definition) macro DGR–55
  clock
    setting OG–76
  closing a GSAM database explicitly APDB–119,
  APDB–216
CLSDST command
  description CR–144
  environments CR–143
  example CR–145
  FORCE keyword CR–144
  ISC node CR–144
  NODE keyword CR–144
  syntax diagram CR–143
  USER keyword CR–144
  VTAM terminal CR–144
CLSE (Close) call
  description APDB–119
  format APDB–119
  parameters APDB–119
  usage APDB–119
CMD (command trace table) BPE–7
CMD call CR–26
CMD call
  description APTM–74
  examples APTM–75
  format APTM–74, CG–450
  parameters APTM–74
  restrictions APTM–75
  status codes CG–450
  summary APTM–347
  usage APTM–74
  use CG–447
CMD call function APDB–312, APTM–382
CMD call, security AS–124
CMD calls OG–195
CMDAUTH
  CHANGE.RECON DBRC–142
CMDAUTH keyword
deinition CR–50
ERESTART command CR–348
NRESTART command CR–429
CMDAUTH parameter
INIT.RECON DBRC–244
CMDAUTHHE keyword
deinition CR–50
ERESTART command CR–349
NRESTART command CR–429
CMDSEC= parameter AS–409
CMPAT option APCICS–32
CMPAT= parameter keyword
PSBGEN statement URS–134
CMPAT=YES PSB specification APDG–31
CNS keyword
  COMPT command CR–147
deinition CR–50
  RCOMPT command CR–511
CNT definition/mapping macro DGR–55
COBOL APDG–47

COBOL
See also Enterprise COBOL
application programming APTM–37
CICS online, establishing addressability APDB–65
CICS online, optimization feature APDB–65
copybook types JGR–88
DL/I call formats APTM–40
DL/I call formats, example APDB–81
DL/I call-level, sample APDB–60
DL/I command-level sample APCICS–15
DL/I program structure APDB–57
entry statement APDB–108
I/O area APCICS–10
II translator APCICS–29
mapping to IMS JGR–88
parameters, DL/I call format APDB–80
program
  DIB fields APCICS–6
  variable names, mandatory APCICS–6
return statement APDB–108
skeleton MPP APTM–158
SSA definition examples APDB–104
syntax diagram, DL/I call format APDB–79
UIB, specifying APDB–99
V4 APCICS–19
COBOL for MVS & VM and Language Environment
  APDB–113
COBOL programs, coding ISDT–415
COBOL subroutines, preloading AS–207
COBOL/370 and Language Environment APDB–113
code
  course APDG–12
  transaction APDG–33
code inspections ADB–28
code maintenance AS–277

codes ADB–434

codes
  error code examples DGR–343
  status of CHNG and SETO calls DGR–343
codes abend APDG–39
codes, status
  checking APDB–17
  logical relationships APDB–211
coding CICS
  applications for ISC ATM–554
  system generation macros ATM–545
tables ATM–545
coding DC calls and data areas APTM–155
coding DC calls and data areas
  in assembler language APTM–156
in C Language APTM–156
in COBOL APTM–158
in Pascal APTM–160
in PL/I APTM–162
skeleton MPP APTM–156, APTM–158, APTM–160, APTM–162
coding requests CQS–74
coding rules
  SSA APDB–102
coexistence
  database recovery utilities RPG–46
IMSplex and MSC ATM–237
MSC and IMSplex ATM–237
shared message queues RPG–52
SPE RPG–47
coeexistence considerations
automated operator programs RPG–45
CQS RPG–45
data sharing RPG–46
DBRC RPG–47
DEDB SDEPs, format of RPG–48
DEDBs RPG–48
general RPG–45
image copy data sets RPG–46
IVP RPG–49
MSC RPG–49
RSR RPG–50
Syntax Checker RPG–52
Sysplex terminal management RPG–53
TSO SPOC application RPG–53
cold queue, definition CQS–1
cold start CQS–35
cold start
changing RECLNG ISDT–118
cold start commands
  CHANGE.BKOUT DBRC–102
  DELETE.BKOUT DBRC–167
  LIST.BKOUT DBRC–249
general considerations ATM–227
global online change OG–125
local online change OG–125
message integrity ATM–231
MSC ATM–227, ATM–231
multiple in a test environment DBRC–80
result of not specifying MODBLKS ISDT–85,
ISDT–96

76 Master Index and Glossary
cold start (continued)
structures CQS–33
when to perform OG–79, OG–88, OG–125
cold start, recovering ISC sessions ATM–304
COLDDBASE keyword
definition CR–50
ERESTART command CR–349
COLDCOMM keyword
definition CR–50
ERESTART command CR–349
COLDSESS keyword
definition CR–50
COLDSTART statement
Batch Backout utility (DFSBB000) URDBTM–258
COLDSYS keyword
definition CR–51
ERESTART command CR–349
collecting data DGR–9
collecting data
APPC-related problem DGR–14
control or DLI region loop DGR–10
control region hang DGR–10
control region wait DGR–10
CQS-related problem DGR–15
DB2 ESS interface problem DGR–11
DBCTL-related problem DGR–12
DBRC-related problem DGR–12
DC-related problem DGR–13
IMS dependent region loop DGR–11
IMS dependent region wait DGR–11
columns
fields, compared to JGR–73
relational representation, in JGR–74
com.ibm.connector2.ims.db package JGR–4
com.ibm.ims.application package JGR–4
com.ibm.ims.base package JGR–4
com.ibm.ims.db package JGR–4
com.ibm.ims.db.DLIDatabaseView class JGR–90
COMCYCL parameter IIV–76
COMM macro
description ISDT–68
IMSGEN macro, and ISDT–137
MFS, and ISDT–503
parameters ISDT–69
parameters
APPLID= ISDT–70
COPYLOG= ISDT–70
EDTNAME= ISDT–71
FESEXIT= ISDT–71
MFSEXIT= ISDT–72
OPTIONS= ISDT–72
PASSWD= ISDT–74
RECANY= ISDT–74
SECCNT= ISDT–76
SIMEXIT= ISDT–76
relationship to IMSGEN and SECURITY ISDT–137
SECURITY macro, and ISDT–137
syntax diagram ISDT–68
TERMINAL macro, and ISDT–76
time stamp CR–12
VTAM terminals, and ISDT–68, ISDT–70

COMM macro statement ATM–291
COMM macro statement
APPLID keyword AS–302
APPLID= keyword ATM–58
for security options AS–115
PASSWD= keyword ATM–58
PASSWORD keyword AS–302
RECANY= keyword ATM–59
command
/BDUMP DATABASE OTMA–57
/BDUMP database backup copies DBRC–25
/DBRECOVERY AREA OTMA–57
/DEQUEUE TMEMBER TPipe OTMA–56
/DISPLAY TMEMBER OTMA–45
/DISPLAY TRANSACTION OTMA–2
/ERESTART
restart after DBRC failure DBRC–39
restart after IMS failure DBRC–38
/GENJCL DBRC–6
/NRESTART, restart after IMS failure DBRC–38
/RECOVER
ADD keyword CR–518
REMOVE keyword CR–521
START keyword CR–523
START keyword usage CR–523
STOP keyword CR–525
STOP keyword usage CR–525
TERMINATE keyword CR–527
TERMINATE keyword usage CR–527
/REPRO DBRC–58, DBRC–62
/RMGENJCL DBRC–6
/SECURE OTMA OTMA–56
/SECURE OTMA NONE OTMA–47
/START DBRC–19, DBRC–211
/START AREA OTMA–57
/START OTMA OTMA–56
/START REGION OTMA–57
/START TMEMBER OTMA–57
/STOP AREA OTMA–57
/STOP OTMA OTMA–57
/STOP REGION OTMA–57
/STOP TMEMBER OTMA–57
/TRACE SET OTMA–57
ACTIVATE CR–93
ALLOCATE CR–95
alter IMS resources CR–24
AOI CR–26
architected output OTMA–4
ASSIGN CR–97
automated operator transaction CR–26
BACKUP.RECON DBRC–58
behavior in an IMSplex CR–20
BROADCAST CR–113
CANCEL CR–119
CBresynch OTMA–30
CHANGE.PART DBRC–127
CHANGE.PRILOG DBRC–10
CHANGE.RECON DBRC–46
CHANGE.RECON, recovering RECONS DBRC–61
CHANGE.SECLOG DBRC–10
changes for IMS Version 8 CR–xxv
command (continued)
characteristics CR–22
CHECKPOINT CR–137
Classic commands
examples CR–14
CLSDST CR–143
CMD call CR–26
comment CR–20
COMPT CR–147
CQCHKPT CR–151
COQUERY CR–153
CQSET CR–155
DBCTL CR–9, CR–777
DBDUMP command CR–157
DBRECOVERY command CR–161
DCCTL
list CR–779
DEFINE CR–737
DELETE command CR–169
DELETE.LOG DBRC–59
DEQUEUE CR–181
DFSnnn message CR–12
DISPLAY CR–189, CR–739
END CR–343
environments
DB/DC CR–41
ERESTART CR–345
ETO CR–791
examples CR–14
EXCLUSIVE CR–357
EXIT CR–359
F fdbrproc CR–707
F fdbrproc,DUMP command CR–707
F fdbrproc,RECOVER command CR–707
F fdbrproc,STATUS command CR–707
F fdbrproc,STOP command CR–708
F fdbrproc,TERM command CR–708
F irlrmpc,ABEND command CR–709
F irlrmpc,DIAG,DELAY command CR–710
F irlrmpc,PURGE,imsname command CR–711
F irlrmpc,SET command CR–712
F irlrmpc,STATUS command CR–715
F irlrmpc,STOP command CR–701
F irlrmpc,STOP command CR–705
format
DBCTL CR–15
FORMAT command CR–363
format, IMSplex CR–21
generic parameters CR–18
GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–11
GENMAX DBRC–15
HOLD CR–365
IAM CR–367
ICMD CR–28
IDLE CR–369
INIT.ADS DBRC–9
INIT.CAGRP DBRC–16
command (continued)
INIT.DB DBRC–9
INIT.DBDS DBRC–9, DBRC–15
INIT.PART DBRC–239
INIT.RECON DBRC–42
INIT.RECON, establishing RECONs for log control
DBRC–9
INIT.RECON, recovering RECONs DBRC–61
input maximum length from MVS consoles CR–7
issued by client OTMA–30
keywords CR–16, CR–41
LOCK CR–399
LOG CR–403
logged to secondary master terminal CR–25
LOOPTEST CR–405
LU 6.2 device
allocate conversation CR–9
command response CR–12
list of CR–36
security defaults CR–37
maximum length input from MVS consoles CR–7
MODIFY CR–407
MONITOR CR–415
MSASSIGN CR–417
MSVERIFY CR–421
multisegment input CR–7
MVS/ESA
entering commands CR–3
MVS/ESA, used for IMS CR–693
NODE USER keyword combinations CR–789
NOTIFY.UIC DBRC–15
NRESTART CR–425
OM API
command response CR–13
online
/DMCHANGE command DBRC–98
/RMDELETE command DBRC–98
/RMGENJCL command DBRC–98
/RMINIT command DBRC–98
/RMLIST command DBRC–98
/RMNOTIFY DBRC–98
ONPNDST command CR–437
OS/390, used for IMS CR–693
OTMA
/DMDISPLAY ACTIVE OTMA–54
/DMDISPLAY OTMA OTMA–55
/DMDISPLAY SHUTDOWN STATUS OTMA–55
/DMDISPLAY STATUS TMEMBER OTMA–55
/DMDISPLAY TMEMBER ALL OTMA–55
/DMDISPLAY TMEMBER QCNT OTMA–55
/DMDISPLAY TRACE TMEMBER OTMA–56
/DMDISPLAY TRANSACTION OTMA–56
list of CR–36
security defaults CR–37
P cqsjob CR–721
P irlrmpc CR–723
parameters CR–16
processing
choosing a master client CR–21
processing in an IMSplex CR–20
PSTOP command CR–443
command (continued)
PURGE CR–451
QUIESCE command CR–507
RCLSDST command CR–509
RCOMPT command CR–511
RDISPLAY command CR–513
RECOVER CR–515
RECOVER
  ADD keyword CR–518
  REMOVE keyword usage CR–521
  STOP keyword CR–525
recovered at emergency restart CR–24
recovered at emergency CR–24
RELEASE command CR–533
REPresynch OTMA–30
REQresynch OTMA–30
reserved words CR–17
RESET command CR–535
response CR–12
response with EXCEPT phrase CR–12
RMCHANGE command CR–537
RMDELETE command CR–537
RMGENJCL command CR–537
RMINIT command CR–537
RMLIST command CR–537
RMNOTIFY command CR–537
RMxxxxxx command CR–537
routing
commands in an IMSplex CR–20
RSR
  supported on the tracker CR–33
RSTART command CR–545
RTAKEOVER CR–551
S irmlproc command CR–697
SECURE CR–555
security CR–31
SET CR–745
SET command CR–559
shared secondary index database CR–787
SIGN CR–563
SMCOPY command CR–569
SRVresynch OTMA–30
SSR command CR–571
START CR–747
START command CR–573
status
  emergency restart CR–25
STOP CR–749
STOP command CR–601
  supported by OM API CR–37, RPG–162
SWITCH command CR–629
TBresynch OTMA–30
terminal security defaults CR–22
TEST command CR–643
TRACE CR–647
transaction-entered CR–26
UNLOCK command CR–669
valid DBRC log related commands DBRC–11
validation OTMA–47
VUNLOAD CR–689
command (continued)
XRF
  mirrored on the alternate CR–31
  supported on the alternate CR–32
Command (CMD) call
  See CMD call APTM–74
command and command response message
cross-reference CG–462
command and response token CSL–216
command authorization
description AS–120
  input command buffer AS–121
  LU 6.2 AS–121
Command Authorization exit routine (DFSCCMD0)
CG–151
Command Authorization exit routine (DFSCCMD0)
AO applications CG–152
attributes CG–151, CG–155
description CG–151
  environments supported CG–151, CG–155
ETO terminals CG–153
IMS Open Transaction Manager Access CG–153
  link editing CG–151, CG–155
LU 6.2 application program CG–152
  naming convention CG–151, CG–155
  non-shared queues environment CG–153
  registers CG–153
  registers
    contents on entry CG–153
    contents on exit CG–154
  sample routine location CG–151, CG–155
  shared queues environment CG–153
  static terminals CG–152
  with callable services CG–151, CG–155
  with MCS/E-MCS consoles CG–153
Command Authorization Exit Routine (DFSCCMD0)
IMS callable services CG–152
IMS environments CG–151
  including the routine CG–152
  link-editing CG–151
  naming convention CG–151
  sample routine location CG–152
Command Authorization user exit (DFSCCMD0)
URS–183
command codes APDB–24, APDB–30
command codes
C
description APDB–29
  SSAs APDB–24
D
examples APDB–27, APDB–30
  Get calls APDB–30
  ISRT call APDB–31
  P processing option APDB–30
DEDBs APDB–28
description APDB–27
DL/I calls APDB–28
F
Get calls APDB–31
  HERE insert rule APDB–136
  ISRT call APDB–32

Index 79
command codes (continued)

- **F (continued)**
  - restrictions APDB–241

- **L**
  - FIRST insert rule APDB–33, APDB–136
  - Get calls APDB–33

- **M** APDB–40

- **N** APDB–33

- **Null** APDB–39

- **overview** APDB–27

- **P** APDB–34

- **Q** APDB–34, APDB–250

- **qualified SSAs** APDB–27

- **R** APDB–41

- **reference** APDB–295

- **restrictions** APDB–102

- **S** APDB–42

- **subset pointers** APDB–28, APDB–234, APDB–236

- **summary** APDB–27

- **unqualified SSAs** APDB–27

- **V** APDB–38

- **Z** APDB–44

Command codes

- **U** APDB–37

Command deregistration request CSL–78

Command directive CSL–91

Command editor CG–137, CG–245

Command exit routine CG–518

Command Level API, CICS APCICS–29

Command override CSL–77

Command processing client requests CSL–76

Command processing clients

registering CSL–37

Command recognition character (CRC) CG–504, ISDT–458

Command response directive CSL–93

Command response request CSL–85

Command responses CG–450, CG–460

Command security CSL–39

Command syntax

- comment DBRC–88
- continuation characters DBRC–88
- DBRC DBRC–87
- definition DBRC–88
- description for DBRC utility DBRC–88
- notational conventions DBRC–96
- parameters DBRC–89
- separators DBRC–88

Command-level programs (continued)

- DL/I calls available to IMS and CICS APCICS–107
- I/O area, defining APCICS–9
- key feedback area, defining APCICS–9
- preparing EXEC DL/I program for execution APCICS–28
- sample assembler language APCICS–12
- sample C APCICS–23
- sample COBOL APCICS–15
- sample PL/I APCICS–19
- status codes, checking APCICS–7
- syntax of EXEC DL/I commands APCICS–33

Commands BPE–21, CG–501

Commands

/CHANGE CG–553
/CHECKPOINT ISDT–3
/DBR AREA ADB–265
/DISPLAY CG–461, ISDT–5
/DISPLAY SUBSYS CG–553
/ERE BLDQ IV–53
/FOR IVTNO IV–133, IV–162
/NRE ADB–274, IV–53
/OPNDST IV–75
/SSR CG–504
/STA DATABASE ADB–415
/START OLDS IV–49
/START SUBSYS CG–501, CG–553
/STOP AREA ADB–111
/STOP DATABASE ADB–111
/STOP SUBSYS CG–501, CG–553
/TRACE ISDT–462

/TRACE

DASD log activity, tracing ISDT–383
DB2 subsystem connection, tracing ISDT–387
DBF entries from FP, tracing ISDT–384
dispatcher activity, tracing ISDT–383
DL/I activity, tracing ISDT–383
lock activity, tracing ISDT–385
options ISDT–382
ORS, tracing ISDT–385
OTMA control, tracing ISDT–386
queue manager, tracing ISDT–386
RSR log router, tracing ISDT–385
scheduler, tracing ISDT–386
shared queues interface, tracing ISDT–387
storage manager calls, tracing ISDT–387

See also IMS commands

ADDRESS CSL–215
affecting MSC operation ATMA–228
AO application CG–459
AOI OG–192, OG–193
asynchronous reply ATMA–536
automated operator CG–449
BPE CSL–23
CICS EXEC
asynchronous API ATMA–533
creating DFC protocols ATMA–533
functions available ATMA–535
program flow ATMA–537
synchronous API ATMA–533
CLIST IV–95

80 Master Index and Glossary
commands (continued)
CRC (command recognition character) CG–504, ISDT–458
CSLULGTS CSL–217
data sharing OG–205
DBCTL environment AS–14
DCCTL environment AS–18
DEFINE CLUSTER ADB–259, ADB–261, ADB–312
delete [log DBRC IIV–50]
effect on resources OG–104
enhancements
introduction to RPG–13
EXEC DLI
ACCEPT APCICS–69
CHKP APCICS–69
DEQ APCICS–70
DLET APCICS–35
GN APCICS–36
GNP APCICS–41
GU APCICS–47
ISRT APCICS–53
LOAD APCICS–71
LOG APCICS–72
POS APCICS–59
QUERY APCICS–73
REFRESH APCICS–74
REPL APCICS–60
RETRIEVE APCICS–64
ROLB APCICS–75
ROLL APCICS–76
ROLS APCICS–77
SCHD APCICS–66
SETS APCICS–78
SETU APCICS–79
STAT APCICS–80
summary APCICS–33
SYMCHKP APCICS–81
TERM APCICS–83
XRST APCICS–83
for end users OG–333, OG–342
for multiple resources OG–104
format of OG–342
HALDB CR–805
HELP IIV–93
IMS
parallel ISC sessions ATM–268
start system ATM–63
IMSPlex OG–38
INIT SELF IIV–75
issuing from an ISC session ATM–268
issuing to the IMSPlex CSL–23
keywords ATM–228
LUSTATUS protocol, ISC ATM–343
Modify CSL–27
not issued directly to OM CSL–23
OS/390 syntax CSL–27
PRNs, not specified on IMS commands ATM–379
processing considerations in a CSL CSL–38
recovery at ISC session failure ATM–306
response, AOI OG–193
REXX subcommands CSL–215
commands (continued)
REXX subcommands
CART CSL–216
END CSL–217
IMS CSL–216
ROUTE CSL–216
WAIT CSL–216
routing CSL–38
SCHD PSB APCICS–22
SET BDY IIV–14
SHUTDOWN CSLPLEX CSL–28
called by OM API CR–37, RPG–162
symbolic checkpoint APCICS–81, APCICS–83
system service APCICS–68
transaction reply ATM–538
transport manager CR–735
VTAM
BID ATM–447
BIS ATM–353, ATM–553
CANCEL ATM–336, ATM–492
CHASE ATM–337
commands and indicators ATM–264, ATM–437
LUSTATUS command ATM–341, ATM–491
LUSTATUS with CICS ATM–357, ATM–558
RSHUT ATM–345
RTR ATM–491
SBT ATM–353, ATM–553
SIGNAL ATM–353, ATM–492
VTAM VARY IIV–75
XRF OG–241
commands allowed, EXEC DLI APCICS–34
commands and responses
message cross-reference CG–453
not passed to exit routine CG–245
passed to exit routine CG–245
commands, EXEC DLI APDG–6
commands, IMS OTMA–54
comment
command CR–20
COMMENT statement
conditional (T) APDB–326, APTM–396
unconditional (U) APDB–326, APTM–396
COMMNTS statement APDG–142
commit
LUSTATUS command ATM–343
mode OTMA–16
processing OTMA–16
sample flows OTMA–17
single-phase OG–42
summary of processing OTMA–16
two-phase OG–40
UOR OG–42
work unit ATM–302, ATM–568
COMMIT command OG–121
Commit Continue exit routine CG–519
commit database changes APCICS–2
COMMIT keyword
definition CR–51
MODIFY Command CR–408
commit point
See also backout point
definition OG–5
dynamic backout OG–69
process OG–39
relationship to check point and sync point OG–39
commit point processing
DEDB APDB–239
MSDB APDB–229
commit points APDG–31, APDG–38
commit points. APDG–60
Commit Prepare exit routine CG–520
Commit Verify exit routine CG–522
commit-then-send flow OTMA–17, OTMA–24
committing your program's changes to a database
APCICS–87
Common Queue Server
See see CQS
Common Queue Server (CQS)
See also CQS (Common Queue Server)
coexistence considerations RPG–45
enhancements
introduction to RPG–16
overview RPG–99
migrating RPG–39
Common Queue Server.
See CQS
Common Service Layer
and Base Primitive Environment CSL–2
and CQS CSL–13
benefits CSL–2
command processing considerations CSL–38
communication CSL–147
configuration examples CSL–6
configuration recommendation CSL–7
definition CQS–1
DFSCGxxx PROCLIB CSL–14
introduction CSL–1
minimum configuration CSL–8
Operations Manager
overview CSL–3, CSL–31
PROCLIB members CSL–14
Resource Manager
overview CSL–3
startup procedure CSL–97
shutting down CSL–25
Structured Call Interface
definition and tailoring CSL–147
overview CSL–4, CSL–147
startup procedure CSL–147
system definition and tailoring CSL–13
Common Service Layer (CSL)
DFSVSMxx
CSLT= ISDT–383
introduction to RPG–16
Member DFSCGxxx ISDT–322
Operations Manager (OM) ISDT–431
Resource Manager (RM) ISDT–431
Structured Call Interface (SCI) ISDT–431
Common Storage Area virtual constraint relief RPG–5
common synchronization point process, ADB–385
common trace table interface DGR–163
communicating with IMS OG–339
communicating with other IMS TM systems APTM–132
communication analyzer (DFSICIOO)
See DFSICIOO (communication analyzer)
Communication Controller AS–256
Communication IWAIT report AS–215, AS–216
Communication Summary report AS–215
Communication Summary report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–371
IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–426
communication task trace
description DGR–363
Communication Wait report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–372
IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–427
communications controller ATM–7, ATM–8
communications network ATM–5
communications network components
responsibilities ATM–6, ATM–20
Finance Communication System ATM–434
SLU P system ATM–434
communications, establishing ATM–12
COMP keyword
definition CR–51
COMP parameter commands
CHANGE.CA DBRC–106
NOTIFY.CA DBRC–272
COMP= parameter
ACBGEN procedure URS–158
COMPARE option DGR–261
COMPARE statement APDG–142, DGR–219
COMPARE statement
COMPARE AIB APDB–329, APTM–399
COMPARE DATA APDB–327, APTM–397
COMPARE PCB APDB–329, APTM–399
introduction APDB–327, APTM–397
comparing EXEC DL{l
commands with DL/I calls APCICS–107
options with command codes APCICS–108
comparison of symbolic CHKP and basic CHKP
APDG–41
compatibility RPG–53
compatibility
3270 printer and SLU 1 APTM–359
converting device definitions to SLU P APTM–360
SLU P APTM–360
compatibility considerations
IMS Version 6, IMS Version 7, and IMS Version 8
RPG–54
compilation statements
ALPHA URDBTM–435, URDBTM–510
COPY URDBTM–435, URDBTM–510
EJECT URDBTM–515
END URDBTM–515
EQU URDBTM–511
PRINT URDBTM–514
RESCAN URDBTM–512
SPACE URDBTM–514
STACK URDBTM–513
component, compiler, COBOL APCICS–16
compiling, options with EXEC DLI APCICS–29
COMPINOP state ATM–39
complex expressions DBRC–319
component
  shutting down OG–86
component definition
    LTERM naming ATM–272, ATM–443
    parameter definitions ATM–332
    selection
      input component ATM–273, ATM–443
      output component ATM–275, ATM–276, ATM–444
      SLU P input component ATM–444
      SLU P system ATM–443
component identification keyword procedure DGR–19
COMPONENT keyword
  3275 terminal CR–102
  3770 terminal CR–102
  ASSIGN command CR–101
  definition CR–51
  SLU 1 terminal CR–102
  SLU 4 terminal CR–102
  SLU P terminal CR–102
component protection
  extended output ATM–452
  state ATM–39
component, as part of RSR name AS–324
components of a CQS CQS–5
COMPR= operand (DIV statement)
  specifying URDBTM–479
COMPR= operand (DIV statement), specifying APTM–300
compressing data ADB–211
compression
  PRILOG DBRC–59, DBRC–74
compression facility
  See segment edit/compression facility ADB–17
COMPRTN parameter
  DBD SEGM statement ADB–418
COMPRTN= keyword
  DEEB URS–68
  DL/I URS–68
  SEGM statement URS–67
COMPT (/COMPT) command OG–108
COMPT command
  CNS keyword CR–147
  CRD keyword CR–147
  description CR–148
  environments CR–147
  examples CR–148
  NOTRDY keyword CR–148
  PCH keyword CR–147
COMPT command (continued)
  PDS keyword CR–147
  PRT keyword CR–147
  RDR keyword CR–147
  READY keyword CR–148
  ready state CR–148
  syntax diagram CR–147
  TDS keyword CR–147
  UDS keyword CR–147
  USER keyword CR–147
  VID keyword CR–147
  WPM1 keyword CR–147
  WPM2 keyword CR–147
  WPM3 keyword CR–147
COMTERM request CG–574
concatenated data sets
  GSAM APDB–221
concatenated equates
  See equate processing
concatenated key
  converting ADB–413
  fields ADB–193
    in symbolic pointing ADB–187
    logical parent’s ADB–155
concatenated key and PCB mask APDB–93, APDB–215
concatenated key, segment APCICS–9
concatenated segments ADB–160, ADB–169
concatenated segments, logical relationships APDB–210
 concurrent access to full-function databases APDG–31
 concurrent image copy OG–62
 concurrent image copy
    recovery OG–160
 concurrent image copy (CIC)
    CIC parameter DBRC–195
    database backup copies DBRC–26
    registered database with DBRC DBRC–15
COND= keyword
  File Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSERA10) URS–267
COND= operand
  DPAGE statement
    specifying URDBTM–483
COND= operand (DPAGE statement), specifying APTM–304
COND= operand (LPAGE statement), specifying URDBTM–444
CONFIG macro
  description ISDT–76
  IDLIST macro, and ISDT–76
  Label Field ISDT–76
  LINE macro, and ISDT–76
  LINEGRP macro, and ISDT–76
  MFS ISDT–506
  parameters ISDT–77
  FFEAT= ISDT–77
  FEAT= ISDT–77
  OPTIONS= ISDT–77
  PCH= ISDT–77
  PTRSIZE= ISDT–77
  syntax diagram ISDT–76
CONFIG macro statement AS–72
Index 83
configuration
HALDB ADB–504
WebSphere Application Server for z/OS environment
JGR–49
configurations
Finance Communication System ATM–434
ISC ATM–258, ATM–259
SLU P system ATM–434
VTAM–62
connected array APCICS–10
connecting multiple IMS systems ATM–213
connecting to IMS OG–337
connection
description ATM–265, ATM–439
IMS session parameters
ISC ATM–299, ATM–300
restriction against altering ATM–439
XRF complex, establishing connections ATM–440
connection failures
coupling facility OG–225
Connection object JGR–93
connector APDB–124
considerations
when using DBRC DBRC–10
considerations in screen design APDG–95
consoles for operators AS–302
CONST= keyword
XDFLD statement URS–83
constant field ADB–192
CONSTANT parameter ADB–204
contention, avoiding RECON DBRC–42
contention, bracket ATM–301, ATM–455
contents
DBRC DGR–377
context OTMA–51
continuation characters DBRC–88
CONTINUE-WITH-TERMINATION indicator APDG–47
continuing a conversation APDG–96
CONTINUOUS keyword
definition CR–51
RESTART command CR–546
control address space.
See CTL address space
control block call (continued)
losing assignment changes when deleted CR–61, CR–106
LTERM, preventing deletion of CR–66
macros that generate DGR–55
mapping macros DGR–55, DGR–288
MFS ATM–78
MODBLKS subset CR–407
relationships created for MAIN pool DGR–75
relationships for DFSCBT00 pools DGR–79
relationships for DFSPool pools DGR–78
relationships for preallocated storage blocks DGR–76
sequential buffering diagram DGR–71
terminal
specifying the logon descriptor CR–130
trace
information CR–652
module CR–654
turning off CR–658
user
preventing deletion of CR–66
control block callable services CG–19
control block mapping
EEVT CG–507, CG–516
EEVTP CG–515
control block table
See CBT (control block table) pool
control blocks
creation by MFS Language utility URDBTM–387
EEVT CG–515
EEVTP CG–515
mapping control blocks.
See control block mapping
MFS Language utility URDBTM–383, URDBTM–384
testing URDBTM–393
control blocks, MFS APTM–168
control blocks, MFS
chained control blocks APTM–249
summary APTM–168
testing APTM–176
control blocks, relocation during special abend processing DGR–346
Control Center for IMS
overview RPG–17
requirements RPG–26
control character ATM–86
control function, MFS
See MFS (Message Format Service)
control group, skeletal JCL DBRC–315
control interval
See CI (control interval) ADB–66
control interval definition field (CIDF) ADB–308
control interval update sequence number (CUSN) ADB–116
control intervals ISDT–269
control keywords, skeletal JCL DBRC–315, DBRC–330
control program AS–11
control region
activity
recording OG–306
control program (continued)
  DCCTL environment, in a AS–16
  definition AS–9, AS–11
  DL/I calls AS–11
  execution parameters AS–91
  failures OG–150
  IMSplex, in a AS–405
  starting or restarting OG–75
  stopping OG–138
control region loop, diagnosing DGR–10
control region wait or hang, diagnosing DGR–10
control region, FMTIMS statement example DGR–135
CONTROL statement
  File Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSERA10)
    URS–263
Control Statement Listing URS–85
Control Statement Listing
  assembler listing URS–86
  diagnostics URS–85
control statements
  DLIModel utility JGR–98, JGR–102
    example JGR–116
    format JGR–104
    including JGR–109
    syntax JGR–110
    typical sequence JGR–103
    when to use JGR–103
control statements, CFNAMES AS–385
control unit
  2848 ISDT–77
  2972 ISDT–77
  3271 ISDT–77
  CTLUNIT macro ISDT–77
control, passing processing APDG–6
CONTROLINTERVALSIZE keyword DBRC–46
controlling output ATM–87, ATM–90
conventions, naming APDG–9
Conversation Abnormal Termination exit routine
  ATM–209
conversation attributes
  asynchronous APDG–106
  MSC synchronous and asynchronous APDG–106
  synchronous APDG–105
CONVERSATION keyword
  definition CR–51
  DISPLAY command
    description CR–215
    example CR–286
  EXIT command CR–360
  RELEASE command CR–533
  SET command CR–559
conversation mode
  errors
    detection ATM–317
    ISC ATM–317, ATM–319
    explained ATM–37
  IMS–CICS ATM–557
  IMSplex, in an ATM–132
  normal termination, ISC extension ATM–318
  restriction ATM–287
  conversation state, rules for APPC verbs APDG–107
  conversation status OG–110
Conversational Abnormal Termination exit routine (DFSCONE0)
  attributes CG–272
  description CG–271
  including the routine CG–272
  interface CG–272
  link editing CG–272
  naming convention CG–272
  registers
    contents on entry CG–272
    contents on exit CG–275
    sample location CG–272
    using callable services CG–272
Conversational Abnormal Termination Exit Routine (DFSCONE0)
  IMS callable services CG–272
  IMS environments CG–272
  including the routine CG–272
  link-editing CG–272
  naming convention CG–272
  sample routine location CG–272
conversational control blocks, changes to RPG–35
conversational mode
  description APDG–100
  LU 6.2 transactions APDG–105
  conversational processing ATM–31
  conversational processing
    abnormal termination of, precautions for APDG–98
    by deferred switch APTM–140
    by immediate switch APTM–140
    coding necessary information APTM–145
    continuing the conversation APTM–139
    deferred program switch APDG–96
    designing a conversation APDG–96
    DFSCONE0 APDG–98
    ending the conversation and passing control APTM–142
    example APTM–135
    for APPC/IMS APTM–144
    gathering requirements APDG–95
    how to continue the conversation APDG–96
    how to end the conversation APDG–97
    immediate program switch APDG–97
    message formats APTM–139
    overview APTM–95, APTM–134
    passing control and continuing the conversation APTM–140, APTM–141
    passing the conversation to another program APDG–96
    recovery considerations APDG–98
    replying to the terminal APTM–139
    restrictions APTM–138, APTM–141
    ROLB call APTM–136
    ROLL call APTM–136
    ROLS call APTM–136
    SPA APDG–97
    status CR–215
    steps in a conversational program APTM–137
    structure APTM–136
conversational processing (continued)
  use with alternate response PCBs APDG–100
  using a deferred program switch to end the conversation APDG–97
  using ROLB, ROLL and ROLS in APTM–140
  what happens in a conversation APDG–96
conversational processing in MSC ATM–215, ATM–216
conversational processing in MSC
  abend ATM–217
  planning for ATM–214
  remote destination verification ATM–216
conversational program
  definition APTM–134
  conversational transactions ATM–31, JGR–21
  conversations
    protected OTMA–51
  conversations, preventing abnormal termination APDG–98
conversion
  See also procedures, modifying a database
    3270 device format, example APTM–357
    device formats APTM–356
conversion, batch jobs to BMPs AS–385
converting an existing application APDG–10
coordinated online change
  enabling CSL–15
  introduction to RPG–17
  libraries CSL–16
  overview CSL–15
  Resource Manager’s role CSL–16
  resources supported CSL–16
  Coordinated Online Change
  enhancements
    overview RPG–111
coordinating IMSplex-wide processes CSL–111
coordinating performance information for MSC ATM–233
  coordinator controller.
    See CCTCL (coordinator controller)
  coordinator, sync-point APDG–108
COPIES parameter commands
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–194
  GENJCL.OIC DBRC–203
copy
  structures CQS–46
  copy function
    bit 4 of SCA, byte 1 APTM–277
    description APTM–235
    remote terminals URDBTM–496
COPY option
  File Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSERA10)
    URS–266
Copy Start-up Variables process IIIV–103
COPY statement
  Log Archive utility URS–223
COPY statement (language utility) URDBTM–435,
  URDBTM–510
COPY= keyword
  control statements
    UCF FUNCTION=RU URDBTM–364
    UCF FUNCTION=SU URDBTM–370
    UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–372
  copybook types JGR–88
  copying log records CQS–188
  copying log records into user data sets, Log Archive utility URS–217
  copyright panel IIIV–98
  corrective service
    installing IIIV–79
  correlator token OTMA–7
COUNT keyword JGR–83
counter
  in logical relationships ADB–162
  introduction ADB–15
couple data set format utility CQS–47
coupling facility
  connection failures OG–225
  defining CFRM policy
    example ATM–101
    definition ATM–13
  failure due to IMS restart OG–228
  failure in rebuilding OG–228
  hardware AS–378
  IMSplex, in an AS–400
  MADSIOT ADB–146
  monitoring structures OG–207
  OSAM data caching ISDT–394
  resource structure AS–404
  shared storage AS–378
  structure
    cache AS–378
    cache example AS–379
    calculating size AS–387
    changing the size of AS–389
    duplexing AS–380
    size altering AS–380
    system-managed rebuild AS–379
  Structure Alter AS–389
  structure failures OG–226
  structure names for Sysplex data sharing ISDT–392
  structures ADB–135, AS–378
  structures, naming convention ADB–135
  using AS–375
coupling facility duplexing support RPG–12
  coupling facility structures (CFSTR1 | 2) DBRC–233
coupling facility, definition CQS–1
course code APDG–12
CP (free space chain pointer) field ADB–92
CPC (central processor complex)
  definition AS–249
  failure
    as cause of takeover AS–254, AS–270
    monitored by alternate IMS AS–258
    requirement for XRF AS–250, AS–256
CPI Communications application program ATM–395
CPI Communications application program
  abnormal termination ATM–396
  APSB call ATM–395
  ATBCMTTP verb ATM–396
  Backout call ATM–397
  backout processing ATM–396
  Commit call ATM–395
  commit processing ATM–395
CPI Communications application program (continued)

DB2 plan name, use of ATM–395
ESS Attach Facility ATM–395
in-doubt unit of recovery, definition ATM–400
in-flight unit of recovery, definition ATM–400
normal termination ATM–396
programming requirements ATM–398
pseudonym files ATM–398
recovery ATM–397
resolve-in-doubt processing ATM–397
return codes ATM–397
return codes
  RR_BACKED_OUT ATM–397
  RR_OK ATM–397
  RR_PROGRAM_STATE_CHECK ATM–397
RTT ATM–395
session failure ATM–396
SQL calls ATM–395
SRRCMIT ATM–395
system restart ATM–397
two-phase commit process and ATM–399

CPI Communications driven application program for LU 6.2 devices APDG–104

CPI Communications driven program
  recovery OG–168
  sync point OG–40

CPI communications driven transactions
  ASSIGN PARLIM command CR–106
  ASSIGN PLMCT command CR–106
  ASSIGN SEGNO command CR–107

CPI Resource Recovery calls OG–40

CPI-C (Common Programming Interface for Communications) ATM–9

CPI-C (Common Programming Interface for Communications)
  APPC/IMS ATM–26
  initialization ATM–26
  side information ATM–27
  transactions ATM–29

CPI-C driven application programs
  security considerations in AS–127

CPLOG
  DISPLAY command CR–215

CPLOG keyword
  CHANGE command CR–124

CHANGE command
  cp_log CR–124
  definition CR–51

DISPLAY command
  description CR–215

CPM definition/mapping macro DGR–55

CPRI keyword
  ASSIGN command CR–102
  definition CR–51

CPT definition/mapping macro DGR–55

CQCHKPT command (continued)
  syntax diagram CR–151
  SYSTEM keyword CR–151

CQQUERY command
  description CR–153
  environments CR–153
  examples CR–154
  STATISTICS keyword CR–153
  STRUCTURE keyword CR–153
  syntax diagram CR–153

CQS
  address space CSL–2, ISDT–365
  procedures for CSL CSL–14
  shared queues, placing messages on ISDT–287

CQS (Common Queue Server)
  requests.
    See requests

CQS (Common Queue Server) ATM–13, ATM–105, CQS–1, CQS–11

CQS (Common Queue Server)
  access with IMS commands ATM–108
  administering CQS–31
  authorization CQS–37
  benefits CQS–5
  checkpoint data set ATM–15
  client
    exit routines ATM–16
    client connection
      establishing CQS–36
  client exit routines
    Event CQS–171
    Structure Event CQS–173
    Structure Inform CQS–181
  client failure CQS–36
  client, definition ATM–13
  clients CQS–165
  cold start ATM–106
  components CQS–5
  coupling facility
    changing structure size ATM–107
  data sets CQS–27
  defining CQS–11, CQS–15
  definition CQS–1
  definitions ATM–13
  definitions
    execution parameters ATM–104
    global structure parameters ATM–104
    initialization parameters ATM–104
    local structure parameters ATM–104
  diagnosis CQS–185, DGR–15, DGR–459
  DISPLAY command CR–215
  execution data sets CQS–27
  execution data sets
    structure recovery data set CQS–28
    system checkpoint data set CQS–27
  execution parameters
    description CQS–17
    specifying CQS–17
  exit routines.
    See CQS user-supplied exit routines
  failure CQS–36

Index 87
CQS (Common Queue Server) (continued)
failures OG–170
functions CQS–6
global structure definition PROCLIB member
description CQS–22
keywords CQS–22
specifying CQS–22
IMSpelix, in a AS–400
information for restart CQS–32
initialization parameters PROCLIB member
description CQS–19
keywords CQS–19
specifying CQS–19
initializing in a IMSpelix AS–405
JCL for printing log records CQS–187
list structures
planning ATM–109
local structure definition PROCLIB member
description CQS–20
keywords CQS–20
specifying CQS–20
log records CQS–185, DGR–459
log recovery OG–156
logging
OC/390 logger ATM–108
multiple clients CQS–14
MVS log data set OG–49
overview ATM–16, CQS–4
parameters
CQS CQS–17
CQS PROCLIB CQS–19
preparing to start CQS–15
printing DGR–461
printing log records CQS–187
rebuilding structures CQS–43
recovering CQS–43
resource structure AS–404
resource structure
attributes AS–405
restarting ATM–106, CQS–36
restarting
after system checkpoint ATM–107
cold start CQS–35
description CQS–34
warm start CQS–34
restarting information CQS–32
restarting structures CQS–32
restarting structures
allocation CQS–32
restarting after system checkpoint CQS–39
set up tracing DGR–7
shared queue environment, in a ATM–15
shutting down ATM–108, CQS–48
starting ATM–106, CQS–31, OG–82
stopping OG–144
structure cold start CQS–33
structure recovery data set OG–49
structure types managed CQS–6
structure warm start CQS–32
structures
checkpoint, initiating ATM–107
CQS (Common Queue Server) (continued)
structures (continued)
copying ATM–107
rebuilding ATM–107
recovering ATM–107
system checkpoint ATM–107
system checkpoint
data sets ATM–107
initiating ATM–107
restart ATM–107
system checkpoint data set OG–49
tailoring CQS–11
user-supplied exit routines ATM–106
warm start ATM–106
warm start
log token ATM–106
CQS Event exit CQS–171
CQS Event exit
abnormal termination CQS–173
parameters CQS–172
parameters, abnormal termination CQS–172
CQS exit routine PROCLIB member
EXITMBR parameter BPE–12
CQS keyword
definition CR–51
DISPLAY command
description CR–215
examples CR–288
CQS restart
definition CQS–2
CQS statistics
using BPE Statistics user exit CQS–71
CQS structure overflow function CQS–41
CQS terms CQS–1
CQS trace table types
* (asterisk) BPE–8
CQS BPE–8
ERR BPE–8
INTF BPE–8
STR BPE–8
CQS user-supplied exit routines CQS–51
CQS user-supplied exit routines
Client Connection
general CQS–53
parameters CQS–54
register contents CQS–54
general information CQS–51
Initialization-Termination (Init-Term)
general CQS–52
parameters CQS–53
register contents CQS–52
Queue Overflow
general CQS–55
parameters CQS–56
register contents CQS–56
Structure Event
checkpoint parameters CQS–68
connection parameters CQS–67
general CQS–66
overflow parameters CQS–70
rebuild parameters CQS–69
CQS user-supplied exit routines (continued)
Structure Event (continued)
    register contents CQS–67
    routine parameters CQS–67
    status change parameters CQS–71
Structure Statistics
    CQS request statistics record CQS–59
    data object statistics record CQS–60
    general CQS–57
    MVS request statistics record CQS–61
    parameters CQS–58
    queue name statistics record CQS–61
    register contents CQS–57
    structure checkpoint statistics entry CQS–65
    structure checkpoint statistics record CQS–64
    structure process statistics record CQS–59
    structure rebuild statistics record CQS–62
CQS-managed rebuild CQS–44
CQSBRWSE request CQS–86
CQSBRWS request
    functions CQS–86
    parameters CQS–88
    return and reason codes CQS–92
    syntax CQS–86
    usage CQS–87
CQSCHKPT request
    format CQS–93
    parameters CQS–95
    return and reason codes CQS–96
    syntax CQS–93
    usage CQS–94
CQSCONN request
    format CQS–96
    parameters CQS–97
    return and reason codes CQS–101
    syntax CQS–96
    usage CQS–97
CQSDEL request
    format CQS–102
    parameter CQS–102
    return and reason codes CQS–105
    syntax CQS–102
    usage CQS–102
CQSDEREG request
    format CQS–106
    parameters CQS–106
    return and reason codes CQS–107
    syntax CQS–106
    usage CQS–106
CQSDISC request
    format CQS–107
    parameters CQS–109
    return and reason codes CQS–111
    syntax CQS–107
    usage CQS–108
CQSET command (continued)
    STRUCTURE keyword CR–155
    syntax diagram CR–155
CQSET command
    CQSSGxxx CQS–22
    CQSIxxx CQS–19, CSL–14
    CQSLocal, definition CQS–2
    CQSMOVE request
    format CQS–116
    parameters CQS–118
    return and reason codes CQS–119
    syntax CQS–116
    usage CQS–117
    CQSPUT request
    actions CQS–122
    format CQS–120
    parameters CQS–123
    return and reason codes CQS–126
    syntax CQS–120
    timestamp for shared queue message CQS–122
    usage CQS–121
    CQSQUERY request
    format CQS–127
    parameters CQS–131
    return and reason codes CQS–135
    syntax CQS–127
    usage CQS–129
    CQSREAD request
    example CQS–165
    format CQS–136
    functions CQS–136
    parameters CQS–138
    return and reason codes CQS–140
    syntax CQS–136
    usage CQS–137
    C QSRECVR request
    format CQS–141
    functions CQS–141
    parameters CQS–143
    return and reason codes CQS–145
    syntax CQS–141
    usage CQS–143
    CQSSREG request
    functions CQS–146
    parameters CQS–146
    return and reason codes CQS–147
    syntax CQS–146
    usage CQS–146
CQSSSYNC request
    format CQS–148
    functions CQS–148
    parameters CQS–150
    return and reason codes CQS–153
    syntax CQS–148
    usage CQS–149
    CQSSGxxx CQS–22

Index 89
CQSSHUT request
- format CQS–155
- functions CQS–155
- parameters CQS–155
- return and reason codes CQS–156
- syntax CQS–155
- usage CQS–155

CQSSLxxx CQS–20

CQSUNLCK request
- format CQS–156
- functions CQS–156
- parameters CQS–158
- return and reason codes CQS–160
- syntax CQS–156
- usage CQS–157

CQSUPD request
- format CQS–161
- functions CQS–161
- parameters CQS–162
- return and reason codes CQS–165
- syntax CQS–161
- usage CQS–161

CRB definition/mapping macro DGR–55

CRC (command recognition character) CG–504, ISDT–86, ISDT–458

CRD keyword
- COMPT command CR–147
- definition CR–52
- RCOMPT command CR–511

create named storage service
- example BPE–74
- output BPE–74
- parameters BPE–73

Create Thread exit routine CG–523
creating a new HALDB ADB–291
creating ESMT CG–505
creating output data sets DGR–6
creating PROCLIB member DFSFDRxx AS–92
creating search arguments DGR–18
creating work areas for ESAP CG–547
creation of
- a new hierarchy APDG–80
- reports APDG–16

Cross System Product
See See VisualAge Generator
cross system queuing determination URS–380, URS–434
cross-memory
- considerations CG–9
- mode CG–9
cross-system queuing determination ATM–234
crossing a logical relationship ADB–175, ADB–178
crossing a unit of work (UOW) boundary when processing DEDBs APCICS–103
CRTR0XIT trace entry DGR–386
cryptography
See encryption
CSA (common storage area) AS–100
CSA=nnn parameter
F irlmproc,SET command CR–712
CSAB definition/mapping macro DGR–55

CSBLK DSECT ATM–128
CSBLK parameter list CG–19
CSECT= keyword
UCF FUNCTION=ZM control statement
URDBTM–375

CSL (Common Service Layer) AS–395
CSL (Common Service Layer)
- benefits AS–395
- configuration AS–404
- CSLZORY AS–415
- definition CQS–1
- failure AS–415
- managers AS–397
- monitoring AS–415
- OM trace table types BPE–9
- Overview AS–397
- RM trace table types BPE–10
- SCI trace table types BPE–10
- security AS–408
- shutting down AS–410
- starting OG–75
- stopping OG–144
- XRF OG–234

CSL.
See Common Service Layer
CSLOixxx AS–406, CSL–35
CSLOixxx
- sample PROCLIB member CSL–37
CSLOMBLD CSL–76
CSLOMBLD command override CSL–77
CSLOMCMD CSL–55
CSLOMCMD output CSL–205
CSLOMI
- input buffer, example CSL–64
- output CSL–201
- response directive CSL–93
CSLOMOUT CSL–79
CSLOMQRY CSL–72
CSLOMQRY output CSL–206
CSLOMRSP CSL–85
CSLOREGO CSL–83, CSL–84
CSLRixxx CSL–99
CSLRMDEL CSL–111
CSLRMDRG CSL–116
CSLRMPRI CSL–117
CSLRMPRR CSL–119
CSLRMRPS CSL–121
CSLRMQRY CSL–129
CSLRMREQ CSL–134
CSLRMUPD CSL–138
CSLRST1 CSL–108
CSLRST2 CSL–109
CSLSBFRL CSL–19, CSL–169
CSLSMFRG CSL–171
CSLSMFRG
- environmental requirements CSL–19
CSLSMSG CSL–172
CSLSMQRY CSL–179
CSLSQSC CSL–182
CSLSQSC
- planning considerations CSL–22
current position in the database, determining the
APCICS–64
current roster APDG–11
cursor position input APTM–189
cursor positioning
for input messages APTM–219, APTM–271
for output messages
CURSOR operand APTM–305
dynamic APTM–218
in DPAGE statement URBSTM–484
specifying attributes APTM–278
CURSOR= operand
DPAGE statement URBSTM–484
CURSOR= operand (DPAGE statement), specifying
APTM–305
CUSRN (control interval update sequence number)
ADB–116
custom service, installing JGR–38
Customer Information Control System (CICS)
See CICS (Customer Information Control System)
ADB–3
customizing IMS OTMA–39
CustomPac installation IIV–7
CVB definition/mapping macro DGR–56
CXB definition/mapping macro DGR–56
CYLINDERS keyword DBRC–47

D= keyword
close statements
DFSERA10 CONTROL URS–264
DFSERA10 OPTION URS–268
DA status code ADB–434, ADB–441
damaged RECON DBRC–61
DASD
contention in Fast Path ADB–382
log tracing ISDT–383
logging ISDT–293, ISDT–295, ISDT–389
out-of-space for DEDB ADB–385
DASD allocation for OLDS AS–83
DASD logging
OLDS IIV–49
SLDS IIV–52
WADS IIV–51
DASD requirements RPG–28
DASD space release ADB–442
DASDUNIT parameter commands
CHANGE.RECON DBRC–142
INIT.RECON DBRC–244
data
a program's view APDG–4
aggregate APDG–16
association APDG–3
documentation APDG–14
elements, homonym APDG–14
elements, isolating repeating APDG–17
elements, naming APDG–13
hierarchical relationships APDG–3
integrity, how DL/I protects APDG–58
keys APDG–20
recording its availability APDG–15
data (continued)
relationships, analyzing APDG–16
structuring APDG–16
unique identifier APDG–14
data areas, coding APDB–48
data availability
considerations APDG–44, APDG–63
levels APDG–4
recording APDG–15
data availability enhancements APCICS–105
data availability, status codes APDB–92
data capture
See AIB (application interface block)
Data Capture exit routine ADB–418, CG–43, OG–60
Data Capture exit routine
See also EXIT= parameter
adding ADB–418
AIB Interface CG–45
and logical databases ADB–217
attributes CG–44
call functions ADB–216
call sequence ADB–215
calling order with data capture figure CG–43
changing ADB–419
control blocks CG–47
control blocks
XPCB CG–48, CG–53
XSDB CG–50, CG–56
data capture exit routine ADB–216
data security/integrity CG–52
deleting ADB–419
description ADB–17, ADB–213, CG–43
function ADB–213
loading/initializing CG–44
registers CG–50
registers
contents on entry CG–50
contents on exit CG–51
return and reason codes CG–51
sample COBOL routine CG–58
sample PL/I routine CG–62
specifying in DBD ADB–214
supported languages CG–44, CG–51
synchronous data capture CG–43
using ADB–214, ADB–413
Data Capture exit routines
description AS–29
system requirements AS–110, AS–112
Data Capture, asynchronous support CG–469
data communication
EXEC parameters ISDT–405, ISDT–409
intelligent stations, defining ISDT–18
macros ISDT–470
master terminal, specifying ISDT–22
switched communication devices, defining ISDT–19
terminals, defining
non-VTAM terminals ISDT–14
VTAM terminals ISDT–13, ISDT–20, ISDT–21
Data Communication services ATM–9

data communication.
See DC (data communication)
data communications
APPC/IMS
stopping OG–138
APPC/IMS, connecting to OG–85
APPC/IMS, stopping OG–137
BTAM, connecting to OG–85
CICS OG–85
ISC, connecting to OG–85
starting OG–83
stopping OG–137
VTAM, connecting to OG–83
data communications execution-time options
for BMP region AS–105
for IMS procedure AS–98
data compression CG–114, CG–120
Data Conversion exit routine CG–69
data currency APDG–1, APDG–2
data definition APDG–10
data descriptor FM header
IMS use AT–M–567
input format AT–M–381
output format AT–M–382
use on input AT–M–368
use on output AT–M–368
data dictionary
DataAtlas APDG–15, APDG–177
DB/DC Data Dictionary APDG–15, APDG–177
documentation for other programmers APDG–177
in application design APDG–15
Data Dictionary
See also DB/DC Data Dictionary
See DB/DC Data Dictionary ADB–18
data element
description APDG–11
homonym APDG–14
isolating repeating APDG–17
listing APDG–11
naming APDG–13
synonym APDG–13
data elements in segment ADB–15
data elements, grouping into hierarchies APDG–16
data entity APDG–11
data entry database APDG–30
data entry database
See also DEDB (data entry database)
See DEDB (data entry database) ADB–384
data entry database (DEDDB)
See also DEDB (data entry database)
See also Fast Path, DEDB
data entry database (DEDDB).
See DEDB Randomizing routine
Data Entry Database Randomizing routine
attributes CG–73
IMS environments CG–73
including the routine CG–73
link editing CG–73
naming convention CG–73
sample routine location CG–73
using callable services CG–73
Data Entry Database Randomizing Routine (DBFHDC40/DBFHDC44)
  callable services CG–74
  IMS environments CG–73
  including the routine CG–74
  naming convention CG–74
  sample routine location CG–74

Data Entry Database Resource Name Hash Routine (DBFLHSH0)
  IMS callable services CG–79
  IMS environments CG–79
  including the routine CG–79
  link-editing CG–79
  naming convention CG–79
  sample routine location CG–80

Data Entry Database Sequential Dependent Scan Utility Exit Routine (DBFUMSE1)
  attributes CG–101
  IMS environments CG–101
  including the routine CG–101
  link editing CG–101
  naming convention CG–101
  sample routine location CG–101
  using callable services CG–101

  data entry database.
  See DEDB

Data Extraction, Processing, and Restructuring system ADB–303
  data flow ATM–30
  data flow
    message switching ATM–32
    MSC ATM–198
    program-to-output terminal ATM–30
    program-to-program ATM–30
    terminal-to-program ATM–30
  data flow control (DFC) protocols
    See DFC (data flow control) protocols
  data flow reset, handling errors ATM–349
  data formatting, exit routine CG–107
  data locking APDB–230
  data management block (DMB) diagram DGR–83
  data mapping, define with MAXDEF command
    APDB–266, APTM–322
  data mask APDG–6
  data object, definition CQS–2
  data parameter
    FORMAT command CR–364
  data part of segment ADB–15
  data partitioning, MSC ATM–195
  data propagation
    sync point OG–43
    XRF OG–234
  data redundancy APDG–1
  data redundancy, reducing APDB–208
  data requirements, analyzing ADB–45, ADB–53
  data sensitivity ADB–182, APDG–4
  data sensitivity, defined APDG–83
  data set
    OSAM
      maximum size ADB–79, ADB–473
  data set (continued)
    VSAM
      maximum size ADB–79
  data set allocation
    considerations for
      global resource serialization IIV–62
      JES IIV–63
      RACF IIV–63
      XRF IIV–60
    direct output data sets IIV–47
    global resource serialization considerations IIV–62
    JES considerations IIV–63
  log data sets
    OLDS IIV–49
    SLDS IIV–52
    WADS IIV–51
  message queue data sets
    allocation restrictions IIV–53
    OLDS IIV–48
  online change data sets IIV–55
  OSAM data sets IIV–54
  RACF considerations IIV–63
  SLDS IIV–48
  SPOOL SYSOUT data sets
    defining spool line groups IIV–58
    XRF considerations for SPOOL line groups IIV–59
  variables IIV–172

  data set allocation, DBRC RECON
    creating a RECON DBRC–46
    shared among multiple processors DBRC–42

  data set groups
    See multiple data set groups ADB–18

  data set naming conventions
    PHDAM ADB–23
    PHIDAM ADB–23
    PSINDEX ADB–23

  data set statement
    description ADB–288
    HALDB ADB–288

  data set, dynamic allocation
    See Dynamic Allocation Macro

  data sets
    allocated by IVP IIV–94
    allocating DGR–6
    allocation ADB–312
    allocation
      See allocating IMS system data sets by group
    DLIB IIV–16
    Execution IIV–32

Index 93
data sets *(continued)*

by group *(continued)*

IRLM IIV–44
IPV IIV–13
SMP/E IIV–14
System IIV–28
Target IIV–22
user level IIV–45
CQS execution CQS–27
DFSVSAM ADB–69, AS–385
direct output IIV–47

DLIBs for

Database Manager IIV–17
ETO IIV–17
IMS Java IIV–17
RSR Database-Level Tracking feature IIV–17
RSR Recovery-Level Tracking feature IIV–16
systems services IIV–16
Transaction Manager IIV–17
ESDS in HD databases ADB–90
ESDS in secondary indexes ADB–190
Execution IIV–32
failures OG–151
HISAM ADB–65
IMS.ACBLIB
attributes IIV–34
multiple copies IIV–13
related execution data sets IIV–32
IMS.ACBLIBA IIV–34
IMS.ACBLIBB IIV–34
IMS.ADFSBASE IIV–17
IMS.ADFSCLST IIV–17
IMS.ADFSDATA IIV–18
IMS.ADFSEXEC IIV–18
IMS.ADFSISRC IIV–18
IMS.ADFSJDC8 IIV–19
IMS.ADFSJHFB IIV–19
IMS.ADFSJJCL IIV–19
IMS.ADFSJLIB IIV–19
IMS.ADFSJSAM IIV–20
IMS.ADFSJTO IIV–18, IIV–20
IMS.ADFSLOAD IIV–20
IMS.ADFSMAC IIV–20
IMS.ADFSMLIB IIV–21
IMS.ADFSOPSC IIV–45
IMS.ADFSPLIB IIV–21
IMS.ADFSSRTRM IIV–21
IMS.ADFSSSLIB IIV–21
IMS.ADFSUMPL IIV–22
IMS.ADFSSRC IIV–22
IMS.ADFSTLIB IIV–22
IMS.ADXRLOAD IIV–44
IMS.ADXRSAMP IIV–44
IMS.ADBLIB IIV–32, IIV–35
IMS.DFSOLPnn IIV–35
IMS.DFSOLSn IIV–35
IMS.DFSTRA01 IIV–35
IMS.DFSTRA02 IIV–35
IMS.DFSTRA0T IIV–36
IMS.DFSWADSn IIV–36
IMS.DLIZONE.CSI IIV–14

data sets *(continued)*

IMS.FORMAT IIV–13, IIV–37
IMS.FORMATB IIV–37
IMS.GLBZONCS IIV–14
IMS.IEFRDER IIV–37
IMS.IMSMON IIV–37
IMS.INSTALIB IIV–13
IMS.INSTATBL IIV–14
IMS.JOBS IIV–29
IMS.LGENIN IIV–29
IMS.LGENOUT IIV–29
IMS.LGMSG/1-9 IIV–41
IMS.LGMSGL IIV–42
IMS.MATRIX IIV–13, IIV–30
IMS.MATRIXA IIV–30
IMS.MATRIXB IIV–30
IMS.MODBLKS IIV–13, IIV–23
IMS.MODBLKSA IIV–30
IMS.MODBLKSB IIV–30
IMS.MODSTAT IIV–38
IMS.MODSTAT2 IIV–38
IMS.MSDBCP1 IIV–38
IMS.MSDBCP2 IIV–38
IMS.MSDBCP3 IIV–39
IMS.MSDBCP4 IIV–39
IMS.MSDBDUMP IIV–39
IMS.MSDBNIT IIV–39
IMS.OBJDSET IIV–31
IMS.OPTIONS IIV–31
IMS.PGMLIB IIV–40
IMS.PROCLIB AS–385, IIV–31
IMS.PSBLIB IIV–40
IMS.QBLKS IIV–41
IMS.QBLKSL IIV–42
IMS.RDS IIV–42
IMS.RDS2 IIV–42
IMS.RECON1 IIV–43
IMS.RECON2 IIV–43
IMS.RECON3 IIV–43
IMS.REFERAL IIV–43
IMS.SDFSBASE IIV–23
IMS.SDFSCLST IIV–24
IMS.SDFSMLIB IIV–24
IMS.SDFSOPSC IIV–24
IMS.SDFSPLIB IIV–24
IMS.SDFSRRM IIV–24
IMS.SDFSAMLIB IIV–25
IMS.SDFSJSID IIV–25
IMS.SDFSMLIB IIV–25
IMS.SDFSPLIB IIV–26
IMS.SDFSRES IIV–10, IIV–26
IMS.SDFSRESL IIV–10, IIV–26
IMS.SDFSRSAMP IIV–26
IMS.SDFSRRM IIV–26
IMS.SDFSSSLIB IIV–27
IMS.SDFSAMLIB IIV–27
IMS.SDFSRRM IIV–27
IMS.SDFSRSAMP IIV–27
IMS.SDFSRRM IIV–27
data sets (continued)
IMS.SMPLTS IIV–14
IMS.SMPPTS IIV–15
IMS.SMPSCDS IIV–15
IMS.SMPSTS IIV–15
IMS.SYSOnnn IIV–43
IMS.TCFSLIB IIV–32
IMS.TFORMAT IIV–44
IMS.TRGTZONE.CSI IIV–16
IMSPLEX.OLCSTAT IIV–40
INSTATBL IIV–101
KSDS in secondary indexes ADB–190
MSDBCP1 and MSDBCP2 ADB–275
MSDBDUMP data set ADB–275
OLDS IIV–48
online AS–82
OSAM IIV–54
OSAM in HD databases ADB–90
output DGR–6
pre-formatting space ADB–259
SLDS IIV–48
structure recovery CQS–28
SYSPUT IIV–58
system
XRF OG–247
system checkpoint CQS–27
user level IIV–45
USER.TLIB IIV–46
WADS IIV–48
XRF OG–240, OG–247
XRF
initializing OG–235
XRF requirements IIV–60
data sets, RECON DBRC–41
data sharing DBRC–18
data sharing
ACCESS keyword CR–48
ACTIVE keyword CR–48
area-level AS–360, AS–361
assigning a share level with DBRC AS–366
assigning a sharing level with DBRC AS–366, DBRC–19
backout OG–221
batch backout DBRC–36
block-level AS–363
block-level
VSO DEDB areas AS–380
coeexistence considerations RPG–46
commands OG–205
configuration examples AS–363
controlling OG–206
data base
reorganizing OG–213
data base as a data resource AS–358
data base integrity DBRC–19
DATABASE macro statement ISDT–8
data base processing
starting OG–204
stopping OG–204
data base share level
changing OG–218
data sharing (continued)
database-level AS–360, AS–361
DB/DC environment, in a AS–12
DBCTL environment, in a AS–15
DBRC OG–211, OG–222
DBRC
commands OG–211
DBRC failure
restart after OG–223
DBRC, role of AS–361
DEDB ADB–124
description AS–357, AS–363
dynamic backout DBRC–36
establishing naming conventions AS–367
FDBR (Fast Database Recovery).
See FDBR
forward recovery DBRC–38, OG–222
GLOBAL keyword CR–54
group AS–374
image copies AS–369
image copy OG–214, OG–217
image copy making OG–217
IMS failure
restart after OG–222
IMSCTRL macro statement ISDT–8
information in RECON DBRC–18
IRLM
restarting OG–223
starting OG–204
stopping OG–204
IRLM, role of AS–363
levels of DBRC–18
levels of
block level DBRC–18
database level DBRC–18
LOCAL keyword CR–56
logs OG–219
merging logs DBRC–33
normal operations OG–214
NRESTART command CR–429
online change OG–213
overview OG–203
planning recovery procedures DBRC–35
procedures OG–220
record DBRC–57
recovery OG–173, OG–219
recovery
coordinating with DB2 OG–293
resources, monitoring OG–206
RSR OG–269
RSR, using with AS–328
sysplex OG–225
sysplex (see sysplex data sharing) AS–373
system configuration example ISDT–496
VSO DEDB Areas ADB–141
data sharing requirements
software RPG–26
data spaces
online change restriction for RACF AS–128
data storage methods
combined file APDG–1
in a database APDG–2
separate files APDG–1
data stream profile, ATTACH FM header ATM–375
data structure APDG–4
data structure conflicts, resolving APDG–74
data structures APDB–49
data structures, developing ADB–45, ADB–53
data transmission
definite responses, ISC ATM–263
error handling ATM–488
error recovery procedure ATM–568
exception responses, protocol
CICS-IMS ATM–558, ATM–568
Finance Communication System ATM–438
ISC ATM–263
SLU P ATM–438
messages
input ATM–471
output ATM–477
response requirements
IMS commands and indicators ATM–264, ATM–437
IMS message switches ATM–325, ATM–487
irrecoverable-inquiry transactions ATM–325, ATM–487
LU 6.2 application program ATM–65
MFS control requests ATM–488
recoverable-inquiry transactions ATM–325, ATM–486
summary ATM–484
VTAM commands and indicators ATM–264, ATM–437
SLU P, message data types ATM–470
transparent ISDT–153
data transparency ATM–267
data types
aggregate functions JGR–84
conversion JGR–86
mapped to COBOL JGR–88
data types, IMS advanced function network ATM–470
data validation, exit routine CG–107
data-set-full condition ATM–88
DATA= keyword
MSDB Maintenance utility MSDBINIT statement URDBTM–151
DataAtlas APDG–15, APDG–16, APDG–177
database (continued)
availability (continued)
status codes, accepting APCICS–105
backup utility OG–71
backup commands for DBRC–24
buffers, Fast Path AS–95
calls
Fast Path APDB–241
summary APDB–291
changes, backing out APDG–61
changes, committing APCICS–2
changing information DBRC–109
CICS local-DL/I ADB–56
ccontrol block diagram DGR–82
data set groups, changing information DBRC–122
data set, changing information DBRC–116
DB PCB, name APDB–92, APDB–215
DBCTL support ADB–56
DBRC authorization
MODIFY command CR–408
deallocating resources APDB–147
declaring in system definition AS–54
DEDB ADB–124, AS–24
DEDB description ADB–109
defining DBRC–227
definition ADB–18
deleting
MODIFY command CR–408
deleting information from RECON DBRC–168
description (DBD) APDG–4
description name field, DIB (DL/I interface block) APCICS–9
design
aids for testing ADB–303
what it involves ADB–4
design considerations ADB–237, ADB–263
diagnostic techniques DGR–217
DL/I ADB–56
effect of commands on OG–108
example, medical hierarchy APCICS–2, APDB–20
execution-time options
for BMP region AS–105
for MPP region AS–102
failures OG–158
Fast Path
MODIFY command CR–408
Fast Path types ADB–124, AS–24
GSAM description ADB–76
HALDB description ADB–78
HD description ADB–78
hierarchy APDG–3
HSAM description ADB–60
I/O analysis AS–221
image copy, making OG–217
implementing ADB–5, ADB–287
integrity in data sharing DBRC–19
introduction to ADB–11
listing DBRC–251
loading ADB–5, ADB–314
database  (continued)
  Local-DL/I support ADB–56
  log analysis DGR–256
  log record (‘X’50’) DSECT DGR–256
  logical ADB–160
  making HISAM copies DBRC–29
  making image copies DBRC–24
  modifying ADB–5, ADB–389
  monitoring ADB–5, ADB–331
  monitoring buffers URS–369, URS–399
  monitoring DL/I calls URS–356, URS–413
  MSDB AS–24
  MSDB description ADB–125
  MSDB, Areas in data sharing ADB–124
  multiple data set groups ADB–231
  nonrecoverable OG–165
  open exit DBRC–17
  opening AS–257
  options APDG–67
  organization field, DIB (DL/I interface block) APCICS–9
  organization sample IV–137
  page fixing buffers AS–205
  position
    after XRST APDB–180
    determining APDB–183
    establishing using GU APDB–133
    multiple positioning APDB–197
    unsuccessful calls APDB–188
  processing during takeover AS–273
  processing, Fast Path APCICS–91
  protecting during reorganization ADB–338
  protection AS–148
  record DBRC–53
  record format IV–134
  record, processing APDG–6
  recovering APCICS–87
  recovery ADB–5, APDG–59, OG–104, OG–159
  recovery with ROLL call APDB–246
  recovery, back out changes APDB–245
  reorganizing ADB–337, OG–213, OG–216
  requirement for XRF AS–250
  RSR OG–265
  RSR tracking OG–261
  sample hierarchy APDB–20
  searching techniques DGR–47
  security
    establishing ADB–31
    for application programs ADB–18
    introduction ADB–5
  shave level change OG–218
  SHISAM description ADB–75
  SHSAM description ADB–75
  standards and procedures ADB–6
  status CR–216
  stopping access to OG–109
  testing ADB–4, ADB–301
  tuning ADB–5, ADB–337
  types APCICS–9
  unavailability APDG–44, APDG–63
  update set OG–265

database administration
  task description ADB–3
  database allocation record DBRC–57
  database and data communications security APDG–10
  Database Buffer Pool report
  IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–399
  Database Change Accumulation utility DBRC–31
  Database Change Accumulation utility
input OG–52
  Database Change Accumulation utility (DFSUCUM0)
    CA group
      defining DBRC–33
      defining for future use DBRC–34
      reusing DBRC–34
  commands
    BACKUP.RECON DBRC–99
    CHANGE.ADS DBRC–101
    CHANGE.BKOUT DBRC–102
    CHANGE.CA DBRC–105
    CHANGE.CAGRP DBRC–106
    CHANGE.DBDSGRP DBRC–122
    CHANGE.IC DBRC–125
    CHANGE.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–131
    CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–133
    CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–137
    CHANGE.PRILOG (for TSLDS) DBRC–137
    CHANGE.RECON DBRC–141
    CHANGE.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–150
    CHANGE.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–151
    CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS and TSLDS) DBRC–155
    CHANGE.SG DBRC–159
    CHANGE.SUBSYS DBRC–160
    CHANGE.UIC DBRC–162
    DELETE.ADS DBRC–165
    DELETE.ALLOC DBRC–166
    DELETE.BKOUT DBRC–167
    DELETE.CA DBRC–167
    DELETE.CAGRP DBRC–168
    DELETE.DB DBRC–168
    DELETE.DBDS DBRC–169
    DELETE.DBDSGRP DBRC–170
    DELETE.GSG DBRC–170
    DELETE.IC DBRC–171
    DELETE.LOG (for OLDS) DBRC–172
    DELETE.LOG (for RLDS) DBRC–172
    DELETE.LOG (for SLDS) DBRC–172
    DELETE.RECOV DBRC–176
    DELETE.REORG DBRC–176
    DELETE.SG DBRC–177
    DELETE.SUBSYS DBRC–178
    DELETE.UIC DBRC–178
    GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–181
    GENJCL.CA DBRC–185
    GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–189
    GENJCL.IC DBRC–193
    GENJCL.OIC DBRC–202
    GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–207
    GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–211
    GENJCL.USER DBRC–217
    INIT.ADS DBRC–223

Index  97
Database Change Accumulation utility (DFSUCUM0) (continued) commands (continued)
  INIT.CA DBRC–224
  INIT.CAGRDB RC–225
  INIT.DB DBRC–227
  INIT.DBDS DBRC–230
  INIT.DBDSGRP DBRC–235
  INIT.GSG DBRC–236
  INIT.IC DBRC–237
  INIT.RECON DBRC–243
  INIT.SG DBRC–247
  LIST.BKOUT DBRC–249
  LIST.CAGRDB RC–250
  LIST.DB DBRC–251
  LIST.DBDS DBRC–253
  LIST.DBDSGRP DBRC–254
  LIST.GSG DBRC–255
  LIST.HISTORY DBRC–256
  LIST.LOG (for a category of records) DBRC–260
  LIST.LOG (for a PRILOG family) DBRC–258
  LIST.RECON DBRC–262
  NOTIFY.ALLOC DBRC–267
  NOTIFY.BKOUT DBRC–269
  NOTIFY.CA DBRC–270
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–272
  NOTIFY.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–275
  NOTIFY.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–279
  NOTIFY.PRILOG (for SLDS and TSLDS) DBRC–283
  NOTIFY.RECOV DBRC–287
  NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–290
  NOTIFY.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–293
  NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–295
  NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–299
  NOTIFY.UIC DBRC–304
  RESET.GSG DBRC–307

description DBRC–31, URDBTM–215
examples URDBTM–227
execution recorded by DBRC DBRC–16
input DBRC–32
input and output URDBTM–217
JCL requirements
  DD statements URDBTM–218
  EXEC statement URDBTM–217
output messages and statistics URDBTM–226
purge date and time URDBTM–220
restricted from Utility Control Facility URDBTM–335
restrictions URDBTM–216
return codes URDBTM–226
subset of log volumes DBRC–32
utility control statement
  DB0 statement URDBTM–223
  DB1 statement URDBTM–224
  ID statement URDBTM–222
  SO statement URDBTM–225
valid log subset with DBRC DBRC–33

database change accumulation utility JCL (continued)
generating a job DBRC–185
skeletal JCL DBRC–347
database control
  See DBCTL (database control)
database control.
  See DBCTL (Database Control)
database copy
  See Online Database Image Copy utility (DFSUICP0)
database data set record DBRC–53
database description
  See DBD (database description) ADB–18
Database Description (DBDs)
  See also DBD (Database Description) generation
  generating
    HDEB databases URS–8
    GSAM databases URS–5
    HSAM databases URS–4
database description rules, DBD generation URS–13
Database Descriptions (DBDs)
  generating
    HDAM and PHDAM databases URS–6
    HIDAM and PHIDAM databases URS–6
    HISAM databases URS–5, URS–6
    Index and PSINDEX databases URS–8
    logical segment types URS–9
    MSDBs URS–7
database division ATM–214
Database Image Copy 2
  DASD requirements RPG–22
  enhancements
    overview RPG–121
    enhancements, introduction to RPG–5
    migration considerations RPG–33
Database Image Copy 2 utility (DFSUDMT0) DBRC–16, DBRC–25
Database Image Copy 2 utility (DFSUDMT0)
  description URDBTM–189
  examples URDBTM–202
  input and output URDBTM–195
  JCL requirements
    DD statements URDBTM–196
    EXEC statement URDBTM–195
  restrictions URDBTM–194
  utility control statement URDBTM–197
Database Image Copy utility (DFSUDMP0) DBRC–25
Database Image Copy utility (DFSUDMP0)
  adding information to RECON DBRC–272
  creating data sets for future use DBRC–27
  description DBRC–24, URDBTM–179
  examples URDBTM–187
  execution recorded by DBRC DBRC–15
  frequency of creating image copies URDBTM–179
  generating a job DBRC–193
  in an RSR environment URDBTM–180
  input and output URDBTM–182
  JCL requirements
    DD statements URDBTM–184
    EXEC statement URDBTM–183
  maximum number of generations DBRC–28
  nonstandard image copy data sets DBRC–30
Database Image Copy utility (DFSUDMP0) (continued)
recovery period DBRC–28
Remote Site Recovery URDBTM–180
restrictions URDBTM–181
return codes URDBTM–187, URDBTM–201
reusing image copy data sets DBRC–29
skeletal JCL DBRC–352
utility control statement URDBTM–186
database image copy, online
See Online Database Image Copy utility
database integrity
maintaining APCICS–87
DATABASE keyword
/DISPLAY DATABASE command CR–216
DBDUMP command CR–158
DBRECOVERY command CR–162
definition CR–52
DELETE command CR–169
DISPLAY command
description CR–216
examples CR–288
DISPLAY command with BKERR keyword CR–217
LOCK command CR–400
START command CR–579
STOP command CR–607
UNLOCK command CR–670
DATABASE macro APDG–88
DATABASE macro
CICS, and ISDT–453
description ISDT–78
online applications, defining ISDT–8
parameters ISDT–78
parameters
ACCESS= ISDT–79
DBD= ISDT–79
RESIDENT= ISDT–78
syntax diagram ISDT–78
DATABASE macro statement
data sharing, and AS–360
system definition, in AS–53
used for online change AS–231
database management calls APDB–16
Database Manager data sets IIV–17
database metamodel, XMI JGR–101
database PCB statement ADB–297
Database Prefix Resolution utility (DFSURG10)
ADB–346
Database Prefix Resolution utility (DFSURG10)
description URDBTM–121
example URDBTM–127
execution under the utility control facility URDBTM–121
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–125
EXEC statement URDBTM–123
PARM field options URDBTM–123
output messages and statistics URDBTM–127
restrictions URDBTM–122
return codes URDBTM–127
sort/merge URDBTM–123
Database Prefix Update utility (DFSURGP0) ADB–347
Database Prefix Update utility (DFSURGP0)
description URDBTM–129
example URDBTM–134
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–130
EXEC statement URDBTM–130
output messages URDBTM–134
recovery and restart URDBTM–130
return codes URDBTM–134
utility control statement
ABEND URDBTM–134
CHKPT URDBTM–133
RSTRT URDBTM–133
SNAP URDBTM–133
Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0)
ADB–345
Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0)
description URDBTM–105
example URDBTM–111
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–107
EXEC statement URDBTM–107
output messages URDBTM–111
return codes URDBTM–111
utility control statement
DBIL= URDBTM–108
DBR= URDBTM–109
OPTIONS= URDBTM–110
database record APDG–3
database record
calculating size ADB–305
definition ADB–6
HDAM (Hierarchical Direct Access Method) ADB–93
HIDAM ADB–96
HISAM (Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method) ADB–66
HSAM (Hierarchical Sequential Access Method) ADB–61
introduction to ADB–12
locking ADB–105
MSDB (main storage database) ADB–127
PHDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access Method) ADB–93
PHIDAM ADB–96
database recovery
backing out APTM–149, APTM–150
backing out database changes APDG–61
checkpoints, description APDG–59
restoring your program, description APDG–62
database recovery control
See also DBRC (Database Recovery Control)
See also see DBRC
changing information DBRC–125
changing partition information DBRC–127
data set, creating a backup copy DBRC–99
Database Recovery Control
See DBRC (Database Recovery Control)
database recovery control (DBRC)
See DBRC (database recovery control)
Database Recovery Control utility (DSPURX00)
generating a job DBRC–211, DBRC–217
Database Recovery Control utility (DSPURX00) (continued)
  GENJCL.RECOV command DBRC–211
  overview DBRC–67
database recovery records DBRC–51
database recovery service
database recovery process DBRC–34
  image copy output DBRC–26
database recovery utilities
coeexistence RPG–46
Database Recovery utility (DFSURDB0)
description URDBTM–235
examples URDBTM–245
  in an RSR environment URDBTM–237
input and output URDBTM–239
JCL requirements
  DD statements URDBTM–241
  EXEC statement URDBTM–241
Remote Site Recovery URDBTM–237
restricted from Utility Control Facility URDBTM–334
restrictions URDBTM–238
return codes URDBTM–245
utility control statement
  ABEND URDBTM–243
  NOSEQCK URDBTM–243
  S (database recovery) URDBTM–244
database recovery with data sharing
  batch DBRC–36
  data sharing DBRC–38
  dynamic DBRC–36
  forward DBRC–38
  managing system logs DBRC–33
database recovery, planning for
  backing out database changes APCICS–88
  checkpoints, CHKP command APCICS–87
  checkpoints, taking APCICS–88
  restarting your program, XRST command APCICS–88
database resource adapter APDB–347
database resource adapter
  See DRA (database resource adapter)
Database Resource Adapter (DRA) APDG–135
database resource adapter.
  See DRA (database resource adapter)
Database Scan utility (DFSURGS0) ADB–345
Database Scan utility (DFSURGS0) (continued)
  utility control statement (continued)
  RSTRT URDBTM–119
database segment, load/insert CG–109
database statistics, retrieving APDG–147
Database Surveyor support ISDT–31
Database Surveyor utility (DFSPRSUR) ADB–350
Database Surveyor utility (DFSPRSUR)
description URDBTM–73
examples URDBTM–78
input URDBTM–73
JCL requirements
  DD statements URDBTM–74
  EXEC statement URDBTM–74
output URDBTM–73
restricted from Utility Control Facility URDBTM–334
return codes URDBTM–78
utility control statement
  DBNAME= URDBTM–76
  FROMAREA= URDBTM–77
  KEYRANGE= URDBTM–76
  MODE= URDBTM–77
  SAMPLE= URDBTM–77
  TOAREA= URDBTM–77
database tracker
  DL/I AS–321
  Fast Path AS–322
  milestone, definition AS–322
database types
  areas APDG–30
  DB2 APDG–30, APDG–52
  DEDB APDG–30, APDG–71
description APDG–30
  Fast Path APDG–29
  full-function APDG–29
  GSAM APDG–30, APDG–74
  HDAM APDG–69, APDG–70
  HISAM APDG–73
  HSAM APDG–72
  MSDB APDG–30, APDG–71
  PHDAM APDG–67, APDG–69
  PHIDAM APDG–67, APDG–70
  relational APDG–30
  root-segment-only APDG–30
  SHISAM APDG–74
  SHSAM APDG–74
database zap capability
Utility Control Facility (DFSUCF00) URDBTM–341
Database-Buffer-Pool report
  description URDBTM–306
  fields in the report URDBTM–307
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–369
  using the report URDBTM–308
database-level data sharing AS–360, AS–361
Database-Monitor Report Print utility (DFSUTR30)
  analysis control data set URDBTM–294
description URDBTM–293
examples URDBTM–294
JCL requirements
  DD statements URDBTM–293
  EXEC statement URDBTM–293
Database-Monitor Report Print utility (DFSUTR30) (continued)
restrictions URDBTM–293
database, dynamic allocation
See Dynamic Allocation Macro
database.
See DL/I
databases
batch, tracking ISDT–193, ISDT–214
CICS, accessing with ISDT–451
DBRC, registering with ISDT–258
describing to IMS Java JGR–90
developing test databases
Data Extraction, Processing, and Restructuring System ADB–303
DL/I test program (DFSDDLT0) ADB–304
File Manager for z/OS for IMS Data ADB–304
IMS Application Development Facility II ADB–303
Visual Age Generator ADB–303
DL/I, using ISDT–199, ISDT–218
dynamically allocate AS–311
ensuring integrity AS–253, AS–260
example ISDT–465
failure of AS–255
Fast Path ISDT–257, ISDT–264
main storage (MSDBs) ISDT–321
managing ISDT–78
online, declaring ISDT–9
databases, loading
description ADB–305
Fast Path initial loads ADB–318
JCL ADB–320
restartable load program, using UCF ADB–321
DATAGROUP keyword
DATAGROUP command CR–163
definition CR–52
RECOVER command
ADD CR–520
REMOVE keyword CR–522
STOP keyword CR–526
START command CR–583
STOP command CR–608
DataPropagator for z/OS
Data Capture exit routine, and CG–44
DATASET statement
description URS–30
example ADB–232
format URS–32
GSAM database URS–33
HDAM database URS–34
HIDAM database URS–34
HISAM database URS–33
HSAM database URS–33
in logical DBD ADB–175
INDEX database URS–34
keywords URS–35
LOGICAL database URS–35
MSDB database URS–34
parameter description URS–35
DATE data type JGR–86
DATE= keyword
SB Test utility SELECT statement URDBTM–328
DATXEXIT parameter
DBD statement URS–30
DB batch
See batch environment
DB batch environment.
See DBB (DB batch environment)
DB batch processing APDG–31
DB batch, program considerations APDB–12
DB Control
DRA (Database Resource Adapter) APDG–137
DB Control DRA (Database Resource Adapter) APDG–135
DB header record
HALDB DBRC–54
DB keyword
RECOVER command
ADD CR–520
REMOVE keyword CR–522
STOP keyword CR–526
DB Monitor
performance gathering OG–110
using ADB–368, OG–111
DB Monitor reports
Database-Buffer-Pool report URDBTM–306
Distribution-Appendix report URDBTM–314
DL/I-Call-Summary report URDBTM–311
Monitor-Overhead report URDBTM–318
Program-I/O report URDBTM–309
VSAM-Buffer-Pool report URDBTM–295
VSAM-Statistics report URDBTM–302
DB partition
HALDB DBRC–54, DBRC–55
DB PCB
database name APDB–92, APDB–215
definition APCICS–31
entry statement, pointer APDB–214
fields APDB–91, APDB–92
in GSCD APDB–150
key feedback area APDB–215
key feedback area length field APDB–93, APDB–215
mask APDB–91, APDB–92
mask
fields APDB–215
fields, GSAM APDB–214
name APDB–214
relation APDB–91
multiple DB PCBs APDB–202
number of sensitive segments field APDB–93
processing options field APDB–93, APDB–215
relation to DB PCB APDB–91
secondary indexing, contents APDB–208
segment level number field APDB–92
segment name field APDB–93
sensitive segments APDB–93
specifying APCICS–77
status code field APDB–92, APDB–215
status codes
NA APDB–154
NU APDB–154
DB PCB (database program communication block) APDG–4
DB PCB (database program communication block) masks
  DB PCB APDB–91
DB PCB mask
  general description APDB–91
  specifying APDB–91
DB PCB mask, GSAM reference APDB–107

DB/DC
  Data Dictionary APDG–15, APDG–177
  environment APDG–29, IIV–99
  keyword list CR–41
  online environment.
  See DBT (DB/DC online environment)

DB/DC Data Dictionary
  establishing security ADB–34
  generating DB0s ADB–18
  generating PSBs ADB–18
  introduction ADB–18
  network documentation AS–36
  system documentation AS–36

DB/DC environment
  application view (diagram) APTM–8
  control region AS–11
  data sharing AS–12
  databases supported AS–11
  definition AS–8
  example AS–9
  overview APDB–10
  programming considerations APTM–8
  RSR AS–13
  utilities supported AS–11
  XRF AS–12

DB.INIT command
  defining databases DBRC–9

DB0 statement
  Database Change Accumulation utility (DFSUCUM0) URDBTM–223

DB1 statement
  Database Change Accumulation utility (DFSUCUM0) URDBTM–224

DB2
  coordinating recovery with OG–293
  databases APDG–30, APDG–52
  defining to IMS ISDT–455
  IMS batch, and ISDT–463
  modules ISDT–464
  security APDG–92
  subsystem connection, tracing ISDT–387
  subsystem identification parameters ISDT–402
  tables, providing ISDT–463
  tracking
    routing delays OG–294
    XRC tracking OG–293
    XRC tracking during takeover OG–296

DB2 (DATABASE 2) (continued)
  Data Capture exit routines AS–29
  IMS control region requirements AS–101
  with IMS TM APTM–28
  DB2 ESS interface problem, diagnosing DGR–11
  DB2 Recoverable Resource Manager Services
    attachment facility JGR–15
  DB2 UDB for z/OS access
    application programming JGR–32
    committing work JGR–32
    drivers JGR–32
    FSDB2AF DD statement JGR–16
    IMS databases, compared to JGR–32
    JBP region, from a
      configuring JGR–15
      programming model JGR–28
    JMP region, from a
      configuring JGR–15
      programming model JGR–20
    rolling back work JGR–32
    RRSF A JGR–15
  DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures
    developing JGR–66
    environment variables JGR–60
    IVP JGR–61
    JAVAENV data set JGR–59
    overview with IMS Java JGR–59
    running JGR–64
    sample application
      running JGR–63
    system requirements JGR–59
  DB2_HOME ENVAR keyword JGR–60
  DB2, propagating DL/I updates to CG–43, CG–469
  DB2, versions supported RPG–27
  DB2Auto application
    running JGR–63
  DB2AutoClient application
    running JGR–63
  db2sqljdbc.properties JGR–62
  DBAS, formatted OSAM buffer pool statistics
    APDG–147
  DBASS, formatted summary of OSAM buffer pool
    statistics APDG–148
  DBASU, unformatted OSAM buffer pool statistics
    APDG–148
  DBBBATCH AS–20, CSL–1
  DBB Batch procedure
    parameters
      APARM= ISDT–250
      DBRC= ISDT–258
      EXCPVR= ISDT–264
      FMTO= ISDT–265
      GSGNAME= ISDT–266
      IMSID= ISDT–268
      IOB= ISDT–269

DB2 (DATABASE 2) (continued)
  Data Capture exit routines AS–29
  IMS control region requirements AS–101
  with IMS TM APTM–28
  DB2 ESS interface problem, diagnosing DGR–11
  DB2 Recoverable Resource Manager Services
    attachment facility JGR–15
  DB2 UDB for z/OS access
    application programming JGR–32
    committing work JGR–32
    drivers JGR–32
    FSDB2AF DD statement JGR–16
    IMS databases, compared to JGR–32
    JBP region, from a
      configuring JGR–15
      programming model JGR–28
    JMP region, from a
      configuring JGR–15
      programming model JGR–20
    rolling back work JGR–32
    RRSF A JGR–15
  DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures
    developing JGR–66
    environment variables JGR–60
    IVP JGR–61
    JAVAENV data set JGR–59
    overview with IMS Java JGR–59
    running JGR–64
    sample application
      running JGR–63
    system requirements JGR–59
  DB2_HOME ENVAR keyword JGR–60
  DB2, propagating DL/I updates to CG–43, CG–469
  DB2, versions supported RPG–27
  DB2Auto application
    running JGR–63
  DB2AutoClient application
    running JGR–63
  db2sqljdbc.properties JGR–62
  DBAS, formatted OSAM buffer pool statistics
    APDG–147
  DBASS, formatted summary of OSAM buffer pool
    statistics APDG–148
  DBASU, unformatted OSAM buffer pool statistics
    APDG–148
  DBBBATCH AS–20, CSL–1
  DBB Batch procedure
    parameters
      APARM= ISDT–250
      DBRC= ISDT–258
      EXCPVR= ISDT–264
      FMTO= ISDT–265
      GSGNAME= ISDT–266
      IMSID= ISDT–268
      IOB= ISDT–269

DB2 (DATABASE 2) (continued)
  Data Capture exit routines AS–29
  IMS control region requirements AS–101
  with IMS TM APTM–28
  DB2 ESS interface problem, diagnosing DGR–11
  DB2 Recoverable Resource Manager Services
    attachment facility JGR–15
  DB2 UDB for z/OS access
    application programming JGR–32
    committing work JGR–32
    drivers JGR–32
    FSDB2AF DD statement JGR–16
    IMS databases, compared to JGR–32
    JBP region, from a
      configuring JGR–15
      programming model JGR–28
    JMP region, from a
      configuring JGR–15
      programming model JGR–20
    rolling back work JGR–32
    RRSF A JGR–15
  DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures
    developing JGR–66
    environment variables JGR–60
    IVP JGR–61
    JAVAENV data set JGR–59
    overview with IMS Java JGR–59
    running JGR–64
    sample application
      running JGR–63
    system requirements JGR–59
  DB2_HOME ENVAR keyword JGR–60
  DB2, propagating DL/I updates to CG–43, CG–469
  DB2, versions supported RPG–27
  DB2Auto application
    running JGR–63
  DB2AutoClient application
    running JGR–63
  db2sqljdbc.properties JGR–62
  DBAS, formatted OSAM buffer pool statistics
    APDG–147
  DBASS, formatted summary of OSAM buffer pool
    statistics APDG–148
  DBASU, unformatted OSAM buffer pool statistics
    APDG–148
  DBBBATCH AS–20, CSL–1
  DBB Batch procedure
    parameters
      APARM= ISDT–250
      DBRC= ISDT–258
      EXCPVR= ISDT–264
      FMTO= ISDT–265
      GSGNAME= ISDT–266
      IMSID= ISDT–268
      IOB= ISDT–269

DB2 (DATABASE 2) (continued)
  Data Capture exit routines AS–29
  IMS control region requirements AS–101
  with IMS TM APTM–28
  DB2 ESS interface problem, diagnosing DGR–11
  DB2 Recoverable Resource Manager Services
    attachment facility JGR–15
  DB2 UDB for z/OS access
    application programming JGR–32
    committing work JGR–32
    drivers JGR–32
    FSDB2AF DD statement JGR–16
    IMS databases, compared to JGR–32
    JBP region, from a
      configuring JGR–15
      programming model JGR–28
    JMP region, from a
      configuring JGR–15
      programming model JGR–20
    rolling back work JGR–32
    RRSF A JGR–15
  DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures
    developing JGR–66
    environment variables JGR–60
    IVP JGR–61
    JAVAENV data set JGR–59
    overview with IMS Java JGR–59
    running JGR–64
    sample application
      running JGR–63
    system requirements JGR–59
  DB2_HOME ENVAR keyword JGR–60
  DB2, propagating DL/I updates to CG–43, CG–469
  DB2, versions supported RPG–27
  DB2Auto application
    running JGR–63
  DB2AutoClient application
    running JGR–63
  db2sqljdbc.properties JGR–62
  DBAS, formatted OSAM buffer pool statistics
    APDG–147
  DBASS, formatted summary of OSAM buffer pool
    statistics APDG–148
  DBASU, unformatted OSAM buffer pool statistics
    APDG–148
  DBBBATCH AS–20, CSL–1
  DBB Batch procedure
    parameters
      APARM= ISDT–250
      DBRC= ISDT–258
      EXCPVR= ISDT–264
      FMTO= ISDT–265
      GSGNAME= ISDT–266
      IMSID= ISDT–268
      IOB= ISDT–269
DBBBatch procedure (continued)
parameters (continued)
  IRLM= ISDT–269
  IRLNM= ISDT–270
  LOCKMAX= ISDT–271
  LOGA= ISDT–272
  LOGT= ISDT–272
  MBR= ISDT–274
  MON= ISDT–274
  PRLD= ISDT–280
  PSB= ISDT–280
  RGN= ISDT–284
  RST= ISDT–285
  SOUT= ISDT–288
  SPIE= ISDT–288
  SRCH= ISDT–288
  SSM= ISDT–288
  SWAP= ISDT–290
  SYS= ISDT–291
  SYSS= ISDT–291
  TEST= ISDT–291
  TMINAME= ISDT–291

DBBBATCH procedure ISDT–193

DBBBATCH procedure
  DD statements ISDT–195
  description ISDT–193
  parameters ISDT–195
  parameters
    BKO= ISDT–252
    BUF= ISDT–252
    IMSPLEX= ISDT–268

DBBBATCH procedures
  parameters
    CKPTID= ISDT–253

DBBF parameter
  DEDB Buffer Pool in the DBCTL environment
    ADB–281
  DEDB or MSDB Buffer Pools ADB–278

DBC (DBCTL online environment)
  initial installation IIV–89
  procedure for DBCTL IIV–10

DBC procedure
  DD statements ISDT–200
  description ISDT–196
  parameters ISDT–200
  parameters
    AOIP= ISDT–249
    ARC= ISDT–251
    ARMRS= ISDT–252
    AUTO= ISDT–252
    BSI= ISDT–252
    CTCVCAN= ISDT–253
    CIOP= ISDT–253
    CMDMCS= ISDT–254
    CORE= ISDT–255
    CRC= ISDT–255
    CSAPS= ISDT–256
    DBBF= ISDT–257
    DBFP= ISDT–257
    DBFX= ISDT–257
    DBRCNM= ISDT–258

DBC procedure (continued)
parameters (continued)
  DBRSE= ISDT–258
  DBWP= ISDT–258
  DESC= ISDT–260
  DLIDSIZE= ISDT–261
  DLINM= ISDT–261
  DLIPSB= ISDT–261
  DMB= ISDT–262
  DMHV= ISDT–262
  EPCB= ISDT–264
  FDRMBR= ISDT–265
  FIX= ISDT–265
  FMTO= ISDT–265
  FPDSSIZE= ISDT–265
  FPWP= ISDT–266
  IMSID= ISDT–268
  IOB= ISDT–269
  IRLM= ISDT–269
  IRLNM= ISDT–270
  ISIS= ISDT–270
  MAXPST= ISDT–274
  MCS= ISDT–274
  ORSMBR= ISDT–276
  OTHR= ISDT–276
  PIINCR= ISDT–278
  PIMAX= ISDT–279
  PRDR= ISDT–279
  PREMSE= ISDT–279
  PRLD= ISDT–280
  PSBW= ISDT–281
  PST= ISDT–281
  RDMN= ISDT–284
  READNUM= ISDT–284
  RES= ISDT–284
  RGSUF= ISDT–284
  RSRMBS= ISDT–285
  SPM= ISDT–288
  SRCH= ISDT–288
  SSM= ISDT–288
  SUF= ISDT–290
  SVC2= ISDT–290
  TRAC= ISDT–291
  UHASH= ISDT–292
  USERVAR= ISDT–293
  VSPEC= ISDT–293
  WADS= ISDT–293
  WKAP= ISDT–293
  YEAR4= ISDT–294

storing ISDT–191

DBCS (double byte character set)
  definition APTM–213
  types of fields APTM–213

DBCS/EBCDIC mixed fields
  description APTM–213
  horizontal tab (SCS1 device) APTM–217
  input control APTM–216
  SO/SI control characters in APTM–213

DBCS/EBCDIC mixed literals
  continuation rules for APTM–215
DBCS/EBCDIC mixed literals (continued)
description APTM–214
specifying as DFLD/MFLD literals APTM–214

DBCTL OTMA–46
DBCTL
access from transaction management subsystems
ADB–3
CCTL, and ISDT–428
CICS applications ADB–56
CICS, and ISDT–453
database recovery ADB–4
DBBF parameter ADB–281
designing DEDB buffer pools ADB–281
environment IIV–99
environment, example ISDT–501
IVP base environment IIV–10
locking ADB–4
macros that apply ISDT–30
online environment.
See DBC (DBCTL online environment)
using ISDT–30

DBCTL (database control)
CHECKPOINT command CR–139
command
format CR–9
list CR–777
DBDUMP command CR–158
DBRECOVERY command CR–163
keyword list CR–41
LOCK DATABASE command CR–400
starting subsystem
START irlmproc CR–697

DBCTL (Database Control)
DRA Dumps DGR–409
dump title format DGR–147
failures OG–171
IMS traces
activating DGR–5
DL/I DGR–5
Fast Path DGR–5
problem, diagnosing DGR–12
recovery OG–7, OG–171
Recovery Tokens DGR–410
Service Aids DGR–409
shutdown OG–139
single-phase commit OG–42
two-phase commit OG–40
XRF OG–256
XRF capabilities AS–250

DBCTL (Database Control) environment
Fast Path AS–25, AS–52
monitoring AS–185, AS–190
security AS–150

DBCTL environment APDG–29, APDG–51, AS–13

DBCTL environment (continued)
DRA AS–13
terminals AS–13
utilities supported AS–14
XRF substitute AS–15

DBCTL facilities
ACCEPT command APCICS–105
data availability APCICS–105
QUERY command APCICS–105
REFRESH command APCICS–105
ROLS command APCICS–89
SETS command APCICS–89

DBCTLDID parameter APDG–137

DBD (database description) APDG–4

DBD (database description)
coding ADB–287
introduction ADB–18
logical relationships ADB–169
specifying use
Data Capture exit routine ADB–214
field-level sensitivity ADB–219
logical relationships ADB–170, ADB–173,
 ADB–174, ADB–175
multiple data set groups ADB–231
secondary indexes ADB–203
segment edit/compression facility ADB–213
variable-length segments ADB–208
using dictionary to generate ADB–18

DBD (Database Description) generation
AREA statement
description URS–45
format URS–44
keywords URS–45
assembler listings URS–45
block size, specifying minimum for databases
URS–36
coding conventions URS–11
control interval size, specifying minimum for
 databases URS–36

DATASET statement
description URS–30
dividing database into multiple data set groups
URS–31
format URS–32
LABEL field URS–32

DBD statement URS–14

DBDGEN statement URS–85

DD statements URS–43, URS–44
description rules URS–13
diagnostics URS–85

END statement URS–85
error conditions URS–89
examples
Fast Path DEDB URS–99
Fast Path MSDB URS–98
GSAM URS–96
HDAM URS–92
HIDAM URS–93
HSAM URS–91
HSAM URS–90
index generation URS–89, URS–95
DBD (Database Description) generation (continued)
examples (continued)
  logical relationships URS–101
  secondary indexes URS–105
  secondary indexing or logical relationships URS–89
  shared secondary indexes URS–107
Fast Path DEDB URS–8
Fast Path MSDB URS–7
FIELD statement
  description URS–75
  format URS–77
  keywords URS–77
GSAM database URS–5
HDAM database URS–6
HIDAM database URS–6
HISAM database URS–5
HSAM database URS–4
index generation
  logical URS–9
  primary HIDAM URS–8
  secondary index URS–8
input record structure URS–10
LABEL field URS–32
LCHILD statement
  defining logical relationships URS–69
  defining primary index relationship URS–69
  defining secondary index relationships URS–69
  description URS–69
  format URS–72
output
  assembler listing URS–86
  diagnostics URS–85
  example URS–86
  load module URS–89
  segment flag codes URS–88
  types URS–85
overview of DBDGEN URS–3
overview of DBDGEN
  consists of URS–4
  control statements URS–3
  databases used with URS–4
SEGMENT statement
  description URS–46
  keyword abbreviations URS–56
  keywords URS–56
  pointer keyword options and abbreviations URS–58
summary of statement types URS–9
XDFLD statement
  description URS–82
  format URS–82
  keywords URS–82
DBD (database description), description APDB–19
DBD (database description), sample JGR–91
DBD generation input record structure (non-DEDB) URS–9
DBD generation input record structure (non-DEDB)
  exception URS–9
  requirement URS–10
DBD keyword
  definition CR–52
DISPLAY command
  description CR–218
  Fast Path CR–218
DBD parameter commands
  CHANGE.ADS DBRC–102
  CHANGE.BKOUT DBRC–104
  CHANGE.DB DBRC–110
  CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–117
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–125
  CHANGE.UIC DBRC–162
  DELETE.ADS DBRC–165
  DELETE.ALLOC DBRC–166
  DELETE.DB DBRC–169
  DELETE.DBS DBRC–169
  DELETE.IC DBRC–171
  DELETE.PART DBRC–175
  DELETE.RECOV DBRC–176
  DELETE.REORG DBRC–177
  DELETE.UIC DBRC–178
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–194
  GENJCL.OIC DBRC–202
  GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–207
  GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–212
  GENJCL.USER DBRC–217
  INIT.ADS DBRC–224
  INIT.DB DBRC–228
  INIT.DBS DBRC–231
  INIT.IC DBRC–237
  LIST.DB DBRC–251
  LIST.DBS DBRC–253
  LIST.HISTORY DBRC–256
  NOTIFY.ALLOC DBRC–268
  NOTIFY.BKOUT DBRC–269
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–272
  NOTIFY.RECOV DBRC–288
  NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–291
  NOTIFY.UIC DBRC–304
DBD statement ADB–173, ADB–288
DBD= keyword
  ACB Maintenance utility URS–160
DBDCTL environment
  CCTL APDB–10
  overview APDB–10
  using DRA APDB–10
  using ODBA APDB–11
DBDDEDS= keyword
  control statements
    UCF FUNCTION=DR URDBTM–350
    UCF FUNCTION=DU URDBTM–352
    UCF FUNCTION=DX URDBTM–354
    UCF FUNCTION=IL URDBTM–355
    UCF FUNCTION=IM URDBTM–356
    UCF FUNCTION=PU URDBTM–360
    UCF FUNCTION=RU URDBTM–363
    UCF FUNCTION=SN URDBTM–365
    UCF FUNCTION=SR URDBTM–367
    UCF FUNCTION=SU URDBTM–369
    UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–371
    UCF FUNCTION=ZB URDBTM–373
DBDGEN (Database Description Generation) utility ADB–418, ADB–419
DBDGEN (Database Description Generation) utility ADB–287
DBDGEN procedure URS–11
DBDGEN procedure invoking URS–12
JCL parameters URS–12
DBDGEN process HALDB ADB–291, ADB–481
DBDGEN statement
DBD generation URS–85
FINISH statement URS–85
DBDGEN utility URS–3
DBDLIB ADB–287
DBDLIB
HALDB ADB–504
member ADB–481
DBDNAME= keyword
DL/I PCB URS–119
GSAM PCB URS–128
DBDS (database data set)
commands DBRC–212
commands
GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–212
LIST.DB DBRC–252
NOTIFY.RECOV DBRC–288
defining DBRC–230
listing DBRC–253
qualifier DBRC–317
RECON, deleting information from DBRC–169,
DBRC–171
selecting DBDS records DBRC–329, DBRC–330
DBDS (database data set) group
defining DBRC–235
deleting information from RECON DBRC–170
LIST command DBRC–254
record DBRC–52
using DBRC–16
DBDS keyword
definition CR–52
RECOVER command
ADD CR–520
REMOVE keyword CR–522
STOP keyword CR–526
DBDS, INIT command
defining databases DBRC–9
DBDS, INIT.DBDS command
specifying image copy requirements DBRC–15
DBDSGRP keyword
definition CR–52
RECOVER command
ADD CR–520
REMOVE keyword CR–522
STOP keyword CR–526
DBDUMP (/DBDUMP) command OG–109
DBDUMP command (continued)
examples CR–159
GLOBAL keyword CR–158
LOCAL keyword CR–159
MSDB CR–158
NOFEEOV keyword CR–159
NOPFA keyword CR–159
syntax diagram CR–157
DBESF, formatted OSAM subpool statistics APDG–152
DBESO, formatted OSAM pool online statistics
APDG–155
DBESS, formatted summary of OSAM pool statistics
APDG–154
DBESU, unformatted OSAM subpool statistics
APDG–153
DBFDBDR0 (MSDB Dump Recovery utility)
description URDBTM–263
examples URDBTM–267
input and output URDBTM–264
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–265
EXEC statement URDBTM–265
return codes URDBTM–267
utility control statements URDBTM–266
DBFDBMA0 (MSDB Maintenance utility) ADB–126
DBFDBMA0 (MSDB Maintenance utility)
description URDBTM–145
examples URDBTM–152
input and output URDBTM–147
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–148
EXEC statement URDBTM–148
restrictions URDBTM–147
return codes URDBTM–152
utility control statement
action statements URDBTM–149
run statements URDBTM–149
DBFHAGU0 (Input Edit/Routing exit routine) ATM–21
DBFHAGU0,
See Fast Path Input Edit/Routing exit routine
(DBFHAGU0)
DBFHDC40/DBFHDC44.
See DEDB Randomizing routine
DBFLHSH0.
See DEDB Resource Name Hash routine
DBFMSDBx
description ISDT–321
Main Storage Databases, specifying ISDT–321
parameters ISDT–322
DBFUHDR0
See High-Speed DEDB Direct Reorganization utility
(DBFUHDR0)
DBFUHDR0 (High-Speed DEDB Direct Reorganization
utility) ADB–266
DBFULTA0 (Fast Path Log Analysis utility)
See Log Analysis utility, Fast Path (DBFULTA0)
DBFUMDL0 (DEDB Sequential Dependent Delete utility)
description URDBTM–163
example URDBTM–166
input and output URDBTM–163
DBFUMDL0 (DEDB Sequential Dependent Delete utility) (continued)
JCL requirements
  DD statements URDBTM–165
  EXEC statement URDBTM–165
recovery and restart URDBTM–164
restrictions URDBTM–163
DBFUMIN0 (DEDB Initialization utility)
description URDBTM–141
examples URDBTM–144
input and output URDBTM–141
JCL requirements
  DD statements URDBTM–142
  EXEC statement URDBTM–142
restrictions URDBTM–141
return codes URDBTM–143
utility control statement URDBTM–143
DBFUMMHO (DEDB Area Data Set Compare utility)
description URDBTM–275
examples URDBTM–276
input and output URDBTM–275
JCL requirements
  DD statements URDBTM–276
  EXEC statement URDBTM–276
recovery and restart URDBTM–276
restrictions URDBTM–275
DBFUMRI0 (DEDB Area Data Set Create utility)
description URDBTM–271
examples URDBTM–273
input and output URDBTM–272
JCL requirements
  DD statements URDBTM–273
  EXEC statement URDBTM–272
recovery and restart URDBTM–272
restrictions URDBTM–271
DBFUMSC0 (DEDB Sequential Dependent Scan utility)
description URDBTM–155
example URDBTM–160
input and output URDBTM–155
JCL requirements
  DD statements URDBTM–158
  EXEC statement URDBTM–158
recovery and restart URDBTM–158
restrictions URDBTM–155
DBFUMSE1.
  See DEDB Sequential Dependent Scan Utility exit routine
DBFX parameter ADB–278, ADB–282
DBFX value ADB–281, ADB–285
DBIL= statement
  Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0) URDBTM–109
DBIO statement
  SB test utility (DFSBBHD0) URDBTM–327
DBN= statement
  MSDB Dump Recovery utility URDBTM–266
  MSDB Maintenance utility action statement URDBTM–149
  MSDB Maintenance utility change statement URDBTM–151
  DBNAME= operand
control statements
  DFSMDA TYPE=DATABASE URS–172
  DFSMDA TYPE=FPDEDB URS–172
  UCF FUNCTION=DR URDBTM–349
  UCF FUNCTION=DU URDBTM–351
  UCF FUNCTION=DX URDBTM–353
  UCF FUNCTION=IL URDBTM–354
  UCF FUNCTION=IM URDBTM–356
  UCF FUNCTION=PR URDBTM–358
  UCF FUNCTION=PU URDBTM–359
  UCF FUNCTION=RR URDBTM–360
  UCF FUNCTION=RU URDBTM–362
  UCF FUNCTION=SN URDBTM–365
  UCF FUNCTION=SR URDBTM–367
  UCF FUNCTION=SU URDBTM–369
  UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–371
  UCF FUNCTION=ZB URDBTM–373
Database Surveyor utility (DFSPRSUR) URDBTM–76
Partial DB Reorganization Step 1 (DFSPRCT1) URDBTM–94
Partial DB Reorganization Step 2 (DFSPRCT2) URDBTM–95
DBPCB definition/mapping macro DGR–56
DBQUERY
  using with INIT call APDB–154
DBR.
  See DBRECOVERY
DBR= statement
  Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0) URDBTM–109
DBRC
  coexistence RPG–47
  commands for HALDBs RPG–7
  DATABASE macro, ACCESS parameter ISDT–79
  enhancements
    introduction to RPG–6
    overview RPG–123
    procedure, description ISDT–201
    procedure, storing ISDT–191
    RECON data set
      contents DGR–377
      requirements
        software RPG–26
    DBRC (database recovery control)
      DBRECOVERY command CR–163
      migration RPG–38
      modifiers
        RMxxxxxx command CR–538
        RMCHANGE command CR–537, CR–538
        RMDELETE command CR–537, CR–538
        RMGENJCL command CR–537, CR–538
        RMINIT command CR–537, CR–538
        RMLIST command CR–537, CR–538
        RMNOTIFY command CR–537, CR–538
        RMxxxxxx command CR–537
DBRC (Database Recovery Control)
  See also Database Recovery Control utility (DSPURX00)
  active and spare RECON DBRC–48
  address space AS–9

Index 107
DBRC (Database Recovery Control) (continued)
assigning a sharing level AS–366, DBRC–19
authorization, changing database DBRC–77
automatic RECON loss notification AS–403
calls from IMS DBRC–4
catalog management of data sets DBRC–79
change accumulation says nothing to process, when
DBRC–78
change accumulation stops processing logs, when
DBRC–78
closing an open online PRILOG DBRC–75
commands DBRC–87
commands
INIT.CA DBRC–34
INIT.CAGRP DBRC–34
components DBRC–4
control block diagram DGR–97
controlling database recovery DBRC–12, DBRC–13,
DBRC–21
data sets
defining recovery requirements DBRC–12
partitioned DBRC–5
RECON DBRC–4, DBRC–41, DBRC–58
SSYS record DBRC–57
data sharing OG–211, OG–222
data sharing
commands OG–211
data sharing control, and AS–357, AS–358
database backup DBRC–23
database backup
Concurrent Image Copy DBRC–26
controlling the number of image copies managed
DBRC–27
creating image copy data sets for future use
DBRC–27
Database Image Copy (DFSUDMP0) DBRC–25
Database Image Copy 2 (DFSUDMT0) DBRC–25
guidelines DBRC–30
HISAM copies DBRC–29
methods DBRC–23
Online Database Image Copy (DFSUICP0)
DBRC–26
recovering a database DBRC–34
recovery period of image copy data sets and
GENMAX DBRC–28
reusing image copy data sets DBRC–29
DBRC components DBRC–4
DBRC log control DBRC–10
DBRC online command syntax DBRC–98
DBRC parameter
IMSCTRL macro DBRC–8
DBRC procedure DBRC–8
description DBRC–10
DSPSCIX0 AS–406
external trace
example DGR–405
record format DGR–404
using DGR–404
FMTIMS statement example DGR–135
generating JCL DBRC–6
GENMAX, resetting DBRC–73
DBRC (Database Recovery Control) (continued)
IMS procedures and DBRC–8
initial RECON access DBRC–48
initialization DBRC–7
initializing the RECON DBRC–9
initializing the RECON data set AS–87
introduction OG–7
log control DBRC–10
log data sets DBRC–46
log records, deleting DBRC–76
maintaining RECON records DBRC–58
notifying that log data sets have moved DBRC–79
overview DBRC–3
parameters
IMS.PROCLIB execution parameter DBRC–8
partitioned data set members DBRC–5
RECON
creating a RECON DBRC–46
shared among multiple processors DBRC–42
RECON data set OG–48
RECON data set
diagnostic aid DGR–377
RECON, defining recovery requirements DBRC–12
RECON, registering databases in DBRC–9
recording change accumulations DBRC–16
recording image copies DBRC–15
Recovery Control utility DBRC–5
recovery utilities DBRC–5
recovery-related information DBRC–5
recovery-related information
recording DBRC–5
region
definition AS–10
required JCL updates AS–370
restart OG–223
service aids DGR–377
share control DBRC–18
SLDS stop time, locating the last in RECON
DBRC–72
specifying when it is to be used DBRC–8
subsystem (SSYS) records DBRC–76
system, considerations for a DBRC–23
tailoring JCL DBRC–11
testing AS–165
time stamp DBRC–89
tips DBRC–71
using DBRC with batch jobs DBRC–8
using for recovery OG–164
variables DBRC–46
what is it DBRC–3
when should you use it DBRC–7
with image copy utility OG–61
DBRC (Database Recovery Control) commands
Database Recovery Control utility (DSPURX00)
DBRC–5
DBRC Command Authorization exit routine
(DSFDCA0) DBRC–65
DBRC Command Authorization Exit Routine
(DSFDCA0)
IMS callable services CG–155
IMS environments CG–155
DBRC Command Authorization Exit Routine (DSPDCAX0) (continued)

including the routine CG–155
link-editing CG–155
naming convention CG–155
sample routine location CG–155

DBRC Command Authorization Support DBRC–63
DBRC Command Authorization Support using a security product DBRC–64
using both DSFDCAx0 and a security product DBRC–65
using DSFDCAx0 DBRC–65

DBRC problem, diagnosing DGR–12

DBRC procedure
automatic initiation ISDT–201
manual initiation ISDT–202
parameters ISDT–202
parameters
DD statements ISDT–202
DPRTY= ISDT–262
IMSID= ISDT–268
IMSPLEX=, description of ISDT–268
IMSPLEX=, restriction on using ISDT–268
RGN= ISDT–284
SOUT= ISDT–288
SYS2= ISDT–291
PDS member name ISDT–201
PDS member name
DBRCNM= ISDT–201, ISDT–202
START commands
example ISDT–202

DBRC trace (DSPTRACE)
BGNRETRY entry DGR–385
CRTR0XIT entry DGR–386
DSCPABN0 entry DGR–385
DSPCRTR0 entry DGR–386
DSPSTACK entry DGR–382, DGR–384
DSPSTFFRE entry DGR–382, DGR–384
DSPSTGET entry DGR–382, DGR–383
DSPURI00 entry DGR–386, DGR–388
GETFEED entry DGR–389
locating DGR–381
processing flow DGR–383
using DGR–381

DBRCNM, online execution parameter AS–101

DBRECOVERY (/DBRECOVERY) command
effects OG–275
HALDB OG–274
stopping database access OG–109

DBRECOVERY command
AREA keyword CR–162
DATABASE keyword CR–162
DATAGROUP keyword CR–163
DBCTL CR–163
DBRC CR–163
DEDB CR–162
description CR–161
environments CR–161
examples CR–165
GLOBAL keyword CR–163
LOCAL keyword CR–164

DBRECOVERY command (continued)
MSDB CR–163
NOFEOV keyword CR–164
NOPFA keyword CR–164
results of CR–163
syntax diagram CR–161

DBS keyword
/DISPLAY MODIFY command CR–228
definition CR–53
DBS= statement
Database Scan utility (DFSURG0) URDBTM–117
DBT (DB/DC online environment) IIV–89

DBTRACK parameter
CHANGE.DB command DBRC–113
CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–121

DC (data communication)
call analyzer (DFSDLA30) DGR–300
FMTIMS statement example DGR–136
service aid
DC trace DGR–269
description DGR–267
DLA3LOG trace DGR–300
finding the active save set DGR–304
IBM 3270 error recovery analysis DGR–305
IMS-VTAM interface DGR–304
message format service module traces DGR–312
message format service normal BTAM path DGR–305
OTMA dumps DGR–342
OTMA log records DGR–342
OTMA module-to-code cross reference table DGR–340
OTMA trace DGR–338
OTMA verb-to-code cross reference table DGR–341
receive-any buffer analysis DGR–303
terminal communication task trace DGR–267

DC keyword OG–84

DC keyword
/DISPLAY command
ACTIVE CR–205
definition CR–53
IDLE command CR–371
START command CR–585
STOP command CR–608

DC macro
effects ISDT–470
macros ISDT–470

DC Monitor data set, dynamic allocation
See Dynamic Allocation Macro (DFSMDA)

DC problem, diagnosing DGR–13

DC trace
diagnosing line problem DGR–276
diagnosing terminal problem DGR–276
starting DGR–269
stopping DGR–270
trace output example DGR–282

DC trace record
description CR–271
printing DGR–271
table of record types and contents DGR–273

Index 109
### DCB definition/mapping macro DGR–56

### DCB-EXT definition/mapping macro DGR–56

### DCBOSAM definition/mapping macro DGR–56

### DCC (DCCTL online environment) IIV–89

#### DCC parameters
- ARMRST= ISDT–252

#### DCC procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>ISDT–208</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALOT=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOIP=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOIS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPCSE=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPLID1=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPLID2=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPLID3=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARMRST=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASOT=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHTS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIOP=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMDMCS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLOQ=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPRET=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSCT=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMHBB=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMHL=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPCB=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETO=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXVR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBP=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FESTIM=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIX=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMTO=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRNAME=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRSNAME=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIOP=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSBID=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSBMBR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMSID=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISIS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LGMSGSZ=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LHTS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGT=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUMC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUMP=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAXPST=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHTS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NLX=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORSMBR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>ISDT–252</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARMRST=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASOT=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHTS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIOP=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMDMCS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLOQ=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPRET=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSCT=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMHBB=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMHL=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPCB=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETO=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXVR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBP=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FESTIM=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIX=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMTO=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRNAME=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRSNAME=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIOP=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSBID=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSBMBR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMSID=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISIS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LGMSGSZ=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LHTS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGT=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTERM=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUMC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUMP=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAXPST=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHTS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NLX=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORSMBR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DCC procedure (continued)

#### DCC procedure (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>ISDT–276</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OTMA=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTMANM=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTMASP=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSWD1=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRDR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRLD=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSB=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSBW=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QBUF=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QBUFM=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QBUFS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QTL=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QTU=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCF=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECA=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECAG=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RES=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGN=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSRM=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RVF=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAV=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGN=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHARED=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHMSGSZ=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOD=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOUT=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPM=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUF=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSM=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SV=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SY=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SY=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SY=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SY=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SY=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UHT=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USERVAR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAUT=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSPEC=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WADS=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAD=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WK=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YEAR=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Storing ISDT–191

### DCCTL

- connecting subsystems AS–17
- data sharing ADB–56
- environment IIV–99
- exit routines AS–19
- GSAM (Generalized Sequential Access Method) ADB–78
- installing with ETO Feature IIV–10
- keyword list CR–41
- macros that apply ISDT–31
- online environment.

See DCC (DCCTL online environment)
DCCTL (continued)
SHISAM (Simple Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method) ADB–78
SHSAM (Simple Hierarchical Sequential Access Method) ADB–78
using ISDT–31
DCCTL (data communication control) commands
list CR–779
DCCTL (Data Communications Control) ATM–11
DCCTL (Data Communications Control) generation ATM–12
IMS BTS ATM–12
procedures ATM–11
TM batch ATM–12
DCCTL environment APDG–29
DCCTL environment
AO transactions AS–19
application programs AS–17
commands AS–18
control region
data communication manager AS–16
message manager AS–16
Transaction Manager AS–16
data communication calls AS–18
databases supported AS–17
DBRC AS–16
definition AS–18
diagnosis AS–18
ESAF AS–15, AS–17
example AS–16
external subsystems AS–17
IMS.PROCLIB AS–17
initialization AS–18
overview AS–15
programming considerations APTM–8
region types AS–16
restart AS–18
stage 1 input AS–18
status code AD AS–19
system service calls AS–18
termination AS–18
utilities supported AS–18
DD statements JGR–112
DD statements (continued)
Database Surveyor utility (DFSPRSUR) URDBTM–74
Database-Monitor Report Print utility (DFSUTR30) URDBTM–293
DEDB Area Data Set Compare utility (DBFUMMH0) URDBTM–276
DEDB Area Data Set Create utility (DBFUMRI0) URDBTM–273
DEDB Initialization utility (DBFUMINO) URDBTM–142
DEDB Sequential Dependent Delete utility (DBFUMDL0) URDBTM–165
DEDB Sequential Dependent Scan utility (DBFUMSC0) URDBTM–158
DFSDB2AF JGR–16
DFSRESLB JGR–61
DFSWTnnn procedure URDBTM–518
EXEC Statement URDBTM–158
HD Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURGL0) URDBTM–60
HD Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURGU0) URDBTM–47
HISAM Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURRL0) URDBTM–36
HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0) URDBTM–23
JAVAERR JGR–9
JAVAOUT JGR–9
MFSDCT procedure URDBTM–407
MFSRVC procedure URDBTM–413
MSDB Dump Recovery utility (DBFDBDR0) URDBTM–265
MSDB Maintenance utility (DBFDBMA0) URDBTM–148
Online Database Image Copy utility (DFSUCICP0) URDBTM–207
Partial Database Reorganization utility (DFSPRC1) URDBTM–89
Partial Database Reorganization utility (DFSPRC2) URDBTM–90
Program-Isolation-Trace Report utility (DFSIPR0) URDBTM–320
SB Test utility (DFSSTBD0) URDBTM–326
STEPLIB JGR–9
Utility Control Facility (DFSUCF00) URDBTM–344
DD1= parameter
AREA statement URS–45
DDATA parameter ADB–195
DDATA= operand
XDFLD statement URS–84
DDIR definition/mapping macro DGR–56
DDM (device-dependent module)
communication analyzer
entry point DGR–267
save area DGR–268
trace ID DGR–268
trace output DGR–269
trace record example DGR–269
trace record format DGR–269
function DGR–363
DDN parameter commands
CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–117
DD statements
Batch Backout utility (DFSBBBO00) URDBTM–253
Database Change Accumulation utility (DFSUCUM0) URDBTM–218
Database Image Copy 2 utility (DFSUDMT0) URDBTM–196
Database Image Copy utility (DFSUDMP0) URDBTM–184
Database Prefix Resolution utility (DFSURG10) URDBTM–125
Database Prefix Update utility (DFSURGP0) URDBTM–130
Database Prenreorganization utility (DFSURPR0) URDBTM–107
Database Recovery utility (DFSURDB0) URDBTM–241
Database Scan utility (DFSURGS0) URDBTM–115
DD statements (continued)
Database Surveyor utility (DFSPRSUR) URDBTM–74
Database-Monitor Report Print utility (DFSUTR30) URDBTM–293
DEDB Area Data Set Compare utility (DBFUMMH0) URDBTM–276
DEDB Area Data Set Create utility (DBFUMRI0) URDBTM–273
DEDB Initialization utility (DBFUMINO) URDBTM–142
DEDB Sequential Dependent Delete utility (DBFUMDL0) URDBTM–165
DEDB Sequential Dependent Scan utility (DBFUMSC0) URDBTM–158
DFSDB2AF JGR–16
DFSRESLB JGR–61
DFSWTnnn procedure URDBTM–518
EXEC Statement URDBTM–158
HD Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURGL0) URDBTM–60
HD Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURGU0) URDBTM–47
HISAM Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURRL0) URDBTM–36
HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0) URDBTM–23
JAVAERR JGR–9
JAVAOUT JGR–9
MFSDCT procedure URDBTM–407
MFSRVC procedure URDBTM–413
MSDB Dump Recovery utility (DBFDBDR0) URDBTM–265
MSDB Maintenance utility (DBFDBMA0) URDBTM–148
Online Database Image Copy utility (DFSUCICP0) URDBTM–207
Partial Database Reorganization utility (DFSPRC1) URDBTM–89
Partial Database Reorganization utility (DFSPRC2) URDBTM–90
Program-Isolation-Trace Report utility (DFSIPR0) URDBTM–320
SB Test utility (DFSSTBD0) URDBTM–326
STEPLIB JGR–9
Utility Control Facility (DFSUCF00) URDBTM–344
DD1= parameter
AREA statement URS–45
DDATA parameter ADB–195
DDATA= operand
XDFLD statement URS–84
DDIR definition/mapping macro DGR–56
DDM (device-dependent module)
communication analyzer
entry point DGR–267
save area DGR–268
trace ID DGR–268
trace output DGR–269
trace record example DGR–269
trace record format DGR–269
function DGR–363
DDN parameter commands
CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–117
DDN parameter commands (continued)
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–125
  CHANGE.UIC DBRC–163
  DELETE.ALOC DBRC–166
  DELETE.DBDS DBRC–169
  DELETE.IC DBRC–171
  DELETE.RECOV DBRC–176
  DELETE.REORG DBRC–177
  DELETE.UIC DBRC–179
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–194
  GENJCL.OIC DBRC–203
  GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–208
  GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–212
  GENJCL.USER DBRC–218
  INIT.DBDS DBRC–231
  INIT.IC DBRC–237
  LIST.DBDS DBRC–253
  LIST.HISTORY DBRC–257
  NOTIFY.ALOC DBRC–268
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–273
  NOTIFY.RECOV DBRC–288
  NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–291
  NOTIFY.UIC DBRC–304

DDNAME
  HALDB ADB–295, ADB–480

DDNAME command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–531

DDNAME= keyword
  control statements
    DFSERA10 CONTROL URS–264
    DFSERA10 OPTION URS–268
    DFSMDA TYPE=DATASET URS–173
    DFSMDA TYPE=DFSDCMON URS–173,
      URS–174

DDNEW parameter
  CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–118

DIVOUT= keyword
  DFSERA10 CONTROL control statement URS–264
  deactivation, record ADB–112
  dead letter queue OG–109
  deadlock ATM–232

deadlock
  See also program deadlock
  abnormal termination AS–29
  CCTL thread AS–29
  DBCTL AS–29

Deadlock Event Summary report
  IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–372
  IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–401

deadlock involving non-IRLM resources DGR–45
deadlock involving only IRLM resources DGR–46

deadlock occurrence
  application programs APDB–157
  batch programs, in APDB–157

Deadlock reporting URS–275

Deadlock reporting
  See also Program Isolation Trace Record Format
  and Print Module (DFSERA40)
  for U777 and U123 abends URS–275
  resultant state of the lock URS–279
  deadlock, avoiding RECON DBRC–42

deadlock, program APDG–32
DEADLOK= parameter
  START irlmproc command CR–697
  DEQUEUE USER command CR–186
  DEADQ STATUS ATM–180
dealership sample application
  DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures JGR–63
dealership samples
  DBD JGR–91
  EAR, installing JGR–52
  PSB JGR–91
deallocate PSB call
  See also DPSB call
deallocation, changes to processing DBRC–18
DEALTIME parameter command NOTIFY.ALOC
  DBRC–268
deblocking algorithm, ATTACH FM header ATM–376
debug a program, how to APDG–161
debug a program, How to APDG–168
debug= Y
  for JVM debugging JGR–127
debugging
  XMLTrace JGR–124
debugging and diagnostic aids for Spool API
  debugging tips DGR–346
  internal trace table DGR–346
debugging, IMSRXTRC APDB–266, APTM–322

DEDB
  coexistence considerations RPG–48

multiple qualification statements APDB–195

DEDB (data entry database) APDG–71
DEDB (data entry database)
  See also Fast Path, DEDB
  adding ADB–420
  adding areas ADB–423
  and DBCTL ADB–3

  and segment edit/compression facility ADB–211
  area concept ADB–110
  buffer pools ADB–281
calls against ADB–124
changing by adding/deleting segments ADB–422

Cl problem
  Cl 0 DGR–357
  Cl 1 DGR–357
  common data DGR–360
diagnosis aids DGR–357
  first DOVF Cl DGR–358
  first IOVF Cl DGR–358
  other DOVF Cls DGR–358
  other IOVF Cls DGR–359
  other SDEP Cl DGR–359
  RAP Cl DGR–358
  scraps DGR–359
type identification DGR–357

Cl resources ADB–384
  command codes APDB–39
  data locking APDB–230
  DBCTL environment AS–25
  DBCTL support ADB–56
DEDB (data entry database) (continued)
DBRECOVERY command CR–162
  defining
    areas URS–44
    DBD generation, description URS–8
    fields URS–77
    segments URS–54
  deleting ADB–420
  deleting areas ADB–423
  description of ADB–109
  design considerations ADB–263
  DISPLAY command CR–216
  DL/I calls APDB–240
  ERESTART command CR–347
  extending IOVF online ADB–424
  Fast Path considerations AS–24
  Free space algorithm ADB–123
  functions ADB–109
  HSSP processing of ADB–275
  Insert algorithm ADB–122
  loading the database ADB–326
  LOCK DATABASE command CR–400
  naming URS–21
  online change OG–123
  online utility region parameters AS–109
  options AS–96
  PCBs and DL/I calls APDB–87
  performance considerations ADB–382
  processing
    commit point APDB–239
    data locking APDB–230
    fast path APDB–223
    H option APDB–239
    overview APCICS–91, APDB–225
    P option APDB–239
    POS call APDB–236
    POS command APCICS–101
    subset pointers APCICS–91, APDB–232
  recovery OG–164
  root segments, order APDB–128
  Sequential Dependent Scan exit routine CG–403
  SSA restrictions ADB–124
  storage of records ADB–118
  updating segments APDB–225
  updating with subset pointers APDB–232
  utility regions, starting OG–83
  VSO
    private buffer pools AS–381
  VSO areas
    block-level sharing AS–378
    when to use ADB–110

DEDB (data entry database) and the PROCOPT operand APDG–87

DEDB area
  enhancements
    overview RPG–131

DEDB Area Data Set Compare utility (DBFUMMH0)
  description URDBTM–275
  examples URDBTM–276
  input and output URDBTM–275

DEDB Area Data Set Compare utility (DBFUMMH0) (continued)
  JCL requirements
    DD statements URDBTM–276
    EXEC statement URDBTM–276
  recovery and restart URDBTM–276
  restrictions URDBTM–275

DEDB area data set create utility (DBFUMRI0)
  ADB–112

DEDB Area Data Set Create utility (DBFUMRI0)
  description URDBTM–271
  examples URDBTM–273
  input and output URDBTM–272
  JCL requirements
    DD statements URDBTM–273
    EXEC statement URDBTM–272
  recovery and restart URDBTM–272
  restrictions URDBTM–271

DEDB AREA UOW structural definition, changing
  ADB–420

DEDB CI resource
  and DBFX value ADB–281, ADB–285
  contention ADB–384
  determine resource size ADB–244
  Fast Path Performance ADB–381
  overhead needed ADB–307

DEDB Fast Path record DBRC–55

DEDB Initialization utility (DBFUMIN0)
  description URDBTM–141
  examples URDBTM–144
  input and output URDBTM–141
  JCL requirements
    DD statements URDBTM–142
    EXEC statement URDBTM–142
  restrictions URDBTM–141
  return codes URDBTM–143
  utility control statement URDBTM–143

DEDB Randomizing routine (DBFHDC40/DBFHDC44)
  CG–73
  attributes CG–73
  description CG–73
  invoking CG–74
  link-editing CG–73
  loading CG–74
  naming CG–73
  parameters CG–75
  randomizing module CG–73
  registers CG–75
  registers
    contents on entry CG–75
    contents on exit CG–76
  sample routine CG–76
  sample routine
    DBFHDC40 CG–76
  XCI registers CG–77
  XCI registers
    contents on entry for a randomizing call CG–77
    contents on entry for a termination call CG–77
    contents on entry for an initialization call CG–77
    contents on exit from a randomizing call CG–77

Index 113
DEDB Randomizing routine (DBFHDC40/DBFHDC44)  
(continued)
XCI registers (continued)
  contents on exit from a termination call CG–78
  contents on exit from an initialization call CG–78
DEDB reorganization
  See High-Speed DEDB Direct Reorganization utility  
  (DBFUHDR0)
DEDB Resource Name Hash routine (DBFLHSH0)
  assembling CG–80
  default routine CG–79
  description CG–79
  EPST CG–81
  EPST fields CG–81
  EPST input to the routine CG–80
  EPSTDMAA CG–81
  EPSTRSHS CG–81
  link-editing CG–79
  naming CG–79
  parameters CG–80
  registers, contents on entry CG–80
  sample result format CG–81
DEDB SDEP
  migration considerations RPG–34
DEDB SDEPs, format of RPG–48
DEDB segment edit/compression
  See also COMPRTN= keyword
  See Segment Edit/Compression exit routine
DEDB segments
  segment growth ADB–213
DEDB Sequential Dependent Delete utility (DBFUMDL0)
  description URDBTM–163
  example URDBTM–166
  input and output URDBTM–163
  JCL requirements
    DD statements URDBTM–165
    EXEC statement URDBTM–165
  recovery and restart URDBTM–164
  restrictions URDBTM–163
DEDB Sequential Dependent Scan utility (DBFUMSC0)
  description URDBTM–155
  example URDBTM–160
  EXEC Statement URDBTM–158
  input and output URDBTM–155
  JCL requirements
    DD statements URDBTM–158
    EXEC statement URDBTM–158
  recovery and restart URDBTM–158
  restrictions URDBTM–155
DEDB Sequential Dependent Scan Utility exit routine  
  (DBFUMSE1)
  attributes CG–101
  calling CG–102
  description CG–101
  link-editing CG–101
  randomizing module CG–101
  registers CG–102
  registers
    contents on entry CG–102
    contents on exit CG–102
  sample routine CG–103
DEDB utilities command summary URDBTM–529
DEDBs, non-recoverable enhancements
  overview RPG–133
default members
  See skeletal JCL
default members.
  See skeletal JCL
default override IIV–105
default system control area
  See DSCA (default system control area)
default terminal security AS–113
default terminal security
  commands controlled AS–122
  definition AS–115
  security option AS–115
DEFAULTS parameter commands
  GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–182
  GENJCL.CA DBRC–186
  GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–190
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–197
  GENJCL.OIC DBRC–203
  GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–208
  GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–212
  GENJCL.USER DBRC–218
defered program switch APD–96, ATM–32
defed program switch
  in conversational programs APTM–140
passing control to another APTM–137
define a data mapping with MAXDEF command
  APDB–266, APTM–322
DEFINE CLUSTER command
  for VSAM index option ADB–261
  HALDB ADB–312
  in access method services ADB–259
  REUSE parameter ADB–312
  VSAM data set allocation ADB–312
DEFINE CLUSTER keywords DBRC–46
DEFINE command
  description CR–737
  entry format CR–737
  STARTED keyword CR–737
  STOPPED keyword CR–737
  SYSTEM keyword CR–737
defining
  CICS ATM–545
  IMS ATM–289
  ISC node ATM–289, ATM–545
defining a new HALDB ADB–291
defining an ILDS ADB–296
defining application program elements to IMS
  AIB APCICS–5
  DIB APCICS–6
  I/O area APCICS–9
  key feedback area APCICS–9
defining BPE CQS–15
defining CQS CQS–15
defining data set groups
  HALDB ADB–294
defining external subsystems to IMS ISDT–455
defining HALDB ADB–292
defining HALDB partitions
  automatic ADB–293
  manual ADB–293
defining language interface module ISDT–461
defining MVS policies CQS–11
defining policies CQS–12
definite responses
  Finance Communication System ATM–438
  response requirements (figure) ATM–484
  SLU P ATM–438
definition
  data APDG–10
  dependent segment APDG–3
  root segment APDG–3
definition and tailoring
  Structured Call Interface CSL–147
definitions of CQS terms CQS–1
DEFLTJCL parameter
  CHANGE.CAGRP DBRC–107
  CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–118
  INIT.CAGRP DBRC–226
  INIT.DBDS DBRC–232
degraded mode logging OG–54
DELAY parameter II–76
DELETEQE parameter CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–117
delete byte
  bits ADB–471
  description ADB–15
  HDAM ADB–96
  HISAM ADB–66
  HSAM ADB–63
  in logical relationships ADB–441
  in secondary indexes ADB–192
  PHDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access Method) ADB–96
delete call
  See DLET Call
DELETE command
  DATABASE keyword CR–169
  description CR–170
  DESCRIPTOR keyword CR–169
  environments CR–169
  examples CR–170
  ISC parallel-session node CR–170
  LE keyword CR–169
  LINE keyword CR–169
  logical link security CR–170
  LTERM keyword CR–169
  NODE keyword CR–169
  PASSWORD keyword CR–170
  password security authorizations CR–170
  PROGRAM keyword CR–169
  PTERM keyword CR–169
  SMU CR–170
  syntax diagram CR–169
  TERMINAL keyword CR–170
  terminal security CR–170
  transaction code CR–170
  TRANSACTION keyword CR–169
  VTAM node CR–170
DELETE function (MFS Service utility DFSUTSA0)
  URDBTM–414
  delete group DBRC–315
  DELETE keyword JGR–81
  example JGR–81
  delete log records, how to DBRC–76
DELETE module
  DL/I trace, using DGR–249
  delete module service
  example BPE–73
  output BPE–73
  parameters BPE–73
DELETE parameter commands
  CHANGE.BKOUT DBRC–103
  CHANGE.CAGRP DBRC–107
delete record URDBTM–463
delete rules for logical relationships ADB–180,
  ADB–181, ADB–439, ADB–469
DELETE.ADS command DBRC–165
DELETE.ALLOC command DBRC–166
DELETE.BKOUT command DBRC–167
DELETE.CA command DBRC–167
DELETE.CAGRP command DBRC–168
DELETE.DB command DBRC–168
DELETE.DBDS DBRC–17
DELETE.DBDS command DBRC–169
DELETE.DBDSGRP command DBRC–170
DELETE.GSG command DBRC–170
DELETE.IC command DBRC–171
DELETE.LOG DBRC–11
DELETE.LOG (for OLDS) command DBRC–172
DELETE.LOG (for RLDS) command DBRC–172
DELETE.LOG (for SLDS) command DBRC–172
DELETE.LOG DBRC command II–50
DELETE.PART command
  DBD parameter DBRC–175
  PART parameter DBRC–175
  syntax DBRC–175
DELETE.RECOV command DBRC–176
DELETE.REORG command DBRC–176
DELETE.SG command DBRC–177
DELETE.SUBSYS command DBRC–178
DELETE.UIC command DBRC–178
deleted randomizer routine ADB–418
deleting a SSYS record DBRC–77
deleting information
  all change accumulation group records DBRC–168
  all database data set records DBRC–169
  all database records DBRC–168
  allocation record of database data set DBRC–166
  area data set DBRC–165
  backout record DBRC–167
  change accumulation run record DBRC–167
  database data set group records DBRC–170
  global service group records DBRC–170
  image copy data set records DBRC–171
  log records DBRC–76
  nonstandard image copy data sets DBRC–178
deleting information  (continued)
  online log data set records DBRC–172
  recovery log data set records DBRC–172
  recovery run record DBRC–176
  reorganization records DBRC–176
  service group records DBRC–177
  subsystem records DBRC–178
  system log data set records DBRC–172

deleting resources CSL–111

deleting segments
  DEDBs ADB–422
  HD databases ADB–103
  HISAM databases ADB–72
  HSAM databases ADB–64

deleting structures CQS–48
deleting unnecessary RECON records DBRC–59
DELMEM parameter
  CHANGE.DBDSGRP command DBRC–123
DELRECOV parameter
  CHANGE.DBDSGRP command DBRC–123
DELS keyword
  /DISPLAY MODIFY command CR–228
delta libraries
  CLIST options IIV–97
  library concatenations IIV–97
dependency keyword table DGR–555
dependency keywords DGR–47
dependent address space procedures IIV–10
dependent AND APDB–206
dependent region OTMA–46
dependent region
  BLDL list AS–196
  definition AS–9
  Fast Path parameters AS–107
  security AS–131
    AGN AS–132
    preventing start of unauthorized region AS–132
    resource access security AS–131, AS–151
    Resource-Access exit routine (DFSISIS0) AS–132, AS–133
    starting AS–9
    starting on alternate IMS AS–269
    status recorded in log AS–269
    types of AS–9
  dependent region connections CG–554
Dependent Region Preinitialization routines CG–160
Dependent Region Preinitialization routines
  activating CG–160
  description CG–159
  interfaces CG–161
  registers
    contents on entry CG–161
    contents on exit CG–161
Dependent Region Preinitialization Routines
  IMS callable services CG–160
  IMS environments CG–159
  including the routine CG–160
  link-editing CG–160
  naming convention CG–160
  sample routine location CG–160

dependent regions
  adjusting processing load OG–108
  failures OG–156
  starting OG–82
  stopping OG–138

dependent segment APDG–3

dependent segment, definition ADB–7

dependent segment, retrieving
  sequentially APCICS–41
  the location of a APCICS–59
dependent service element
  See DSE (dependent service element)
dependents
  direct APDG–30
  sequential APDG–30
dependents, direct APDB–225
deployment descriptor
  example JGR–57
  requirements for IMS Java JGR–56
DEQ (Dequeue) call
  and Q command code APDB–35, APDB–120
  description APDB–119
    format
      Fast Path APDB–120
      full function APDB–119
    parameters
      Fast Path APDB–120
      full function APDB–120
    restrictions APDB–121
    summary APDB–291
    usage APDB–120
DEQ (Dequeue) command
  description APCICS–70
  examples APCICS–71
    format APCICS–71
    options APCICS–71
    restrictions APCICS–71
    usage APCICS–71
DEQ call function APDB–312, APTM–382
DEQUEUE (/DEQUEUE) command OG–108, OG–109

DEQUEUE command
  AOITOKEN keyword CR–182
  committing ISC output messages ATM–321
    description CR–182
    examples CR–186
    for MSC ATM–232
    FORCESS versus SYNCSESS ATM–304
    IMS-to-IMS ISC session ATM–304
    LINE keyword CR–182
    LTERM keyword CR–183
    LUNAME keyword CR–183
    MSNAME keyword CR–183
    network-qualified LU name CR–183
    NODE keyword CR–183
    PTERM keyword CR–182
    PURGE keyword CR–183
    PURGE1 keyword CR–184
    SUSPEND keyword CR–184
    syntax diagram CR–181
DEQUEUE command (continued)
  TMEMBER keyword
  OTMA CR–185
  TPIPE keyword
  OTMA CR–185
  TPNAME keyword CR–183
  TRANSACTION keyword CR–185
  USER keyword CR–185
DEQUEUE USER command
  DEADQ status CR–186
dequeuing messages, implications ATM–304
deregistering clients CSL–116
DESC keyword JGR–83
description, segment APDG–3
descriptor OTMA–39
descriptor
  generic logon, definition ATM–140
  group logon, definition ATM–141
  logon, definition ATM–140
  MFS device ATM–141
  MSC ATM–141
  specific logon, definition ATM–141
  user ATM–141
DESCRIPTOR keyword
  CHANGE command CR–124
  CHANGE command
    LUNAME CR–124
    MODE CR–125
    SIDE CR–125
    SYNCELEVEL CR–125
    TPNAME CR–125
    TYPE CR–125
    definition CR–53
DELETE command CR–170
DISPLAY command
  description CR–218
  example CR–291
START command CR–585
descriptors, ETO
  logon CG–328
  user CG–381, CG–408
design aids
  for test databases ADB–303
design limit ISDT–57
design objectives, application APTM–249
design of
  an application APDG–9
  conversation APDG–96
  local view APDG–16
design reviews AS–34
design reviews
  description of ADB–25
  introduction ADB–4
  participation AS–34
designator character APTM–272
designing
  terminal screen APDG–95
destination determination, message OTMA–40
destination of modifiable alternate PCBs APTM–129
destination parent ADB–160, ADB–182
destination process name
  See DPN (destination process name)
destination queue name, ATTACH FM header ATM–381
Destination Resolution exit routine (DFSYDRU0)
  OTMA–40
destination system (MSC) ATM–201
destination token, explanation of OTMA–84
destroy named storage service
  example BPE–76
  output BPE–76
  parameters BPE–75
Detail-Listing-of-Exception-Transactions Report
  Fast Path Log Analysis utility URS–294
detecting bottlenecks in message processing URS–460
determination of mappings APDG–21
determining the current position in the database
  APCICS–64
determining VSAM options ADB–256
DEV statement APTM–193
DEV statement
  CARD= operand URDBTM–468
  DSCA= operand URDBTM–464
  FEAT= operand APTM–256, URDBTM–466
  FORMS= operand URDBTM–469
  FORS= operand APTM–225
  FTAB= operand APTM–193, URDBTM–462
  HTAB= operand APTM–221, URDBTM–469
  LDEL= operand URDBTM–463
  MODE= operand URDBTM–462
  PAGE= operand APTM–220, URDBTM–463
  PDB= operand URDBTM–472
  PEN= operand URDBTM–468
  PFK= operand URDBTM–467
  SLDI= operand URDBTM–471
  SLDP= operand URDBTM–471
  SLDx= operand APTM–222
  specifying URDBTM–454
  SUB= operand APTM–199, URDBTM–471
  SYSMSG= operand URDBTM–469
  TYPE= operand APTM–256, URDBTM–460
  VERSID= operand URDBTM–471
  VT= operand APTM–221, URDBTM–470
  VTAB= operand APTM–222, URDBTM–470
  WIDTH= operand APTM–221, URDBTM–469
developing search arguments DGR–17
DEVICE BUSY category
  sense-status message
    3270 recovery analysis DGR–305
device characteristics table
  See DFSUDT0x (device characteristics table)
device class control ATM–86
device control characters APTM–203
DEVICE END category
  sense-status message
    3270 recovery analysis DGR–305
device feature selection APTM–256
device format conversion APTM–356
device formats, default APTM–257
device input format APTM–248
device input format
  See DIF (device input format)
device input format (DIF)
  See DIF (device input format)
device input format (DIF), control block APDG–94
device output format APTM–248
device output format
  See DOF (device output format)
device output format (DOF)
  See DOF (device output format)
device output format (DOF), control block APDG–94
device page
  See DPAGE
device-dependent module.
  See DDM (device-dependent module)
devices supported OG–347
devices supported by MFS APTM–177
DFC (data flow control) protocols ATM–317
DFC (data flow control) protocols
  bracket and half-duplex ATM–328
  bracketing messages ATM–328
  bracketing messages
    input ATM–328
    output ATM–331
  chaining ATM–337
  commands ATM–327
commands
  BID ATM–327
  BIS ATM–353
  CANCEL ATM–336
  CHASE ATM–337
  LUSTATUS ATM–341, ATM–344
  RSHUT ATM–345
  RTR ATM–344
  SBI ATM–353
  SIGNAL ATM–353
ERP PURGE ATM–339
error handling ATM–317
error handling
  conversation mode ATM–318
  response mode ATM–317
  selective receiver ERP ATM–345
examples ATM–577
exception response ATM–317
half-session synchronization ATM–319
input messages, backing out ATM–319
paged message errors ATM–344
PURGE after exception response ATM–338
recoverability aided by LWA ATM–319
response requirements ATM–319
response requirements
  irrecoverable-inquiry transactions ATM–319
  recoverable-inquiry transactions ATM–319
sense codes ATM–352
symmetrical session shutdown ATM–353
sync point and response ATM–319
sync point and response
  availability ATM–320
  CICS-IMS ATM–560
  exceptions for synchronous input ATM–320
  input ATM–324
DFC (data flow control) protocols (continued)
  sync point and response (continued)
    irrecoverable messages ATM–323
    MFS output messages, ISC ATM–322
    output ATM–325
    recoverable messages ATM–321
    requested on input ATM–319
    requested on output ATM–321
DFHEIENT APCICS–15
DFHEIRET APCICS–15
DFHEISTG APCICS–15
dljvmp.r props file JGR–68
DFLD (device field statement) URDBTM–448
DFLD (device field statement)
  iterative processing URDBTM–448, URDBTM–490
  LTH= operand URDBTM–495
  OPCTL= operand URDBTM–503
  PASSWORD parameter URDBTM–494
  PEN= operand URDBTM–503
  POS= operand URDBTM–494
  printing generated DFLD statements URDBTM–489
  SCA parameter URDBTM–494
  SLDI= operand URDBTM–504
  SLDP= operand URDBTM–504
DFLD/MFLD literal
  containing DBCS/EBCDIC mixed data APTM–214
DFPXMB ADB–504, ADB–505
DFS.EDT APTM–290
DFS.EDTN APTM–290
DFS057I block error message APTM–244
DFS1150 APTM–189
DFS1269E OTMA failure message DGR–341
DFS1959E, reason codes DGR–323
DFS1965 APPC/MVS call failure, reason codes DGR–329
DFS2712I message
  using in Fast Path problem analysis DGR–354
DFS29800
  2972/2980 Input edit routine (DFS29800) CG–441
DFS3650 (session status message) ATM–60
DFS3672I message DGR–329
DFS554 message OTMA–20
DFS62DTx
  description ISDT–396
  parameters ISDT–397
DFSACBCP control statement URS–159
DFSAFMD0 IIV–11, IIV–68, IIV–71
DFSAOE00 OG–196
DFSAOE00
  AO (automated operator) exit routine CG–135
DFSAOE00
  Type 1 Automated Operator exit routine (DFSAOE00) CG–241
DFSAPPCC APTM–143
DFSAPPCC
  format APTM–143
  message switching APTM–143
  option keywords APTM–143
DFSAPPCC message switch APDG–133
DFSAPPCC message switching ATM–425
DFSAVEC definition/mapping macro DGR–56
DFSBBO00 OG–71
DFSBBO00 (Batch Backout utility)
  description URDBTM–249
  in an RSR environment URDBTM–250
  input and output URDBTM–251
  JCL requirements
    DD statements URDBTM–253
    EXEC statement URDBTM–252
    Remote Site Recovery URDBTM–250
    restrictions URDBTM–251
    return codes URDBTM–259
  utility control statement
    ABEND URDBTM–256
    ABENDMSG URDBTM–256
    ACTIVE URDBTM–256
    BYPASS LOGVER URDBTM–257
    BYPASS SEQVER URDBTM–257
    CHKPT URDBTM–257
    COLDSTART URDBTM–258
    description URDBTM–255
    READBACK URDBTM–259
DFSBSEX0
  Build Security Environment Exit Routine
  (DFSBSEX0) CG–267
DFSCAOI
  macro CG–23
  parameter list CG–23
DFSCBT00 pools DGR–79
DFSCCBLK ATM–128
DFSCCBLK macro CG–19
DFSCCMD0 OTMA–40
DFSCCMD0
  Command Authorization exit routine (DFSCCMD0)
  CG–151
DFSCGxxx AS–402, CSL–14
DFSCGxxx
  global online change AS–406
  OLCSTAT data set AS–407
DFSCKWD0
  IMS command language modification facility
  (DFSCKWD0) CG–167
DFSCMC00 module, MSC analyzer DGR–371
DFSCMC10 module
  abnormal-end appendage DGR–373
  channel-end appendage DGR–373
  shutdown appendage DGR–373
DFSCMC40 module
  attention DIE routine DGR–372
  I/O request DIE routine DGR–372
DFSCMC50 module
  shutdown processing routine DGR–371
DFSCMLR0/1
  no longer supported RPG–36
DFSCMPX0
  Segment Edit/Compression exit routine CG–107
DFSCMTR0
  no longer supported RPG–36
  Terminal Routing exit routine (DFSCMTR0) CG–421
DFSCMTU0
  User Message Table CG–227
DFSCMUX0
  Message Control/Error exit routine (DFSCMUX0)
  CG–337
DFSCMUX0 exit routine ATM–223
DFSCNTE0
  Message Switching (Input) Edit Routine (DFSCNTE0)
  CG–347
DFSCNXA0 module
  error messages DGR–336
  location codes for error messages DGR–329
  tracing errors DGR–329
DFSCONE0
  Conversational Abnormal Termination exit routine
  (DFSCONE0) CG–271
DFSCONE0 (Conversational Abnormal Termination exit routine) APDG–98
DFSCPIC
  DISPLAY TRANSACTION command CR–270
DFSCSGN0
  Sign On/Off Security Exit Routine (DFSCSGN0)
  CG–417
DFSCSGN0 module for signon verification AS–140
DFSCSI00 module CG–13
DFSCSI00 entry point CG–15
DFSCSI10 entry point CG–14
DFSCSMBO
  Transaction Code Input edit routine (DFSCSMBO)
  CG–437
DFSCSTRG macro CG–16
DFSCCTL data set control statements
  SB control statement ADB–254
  SBPARM control statement ADB–254
DFSCTRN0 OTMA–40
DFSCTRN0
  Transaction Authorization exit routine (DFSCTRN0)
  CG–433
DFSCTRN0 module for transaction authorization
  AS–140
DFSCSTSE0
  Security Reverification exit routine (DFSCSTSE0)
  CG–401
DFSCSTTO0
  Physical Terminal Output edit routine (DFSCSTTO0)
  CG–391
DFSDCxxx CSL–14
DFSDCxxx
  data communications options, specifying ISDT–325
  description ISDT–325
  parameters ISDT–325
DFSDDLT0 (DL/I test program) ADB–304, APDG–141, DGR–219
DFSDDLT0 (DL/I Test Program)
  See DL/I Test Program (DFSDDLT0)
DFSDDLT0 internal control statements
  AB0C1 statement (INTERNAL CALL STATEMENT)
  APDB–303, APTM–373
  WTSR statement (INTERNAL CALL STATEMENT)
  APDB–303, APTM–373
DFSDF1 APTM–244
DFSDF2 APTM–244
DFSDF4 APTM–244
DFSDLA30 (DC call analyzer)
  tracing using DLA3LOG DGR–300
DFSDLLOC0, randomizing module, loading CG–84
DFSDLTR0 (DL/I image capture).
  See DL/I image capture (DFSDLTR0) programs
DFSDLTR0 call image capture trace description
  DGR–255
DFSDOPTE definition/mapping macro DGR–56
DFSDPBHF definition/mapping macro DGR–56
DFSDRFnn
  description ISDT–335
  parameters ISDT–336
DFSDSP01 APTM–244
DFSEMODL macro CG–505
DFSERA10 CQS–187
DFSERA10 (File Select and Formatting Print program)
  OGS–95
DFSERA10 (File Select and Formatting Print utility)
  See File Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSERA10)
DFSERA10 program
  exit routines DGR–129
  formatted output example DGR–130
  function DGR–129
  printing DC trace records DGR–271
  unformatted output example DGR–130
DFSERA10 utility APDG–168
DFSERA20.
  See SNAP
DFSERA30 (Record Format and Print Module)
  See Record Format and Print Module (DFSERA30)
DFSERA40
  See Program Isolation Trace Record Format and
  Print Module (DFSERA40)
DFSERA50 (DL/I Call Trace Data exit routine)
  See DL/I Call Trace Data exit routine (DFSERA50)
DFSEWAL macro CG–508
DFSFDOO
  Dump Override Table CG–163
DFSFDRxx
  description ISDT–336
  parameters ISDT–336
DFSFEBJ0
  See also Front-End Switch exit routine (DFSFEBJ0),
  special support
  Front-End Switch Exit Routine (DFSFEBJ0) CG–283
DFSFIXnn
  description ISDT–338
  parameters ISDT–338
DFSFIXxx member of IMS.PROCLIB
  for page fixing AS–205
  purpose of AS–269
  used in tuning AS–205
DFSFGLGXX
  Logger exit routine (DFSFGLGXX) CG–199
DFSFHTFXO
  Log Filter Exit Routine (DFSFHTFXO) CG–193
DFSGPPIX0
  Global Physical Terminal Input edit routine
  (DFSGPPIX0) CG–305
DFSHALDB
  single partition processing ISDT–444
DFSHDC40
  HDAM and PHDAM randomizing routines CG–83
  sample HDAM and PHDAM Generalized randomizing
  routine CG–87
DFSHSIXx
  description ISDT–342, ISDT–346, ISDT–347,
  ISDT–348
  parameters ISDT–342, ISDT–346
  reinitialization routines, specifying dependent region
  ISDT–346
  XRF options ISDT–342
DFSHSIXx member of IMS.PROCLIB
  choosing methods of surveillance AS–259
  establish criteria for takeover AS–271
  parameters AS–259, AS–304
  purpose of AS–259
DFSICIO0 (communication analyzer)
  DDM
    entry point DGR–267
    trace ID DGR–268
    description DGR–267
    save area DGR–268
    trace output DGR–269
    trace record example DGR–269
    trace record format DGR–269
DFSIGNI APTM–244, APTM–245
DFSIGNJ APTM–244, APTM–245
DFSIGNP APTM–244, APTM–245
DFSIGNXX
  (File Select and Formatting Print utility)
  See Log Transaction Analysis utility (DFSIGNXX)
DFSIGNXX (Output Creation exit routine)
  APDG–168
DFSGTEB0
  Dump Override Table CG–163
DFSGDRxx
  description ISDT–336
  parameters ISDT–336
DFSGEBJ0
  See also Front-End Switch exit routine (DFSGEBJ0),
  special support
  Front-End Switch Exit Routine (DFSGEBJ0) CG–283
DFSGFIXnn
  description ISDT–338
  parameters ISDT–338
DFSGIXxx member of IMS.PROCLIB
  for page fixing AS–205
  purpose of AS–269
  used in tuning AS–205
DFSGLGXX
  Logger exit routine (DFSGLGXX) CG–199
DFSFHTFXO
  Log Filter Exit Routine (DFSFHTFXO) CG–193
DFSGPPIX0
  Global Physical Terminal Input edit routine
  (DFSGPPIX0) CG–305
DFSIVP1 program IIV–133, IIV–162
DFSIXC01 IIV–96
DFSJBP procedure
   DD statements ISDT–211
   description ISDT–210
   parameters ISDT–211
   parameters
      ENVIRON= ISDT–263
      JVMOPWKR= ISDT–270
DFSJMP procedure JGR–9
DFSJMP procedure
   DD statements ISDT–212
   description ISDT–211
   parameters ISDT–212
   parameters
      ENVIRON= ISDT–263
      JVMOPWKR= ISDT–270
DFSJVMEV member
   DB2 JDBC driver JGR–16
   IVP changes JGR–9
DFSJVMMMS
   DB2 JDBC driver JGR–16
DFSJVMMMS member
   IVP changes JGR–9
DFSLGFX0
   Logoff exit routine (DFSLGFX0) CG–323
DFSLGNX0
   Logon exit routine (DFSLGNX0) CG–327
DFSLGNX0 (Logon exit routine) AS–131
DFSLI macro ISDT–461
DFSLI000 (language interface module) ISDT–461
DFSLTMG0 (Log Merge utility)
   See Log Merge utility (DFSLTMG0)
DFSM0 APTM–246
DFSM01 APTM–244
DFSM02 APTM–244
DFSM03 APTM–244
DFSM04 APTM–244
DFSM05 APTM–244
DFSMDA
   definitions IIV–11
   dynamic allocation macro IIV–53
DFSMDA (Dynamic Allocation Macro)
   See Dynamic Allocation Macro (DFSMDA)
DFSMDA macro APDG–47
DFSMDA macro
   START OLDS command CR–588
DFSM000 APTM–191
DFSM000
   Input Message Field edit routine (DFSM000)
   CG–313
DFSM127
   Input Message Segment edit routine (DFSM127)
   CG–317
DFSM1 APTM–244
DFSM2 APTM–244
DFSM3 APTM–244
DFSM4 APTM–244
DFSMNTB0 (DB Monitor program) ADB–331
DFSMSNTR0, Data Communication Monitor URS–257
DFSMODEL member JGR–110
DFSMPRx AS–105
DFSMPRx
   description ISDT–348
   high-use program modules, making resident
   ISDT–348
   parameters ISDT–349
DFSMPRx, for program preload AS–207
DFSMPR procedure
   DD statements ISDT–214
   description ISDT–213
   IMSMSG job ISDT–242
   parameters ISDT–213
   parameters
      AGN= ISDT–248
      ALTID= ISDT–249
      APARM= ISDT–250
      APPLFE= ISDT–250
      CL1=,CL2=CL3=,CL4= ISDT–253
      DBLDO= ISDT–257
      IMSID= ISDT–268
      LOCKMAX= ISDT–271
      NBA= ISDT–275
      OBA= ISDT–275
      OPT= ISDT–275
      OVALID= ISDT–277
      PCB= ISDT–278
      PREINIT= ISDT–279
      PRLD= ISDT–280
      PWFI= ISDT–281
      RGN= ISDT–284
      SOD= ISDT–288
      SOUT= ISDT–288
      SPIE= ISDT–288
      SSM= ISDT–288
      STIMER= ISDT–289
      SYSL= ISDT–291
      TLIM= ISDT–291
      VALCK= ISDT–293
      VFREE= ISDT–293
      VSFX= ISDT–293
DFSMRCL0 IIV–11
DFSMPREC control statement URS–203
DFSMS
   requirement for XRF AS–250, AS–255
   XRF process, contribution to AS–260
DFSMSCE0
   and the DFSMSCEP macro CG–353
   and the DFSMSCEV macro CG–356
   attributes of the exit routine CG–352
   coexistence with earlier MSC exit routines CG–349
   defining entry points CG–351
   in a multiple systems coupling environment CG–350
   in a shared queues environment CG–350
   in a shared queues MSC environment CG–350
   in a single IMS system CG–350
   restrictions for use CG–358
   sample IMS configurations CG–350
   SYSGEN changes CG–352
   user parameter list CG–353
   vector control table CG–356
DFSMSCE0 keyword
   /TRACE command CR–652
DFSMSCEO CG–349
DFSMSCTV macro CG–356
DFSMSxxx control block ATM–218
DFSNDMX0
Non-Discardable Messages exit routine
(DFSNDMX0) CG–359
DFSNPRT0 OTMA–40
DFSNPRT0
no longer supported RPG–36
DFSOFMDO IVV–71
DFSOFMDO (Offline Dump Formatter)
See Offline Dump Formatter (DFSOFMDO)
DFSORSxx member ISDT–350
DFSPBDBC
description ISDT–351
parameters ISDT–351
DFSPBDCC
description ISDT–351
parameters ISDT–351
DFSPBIMS
description ISDT–351
parameters ISDT–351
DFSPBxxx AS–91, CSL–14, OTMA–37
DFSPBxxx
defining AS–91
IMS Syntax Checker AS–91
sample AS–91
updating AS–91
DFSPIRP0 (Program-Isolation-Trace Report utility)
description URDBTM–319
example URDBTM–321
input and output URDBTM–319
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–320
EXEC statement URDBTM–320
JOBLIB DD statement URDBTM–320
utility control statement URDBTM–321
DFSPIXT0
Physical Terminal Input edit routine (DFSPIXT0)
CG–387
DFSPPUCE0
Partner Product exit routine (DFSPPUCE0) CG–207
DFSPRCT1
DFSPRCT2 (Partial Database Reorganization utility)
restricted from Utility Control Facility
URDBTM–334
Partial Database Reorganization utility URDBTM–88
DFSPRCT1 (Partial Database Reorganization utility)
ADB–351
DFSPRCT2 (Unload/Reload/Pointer Resolution Step 2)
Partial Database Reorganization utility URDBTM–89
DFSPRE60
System Definition Preprocessor exit routine (input phase) CG–221
DFSPRE70
System Definition Preprocessor exit routine (name check complete) CG–225
DFSPREC0 (HALDB Index/ILDS Rebuild utility)
URDBTM–231
DFSPRP
macro keywords APDB–354
DFSPRPX0 parameter block diagram DGR–69
DFSPRSUR (Database Surveyor utility) ADB–350
DFSPRSUR (Database Surveyor utility)
description URDBTM–73
examples URDBTM–78
input URDBTM–73
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–74
EXEC statement URDBTM–74
output URDBTM–73
restricted from Utility Control Facility URDBTM–334
return codes URDBTM–78
utility control statement
DBNAME= URDBTM–76
FROMAREA= URDBTM–77
KEYRANGE= URDBTM–76
MODE= URDBTM–77
SAMPLE= URDBTM–77
TOAREA= URDBTM–77
DFSPSP00 (DRA startup table) APDB–354
DFSQMRQ0 processor module description DGR–283
DFSQSP0 OTMA–40
DFSQSPC0
Queue Space Notification exit routine (DFSQSPC0)
CG–395
DFSQSPC0 (Message Queue Space Notification exit routine)
non-shared queues environments, in AS–102
shared queues environments, in AS–102
DFRESRLB DD statement JGR–61
DFRESRLIB DD statement
IMS procedures, specifying in ISDT–192
DFSRXXU
IMS Adapter for REXX exit routine CG–299
DFSRXXU (Example User Exit Routine)
sample APDB–301
DFSRXRxx
description ISDT–351
parameters ISDT–352
DFSSAM01 (Loads the Database) APDB–282,
APTM–338
DFSSAMD0 (SB Test utility)
data set requirements URDBTM–324
description URDBTM–323
example URDBTM–329
image capture log record URDBTM–323
input and output URDBTM–325
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–326
EXEC statement URDBTM–325
output URDBTM–325
restrictions URDBTM–324
utility control statement
DBIO URDBTM–327
SELECT URDBTM–328
DFSSBHDO (SB Test utility)
data set requirements URDBTM–324
description URDBTM–323
example URDBTM–329
image capture log record URDBTM–323
input and output URDBTM–325
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–326
EXEC statement URDBTM–325
output URDBTM–325
restrictions URDBTM–324
utility control statement
DBIO URDBTM–327
SELECT URDBTM–328
DFSSBHDO utility
using with SB IMAGE CAPTURE option DGR–260
DFSSBU1 (sample SB Initialization exit routine)
CG–130
DFSSBU2 (sample SB Initialization exit routine)
CG–130
DFSSBU3 (sample SB Initialization exit routine)  
CG–130
DFSSBU4 (sample SB Initialization exit routine)  
CG–130
DFSSBU9 (sample SB Initialization exit routine)  
CG–130
DFSSBUX0  
Sequential Buffering Initialization exit routine  
(DFSSBUX0) CG–127
DFSSBWO definition/mapping macro DGR–56
DFSSGFX0  
Signoff exit routine (DFSSGFX0) CG–413
DFSSGNX0  
Sign-On exit routine (DFSSGNX0) CG–405
DFSSGNX0 (Signon exit routine) AS–131
DFSSIML0  
Shared Printer exit routine (DFSSIML0) CG–403
DFSSIML0 exit routine ATM–90
DFSSPMxx  
description ISDT–362
examples ISDT–365
parameters ISDT–362
DFSSQxxx  
description ISDT–365
parameters ISDT–366
DFSSS050  
Large SYSGEN Sort/Split Input exit routine CG–171
DFSS060  
Large SYSGEN Sort/Split Output exit routine  
CG–175
DFSSTAT (//DFSSTAT) reports OG–99
DFSSTAT report ISDT–295
DFSTCF load command OG–189
DFSTCNT0  
Time-Controlled Operations (TCO) Communication  
Name Table (CNT) exit routine (DFSTCNT0)  
CG–429
DFSTVER0 OG–189
DFSTXIT0  
Time-Controlled Operations (TCO) exit routine  
(DFSTXIT0) CG–425
DFSUARC0 (Log Archive utility)  
See also Log Archive utility (DFSUARC0)  
description DBRC–11
DFSUARCO OG–50
DFSUCF00 (Utility Control Facility)  
(check continued)  
service aids URDTBM–341
termination/error processing URDTBM–338
types of processing  
normal URDTBM–335
restart URDTBM–339
user exit routine processing URDTBM–339
utility control statement  
FUNCTION= keyword URDTBM–348
WTOR (write-to-operator-with-reply) function URDTBM–342
DFSUCUM0 (Database Change Accumulation utility)  
See also Database Change Accumulation utility (DFSUCUM0)
CA group  
defining DBRC–33
 defining for future use DBRC–34
reusing DBRC–34
description DBRC–31, URDTBM–215
examples URDTBM–227
execution recorded by DBRC DBRC–16
input DBRC–32
input and output URDTBM–217
JCL requirements  
DD statements URDTBM–218
EXEC statement URDTBM–217
output messages and statistics URDTBM–226
purge date and time URDTBM–220
restricted from Utility Control Facility URDTBM–335
return codes URDTBM–226
subset of log volumes DBRC–32
utility control statement  
DB0 statement URDTBM–223
DB1 statement URDTBM–224
ID statement URDTBM–222
SO statement URDTBM–225
DFSUDMP0 OG–61
DFSUDMP0 (Database Image Copy utility)  
See also Database Image Copy utility (DFSUDMP0)
description URDTBM–179
examples URDTBM–187
frequency of creating image copies URDTBM–179
in an RSR environment URDTBM–180
input and output URDTBM–182
JCL requirements  
DD statements URDTBM–184
EXEC statement URDTBM–183
Remote Site Recovery URDTBM–180
restrictions URDTBM–181
return codes URDTBM–187, URDTBM–201
utility control statement URDTBM–186
DFSUDMT0 OG–61
DFSUDMT0 (Database Image Copy 2 utility)  
See also Database Image Copy utility (DFSUDMT0)
description URDTBM–189
examples URDTBM–202
input and output URDTBM–195
JCL requirements  
DD statements URDTBM–196
EXEC statement URDTBM–195
restrictions URDTBM–194
DFSUDMT0 (Database Image Copy 2 utility)
(continued)
utility control statement URDBTM–197
DFSUDT0x (device characteristics table) APTM–176,
URDBTM–419
DFSUDT0x (device characteristics table)
description APTM–246
 MFS Device Characteristics Table utility APTM–246
specifying screen size URDBTM–460
DFSUIOC0 OG–214
DFSUICP0 OG–61
DFSUICP0 (Online Database Image Copy utility)
See also Online Database Image Copy utility
(DFSUICP0)
creating data sets for future use DBRC–27
description DBRC–24, URDBTM–205
example URDBTM–19
execution recorded by DBRC DBRC–15
JCL requirements
 DD statements URDBTM–207
 EXEC statement URDBTM–207
output URDBTM–206
recovery and restart URDBTM–206
restricted from Utility Control Facility URDBTM–334
restrictions URDBTM–205
return codes URDBTM–210
DFSULTR0 OG–154
DFSULTR0 (Log Recovery utility)
description URS–233
generating a job DBRC–189
modes URS–236
DFSUOCU0 (Online Change Copy utility).
See also Online Change Copy utility (DFSUOCU0)
DFSUOCU0 (Online Change utility) ADB–417,
 ADB–418, ADB–419
DFSUOLC0 AS–402, AS–407, OG–125
DFSUOLC0 (Global Online Change utility).
See also Global Online Change utility (DFSUOLC0)
DFSURDD0 (Database Recovery utility)
description URDBTM–235
examples URDBTM–245
 in an RSR environment URDBTM–237
input and output URDBTM–239
JCL requirements
 DD statements URDBTM–241
 EXEC statement URDBTM–241
Remote Site Recovery URDBTM–237
restricted from Utility Control Facility URDBTM–334
restrictions URDBTM–238
return codes URDBTM–245
utility control statement
 ABEND URDBTM–243
NOSEQCQK URDBTM–243
 S (database recovery) URDBTM–244
DFSURG10 (Database Prefix Resolution utility)
(continued)
JCL requirements
 DD statements URDBTM–125
 EXEC statement URDBTM–123
 PARM field options URDBTM–123
output messages and statistics URDBTM–127
restrictions URDBTM–122
return codes URDBTM–127
sort/merge URDBTM–123
DFSURGL0 (HD Reorganization Reload utility)
 ADB–344
DFSURG0 (Database Scan utility) ADB–345
DFSURG0 (Database Scan utility)
abnormal termination URDBTM–114
description URDBTM–113
example URDBTM–120
JCL requirements
 DD statements URDBTM–130
 EXEC statement URDBTM–130
output messages URDBTM–134
recovery and restart URDBTM–130
utility control statement
 ABEND URDBTM–134
 CHKPT URDBTM–133
 RSTRT URDBTM–133
 SNAP URDBTM–133
DFSURG0 (HD Reorganization Unload utility)
ADB–343
DFSURG0 (HD Reorganization Unload utility)
description URDBTM–43
examples URDBTM–52
JCL requirements
 DD statements URDBTM–47
 EXEC statement URDBTM–47
output messages and statistics URDBTM–50
DFSURGU0 (HD Reorganization Unload utility)  
(continued)  
restrictions URDBTM–45  
return codes URDBTM–52  
DFSURPR0 (Database Prereorganization utility)  
ADB–345  
DFSURPR0 (Database Prereorganization utility)  
description URDBTM–105  
example URDBTM–111  
JCL requirements  
DD statements URDBTM–107  
EXEC statement URDBTM–107  
output messages URDBTM–111  
return codes URDBTM–111  
utility control statement  
DBL= URDBTM–108  
DBR= URDBTM–109  
OPTIONS= URDBTM–110  
DFSURRL0 OG–66  
DFSURRL0 (HISAM Reorganization Reload utility)  
ADB–343  
DFSURRL0 (HISAM Reorganization Reload utility)  
description URDBTM–35  
JCL requirements  
DD statements URDBTM–36  
EXEC statement URDBTM–36  
output messages and statistics URDBTM–38  
restrictions URDBTM–36  
return codes URDBTM–41  
utility control statement  
OPTIONS= URDBTM–38  
DFSURUL0 OG–15, OG–66  
DFSURUL0 (HISAM Reorganization Unload utility)  
ADB–342  
DFSURUL0 (HISAM Reorganization Unload utility)  
CHANGE= statement URDBTM–26  
description URDBTM–21  
examples URDBTM–31  
for backup DBRC–29  
JCL requirements  
DD statements URDBTM–23  
EXEC statement URDBTM–23  
OPTIONS= statement URDBTM–27  
output messages and statistics URDBTM–27  
restrictions URDBTM–22  
return codes URDBTM–31  
utility control statement URDBTM–25  
DFSURWF1, Utility Control Facility URDBTM–345  
DFSURWF2, Utility Control Facility URDBTM–345  
DFSURWF3, Utility Control Facility URDBTM–345  
DFSUSER user descriptor CG–381, CG–408  
DFSVFLoq  
description ISDT–367  
DFSVNUCx module IIV–10  
DFSVSAMP data set ADB–69, AS–385  
DFSVSMxx  
control statements, types of ISDT–367  
description ISDT–367  
Fast Path DEDB buffer pools, defining ISDT–368  
OSAM buffer pools, defining ISDT–376  
OSAM subpools, defining ISDT–376  
sequential buffering, specifying ISDT–378  
serviceability and trace options, defining ISDT–379  
VSAM buffer pools, defining ISDT–369  
VSAM performance options ISDT–374  
VSAM subpools, defining ISDT–371  
DFSVSMxx member of IMS.PROCLIB  
MADSIOT ADB–146  
DFSVSMxx, for buffer subpools  
member AS–385  
used in tuning AS–205  
using IOBF AS–205  
using VSAMFIX on OPTIONS statement AS–205  
DFSVTP00  
overlay for posting of VTCBs DGR–279  
DFSWTnnn procedure (Spool SYSOUT Print utility)  
DFSUPRTO) URDBTM–517  
DFSYDRU0 CG–367  
DFSYDRU0 exit routine OTMA–40  
DFSYIOE0 CG–371  
DFSYIOE0 exit routine OTMA–40  
DFSYMCSG DSECT OTMA–65  
DFSYPRX0 CG–375  
DFSYPRX0 exit routine OTMA–40  
DFSZD510 control block dump  
description DGR–261  
formatted dump example DGR–263  
unformatted dump example DGR–264  
DI21PART database IIV–11  
diagnosing  
a control or DLI region loop DGR–10  
a control region wait or hang DGR–10  
a CQS-related problem DGR–15  
a DB2 ESS interface problem DGR–11  
a DBCTL-related problem DGR–12  
a DBRC-related problem DGR–12  
a DC-related problem DGR–13  
an APPC-related problem DGR–14  
an IMS dependent region wait or loop DGR–11  
diagnosing multiple parsing error return codes  
APTM–363  
diagnostic information OTMA–59  
diagnostics  
XRF OG–256  
dial-up lines AS–300  
dialog  
ending the session IIV–124
dialog (continued)
  sequence of activity IIV–93
  using IIV–93
dialog delta library concatenations IIV–97
dialog panels
  ending the session IIV–124
  invoking IIV–94
  positioning cursor IIV–94
  requesting an action IIV–94
  selecting an option IIV–94
Dialog phase
  execution IIV–105
  file-tailoring IIV–104
  invalid selection notification IIV–105
  variable gathering IIV–104
dialog start-up
  invoking IIV–94
  logo panel IIV–97
  syntax for IIV–95
  using the TSO command IIV–95
DIB (DL/I interface block)
  accessing information APCICS–6
  database description name field APCICS–9
  database organization field APCICS–9
  fields APCICS–6
  information, obtaining the most recent APCICS–74
  key feedback length field APCICS–9
  label restriction APCICS–6
  labels APCICS–6
  segment level field APCICS–8
  segment name field APCICS–8
  status code field APCICS–7
  structure APCICS–6
  translator version APCICS–7
DIB (DL/I interface block) APDG–6
dictionary
  See DB/DC Data Dictionary
dictionary, data APDG–15
DIF (device input format) APTM–169, ATM–78
DIF (device input format)
  definition APTM–248
  description APTM–169
  input formatting functions APTM–184
  language statements used to create APTM–292
  language statements used to create
  DEV URDBTM–454
  DFLD URDBTM–490
  DIV APTM–292, URDBTM–472
  DO URDBTM–487
  DPAGE APTM–301, URDBTM–480
  ENDDO URDBTM–504
  FMT URDBTM–453
  FMTEND URDBTM–505
  PPAGE URDBTM–486
  RCD URDBTM–490
  summary URDBTM–438
  relationship to other control blocks APTM–249
  selection APTM–256
DIF (device input format), control block APDG–94
DIF/MID linkage diagram DGR–99
differences between CICS and command-level batch or
  BMP programs APCICS–1
  differences in takeover process AS–275
direct access devices, requirements RPG–21
direct access methods
  characteristics APDG–68
  HDAM APDG–69
  HDAM (Hierarchical Direct Access Method) ADB–78
  HIDAM APDG–70
  HIDAM (Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method) ADB–78
  PHDAM APDG–67, APDG–69
  PHDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access Method) ADB–78
  PHIDAM APDG–67, APDG–70
  PHIDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method) ADB–78
  types of APDG–68
direct address pointers ADB–78, ADB–81
direct dependent segment types (DDEP) ADB–119
  direct dependent segments, in DE DBs APCICS–91
  direct dependents APDG–30
  direct output data sets IIV–47
direct pointers
  logical relationships ADB–154, ADB–156, ADB–159, ADB–181
  secondary indexes ADB–192, ADB–193
direct storage method ADB–56
direct-control subsystem ATM–555
  directed routing APTM–132, ATM–208, ATM–226
  directed routing
  MSC-directed routing ATM–208
  password not passed across link ATM–226
directives
  OM CSL–91
  RM CSL–143
RM
  process step CSL–145
  process step response CSL–146
  repopulate structure CSL–144
  structure failed CSL–144
DIRECTORY keyword
  CHANGE command CR–125
  definition CR–53
  DISPLAY command CR–739
DIS statement
  Monitor Report Print utility (DFSUTR20) URS–258
  disabling enforcement
  resource name uniqueness ATM–20, ATM–128
  resource type consistency ATM–20, ATM–128
  discarded RECON, replacing DBRC–62
  disconnecting from IMS OG–343
  disk data sets OG–365
  DISP (dispatcher trace table) BPE–7
  DISP parameter ADB–258
  DISP= keyword
  DFSMDA TYPE=DATASET control statement
  URS–173
  dispatcher statistics area BPE–50
  dispatcher trace
  example DGR–177
dispatcher trace (continued)
format DGR=169
dispatching priority AS=213
DISPLAY (/DISPLAY) command
CONV OG=110
HALDB OG=274
MODIFY OG=119
terminals OG=109
XRF OG=242
display bypass security AS=147
DISPLAY command ISDT=5
DISPLAY command
ACTIVE keyword
CLASS CR=208
DC CR=205
description CR=204
examples CR=277
JOBNAME CR=206
OTMA GROUP CR=205
PROGRAM CR=207
REGID CR=206
REGION CR=205
STATUS CR=206, CR=207
TRANSACTION/STEP CR=207
TYPE CR=206
VTAM ACB CR=205
AFFINITY keyword
description CR=208
AOITOKEN keyword
description CR=209
APPC keyword
description CR=209
AREA keyword
description CR=210
examples CR=279
ASSIGNMENT keyword
description CR=213
example CR=280
attributes
list CR=793
BALGRP keyword CR=248
BKERR keyword
description CR=217
CCTL keyword
description CR=214
examples CR=285
CLASS keyword CR=248
CONVERSATION keyword
description CR=215
example CR=286
conversation processing CR=215
CPLOG keyword
description CR=215
CQS keyword
description CR=215
examples CR=288
DATABASE keyword
description CR=216
examples CR=288
DBD keyword
description CR=218
DISPLAY command (continued)
description CR=204, CR=739
DESCRIPTR keyword
description CR=218
example CR=291
DIRECTORY keyword CR=739
ENTITY keyword CR=739
entry format CR=739
environments CR=202
examples CR=274
FDR keyword CR=219
FPVIRUTAL keyword CR=219
HSB keyword
description CR=220
example CR=292
HSSP keyword
description CR=221
example CR=293
ILS keyword CR=740
INTERVAL keyword CR=221
LINE keyword
description CR=222
example CR=293
LINK keyword
description CR=223
examples CR=294
LTERM keyword
description CR=223
EMHQ CR=224
examples CR=294
QCNT CR=224
LUNAME keyword
description CR=224
examples CR=295, CR=296
MASTER keyword
description CR=226
MASTER parameter
examples CR=298
MODIFY keyword
description CR=226
examples CR=298, CR=299, CR=300
MSNAME keyword
description CR=231
examples CR=302
network-qualified LU name CR=209
NODE keyword
description CR=231
EMHQ CR=232
examples CR=302
MODE CR=232
QCNT CR=232
OASN keyword
description CR=234
examples CR=307
OLDS keyword
description CR=234
examples CR=307
OTMA keyword
description CR=236
examples CR=307
DISPLAY command (continued)
OVERFLOWQ keyword
description CR–237
examples CR–308
POOL keyword
abbreviations used CR–241
CBT pool CR–238
description CR–238
examples CR–308, CR–316
PRIORITY keyword CR–248
PROGRAM keyword
description CR–247
examples CR–316
PSB keyword
description CR–247
examples CR–317
PTERM keyword
description CR–247
examples CR–318
Q keyword
description CR–248
examples CR–318
QCNT keyword
description CR–249
examples CR–320
RECOVERY keyword
description CR–250
RTCODE keyword
description CR–253
examples CR–325
SHUTDOWN keyword
description CR–253
examples CR–325
status
list CR–793
STATUS keyword CR–740
STATUS keyword
description CR–253, CR–255
examples CR–327
STRUCTURE keyword
description CR–257
examples CR–330
SUBSYS keyword
description CR–234, CR–257
examples CR–307, CR–330
syntax diagram CR–189
SYSID keyword
description CR–259
examples CR–330
TIMEOVER keyword
description CR–259
examples CR–331
TMEMBER keyword
description CR–259
examples CR–331
TRACE keyword
description CR–261
examples CR–331
TRACKING STATUS keyword CR–263
DISPLAY command (continued)
TRANSACTION keyword
description CR–270
examples CR–338
QCNT CR–270
with Q keyword CR–248
with SYSID keyword CR–259
UOR keyword
description CR–271
examples CR–339
USER keyword
AUTOLOGON CR–273
description CR–272
EMHQ CR–273
examples CR–340
QCNT CR–273
RECOVERY CR–273
DISPLAY command output OTMA–91
DISPLAY command, use in accounting URS–464
DISPLAY LTERM command
EMHQ keyword
description CR–273
examples CR–340
QCNT keyword
description CR–273
examples CR–340
DISPLAY NODE command
EMHQ keyword
description CR–306
QCNT keyword
description CR–306
display screen
active system CR–632
alternate system CR–631
EEQE (extended error queue element) CR–673
I/O toleration CR–672
UNLOCK SYSTEM CR–672
display screen format
display area CR–5
master terminal CR–4
master terminal in XRF CR–4
message area CR–5
restoring format of CR–6
system status CR–4
user input area CR–6
warning message area CR–5
XRF system status CR–5
display screen protection
BID option ATM–451, ATM–452
definition ATM–451, ATM–452
Finance Communication System terminals ATM–451
MFS ATM–451, ATM–452
NOBID option ATM–451, ATM–452
DISPLAY TRACETABLE command
CQS-defined trace tables BPE–24, CR–756
OM-defined trace tables BPE–24, CR–756
RM-defined trace tables BPE–25, CR–756
SCI-defined trace table types BPE–25, CR–756
DISPLAY TRACETABLE Command BPE–24, CR–755
DISPLAY TRACETABLE Command
BPE-defined trace table types BPE–24, CR–756
DISPLAY USER command
AUTOLOGON keyword
examples CR–341
EMHQ keyword
examples CR–341
QCNT keyword
examples CR–341
DISPLAY USEREXIT command
BPE user exit types BPE–32, CR–764
CQS user exit types BPE–32, CR–764
examples BPE–36, CR–768
format BPE–32, CR–763
OM user exit types BPE–33, CR–764
output BPE–36, CR–768
RM user exit types BPE–33, CR–765
SCI user exit types BPE–33, CR–765
usage BPE–32, CR–763
displaying
current application name OG–245
number of primary and backup sessions OG–244
session status OG–243
terminal status OG–243
distributed commit calls
ATRBACK APDG–138
ATRCMIT APDG–138
RRS/MVS APDG–138
SRRBACK APDG–138
SRRCMIT APDG–138
distributed presentation management
See DPM (distributed presentation management)
Distributed Presentation Management (DPM)
See DPM
Distributed Sync Point APDG–108
distributed transaction processing, ISC ATM–255,
ATM–278
Distribution Appendix report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–375
IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–402
IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–429
distribution media
CBPDO IIV–7
considerations IIV–7
phase selection IIV–104
ServerPac IIV–7
distribution of DB records, random ADB–423
Distribution Zone.
See DLIBZONE (Distribution Zone)
Distribution-Appendix report
description URDBTM–314
generating the report URDBTM–316
DIV statement APTM–195
DIV statement (continued)
OFTAB= operand
output mode APTM–227
specifying APTM–299
variable-length output data stream APTM–228
OPTIONS= operand APTM–223, APTM–295,
URDBTM–475
PRN= operand APTM–299, URDBTM–478
RCDCCTL= operand APTM–222, APTM–295,
URDBTM–474
RDYN= operand APTM–298, URDBTM–478
RPRN= operand APTM–299, URDBTM–478
SPAN= operand APTM–295
TYPE= operand APTM–294, URDBTM–474
dividing database into multiple data set groups
DBD generation URS–31
DL/I DGR–161
DL/I
accessing control blocks CG–7
accounting procedures ISDT–6
address space CG–6
analyzing problems DGR–224
call image capture trace description DGR–255
call image trace ISDT–388
CICS, and ISDT–453
COBOL interface ISDT–248
control block
description DGR–55
diagram DGR–88
data record format DGR–101
database error queues
status CR–217
DBC procedure, and ISDT–199
DLISAS procedure, modifying ISDT–6
execution parameters, system ISDT–401
exit routine, writing CG–7
exits, modifying ISDT–6
FMTIMS statement example DGR–136
interfaces ISDT–248
invoking ISDT–6
link-editing CG–7
lock activity, tracing ISDT–385
online formatted dump
data areas dumped DGR–161
PL/I interface ISDT–248
security considerations ISDT–7
selecting ISDT–4
storage considerations ISDT–4
test program
debugging in batch environment DGR–222
description DGR–219
using DGR–219
trace, DL/I
buffer handler function codes DGR–245
buffer handler module trace IDs DGR–247
buffer handler return codes DGR–247
DELETE module, using DL/I trace DGR–249
description DGR–227
JRNAD codes DGR–244
output sample DGR–248
PSTLRPRM codes DGR–237
DL/I (continued)
trace, DL/I (continued)
record format DGR–227
trace, other database-related
JCB (job control block) DGR–217
locating DGR–226
PI (program isolation) DGR–254
retrieve DGR–250
tuning considerations ISDT–7
DL/I access methods
considerations in choosing APDG–67
DEDB APDG–71
direct access APDG–68
GSAM APDG–74
HDAM APDG–69
HIDAM APDG–70
HSAM APDG–72
MSDB APDG–71
PHDAM APDG–67, APDG–69
PHIDAM APDG–67, APDG–70
sequential access APDG–72
SHISAM APDG–74
SHSAM APDG–74
DL/I address space
location AS–9
planning considerations AS–77, AS–79
selecting AS–77, AS–79
DL/I and ACBs ADB–299
DL/I batch
jobs OG–270
RSR OG–277
DL/I call formats, example
assembler language APDB–76
C language APDB–79
COBOL APDB–81
Pascal APDB–84
PL/I APDB–86
DL/I call functions APDB–312, APDB–315, APTM–382, APTM–385
DL/I call functions
special DFSDDLT0
END APDB–324, APTM–394
SKIP APDB–324, APTM–394
STAK APDB–324, APTM–394
START APDB–324, APTM–394
supported
CHKP APDB–312, APTM–382
CHNG APDB–312, APTM–382
CMD APDB–312, APTM–382
DEQ APDB–312, APTM–382
DLET APDB–312, APTM–382
FLD APDB–312, APTM–382
GCMD APDB–312, APTM–382
GHN APDB–312, APTM–382
GHNP APDB–312, APTM–382
GU APDB–312, APTM–382
GU APDB–313, APTM–383
DL/I call functions (continued)
supported (continued)
ICMD APDB–313, APTM–383
INIT APDB–313, APTM–383
INQY APDB–313, APTM–383
ISRT APDB–313, APTM–383
LOG APDB–313, APTM–383
POS APDB–313, APTM–383
PURG APDB–313, APTM–383
RCMD APDB–313, APTM–383
REPL APDB–313, APTM–383
ROLB APDB–313, APTM–383
ROLL APDB–313, APTM–383
ROLS APDB–314, APTM–384
ROLX APDB–314, APTM–384
SETO APDB–314, APTM–384
SETS APDB–314, APTM–384
SNAP APDB–314, APTM–384
SYNC APDB–314, APTM–384
XRST APDB–314, APTM–384
DL/I call trace APDG–142
DL/I Call Trace Data exit routine (DFSERA50) URS–286
DL/I Call Trace Data exit routine (DFSERA50)
File Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSERA10)
URS–286
DL/I calls APDB–6, APTM–34, APTM–45, OTMA–50
DL/I calls
CHNG OTMA–50
codes APTM–13
DEDB databases ADB–124
error routines APTM–14
exceptional conditions APTM–14
HD databases ADB–80
HISAM databases ADB–68
HSAM databases ADB–63
in logical relationships
delete call ADB–441
logical child insert call ADB–430
replace call ADB–434
INQY OTMA–50
message calls
list of APTM–12
MSDB ADB–128, ADB–131
PURG OTMA–50
relationships to PCB types
I/O PCBs APTM–45
sample call formats APTM–34
sample call formats
assembler language APTM–34
C language APTM–37
COBOL APTM–40
Pascal APTM–42
PL/I APTM–45
SETO OTMA–50
system service calls
list of APTM–13
usage APTM–12
DL/I calls (general information)
qualifying your calls APDB–24
DL/I calls (general information) (continued)
qualifying your calls
  command codes APDB–27
  concatenated key APDB–29
  field APDB–24
  segment type APDB–24
relationships to PCBs
  FF PCBs APDB–87
  REXXDLI APDB–260, APTM–316
SSAs APDB–24
types APDB–24

DL/I calls for transaction management
AUTH call APTM–61
call summary APTM–347
CHNG call APTM–66
CMD call APTM–74
GCMD call APTM–75
GN call APTM–76
GU call APTM–77
ISRT call APTM–79
PURG call APTM–82
SETO call APTM–84

DL/I calls, database management
CIMS APDB–117
CLSE APDB–119
DEQ APDB–119
DLET APDB–121, APDB–122
FLD APDB–122, APDB–124
general description APDB–16
GHNP call APDB–131
GHU call APDB–133
GN APDB–124, APDB–129
GNHP call APDB–128
GNP APDB–129, APDB–131
GU APDB–131, APDB–134
ISRT APDB–134, APDB–137
OPEN APDB–137
POS APDB–138, APDB–141
REPL APDB–141, APDB–142
summary APDB–16, APDB–291

DL/I calls, general information
coding APDB–48
getting started with APDB–12
using APDB–16

DL/I calls, system service APDB–143, APDB–144

DL/I calls, system service APDB–144

DL/I calls, system service (continued)
STAT APDB–174, APDB–176, APDB–177, APDB–178
summary APDB–16, APDB–292
SYNC APDB–176, APDB–177
XRST APDB–178

DL/I calls, testing DL/I call sequences APDG–141, APDG–164

DL/I data, accessing JGR–136

DL/I database
access to APD–51
description APD–51
nonrecoverable OG–165

DL/I database tracker AS–321

DL/I databases AS–314

DL/I databases
inflight changes
backing out CR–349

DL/I Databases ADB–56

DL/I databases, read and update APCICS–1

DL/I image capture (DFSDLTRL0) programs APDG–165

DL/I interface block
See DIB (DL/I interface block)

DL/I language interfaces APTM–31

DL/I language interfaces
overview APD–73, APTM–31
supported interfaces APD–73, APTM–31

DL/I options
field level sensitivity APD–75
logical relationships APD–208, APD–80
secondary indexing APD–205, APD–76

DL/I parameter ADB–258

DL/I program structure APDB–12, APTM–10

DL/I return codes (REXX) APDB–261, APTM–317

DL/I segment edit/compression
See also COMPRTN= keyword
See Segment Edit/Compression exit routine

DL/I status codes
mapping to exceptions JGR–123

DL/I system service calls APTM–91

DL/I system service calls
APSB call APTM–92, APTM–93
Basic CHKP call APTM–93, APTM–94
call summary APTM–348

DPSB call APTM–95, APTM–96

GSCD Call APTM–98, APTM–99

INIT call APTM–101, APTM–103

INQY call APTM–103, APTM–113

LOG call APTM–113, APTM–115

ROLB call APTM–116, APTM–118

ROLL Call APTM–118, APTM–119

ROLS call APTM–119, APTM–120

SETS call APTM–121, APTM–122

SETU call APTM–121, APTM–122

Symbolic CHKP call APTM–94, APTM–95

SYNC call APTM–122, APTM–123

XRST call APTM–123

DL/I test program (DFSDDLT0) ADB–304

DL/I test program (DFSDLTL0)
call statements APDG–142

checking program performance APDG–142
DL/I test program (DFSDDLT0) *(continued)*

comments statements APDG–142
compare statements APDG–142
control statements APDG–142
description APDG–142
status statements APDG–142
testing DL/I call sequences APDG–141, APDG–164

DL/I Test Program (DFSDDLT0)

control statements APDB–303, APDB–340, APTM–373, APTM–410
execution in IMS regions APDB–344, APTM–414, APTM–415
explanation of return codes APDB–344, APTM–415
hints on using APDB–345, APDB–346, APTM–415, APTM–417
JCL requirements APDB–340, APDB–344, APTM–410, APTM–414
overview APDB–303, APTM–373
restarting input stream APDB–342, APTM–412

DL/I trace DGR–248

DL/I-Call-Summary report

description URDBTM–311
fields in the report URDBTM–311
using the report URDBTM–314

DL/I, CICS online

getting started with APDB–13

DL/I, ODBA interface

going started with APDB–15

DL/I.

See database

DLA3LOG trace

ccontent DGR–300
description DGR–300
example DGR–301
starting DGR–300

DLET (Delete) call

description APDB–121
format APDB–121
parameters APDB–119, APDB–121, APDB–138
SSAs APDB–122
usage APDB–122

with MSDB, DEDB or VSO DEDB APDB–225

DLET (Delete) command

description APCICS–35
example APCICS–36
format APCICS–35
options APCICS–35
restrictions APCICS–36
usage APCICS–36

DLET call function APDB–312, APTM–382

DLI option APCICS–29

DLI region loop, diagnosing DGR–10

DLI statement

Monitor-Report Print utility (DFSUTR20) URS–258

DLIB data sets *(continued)*

related DLIB data sets *(continued)*

IMS Java IV–17

RSR Database-Level Tracking feature IIV–17

RSR Recovery-Level Tracking feature IIV–16

system services IV–16

transaction manager IV–17

Transaction Manager IV–17

DLIBATCH AS–20, CSL–1

DLIBATCH procedure

DD statements ISDT–216
description ISDT–214
parameters ISDT–216

parameters

APARM= ISDT–250
BKO= ISDT–252
BUF= ISDT–252
CKPTID= ISDT–253
DBRC= ISDT–258
EXCPVR= ISDT–264
FMTO= ISDT–265
GSGNAME= ISDT–266
IMSID= ISDT–268
IMSPLEX= ISDT–268
IOB= ISDT–269
IRLM= ISDT–269
IRLMN= ISDT–270
LOCKMAX= ISDT–271
LOGA= ISDT–272
LOGT= ISDT–272
MBR= ISDT–274
MON= ISDT–274
PRLD= ISDT–280
PSB= ISDT–280
RGN= ISDT–284
RST= ISDT–285
SOUT= ISDT–288
SPIE= ISDT–288
SRCH= ISDT–288
SSM= ISDT–288
SWAP= ISDT–290
SYS2= ISDT–291
TEST= ISDT–291
TMNAME= ISDT–291

DLIBZONE (distribution zone)

attributes for IIV–14
description of IIV–14

DLIConnection

creating JGR–135

DLIConnection class JGR–123

DLIDatabaseView class JGR–90

DLIDriver

loading JGR–93
registering JGR–94

DLIException class JGR–123

DLIINFO

. (period) usage APDB–265, APTM–321

REXX extended command APDB–264, APDB–265, APTM–320, APTM–321

DLIModel IMS Java Report JGR–91
DLIModel Java Report
  database summary JGR--100
DLIModel utility
  control statements JGR--98, JGR--102
  description JGR--97
  DLIModel IMS Java Report JGR--91
  inputs and outputs JGR--97
  installing JGR--110
  limitations JGR--99
  logical relationship example JGR--115
  metadata classes
    creating JGR--97
  output types JGR--100
  overview JGR--97
  procedure JGR--110
  PSB requirements JGR--99
  report JGR--97
  restrictions JGR--99
  running JGR--110, JGR--113
  running as MVS job JGR--110
  running from UNIX System Services JGR--113
  simple example JGR--114
  using JGR--90, JGR--97, JGR--113
DLISAS
  security considerations AS--79
  selecting AS--77
  tuning AS--79
DLISAS procedure
  automatic initiation ISDT--217
  DD statements ISDT--218
  description ISDT--216
  IMS procedure, and ISDT--225
  manual initiation ISDT--217
  parameters ISDT--218
  parameters
    DPRTY= ISDT--262
    IMSID= ISDT--268
    RGN= ISDT--284
    SOUT= ISDT--288
    SYS2= ISDT--291
  PDS member name ISDT--216
  PDS member name
    DLINM= ISDT--217
  RACF protected resources ISDT--217
  storing ISDT--191
DLISAS procedure, security AS--148
DLITCBL APDB--109, APTM--55
DLITPLI APDB--110, APTM--55
DLITRACE control statement APDG--166
DLITypefnInfoList class JGR--24
DLOG parameter ADB--258
DLTA1 IV--97
DLTA2 IV--97
DLTA3 IV--97
DLTA5 IV--97
DLTA6 IV--97
DLTA7 IV--97
DMAC definition/mapping macro DGR--56
DMB definition/mapping macro DGR--56
DMBSEC definition/mapping macro DGR--56
DMCB definition/mapping macro DGR--56
DMHR definition/mapping macro DGR--56
DMS keyword
  /DISPLAY MODIFY command CR--229
DO statement
  BOUND= operand URDBTM--488
  SUF= operand URDBTM--447, URDBTM--487
Doc
  execution phase action command IIV--120
  file-tailoring action command IIV--112
  variable-gathering action command IIV--106
DOC action
  file-tailoring IIV--116
  variable gathering IIV--108
DOC keyword procedure DGR--23
DOCMD exec APDB--283, APTM--339
documentation
  data dictionary AS--36
  exit routines ATM--222
  network AS--37
  production configuration AS--38
  system AS--37
  system definition AS--37
  terminal profiles AS--38, ATM--57
documentation for users APDG--178
documentation of
  data APDG--14
  the application design process APDG--10
DOF (device output format) APTM--169, ATM--78
DOF (device output format)
  associated MFS functions APTM--202
  definition APTM--248
  description APTM--169
  language statements used to create APTM--292
  language statements used to create
    DEV URDBTM--454
    DFLD URDBTM--490
    DIV APTM--292, URDBTM--472
    DO URDBTM--487
    DPAGE APTM--301, URDBTM--480
    ENDDO URDBTM--504
    FMT URDBTM--453
    FMTEND URDBTM--505
    PPAGE URDBTM--486
    RCD URDBTM--490
  summary URDBTM--438
  relationship to other control blocks APTM--249
  selection APTM--256
DOF (device output format), control block APDG--94
DOF/MOD linkage diagram DGR--98
DONE keyword
  definition CR--53
  IAM command CR--367
DOPT online change ISDT--60
double byte character set
  See DBCS (double byte character set)
DOUBLE data type JGR--86
DOVF CI
  diagnosing CI problem in DEDB
    first CIs DGR--358
    other CIs DGR--358
DP (dependent region address space). FMTIMS
statement example DGR–136
DPAGE APTM–190
DPAGE
ACTVPID= operand APTM–242, APTM–306,
URDBTM–486
COND= operand APTM–304, URDBTM–483
CURSOR= operand APTM–305, URDBTM–484
FILL= operand APTM–304, URDBTM–483
input APTM–190
MULT= operand APTM–305, URDBTM–484
OFTAB= operand URDBTM–485
OFTAB= operand
output mode APTM–227
variable-length output data stream APTM–228
ORIGIN= operand APTM–305, URDBTM–484
output APTM–204
overview APTM–190
PD= operand APTM–306, URDBTM–485
SELECT= operand APTM–306, URDBTM–485
selection
using conditional data APTM–200
using conditional test on the data APTM–201
using DSN transmission chains APTM–200
specifying conditional APTM–201
specifying unconditional APTM–201
DPM (distributed presentation management)
control character translation APTM–203, APTM–276
deleting nulls on input APTM–195
increasing performance APTM–266
MFS SLU P terminal ISDT–153
naming conventions APTM–226
output message header examples APTM–223
using APTM–179
version identification APTM–248
with ISC APTM–179
DPM (Distributed Presentation Management) ATM–84
DPM (Distributed Presentation Management)
FM headers ATM–364
option ATM–84
OPTIONS=DPAGE or PPAGE ATM–364, ATM–479
output ATM–479
SLU P supports ATM–448
DPN (destination process name)
ATTACH FM header ATM–377
message routing, ISC ATM–278
SCHEDULER FM header ATM–377
DPN field
control block linkages APTM–256
DIV statement APTM–298
literal specification URDBTM–478
MFS formatting APTM–183
DPN= operand (DIV statement)
specifying URDBTM–478
DPSB (deallocate program specification block)
APDG–138
DPSB call APTM–95
DPSB call
description APDB–147, APTM–95
format APDB–147, APTM–95
DPSB call (continued)
parameters APDB–147, APTM–95
restrictions APTM–96
summary APTM–347
usage APDB–147, APTM–96
DR2 response
exception
Fast Path ATM–458, ATM–459
irrecoverable-inquiry transactions ATM–484,
ATM–485
MFS output ATM–484, ATM–485
nonrecoverable output ATM–445
when MOD does not specify PAGE=YES
ATM–468, ATM–486
requirements
MFS paged output messages, not Fast Path
ATM–445
normal IMS output messages ATM–445
recoverable transaction output ATM–445
recoverable-inquiry transaction ATM–486
DRA
function request CG–567
identify process CG–568
initializing CG–567
DRA (database resource adapter) APDB–347, JGR–49
DRA (database resource adapter)
CCTL function requests APDB–358
CCTL function requests
INIT APDB–358
RESYNC APDB–360
TERM APDB–361
CCTL recovery process APDB–367
communicating with DBCTL APDB–10
DRA statistics APDB–370
enabling
CCTL APDB–355
ODBA APDB–356
initializing
CCTL APDB–356
ODBA APDB–356
macro keywords APDB–354
multithreading APDB–348
overview AS–13
PAPL APDB–367
problem determination APDB–372
processing
CCTL requests APDB–357
ODBA calls APDB–358
resources
CCTL transaction requests AS–185
exceeded by PSB schedule requests AS–200
startup table APDB–354, AS–154
startup table
DFSPZPxx APDB–354
syncpoint processing APDB–350
syncpoint processing
in-doubt state APDB–353
protocol APDB–351
termination APDB–367
thread
ODBA APDB–348
DRA (database resource adapter) (continued)
thread (continued)
  processing APDB–347
  structure APDB–347
thread function requests APDB–361
thread function requests
  ABTERM APDB–365
  COMTERM APDB–365
  IMS APDB–363
  PREP APDB–364
  SCHED APDB–361
  SYNTAX APDB–364
  TERMTHRD APDB–366
thread statistics APDB–369
tracing APDB–371
DRA (Database Resource Adapter)
Analyzing DRA Problems DGR–410
description APDG–135
dump DGR–409
dump title format DGR–147
Recovery Tokens DGR–410
Service Aids DGR–409
startup table APDG–137
DRA interface module IV–11
DRA start-up table
  using with ODBA ISDT–447
DREF storage, defining ISDT–335
DSECT
  for database log record (X’50’) DGR–256
DSFDCA0 DBRC–65
DSG definition/mapping macro DGR–56
DSN (data structure name) APDG–233
DSN commands (continued)
  NOTIFY.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–284
  NOTIFY.PRILOG (for TSLDS) DBRC–284
  NOTIFY.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–293
  NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–296
  NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–300
DSNAME high-level qualifier IV–13
DSNAME parameter JGR–111
DSNAME= data set
  control statements
  DFSMD A TYPE=DATASET URS–173
  DFSMD A TYPE=DFSDCMON URS–174
DSPBUFFS
  Buffer Size Specification Facility CG–147
DSPCABN0 trace entry DGR–385
DSPCEXTO.
  See RECON I/O exit routine
DSPCRTR0 trace entry DGR–386
DSPDBHRC DBRC–54
DSPDBLRC
  partition DB record
  HALDB DBRC–54
DSPDSSHRC
  partition DBDS records
  HALDB DBRC–55
DSPPTNRC
  HALDB partition record
  HALDB DBRC–54
DSPSClx0 DBRC–63
DSPSClx0 exit DBRC–145
DSPSTACK trace entry DGR–382, DGR–384
DSPSTFRE trace entry DGR–382, DGR–384
DSPSTGET trace entry DGR–382, DGR–383
DSPTRACE
  See DBRC trace (DSPTRACE)
DSPURI00 module
  calling DGR–386
  entry trace entry DGR–388
  exit routine trace entry DGR–391
  GETFEED trace entry DGR–389
DSPURl0 trace entry DGR–386
DSPURX00 (Database Recovery Control utility)
  See Database Recovery Control utility (DSPURX00)
DSPWRK1 definition/mapping macro DGR–56
DSPXPA DB–502
DSPXPEA DB–502
DSPXPEA
  database name ADB–502
  output data set name ADB–503
DSPXPIA DB–503
DSPXPIA
  database name ADB–503
  input data set name ADB–503
  input member name ADB–503
  processing option ADB–503
DSPXPKE ADB–491
DSPXPLA ADB–494
DSPXPLA
  act ADB–494
  data set name prefix ADB–494
  ID ADB–494

Index 135
DSPXPLA (continued)
- name ADB–494
- DSPXPLB ADB–495
- DSPXPOA ADB–501
- DSPXRUN command ADB–506
- DSPXRUN command
  - database_name ADB–507
  - dataset_name ADB–507
  - member_name ADB–507
  - processing_option ADB–507
- DSSN parameter NOTIFY.ALLOC command DBRC–268
- DSSTART parameter commands
  - CHANGE.PRLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–134
  - CHANGE.PRLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–138
  - CHANGE.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–153
  - CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–157
- dual log input
  - CLS mode URS–235
  - DUP mode URS–235
  - REP mode URS–235
- dual logging OG–45, OG–54
- DUAL parameter CHANGE.RECON command DBRC–143
dump
- buffer handler request sequence analysis DGR–224
- detailed analysis DGR–223
- DL/I call sequence analysis DGR–224
- DUMP command OG–145
- formatted offline.
  - See ODF (offline dump formatter)
- formatted online
  - CTL address space DGR–158
  - description DGR–157
  - DL/I address space DGR–161
- formatting OG–145, OG–321
- general analysis DGR–223
- interactive dump formatter
  - description DGR–152
  - using DGR–153
- IRLM address space dump
  - See SDUMP
  - keeping data sets available OG–146
  - message queues OG–103
  - MODIFY command OG–145
  - SADMP OG–145
  - save area analysis DGR–223
  - stand-alone OG–145
- DUMP command OG–145
dump control, CICS APDG–164
- dump format DBRC–26
dump format control data set
  - DD statement URS–316
  - description URS–317
  - subset options URS–317
dump formatter
  - See Offline Dump Formatter (DFSOFMD0)
dump formatting module (DFSAFMD0) IIV–11
dump option ADB–258
- Dump Override Table (DFSFDOT0) CG–164
- Dump Override Table (DFSFDOT0)
  - coding CG–164
- Dump Override Table (DFSFDOT0) (continued)
  - description CG–163
  - errors CG–165
  - example table CG–165
  - IMS callable services CG–164
  - IMS environments CG–163
  - including the routine CG–163
  - link-editing CG–163
  - messages CG–165
  - naming convention CG–163
  - purpose and use CG–163
  - sample routine location CG–164
- DUMP parameter ADB–258, ADB–261
  - dumping
    - batch system ISDT–307
    - dependent region ISDT–307
    - installing ISDT–303
    - IRLM, and ISDT–307
    - MVS options ISDT–304
    - online ISDT–304
    - options ISDT–303
    - system execution parameters ISDT–401
- DUMPQ DGR–42
- DUMPQ keyword OG–141
- DUMPQ keyword
  - CHECKPOINT command CR–138
  - definition CR–53
duplex paths ADB–440
duplicate data field ADB–193
duplicate data in logical relationships ADB–149
duplicate databases ATM–214
duplicate keys ADB–190
duplicate values, isolating APDG–19
duplicating DL/I updates CG–43, CG–469
during backout OG–72
- DX status code ADB–441
- DXRJPROC procedure
  - DD statements for IRLM ISDT–220
  - description ISDT–219
  - parameters
    - DEADLOK= ISDT–259
  - parameters for IRLM ISDT–220
  - startup procedure for IRLM ISDT–219
dynamic allocation APDG–47, APDG–65, DBRC–45
dynamic allocation
  - area data sets AS–311
  - availability under OS/390 AS–20
  - IMS databases AS–311
  - of RECON DBRC–45
- Dynamic Allocation Macro (DFSMDA)
  - description URS–167
  - examples URS–177
  - Fast Path DEDBs URS–168
  - IMS monitor data set URS–168
  - input and output URS–169
  - invoking the procedure URS–171
  - JCL requirements URS–170
  - logical relationships URS–169
  - macro statements URS–172
  - monitor data set URS–168
  - multiple DEDBs URS–168
Dynamic Allocation Macro (DFSMDA) (continued)
OLDS URS–168
output URS–169
overview URS–167
restrictions URS–169
SLDS URS–168
statement types URS–172
statement types
DATABASE URS–172
DATASET URS–173
DFSDCMON URS–173
FINAL URS–177
FPDEDB URS–172
INITIAL URS–172
OLDS URS–175
RECON URS–174
SLDS URS–175
WADS URS–176
dynamic allocation VTAM subpools ATM–272
dynamic attribute modification, output message formats
default attributes APTM–210
specifying attributes APTM–278
specifying extended field attributes APTM–280
dynamic backout APCICS–88, APDG–32
dynamic backout with data sharing DBRC–36
dynamic modification of EGCS data APTM–286
dynamic reassignment and APPLCTN macro ISDT–61
Dynamic SVC utility (DFSUSVC0)
DD statements URS–210
description URS–209
error processing URS–210
example URS–211
input URS–209
JCL requirements URS–210
output URS–209
restrictions URS–209
return codes URS–210
dynamic terminals ATM–10
dynamic work areas BPE–60
dynamically backing out changes APCICS–75, APCICS–76

E
E (COMPARE) statement APDB–327, APTM–397
E-MCS CSL–6
E-MCS
See MCS(multiple console support) console
E= keyword
DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–268
EATTR= operand (DFLD statement)
example APTM–285
specifying URDBTM–499
use APTM–210
EB (end bracket) indicator
definition ATM–275
LUSTATUS command ATM–341
use (figure) ATM–441
used with ATTACH ATM–270
EBCDIC APDG–60
EBCDIC format APTM–189
ECB CSL–16
ECB (MVS event control block), using with client
request CQS–78
ECB definition/mapping macro DGR–56
Echo exit routine CG–525
ECNT (extended communications node table) ADB–129
ECNT definition/mapping macro DGR–56
ECSA OTMA–46
ECSA (extended common storage area) AS–95
EDF (Execution Diagnostic Facility) APDG–164
edit
basic edit during ISC ATM–268
MFS
CICS ATM–537
during ISC APTM–268
options
data communication exit routine ATM–268
input and output ATM–267, ATM–268
ISC input and output, list ATM–256
edit routines CG–316, CG–321
edit routines
Basic Edit APTM–19
Field edit routine CG–316
Field edit routine
definition CG–313, CG–318
interface CG–313
use CG–313
ISC APTM–19
LU 6.2 Edit exit routine CG–331
MFS APTM–19
Sample Input edit routine CG–443
Segment edit routine
interface CG–319
performance CG–314
use CG–316, CG–317
edit routines, IMS-supplied
field edit routine APTM–189, APTM–191
edit/compression CG–107
edit/compression facility
See segment edit/compression facility
edited command format DGR–100
editing
considerations in your application APTM–94
messages
considerations in message and screen design
APDG–94
overview APTM–93
editing data ADB–211
editing facilities
invoking FM headers ATM–356
ISC overview ATM–267, ATM–268
editing LU 6.2 messages CG–331
editing messages APTM–19
editing messages
See also message, editing
basic edit and nongraphic messages ATM–85
bypassing Basic or MFS editing ATM–84
editing performed by IMS ATM–82
output segments ATM–84
transparency option ATM–83
editing options
COMPTn parameter of TERMINAL macro ATM–293
editing options (continued)
MFS-SCS1 ATM–521
OUTBUF parameter of TERMINAL macro ATM–293, ATM–454
SLU P, COMPTn parameter of TERMINAL macro
ATM–453
types
DPM-An ATM–453, ATM–479
MFS-SCS1 ATM–453
SCS1 ATM–453
Edm
execution phase action command IIV–120
file-tailoring action command IIV–112
EDSG definition/mapping macro DGR–56
EEQE (extended error queue element)
display screen CR–673
EEQE (Extended Error Queue Element), in XRF
complex AS–278
EEQECT keyword
/DISPLAY AREA command CR–212
EEVPEEA CG–545
EEVPEWA CG–547
EEVT (external entry vector table) CG–515, CG–546
EEVT mapping CG–516, CG–546
EEVT (external entry vector table prefix) CG–515
EEVT mapping CG–515
efficient program design APCICS–11
EGCS (extended graphic character set) APTM–211
EGCS (extended graphic character set)
/EBCDIC data, dynamic modification APTM–286
description APTM–211
SO/SI framing characters APTM–211
specifying URDBTM–500
use with selector pen APTM–273
EIB definition/mapping macro DGR–56
EIBREG parameter APCICS–15
EJB (Enterprise JavaBean)
deployment descriptor requirements JGR–56
EJECT statement (language utility) URDBTM–515
element names, ARM CSL–28
elements
data, description APDG–11
data, naming APDG–13
emergency restart APDG–183, OG–79, OG–90
emergency restart
failures OG–150
EMH (expedited message handler) APDG–34
EMH (Expedited Message Handler)
shared queues environment, in an ATM–114
EMH and Shared Queues ATM–22
EMH buffer ATM–47
EMH program IIV–133
EMHB (Expedited Message Handler Buffer), size for
Fast Path AS–51
EMHL definition/mapping macro DGR–56
EMHL control region initialization parameter ATM–48
EMHL parameter AS–51
EMHQ keyword
/DISPLAY command
LTERM CR–224
NODE CR–232
EMHQ keyword (continued)
/DISPLAY command (continued)
USER CR–273
definition CR–53
DISPLAY LTERM command
examples CR–295
DISPLAY NODE command
examples CR–306
DISPLAY USER command
examples CR–341
enabling
data availability status codes APDB–92
encoding data
See segment edit/compression facility
encrypting data ADB–33
encrypting messages OTMA–45
encryption
using Segment Edit/Compression exit AS–149
VTAM terminals AS–149
end a conversation, how to APDG–97
end bracket indicator
See EB
END call function APDB–324, APTM–394
END command
description CR–343
environments CR–343
example CR–344
LINE keyword CR–343
NODE keyword CR–343
PTERM keyword CR–343
syntax diagram CR–343
USER keyword CR–344
end multiple page input request
See ENDMPPI request
End of Job log record CG–471
end statement URS–85
END statement ADB–290, ADB–299, URS–85
END statement (language utility) URDBTM–515
end-user
developing operating procedures for OG–331
establishing operating instructions for OG–332
problem reporting OG–336
end-user service
at takeover AS–251, AS–261
ENDDO statement
specifying to terminate DFLD statements
URDBTM–504
specifying to terminate MFLD statements
URDBTM–453
ending a conversation and passing control to another
program APTM–142
ending a logical unit of work APCICS–69, APCICS–81
ending dialog session IIV–124
ENDMPPI request APTM–235
ENDMPPI request
specifying URDBTM–503
specifying PF key function URDBTM–468
ENDRECOV parameter commands
CHANGE.SUBSYS DBRC–162
NOTIFY.SUBSYS DBRC–303
Enhanced Select Edit exit routine (DFSERA70)
URS–287
enhanced STAT call formats for statistics
OSAM buffer subpool APDG–151
VSAM buffer subpool APDG–157
enhancements
IMS Version 8, Database Manager RPG–5
IMS Version 8, DB
Batch Remote Recovery Service support RPG–5
IMS Version 8, overview of RPG–5
IMS Version 8, system RPG–13
IMS Version 8, Transaction Manager RPG–11
ENQUEUE function CG–24
enqueue problems, causes of RECON DBRC–81
tenqueue/dequeue tables
allocation, changing AS–77
specifying AS–77
system definition, in AS–77
use AS–28
eNt
execution phase action command IIV–120
file-tailoring action command IIV–112
variable-gathering action command IIV–106
ENT mode
file-tailoring phase IIV–115
panel IIV–107
using action codes IIV–107
variable-gathering phase IIV–107
ENT Mode
DOC action panel for variable gathering IIV–108
execution phase II–121
Enterprise COBOL JGR–29
Enterprise COBOL
back end JGR–29
back end
implementing JGR–30
CALL statement JGR–29
compiler JGR–30
front end JGR–29, JGR–30
JVM, locating JGR–31
main method JGR–30
object oriented syntax JGR–29
performance JGR–31
ENTITY keyword
DISPLAY command CR–739
entity, data APDB–11
entry and return conventions APDB–108
entry point
assembler language APTM–54
C language APTM–54
COBOL APTM–55
overview APTM–53
Pascal APTM–55
PL/I APTM–55
entry points
DFSCSI00 CG–13
DFSCSI50 CG–15
DFSCSI10 CG–14
environment
application programming APTM–7
environment (REXX)
address APDB–256, APDB–261, APTM–312,
APTM–317
determining APDB–264, APTM–320
extended APDB–261, APTM–317
environment options
DBB IIV–98
DBC IIV–98
DBT IIV–98
DCC IIV–98
primary option menu IIV–98
XRF IIV–98
environmental requirements CSL–19
environments
AO application CG–448, CG–459
batch IIv–99
client requests CQS–75
DB/DC APDG–29, IIV–99
DBCTL APDG–29, IIV–99
DCCTL APDG–29, IIV–99
options in APDG–29, APDG–51
program and database types APDG–28
XRF IIV–99
environments supported, IMS OTMA–2
environments, valid for keywords
/ASSIGN command CR–98
/CHANGE command CR–122
environments, valid keywords
DISPLAY command CR–202
EOM
multisegment command input CR–7
EOS
multisegment command input CR–7
EPCB definition/mapping macro DGR–56
EPF definition/mapping macro DGR–56
EPL (exit parameter list) CG–513, CG–557
EPSESRT buffer AS–51
EPST (extended program specification table) CG–80
EPST definition/mapping macro DGR–57
EPSTDMAA (DEDB Resource Name Hash routine) CG–81
EPSTRSHS (DEDB Resource Name Hash routine) CG–81
EQEL definition/mapping macro DGR–57
EQU statement (language utility statement)
URDBTM–511
equal-to relational operator APDB–25
equate processing
See concatenated equates
erase all unprotected option (SCA/DSCA) APDB–261
ERASE parameter APDG–86
ERESTART (/ERESTART) command
cold start OG–88
emergency restart OG–79, OG–90
message queue recovery OG–103
ERESTART command
BACKUP keyword CR–348
BUILDQ keyword CR–348
CHECKPOINT keyword CR–348
CMDAUTH keyword CR–348
CMDAUTH THE keyword CR–349
ERESTART command (continued)
  COLDDBASE keyword CR–349
  COLDCOMM keyword CR–349
  COLDSYS keyword CR–349
  DEDB CR–347
  description CR–347
  environments CR–346
  examples CR–353
  FORMAT keyword CR–350
  MSDB CR–347
  MULTSIGN keyword CR–351
  NOBMP keyword CR–351
  NOCMDAUTH keyword CR–351
  NOCMDAUTH keyword CR–351
  NOPASSWORD keyword CR–351
  NOTERMINAL keyword CR–351
  NOTRANAUTH keyword CR–351
  NOTRANCMDS keyword CR–352
  NOUSER keyword CR–352
  OVERRIDE keyword CR–352
  PASSWORD keyword CR–352
  restart
    security definition CR–347
  SNGLSIGN keyword CR–352
  syntax diagram CR–345
  TERMINAL keyword CR–352
  TRANAUTH keyword CR–352
  TRANCMDS keyword CR–352
  USER keyword CR–353
  ERP (error recovery procedure)
    CICS-IMS session ATM–568
    extended ATM–568
    FM header ATM–357
    function management header ATM–568
    implemented by IMS ATM–437
  ERP FM header, format ATM–383
  ERP PURGE, after ISC exception response ATM–338
  ERPL (error parameter list trace table) BPE–11
  ERR (error trace table)
    BPE trace table type BPE–7
    CQS trace table type BPE–8
    OM trace table type BPE–9
    RM trace table type BPE–10
    SCI trace table type BPE–11
  error
    execution APDG–161, APDG–169
    I/O
      backout OG–72
      IMS Monitor OG–112
      recovery OG–161
    initialization APDG–161, APDG–169
    INITIATE OLC command OG–130
    log OG–153
    OLDS read OG–154
    OLDS write OG–153
    read OG–158
    responding to OG–343
    SLDS read OG–154
    WADS OG–154
    write OG–158
  error block listing (SYSPRINT)
    description of fields URS–237
    Log Recovery utility URS–237
  error codes
    0002 DGR–343
    0004 DGR–343
    0006 DGR–344
    0008 DGR–344
    000A DGR–344
    000C DGR–344
    000E DGR–345
  error handling ATM–488, CG–337
  error handling
    BREAK code X’0811’ ATM–490
    CANCEL command ATM–336
    CANCEL command
      use ATM–492
      when sent by IMS ATM–492
    controller-detected errors
      system sense field ATM–489
      use ATM–489
      user sense field ATM–491
    error messages ATM–365
    FM header ATM–357
    IMS-detected errors ATM–489
    IMS-issued error messages in XRF complex ATM–489
  ISC
    CICS-IMS session ATM–568
    paging errors, during data flow reset state
      ATM–349
    paging errors, for nonpaged messages ATM–351
    paging errors, for paged messages ATM–344
    selective receiver ERP ATM–345
    sender ERP ATM–349
    sender ERP sense codes ATM–350
    length of message ATM–357
    LUSTATUS command ATM–342, ATM–491
    MFS-detected errors ATM–365
    queuing messages ATM–357
    RQR command ATM–492
    SIGNAL command ATM–492
    SLU P ATM–488
    VTAM logical unit status command ATM–558
  error ID record, interim log
    Log Recovery utility URS–237
  ERROR key APTM–199
  error location codes DGR–334
  error location codes
    dynamic logon errors DGR–333
    error messages issued by DFSCNXA0 DGR–329, DGR–330
    ISC processing DGR–331
    logging-on device characteristics DGR–335
    MSC errors DGR–332
    related to existing ISC session errors DGR–333
    user-logon-exit processing DGR–333
  error messages
    conditions causing
      BB-only specified on input ATM–476
      BB-only specified on output ATM–483
error messages *(continued)*
  length ATM–357, ATM–489
  MFS-detected errors ATM–365
ERROR OPTION keyword
  /DISPLAY RECOVERY command CR–251
Error Queue Element (EQE) ADB–111
error recovery
  3270 device
    log record X’6703’ DGR–305
    sense-status message DGR–305
  BTAM, IEA000l message DGR–305
error recovery procedure (ERP)
  See ERP (error recovery procedure)
error routines APDB–18
error routines
  I/O errors APDB–18
  I/O errors in your program APTM–14
  programming errors APDB–18, APTM–14
  system errors APDB–18, APTM–14
  types of errors APDB–18, APTM–14
error, RECON I/O DBRC–61
ERRORABORT keyword
  RECOVER command
  START CR–524
ERRORACTION command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–531
ERRORCONT keyword
  definition CR–53
  RECOVER command
  START CR–524
errors
  ISC session termination, causing ATM–349
ESAF
  See external subsystem attach facility
ESAF (Extended Subsystem Attach Facility) AS–15
ESAF (External Subsystem Attach Facility) APDB–10
ESCD (extended system contents directory) ADB–129
ESCD definition/mapping macro DGR–57
ESCSIZ= keyword
  HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0)
  URDBTM–26
ESDS (entry-sequenced data set)
  HD databases ADB–90
  HISAM ADB–65
  secondary indexes ADB–190
ESMT (external subsystem module table) CG–513
ESMT (external subsystem module table)
  creating CG–505
  defining ISDT–457
  for loading exit routines CG–513
  loading external subsystem modules CG–546
  work area definitions CG–508
ESRB definition/mapping macro DGR–57
ESREC= keyword
  HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0)
  URDBTM–26
ESRT definition/mapping macro DGR–57
ESS (external subsystem)
  trace output example DGR–191
  trace record
    format DGR–178
  trace record *(continued)*
    module ID and subfunction table DGR–179
    variable section layout DGR–180
establishing a starting position in a database
  APCICS–47
establishing connection ATM–265
establishing connections for external subsystems
  CG–500
establishing surveillance AS–264, AS–265
ESTAE process
  bypassing affinity management during ATM–126
ESTAE routines APDG–46, OG–149
estimating minimum database size ADB–244
ET CR–15
ETO CG–309
ETO
  commands CR–791
descriptors
  creating, rules for ISDT–433
  format ISDT–432
  logon ISDT–434
  MFS device ISDT–438
  MSC ISDT–439
  overrides ISDT–434
  user ISDT–439
IMSTCTRL macro, ETOFEAT ISDT–89, ISDT–432
including in IMS ISDT–25, ISDT–432
keyword setting CG–309
LTERM processing CG–380
stage 1 ISDT–49
terminal
  ERESTART CMDAUTH command CR–348
  ERESTART CMDAUTH command CR–349
terminal naming rules ISDT–57
user assignments OG–109
ETO (Extended Terminal Option) ATM–10
ETO (Extended Terminal Option)
  /SIGN command for ETO STSN devices ATM–190
  3275 devices ATM–151
  3600/Finance ATM–189
  ABENDU0015 ATM–170
  advantages ATM–145
  advantages
    availability ATM–145
    LTERMs ATM–145
  algorithm ATM–162, ATM–176
  algorithm
    logon descriptor ATM–162
    LTERM allocation ATM–176
  associated printing techniques ATM–178
  asynchronous output ATM–185
  autologoff ATM–183
  autologon ATM–184
  autologoff ATM–181
  availability of IIV–101
  benefits of using ATM–137
  commands that reset status and release control
    blocks ATM–177
  commands that retain status ATM–177
  common logon descriptors ATM–159
Index 141
ETO (Extended Terminal Option) (continued)

conversations ATM-32, ATM-191
creating descriptors ATM-159
customizing ATM-142, ATM-146
data sets IIV-17
dead-letter queue ATM-185, ATM-186
default CINIT/BIND user data formats ATM-172
defaults for IIV-101
defining terminals with AS-70
deleting control blocks ATM-187
deleting control blocks
  after logoff ATM-187
  after signoff ATM-187
delivering output to non-originating terminal ATM-186
description AS-21
descriptors ATM-158, ATM-159, ATM-163,
  ATM-166, ATM-169, ATM-171
descriptors
  added ATM-171
  deleted ATM-171
generic logon, definition ATM-140
  group logon, definition ATM-141
introduction ATM-158
logon ATM-159
logon, definition ATM-140
MFS ATM-166
MFS device, definition ATM-141
MSC ATM-169
MSC, definition ATM-141
  specific logon, definition ATM-141
updated ATM-171
user ATM-163
  user, definition ATM-141
VTAM TERMINAL macro ATM-159
descriptors, definition ATM-140
descriptors, using ATM-142
device characteristics table ATM-152, ATM-166
device type, defining ATM-150
DFSD2085 ATM-173
DFSD3641W ATM-170
DFSD3645 ATM-173
DFSD3649A ATM-175
DFSD3650 ATM-175
DFSD3672 ATM-173
DFSDINSX0 ATM-166
DFSDINSX0 (Output User Creation exit routine)
  AS-131
DFSLGNX0 (Logon exit routine) AS-131
DFSSGNX0 ATM-166
DFSSGNX0 (Signon exit routine) AS-131
DFSUUSER descriptor ATM-165
DLQT ATM-186
dynamic terminal, definition ATM-138
dynamic terminals ATM-10
dynamic user, definition ATM-138
exit routines, coding ATM-170
exit routines, list of ATM-170
exit routines, using ATM-142
guideline selection ATM-161
guideline selection
  logon descriptors ATM-161
ETO (Extended Terminal Option) (continued)
guideline selection (continued)
  LOGOND parameter ATM-161
initialization ATM-170
initialization
  descriptor validation ATM-170
  DFSINTX0 ATM-170
installation of IIV-9, IIV-101
logon ATM-159
logon
  /OPNDST command ATM-171
  descriptor format ATM-159
  INITOTHER ATM-171
  INITSELF ATM-171
  signon data ATM-171
  USS LOGON ATM-171
LTERM with specific destination ATM-175
LU 2
  devices ATM-151
  screen size and model information ATM-152
LU 6.1 (ISC) terminals ATM-188
MFS ATM-156
MFS device characteristics table ATM-152, ATM-166
MFSDCT utility ATM-152
MODETBL on ETO logon descriptor ATM-61
MSC ATM-157
MSC
  descriptor ATM-157
  descriptor format ATM-169
  MSNAME macro ATM-157
  support ATM-157
  multiple signons ATM-173
  node user descriptor ATM-164
non-SNA 3270 devices
  printers and displays ATM-151
  screen size and model information ATM-152
NTO devices ATM-152
overview ATM-137
queue (dynamic user message), definition ATM-138
RACF ATM-10
recommendations ATM-146
requirements ATM-146
response mode ATM-191
screen definitions examples (non-SNA 3270)
  ATM-154
screen definitions examples (non-SNA 3270)
  display (model specified) ATM-154, ATM-155
  display (screen size specified) ATM-155
LU0 video ATM-154
  model 2 printer ATM-154
screen size control byte ATM-152
security AS-130, ATM-155
security
  number of profiles ATM-47
  RACF ATM-156
  Security Maintenance Utility (SMU) ATM-156
signon ATM-155
shared printing ATM-179
signing off, definition ATM-187
signing on, definition ATM-173
signon ATM-156

142 Master Index and Glossary
ETO (Extended Terminal Option) (continued)

signon
ETO terminals ATM–156
LTERM allocation ATM–173
static terminals ATM–156
SLU P ATM–189
SMU, nonsupport of ATM–10
SNA commands ATM–171
special processing modes ATM–176
starting ETO ATM–170
static terminal, definition ATM–138
storing descriptors ATM–159
structure
definition ATM–138
terminal, definition ATM–138
user, definition ATM–138
structure, creation and deletion ATM–141
STSN terminals ATM–189
STSN terminals
support for /SIGN command ATM–190
system definition ATM–159
system generation time ATM–10
terminal-LTERM relationship ATM–175
terminal, definition ATM–138
terminology ATM–138
undeliverable data, dead-letter queue ATM–186
undeliverable data, dead-letter queue
/DISPLAY STATUS USER command ATM–186
/DISPLAY USER DEADQ command ATM–186
user descriptors ATM–163
user descriptors
DFUSER ATM–165
format ATM–163
installation-created ATM–163
node user descriptor ATM–163, ATM–164
VTAM CINIT LUNAME ATM–161
VTAM considerations ATM–150
VTAM considerations
logon CINIT session control blocks ATM–150
VTAM PSERVIC parameters ATM–150

ETR device OG–76
events
system-level tracing OG–99
events, handling CQS–81
events, handling
cold start CQS–81
registering interest in queues CQS–82
shutting down CQS CQS–82
tuning for performance CQS–82
EWAL CG–508
examining scheduling for critical transactions URS–461
example
current roster APDG–11
data sharing AS–363
field level sensitivity APDG–75
instructor schedules APDG–25
instructor skills report APDG–24
local view APDG–22
logical relationships APDG–80
RSR complex AS–331
schedule of classes APDG–23

example (continued)
Security Maintenance utility input AS–136
transaction grouping AS–60
TSO SPOC CR–15
example of initial load program ADB–321
examples
/CHANGE command CR–131
/DISPLAY ACTIVE command CR–274
/DISPLAY AFFINITY command CR–278
/DISPLAY AOITOKEN command CR–278
/DISPLAY APPC command CR–278
/DISPLAY command CR–274
/DISPLAY FDR command CR–291
/DISPLAY FPVIRTUAL command CR–291
/DISPLAY TRACKING STATUS command CR–337
/TRACE command CR–663
ACCEPT command APCICS–69
Boolean operators APDB–194
CHKP (Checkpoint) command APCICS–70
coding conventions ISDT–59
conversational processing APTM–135
copyright panel IIV–98
D command code APDB–27, APDB–31
Data Communication macro statements ISDT–470
data sharing system configuration ISDT–496
database organization IIV–137
DEQ (Dequeue) command APCICS–71
DFSDDLT0 statements
COMMENT APDB–327, APTM–397
DATA/PCB COMPARE APDB–331, APTM–401
DD APDB–342, APTM–412
DL/I call functions APDB–315, APTM–385
IGNORE APDB–333, APTM–403
OPTION APDB–334, APTM–404
PUNCH APDB–336, APTM–406
STATUS APDB–338, APTM–408
SYSIN, SYSIN2, and PREINIT APDB–342, APTM–413
WTO APDB–339, APTM–410
WTOR APDB–340, APTM–410
DLET (Delete) command APCICS–36
Dynamic Allocation Macro URS–177
F irmproc,SET command
CSA=nnn CR–715
TIMEOUT CR–715
TRACE=nnn CR–715
F irmproc,STATUS command CR–716
Fast Path application IIV–151
File Select and Formatting Print utility URS–269
FLD/CHANGE APDB–229
FLD/VERIFY APDB–229
GN (Get Next) command APCICS–41
GNP (Get Next in Parent) command APCICS–46
GU (Get Unique) command APCICS–52
IMS DB/DC system definition ISDT–465
IMS DBCTL environment ISDT–501
ISRT (Insert) command APCICS–58
IVP Sample Application IIV–131
IVP sample partitioning application IIV–161
L command code APDB–33
LOAD command APCICS–72
examples (continued)
Log Archive utility URS–226
LOG command APCICS–73
logo panel IIV–97
medical database APDB–20
MSC ISDT–491
multiple qualification statements APDB–194
N command code APDB–33
Null command code APDB–39
P command code APDB–34
path call APDB–27
QUERY command APCICS–74
RECOVER ADD command CR–527
RECOVER REMOVE command CR–528
RECOVER START command CR–529
RECOVER STOP command CR–531
REFRESH command APCICS–74
REPL (Replace) command APCICS–63
RETRIEVE command APCICS–66
ROLL command APCICS–75
ROLL command APCICS–76
SCHD (Schedule) command APCICS–67
selecting all log record types with token URS–289
selecting specific log record types with token URS–290
SETS command APCICS–79
SETU command APCICS–80
SSAs, secondary indexing APDB–206
STAT command APCICS–81
SYMCHKP (Symbolic Checkpoint) command APCICS–83
TERM (Terminate) command APCICS–68
TRACE CT CR–727
TSO command to invoke CLIST IIV–95
U Command Code APDB–37
UIB, defining APDB–99
V command code APDB–38
XRST (Extended Restart) command APCICS–85
examples, ISC data flow control ATM–577
EXCLUSIVE command (continued)
LINE keyword CR–357
NODE keyword CR–358
PTERM keyword CR–357
syntax diagram CR–357
USER keyword CR–358
exclusive intent
effect on scheduling AS–28
with scheduling algorithm AS–69
exclusive mode ATM–38
exclusive transactions, Fast Path AS–25
eXe, Execution phase action command IIV–120
EXEC DLI
allowable commands APCICS–34
commands
ACCEPT APCICS–69
CHKP APCICS–69
DEQ APCICS–70
DLET APCICS–35
GN APCICS–36
GNP APCICS–41
GU APCICS–47
ISRT APCICS–53
LOAD APCICS–71
LOG APCICS–72
POS APCICS–59
QUERY APCICS–73
REFRESH APCICS–74
REPL APCICS–60
RETRIEVE APCICS–64
ROLB APCICS–75
ROLL APCICS–76
ROLS APCICS–77
SCHD APCICS–66
SETS APCICS–78
SETU APCICS–79
STAT APCICS–80
SYMCHKP APCICS–81
TERM APCICS–67
XRST APCICS–83
compiler options, required APCICS–29
linkage editor options, required APCICS–29
options, using with subset pointers APCICS–94
preparing program for execution APCICS–28
program summary APCICS–33
translator options, required APCICS–29
EXEC DLI commands APDG–6
EXEC parameter, SSM CG–498
EXEC parameters
Fast Path AS–94
for BMP region AS–104
for message region AS–102
SSM AS–17
EXEC statement URDBTM–158
EXEC statement
Batch Backout utility (DFSBBO00) URDBTM–252
Database Change Accumulation utility (DFSUCUM0)
URDBTM–217
Database Image Copy 2 utility (DFSUDMP0)
URDBTM–195
EXEC statement (continued)

Database Image Copy utility (DFSUDMP0)
URDBTM–183
Database Prefix Resolution utility (DFSURG10)
URDBTM–123
Database Prefix Update utility (DFSURGP0)
URDBTM–130
Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0)
URDBTM–107
Database Recovery utility (DFSURDB0)
URDBTM–241
Database Scan utility (DFSURGS0) URDBTM–115
Database Surveyor utility (DFSPRSUR) URDBTM–74
Database-Monitor Report Print utility (DFSUTR30)
URDBTM–293
DEDB Area Data Set Compare utility (DBFUMMH0)
URDBTM–276
DEDB Area Data Set Create utility (DBFUMRIO)
URDBTM–272
DEDB Initialization utility (DBFUMINO) URDBTM–142
DEDB Sequential Dependent Delete utility
(DBFUMDL0) URDBTM–165
HD Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURGL0)
URDBTM–59
HD Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURGU0)
URDBTM–47
HISAM Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURRL0)
URDBTM–36
HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0)
URDBTM–23
MFS Device Characteristics Table (DFSUTB00)
URDBTM–406
MFS Service (DFSUTSA0) URDBTM–413
MSDB Dump Recovery utility (DBFDBDR0)
URDBTM–265
MSDB Maintenance utility (DBFDBMA0)
URDBTM–148
Multiple Systems Verification utility (DFSUMSV0)
URDBTM–427
Online Database Image Copy utility (DFSUICP0)
URDBTM–207
Partial Database Reorganization utility (DFSPRCT1)
URDBTM–89
Partial Database Reorganization utility (DFSPRCT2)
URDBTM–90
Program-Isolation-Trace Report utility (DFSPIRP0)
URDBTM–320
SB Test utility (DFSSBH0) URDBTM–325
Spool SYSOUT Print utility (DFSUPRTO)
URDBTM–518
TCO Verification utility (DFSTVER0) URDBTM–522
Utility Control Facility (DFSUCF00) URDBTM–343
EXEC statement parameters AS–94, JGR–111
EXEC statement, compilation control URDBTM–436
EXEC statement, operands
DEVCHAR= APTM–247, URDBTM–441
DIRUPDT= URDBTM–441
LINECNT= URDBTM–441
STOPRC= URDBTM–441
EXEC statement, parameters
COMP/NOCOMP URDBTM–440
EXEC statement, parameters (continued)
COMPRESS/NOCOMPRESS URDBTM–441
DIAG/NODIAG URDBTM–440
SUBS/NOSUBS URDBTM–440
XREF/NOXREF URDBTM–440
EXEC= statement
control statements
UCF FUNCTION=DR URDBTM–350
UCF FUNCTION=DU URDBTM–352
UCF FUNCTION=DX URDBTM–353
UCF FUNCTION=IL URDBTM–355
UCF FUNCTION=IM URDBTM–357
UCF FUNCTION=PR URDBTM–358
UCF FUNCTION=PU URDBTM–359
UCF FUNCTION=RR URDBTM–361
UCF FUNCTION=RU URDBTM–363
UCF FUNCTION=SN URDBTM–365
UCF FUNCTION=SR URDBTM–368
UCF FUNCTION=SU URDBTM–369
UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–371
UCF FUNCTION=ZB URDBTM–374
EXECIO
example APDB–282, APTM–338
managing resources APDB–256, APTM–312
execution data sets
attributes.
See data sets
related execution data sets
ACBLIB IIV–32
DBRC RECON IIV–32
format IIV–32
log IIV–33
message queue IIV–33
online change IIV–34
SYSOUT IIV–34
execution diagnostic facility APCICS–5
Execution Diagnostic Facility (EDF) APDG–164
execution errors APDG–161, APDG–169
execution members
See JCL (job control language), skeletal execution
members explained
execution mode
IMS-CICS communication ATM–535
recovery at ISC session failure ATM–306
specification, ISC ATM–270, ATM–272
supported by ISC, list ATM–256
execution parameters
categories and purpose ISDT–407
data communication ISDT–399, ISDT–405,
ISDT–409
database ISDT–398
db buffer sizes ISDT–398
db performance options ISDT–399
dc buffer sizes ISDT–399
dc performance options ISDT–400
performance-related ISDT–406
PSB-related ISDT–408
recovery-related ISDT–402, ISDT–407, ISDT–410
region control ISDT–405, ISDT–409
security-related ISDT–403, ISDT–407, ISDT–411
specifying ISDT–398
EXECUTION PARAMETERS (continued)

active regions ISDT–400
DL/I address space ISDT–401
IRLM options ISDT–402
MVS options ISDT–401
nucleus identifier ISDT–400
performance options ISDT–400

EXECUTION PHASE IIV–119

ACTION COMMANDS
Brm IIV–120
Doc IIV–120
Edm IIV–120
eNt IIV–120
eXe IIV–120
Lst IIV–120
Nxt IIV–120
Prv IIV–120
spR IIV–120
using IIV–120

DESCRIPTION OF IIV–119
END IIV–122
ENT Mode IIV–122
ENT Mode panel IIV–121
indicator symbols IIV–121
LST Mode IIV–120
LST Mode panel IIV–120

EXECUTION PHASE--RETURN TO PHASE SELECTION PANEL IIV–123

EXECUTION PROCEDURES, TAILORING
for data sharing AS–370
for Fast Path AS–92
IMS procedure library AS–89

EXECUTION-TIME OPTIONS
for BMP region AS–104
for MPP region AS–102
performance related AS–98, AS–103

EXISTING APPLICATION, CONVERTING AN APDG–10

EXIT

DATABASE OPEN DBRC–17
RECON I/O DBRC–6

EXIT COMMAND
CONVERSATION keyword CR–360
DEDB online utilities URDBTM–532
DESCRIPTION CR–359
environments CR–359
examples CR–360
ISC conversation mode errors ATM–318
LINE keyword CR–360
LUNAME keyword CR–360
NODE keyword CR–360
PTERM keyword CR–360
syntax diagram CR–359
terminating a conversation abnormally ATM–37
TMEMBER TPIPE keyword CR–360
USER keyword CR–360

EXIT KEYWORD
/DISPLAY TRACE command CR–261
/TRACE command CR–652
definition CR–53

EXIT PARAMETER ADB–214

EXIT PARAMETER LIST (EPL) CG–513, CG–557

EXIT ROUTINE
destination resolution CG–367
destination resolution
Destination Resolution exit routine CG–367
DFSYDRU0 CG–367
input/output edit CG–371
input/output edit
DFSYIOE0 CG–371
Input/Output Edit exit routine CG–371
Open Transaction Manager Access
DFSYPRX0 CG–375
prerouting input messages CG–375
sample, location of CG–35

EXIT ROUTINE INTERFACE CONTROL BLOCKS CG–514

EXIT ROUTINES
AOI OG–194, OG–196
client CQS–171
data communication
Signoff exit routine (DFSSGFX0) CG–413
database support
Data Capture exit routine CG–43
Data Conversion exit routine CG–69
DEDB Randomizing routine
(DBFHDC40/DBFHDC44) CG–73
DEDB Resource Name Hash routine (DBFLHSH0) CG–79
DEDB Sequential Dependent Scan Utility exit routine
(DBFUMSE1) CG–101
HALDB Partition Selection exit routine CG–89
HDAM and PHDAM Randomizing routines
(DEFSHDC40) CG–83
Secondary Index Database Maintenance exit routine CG–95
Segment Edit/Compression exit routine
(DEFSCMPX0) CG–107
Sequential Buffering Initialization exit routine
(DEFSSBUX0) CG–127
Event CQS–171
Fast Path
DEDB Sequential Dependent Scan exit routine CG–403
Fast Path Input Edit/Routing exit routine
(DBFHAGU0) CG–277
for ETO ATM–170
for MSC ATM–222
LU 6.2
LU 6.2 Edit exit routine CG–331
Remote Site Recovery
Log Filter Exit Routine (DFSFTFX0) CG–193
Resource Manager
client connection CSL–103
initialization/termination CSL–105
RM statistics CSL–107
security
Command Authorization exit routine (DFSCCMD0) CG–151
Security Reverification exit routine (DFSCTSE0) CG–401
exit routines (continued)
  Sign On/Off Security exit routine (DFSCSGN0)
  CG–417
  Transaction Authorization exit routine
  (DFSCTRN0) CG–433

Structured Call Interface
  input CSL–161

system support
  Automated Operator exit routine (DFSAOUE0)
  CG–241
  Dependent Region Preinitialization routines
  CG–159
  Dump Override Table (DFSFDOT0) CG–163
  IMS command language modification facility
  (DFSCKWD0) CG–167
  Large SYSGEN Sort/Split Output exit routine
  (DFSSS060) CG–175
  Log Archive exit routine (DFMLGEXIT) CG–179
  Logger exit routine (DFSFLGXR0) CG–199
  Partner Product exit routine (DFSSPPUE0) CG–207
  RECON I/O exit routine (DSPCEXIT0) CG–209
  Resource Access Security exit routine (DFSISI0)
  CG–215
  SYSGEN input exit routine (DFSISI0) CG–171
  System Definition Preprocessor exit routine (input
  phase) (DFSPRE60) CG–221
  System Definition Preprocessor exit routine (name
  check complete) (DFSPRE70) CG–225
  Time-Controlled Operations (TCO) exit routine
  (DFSTXIT0) CG–425
  User Message Table (DFSCMTU0) CG–227

transaction manager
  2972/2980 Input edit routine (DFS29800) CG–441
  4701 Transaction Input edit routine (DFS36010)
  CG–443
  Build Security Environment exit routine
  (DFSBSEX0) CG–267
  Conversation Abnormal Termination exit routine
  (DFSCTONE0) CG–271
  Global Physical Terminal Input edit routine
  (DFSGBX0) CG–305
  Greeting Messages exit routine (DFSGBX0)
  CG–303
  Initialization exit routine (DFSMIBX0) CG–309
  Input Message Field edit routine (DFSIMF00)
  CG–313
  Input Message Segment edit routine (DFSIMF00)
  CG–317
  Logoff exit routine (DFSGLF0X0) CG–323
  Logon exit routine (DFSGLNX0) CG–327
  Message Control/Error exit routine (DFSMUX0)
  CG–337
  Message Switching Input edit routine
  (DFSMXIT0) CG–347
  Non-Discardable Messages exit routine
  (DFSMXIT0) CG–359
  Output Creation exit routine (DFSMXIT0) CG–379
  Physical Terminal Input edit routine (DFSMXIT0)
  CG–387

exit routines (continued)

transaction manager (continued)
  Physical Terminal Output edit routine
  (DFSCTOU0) CG–391
  Queue Space Notification exit routine
  (DFSQSPC0) CG–395
  Shared Printer exit routine (DFSIML0) CG–403
  Sign-On exit routine CG–405
  Terminal Routing exit routine (DFSMTR0)
  CG–421
  Time-Controlled Operations (TCO)
  Communication Name Table (CNT) exit routine
  (DFSTCNT0) CG–429
  Transaction Code Input edit routine (DFSCTNCΜ0)
  CG–437
  user-supplied, COS COS–51

exit routines for online change AS–231
exit routines, changing ADB–416
exit routines, external subsystem
  register conventions CG–513
exit routines, specifying IMS-provided field edit
  URDBTM–452
exit routines, with OTMA OTMA–39
exit routines, writing CG–7

EXIT statement
  Log Archive utility URS–225

EXIT= Data Capture exit routine CG–46
EXIT= parameter
  DBD statement URS–27
  SEGM statement ADB–418, URS–65

EXITDEF parameter
  and static work areas BPE–60
  BPE types BPE–15
  CQS types BPE–15
  keywords BPE–14
  OM types BPE–16
  RM types BPE–16
  SCI types BPE–16

EXITR= parameter
  BPE exit routine PROCLIB member BPE–11
  CQS exit routine PROCLIB member BPE–12
  ims_component BPE–11
  member_name BPE–11
  OM exit routine PROCLIB member BPE–12
  RM exit routine PROCLIB member BPE–12
  SCI exit routine PROCLIB member BPE–12

EXITR= keyword
  DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–268

EXITRLD= keyword
  control statements
  UCF FUNCTION=DX URDBTM–353
  UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–372

EXITRTN= keyword
  control statements
  UCF FUNCTION=DR URDBTM–350
  UCF FUNCTION=DU URDBTM–352
  UCF FUNCTION=IL URDBTM–355
  UCF FUNCTION=IM URDBTM–357
  UCF FUNCTION=PR URDBTM–358
  UCF FUNCTION=PU URDBTM–359
EXITRTN= keyword *(continued)*
control statements *(continued)*
  UCF FUNCTION=RR URDBTM–361
  UCF FUNCTION=RU URDBTM–363
  UCF FUNCTION=SN URDBTM–366
  UCF FUNCTION=SR URDBTM–368
  UCF FUNCTION=SU URDBTM–370
  UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–372
  UCF FUNCTION=ZB URDBTM–374
  UCF FUNCTION=ZM URDBTM–376
EXPANDSEG command
  DEDB utility commands URDBTM–532
expansion routine CG–111
expedited message handler (EMH) ATM–20
Expedited Message Handler Buffer (EMHB), size for Fast Path AS–51
expedited message handling AS–25
explanation of stopped status CG–554
explicit API for LU 6.2 devices APDG–113
explicitly opening and closing a GSAM database APDB–216
exporting database definitions HALDB ADB–294
express alternate PCB APTM–127
express PCB
  and program switch OTMA–52
  express PCBs APDG–100
EXPRESS= parameter keyword
  PCB TYPE=TP control statement URS–117
extended attribute data APTM–191
extended environment
  See environment (REXX)
Extended Error Queue Element (EEQE) AS–117
extended functions
  See IMSQUERY extended function
extended graphic character set
  See EGCS (extended graphic character set)
extended output component protection ATM–452
Extended Program Communication Block
  See XPCB
Extended Recovery Facility CR–4
Extended Recovery Facility
  See XRF (Extended Recovery Facility)
Extended Recovery Facility (XRF)
  See XRF (Extended Recovery Facility)
Extended Recovery Facility
  See also XRF
  See XRF (Extended Recovery Facility)
Extended Restart APDG–41, APDG–62
Extended Restart (XRST) APDB–147
Extended Restart (XRST)
  description APDB–178
  parameters APDB–178
Extended Restart (XRST) *(continued)*
  position in database APDB–180
  restarting your program APDB–179
  restrictions APDB–181
  starting your program normally APDB–179
  usage APDB–179
extended restart, issuing an APCICS–83
Extended Segment Data Block
  See XSDB
extended system contents directory (ESCD) ADB–129
Extended Terminal Option
  See also ETO
  See also ETO (Extended Terminal Option)
  See see ETO
Extended Terminal Option (ETO) URS–181
Extended Terminal Option (ETO)
  See ETO (Extended Terminal Option)
extent of recovery, determining AS–325
external entry vector table (EEVT) CG–515, CG–546
external entry vector table prefix (EEVTP) CG–515
external execution mode, ISC ATM–270
external SNAP call, control blocks dumped DGR–219
external subsystem attach facility ADB–57, AS–17, CG–497
external subsystem attach facility
  Abort Continue exit routine CG–517
  accessing multiple external subsystems CG–552
  adding an SSM PROCLIB member ISDT–455
  application call processing CG–502
  application threads CG–501
  CHANGE command CG–553
  Command exit routine CG–518
  Commit Continue exit routine CG–519
  Commit Prepare exit routine CG–520
  Commit Verify exit routine CG–522
  CRC CG–504, ISDT–458
  Create Thread exit routine CG–523
  creating ESMT CG–505
  creating work areas for ESAP CG–547
defining external subsystems to IMS ISDT–455
defining language interface module ISDT–461
dependent region connections CG–554
DFSEMODL macro CG–505
DFSEWAL macro CG–508
DFSIL macro ISDT–461
DFSIL000 ISDT–457
DISPLAY SUBSYS command CG–553
echo exit routine CG–525
EEVPBEEA CG–545
EEVPEWA CG–547
EEVT CG–546
EEVT mapping CG–516, CG–546
EEVTP CG–515
EPL CG–513, CG–557
ESMT
  creating CG–505
  description CG–498
  for loading exit routines CG–513
  establishing connections CG–500
EWAL CG–508
exit routine interface CG–498
external subsystem attach facility (continued)
exit routine interface control blocks CG–514
explanation of stopped status CG–554
external subsystem command support CG–504
External Subsystem exit routines CG–513
functions supplied by external subsystem CG–498
Identify exit routine CG–526
identify process CG–500
IMS services available to ESAP CG–504
IMS.PROCLIB, description ISDT–455
Initialization exit routine CG–528
INQ parameter CG–502
language interface module CG–550
LIT ISDT–457, ISDT–461
loading ESAP CG–545
loading external subsystem modules CG–546
Log Service exit routine CG–558
Message Service exit routine CG–559
Normal Call exit routine CG–530
notify message CG–500
notify Message CG–549
OASN CG–552
OPTIONS statement ISDT–462
overview CG–497
recovery coordinator CG–497
recovery token CG–503, CG–552
register conventions for exit routine activation CG–513
REO ISDT–457
Resolve In-Doubt exit routine CG–532
resource coordination CG–503
RTT CG–498, ISDT–457
Signoff exit routine CG–535
Signon exit routine CG–535
signon process CG–501
specifying desired trace options ISDT–462
specifying external subsystems to IMS CG–498
SSM= EXEC parameter ISDT–459
SSR command CG–553
Startup Service exit routine CG–561
SUBS= parameter ISDT–462
subsystem connections CG–500
Subsystem Not Operational exit routine CG–538
subsystem termination CG–553
Subsystem Termination exit routine CG–540
Subsystem Termination Service exit routine CG–563
system services CG–557
Terminate Identify exit routine CG–542
Terminate Thread exit routine CG–543
terminating connections CG–501
termination ECB CG–501, CG–553
termination requested by external subsystem CG–553
thread CG–500
token CG–497
two phase commit process CG–503
unique language interface entry points CG–551
user authorization processing CG–501
External Subsystem Attach facility (ESAF) APDB–10
External Subsystem Attachment Package (ESAP) CG–498
external subsystem command support CG–504
External Subsystem exit routines CG–513
external subsystem, definition ATM–10
external subsystem.
See ESS (external subsystem)
external subsystems
access from BMP regions AS–106
access from MPP regions AS–103
Data Capture exit routines AS–29, AS–110
IMS control region requirements AS–101
external trace environment DGR–4
external trace, DBRC
RECON I/O error processing example DGR–406
record format DGR–404
router processing example DGR–405
using DGR–404
EXTRACT= keyword
UCF FUNCTION=RU control statement URDBTM–364
extracting multiple system transaction statistics
ATM–236, URS–383, URS–437
EXTRN= operand
XDFFLD statement URS–85
EXTRTN parameter ADB–196, ADB–204
EXVR online parameter
message queues AS–100
use in tuning AS–197

F
F command code
restrictions APDB–241
F fdbrproc,DUMP command
description CR–707
syntax diagram CR–707
F fdbrproc,RECOVER command
description CR–707
syntax diagram CR–707
F fdbrproc,STATUS command
description CR–707
syntax diagram CR–707
F fdbrproc,STOP command
description CR–708
syntax diagram CR–708
F fdbrproc,TERM command
description CR–708
syntax diagram CR–708
F firlmproc,ABEND command
description CR–709
examples CR–709
syntax diagram CR–709
F firlmproc,DIAG,DELAY command
description CR–710
syntax diagram CR–710
F firlmproc,PURGE,imsname command
description CR–711
example CR–711
syntax diagram CR–711
F firlmproc,SET command
CSA=nnn parameter CR–712
description CR–712
F irlmproc,SET command (continued)
examples
CSA=nnn CR–715
TIMEOUT CR–715
TRACE=nnn parameter CR–715
irlmproc parameter CR–712
restrictions CR–714
syntax diagram CR–712
TRACE=nnn parameter CR–714

F irlmproc,STATUS command
ALLD parameter CR–715
ALLI parameter CR–716
description CR–715
examples CR–716
irlmx parameter CR–715
STOR parameter CR–716
syntax diagram CR–715
TRACE parameter CR–716

F jobname,DUMP command
description CR–701
example CR–701
syntax diagram CR–701

F jobname,DUMPxxxx command
description CR–701
examples CR–702
syntax diagram CR–701

F jobname,FORCExxxx command
description CR–702
examples CR–702
syntax diagram CR–702

F jobname,RECONNECT command
description CR–703
example CR–703
syntax diagram CR–703

F jobname,RECONNSTR command
description CR–704
syntax diagram CR–704

F jobname,STOP command
description CR–705
example CR–705
syntax diagram CR–705

F jobname,STOPxxxx command
description CR–705
examples CR–705
syntax diagram CR–705

facilities
ISC ATM–267
test mode for ISC ATM–269
facility class CSL–153
failure
CICS-IMS session ATM–569
ISC, recovering from in-bracket ATM–304
system, during CICS-IMS session ATM–569
while in-brackets ATM–303, ATM–308
failure and restart with data sharing DBRC–35
failures
ACBLIB OG–152
application program OG–156
failures with Resource Manager CSL–111
fallback, migration RPG–43

FAQE definition/mapping macro DGR–57
Fast Database Recovery
See see FDBR
Fast Database Recovery.
See FDBR
fast DB recovery AS–377
fast DB recovery
defining AS–74
Fast Path
ABENDU1026 analysis DGR–353
access to DL/I databases ADB–125
application programs
message-driven AS–24
restrictions AS–49
area
status CR–210
AREA statement
DEDB DBD generation record URS–10
description URS–45
format URS–32
keywords URS–45
area-level data sharing AS–360
area, dynamic allocation
See Dynamic Allocation Macro
BMP region parameters AS–108
buffers ADB–383, AS–52, AS–95
CCTL region parameters AS–108
CI contention ADB–335, ADB–384
committing updates ADB–145
common sync point processing ADB–386
concepts and terminology AS–24
control block
locating in an IMS dump DGR–360
control interval ADB–384
control region exec parameters AS–96
control region EXEC parameters AS–94
database
MODIFY command CR–408
database buffer pool
display CR–245
database buffers AS–95
database calls APDB–223
database tracker AS–322
database, processing APCICS–91
databases APDG–30
databases
DEDB ADB–124, AS–24
DEDB overview ADB–109
MSDB overview ADB–125
overview ADB–109
databases, processing APDB–223
DBCTL considerations AS–25
DBF trace entries ISDT–384
declaring application programs AS–56
declaring program processing AS–56
DEDB
Sequential Dependent Scan exit routine
(DFSSIML0) CG–403
DEDB (data entry database) APDB–223, APDG–71
DEDB and the PROCOPT operand APDG–87
Fast Path (continued)

- DEDB buffers pools, defining ISDT–368
- DEDB DBD generation
description URS–8
direct dependent, specifying URS–57
examples URS–99
input record structure URS–10
sequential dependent, specifying URS–58
- DEDB PSB generation
alternate PCB statement URS–115
positioning options (POS=) URS–126
processing options (PROCOPT=) URS–119
SB= keyword URS–125
- DEDB Sequential Dependent Delete utility
(DBFUMDL0) URDBTM–163
- DEDB utilities
command abbreviations and synonyms
URDBTM–536
command continuation URDBTM–530
command descriptions URDBTM–531
command format URDBTM–530
command summary URDBTM–529
- DEDB Area Data Set Compare utility
(DBFUMHH0) URDBTM–275
- DEDB Area Data Set Create utility (DBFUMRI0)
URDBTM–271
- High-Speed Direct Reorganization utility
URDBTM–169
- Initialization utility (DBFUMIN0) URDBTM–141
- Sequential Dependent Scan utility (DBFUMSC0)
URDBTM–155
- DEDBs
recovering CR–349
defining transaction characteristics AS–59
dependent region
description AS–24
parameters AS–107
detailed control block diagram DGR–85
DISPLAY DBD command CR–218
DL/I exit routines CG–6
EMH buffer size ATM–47
EMHB AS–51
EMHL parameter AS–51
enhancements
introduction to RPG–8
environments ADB–109
EPSESRT buffer AS–51
ERESTART COLDBASE command CR–349
exclusive transactions
DISPLAY command CR–270
PSTOP command CR–444
execution procedures AS–92
expedited message handling AS–25
facilities ATM–457
Fast Path Messages, procedure for DGR–414
FMTIMS statement example DGR–136
FSA APDB–123
gathering information for execution AS–49
general control block diagram DGR–84
IFP AS–24
IFPs APDG–33

Fast Path (continued)
- IMSFP procedure ISDT–241
in DBCTL AS–52
including in
DCCTL AS–49
initial database load ADB–318
Input Edit/Routing exit routine (DBFHAGU0) ATM–21
input message ATM–445
interpreting analysis reports ADB–335
ISC and AS–24
Last MSC Message, Determining
Trace Entry, Fast Path Log Router Interface
DGR–415
Using log records to get last MSC message
DGR–415
loading the database ADB–326
LOCK TRANSACTION command CR–400
log analysis ADB–333
Log Analysis utility (DBFULTA0) URS–291
Log Analysis utility (DBFULTA0)
log intervals URS–291
log reduction ADB–334
macro statements
APPLCTN ISDT–62, ISDT–63
DATABASE ISDT–78
FPCTRL ISDT–80
message handling AS–25
message queue list structures
defining ATM–103
example ATM–103
message-driven programs
PURGE command CR–452
messages ATM–10
MFS NEXTMSG or NEXTMSGP control commands
ATM–445
MFS paged output messages ATM–445
mixed mode ADB–125
monitored events ADB–335
monitoring AS–181
monitoring and tuning ADB–333
MSC and AS–24
MSDB (main storage database) APDB–223,
APDG–30, APDG–71
MSDB DBD generation
description URS–7
examples URS–98
MSDB PSB generation
alternate PCB statement URS–115
examples URS–140
processing options (PROCOPT=) URS–119
MSDB utilities
- MSDB Maintenance utility (DBFDBMA0)
URDBTM–145
MSDB Dump Recovery utility (DBFDBDR0)
URDBTM–263
MSDBINIT DATASET URDBTM–150
MSDB-to-DEDB Conversion utility (DBFUCDB0)
URDBTM–281
NFPACK option on Terminal macro ATM–458,
ATM–459
nonrecoverable OG–166
Fast Path (continued)
online change considerations AS–231
output messages ATM–445
output thread ADB–145
overview ATM–10
parameters
  FORCERESP ATM–457
  FPACK/NFPACK ATM–457
  OPTACK ATM–457
  TRANRESP ATM–457
performance considerations ADB–333
potential transactions
  PSTOP command CR–444
processing AS–24
processing MSDBs and VSO DEDBs APDB–225
PSB PROCOPT= parameter URS–121
recoverable-inquiry transactions ATM–65, ATM–486
recovery ATM–42
region
  STOP REGION command CR–611
  registering databases and DEDB areas DBRC–19
  required macros AS–50, AS–52
  reset terminal response mode CR–546
Resource Name Hash routine ADB–387
restrictions for application programs AS–49
restrictions for applications ATM–22
routing code ATM–21
routing codes, adding AS–57
RSTART command CR–546
RTR command ATM–458, ATM–459
security considerations in
  DB/DC AS–127
  DBCTL AS–154
selecting transactions ADB–335
service aid
  CI contention analysis DGR–360
  DEDB CI problem assistance aids DGR–357
description DGR–353
  locating control blocks and tables in an IMS dump DGR–360
START command CR–587
subset pointers ADB–119, ADB–269
subset pointers with DEDBs APCICS–91
subset pointers, using with DEDBs APDB–232
synchronization point processing ADB–145, ADB–385
system definition and AS–50
TERMINAL macro
  options ATM–457
  required parameters ATM–457
terminal-response mode ATM–445
terminals ATM–47
terminals
  2740 terminal ISDT–141
  traces DGR–5
transaction retry
  description DGR–356
  processing flow DGR–356
  system programmer response DGR–356
Fast Path (continued)
  transaction timings ADB–334
transactions
  exclusive AS–25
  recommendation ATM–117
tuning Fast Path systems ADB–381
types of databases APDB–223
user hash routine AS–101
user hash routine, programming considerations ADB–387
using the Log Analysis utility (DBFULTA0) ADB–333
work area
  locating in an IMS dump DGR–360
Fast Path DEDB record DBRC–55
Fast Path Input Edit/Routing exit routine (DBFHAGU0)
  attributes CG–277
description CG–277
  example CG–277
  including CG–277
link editing CG–277
registers
  contents on entry CG–279
  contents on exit CG–280
using with shared EMH queues CG–278
Fast Path Input Edit/Routing Exit Routine (DBFHAGU0)
  IMS callable services CG–278
  IMS environments CG–277
  including the routine CG–277
link-editing CG–277
  naming convention CG–277
  sample routine location CG–278
Fast Path Log Analysis utility OG–51
Fast Path regions.
  See IFP (Fast Path regions)
Fast Path virtual storage option
  See virtual storage option
Fast Path, administering OTMA–42
Fast Path, sample application IIV–151
Fast Path, with MFS APTM–183
Fast Path.
  See also DEDB Randomizing routine
  See also DEDB Resource Name Hash routine
  See also DEDB Sequential Dependent Scan Utility
  exit routine
  See Fast Path Input Edit/Routing Sample (DBFHAGU0)
fbff (free block frequency factor) ADB–237
FCP (forward chain pointer) ADB–128
FDB definition/mapping macro DGR–57
FDBR
  FDR procedure ISDT–220
FDBR (fast database recovery)
  DB/DC environment, in a AS–11
  DBCTL environment, in a AS–15
definition AS–11
FDRMBR parameter AS–11
Fast Database Recovery
  after recovery OG–175
  commands OG–177
  DB/DC OG–177
  DBCTL OG–177
FDBR (Fast Database Recovery)  (continued)
  enabling OG–177
  overview OG–174
  proc OG–177
  process OG–175
  regions OG–266
  regions
    defining OG–176
    where OG–175
  status OG–177
  stopping OG–178
  surveillance OG–174
  tracking OG–177
  using OG–177
FDBR enhancement RPG–8
FDR keyword
  CHANGE command CR–126
  definition CR–53
  DISPLAY command CR–219
FDR procedure
  DD statements ISDT–224
  parameters ISDT–223
  parameters
    ARC= ISDT–251
    ARMSTR= ISDT–252
    BSI= ISDT–252
    CSAPSB= ISDT–256
    DBBF= ISDT–257
    DBWP= ISDT–258
    DESC= ISDT–260
    DFRRMBR= ISDT–265
    DLIPS= ISDT–261
    DMB= ISDT–262
    DPRST= ISDT–262
    FMTO= ISDT–265
    IMSID= ISDT–268
    IMSPLEX= ISDT–268
    IRLMN= ISDT–270
    LGNR= ISDT–271
    MCS= ISDT–274
    PSB= ISDT–280
    PSBW= ISDT–281
    RGN= ISDT–284
    RGTF= ISDT–284
    SOUT= ISDT–288
    SPM= ISDT–288
    SUF= ISDT–290
    SVC2= ISDT–290
    SYS1= ISDT–291
    SYS2= ISDT–291
    UHASH= ISDT–292
    VSP= ISDT–293
    WADS= ISDT–293
    WKP= ISDT–293
FDT definition/mapping macro DGR–57
FEAT= operand (DEV statement), specifying
  APTM–256, URDBTM–466
FEDB definition/mapping macro DGR–57
FEIB definition/mapping macro DGR–57
FES exit routine ISDT–71
fetch request elements
  See see FRE
  FH status code ADB–111, APCICS–7
  FID (fixed intersection data) ADB–163
  FID (format identifier) CG–451, CG–461
  field
    changing contents APDB–228
    checking contents: FLD/VERIFY APDB–226
  Field (FLD) call
    See FLD (Field) call
  field edit exit routine
    specifying URDBTM–452
    use APTM–191
  Field Edit exit routine ISDT–72
  field edit routine
    about APTM–190
    designing APTM–192
    DFSME000 APTM–191
    using APTM–192
    using edit routines, IMS-supplied
      segment edit routine APTM–190
  Field edit routine CG–316
  Field edit routine
    definition CG–313, CG–318
    interface CG–313
    use CG–313
  field format
    input message APTM–271
    output message APTM–275
  field level sensitivity
    as a security mechanism APDG–85
    defining APDG–5
    description APDG–75
    example APDG–75
    specifying APDG–76
    uses APDG–76
  field name
    FSA APDB–123, APDB–227
    SSA, qualification statement APDB–24
  field search argument
    description APDB–226
    reference APDB–123
  Field statement JGR–103, JGR–107
  Field statement
    DEDB database URS–77
    HDAM and PHDAM database URS–76
    HIDAM and PHIDAM database URS–76
    HISAM database URS–76
    HSAM database URS–76
    Index database URS–77
    MSDB database URS–77
  FIELD statement URS–75
  FIELD statement
    definition ADB–194
    description URS–75
    format URS–77
    in secondary indexing ADB–206
    in the DBD ADB–261
    keywords URS–77
    position in DBD ADB–289
  field tab URDBTM–462

Index  153
field tab
example APTM–193
forced FTABs, FORCE parameter (FTAB= operand)
URDBTM–463
mixed FTABs URDBTM–463
specifying URDBTM–462
field value
FSA APDB–227
SSA, qualification statement APDB–24, APDB–25
field-level sensitivity AS–148
field-level sensitivity
description of ADB–218
establishing security ADB–31
inserting segments ADB–221
introduction ADB–17
overlapping paths ADB–222
path calls ADB–222
replacing segments ADB–221
retrieving segments ADB–220
specifying in DBD and PSB ADB–219
use with variable-length segments ADB–223
uses ADB–218
using ADB–218
FIELD= keyword
MSDB Maintenance utility MSDBINIT statement
URDBTM–151
fields ADB–193
fields
AL ADB–92
changing the values of a segment’s APCICS–60
columns, compared to JGR–73
column ADB–192
CP ADB–92
default value JGR–80
definition ADB–6
duplicate data ADB–193
FSE ADB–92
FSEAP ADB–91
ID ADB–92
in DIB APCICS–6
in segment ADB–15
in SQL queries JGR–76
pointer ADB–192
search ADB–192
segment qualified JGR–79
subsequence ADB–192
system related ADB–194
fields in a DB PCB mask APDB–92, APDB–215
File Action bar ADB–481
file I/O
See EXECIO
File Select and Formatting Print program (DFSERA10)
OG–95
File Select and Formatting Print Program (DFSERA10)
APDG–42
File Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSERA10)
COND= keyword URS–267
control statements URS–281
control statements
COMMENTS URS–269
CONTROL URS–263
File Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSERA10)
(continued)
control statements (continued)
description URS–263
END URS–269
OPTION URS–264
COPY option URS–266
DDNAME= keyword URS–268
description URS–261
description DD statements URS–262
DL/I Call Trace Data exit module (DFSERA50)
URS–286
Enhanced Select Edit exit routine (DFSERA70)
URS–287
examples URS–269
FLDLEN= keyword URS–267
FLDTYPE= keyword URS–266
input URS–261
Intent Failure URS–358
JCL requirements URS–262
JCL requirements
description URS–262
examples URS–269, URS–273
NEGOF option URS–266
OFFSET= keyword URS–266
OPTION statement
PARM= parameter, subparameters of URS–287
optional keywords URS–266
output URS–261
overview URS–261
PARM= keyword URS–266
PRINT option URS–265
Program Isolation (PI) Trace Record Format and
Print Module (DFSERA40)
control statements URS–283
description URS–282
sample URS–283
PRTSYS= keyword URS–269
Record Format and Print Module (DFSERA30)
control statements URS–281
description URS–275
STARTAF= keyword URS–267
STOPAFT= keyword URS–267
SYM= keyword URS–266
Trace Table Record Format and Print Module
(DFSERA60) URS–287
VALUE= keyword URS–266
File Select and Formatting Print utility
(DFSERA10)EXITR= keyword URS–288
File Select and Formatting Print utility.
See DFSERA10 program
file-tailoring
action commands
All IIV–112
brM IIV–112
brS IIV–112
Doc IIV–112
Edm IIV–112
eNt IIV–112
Ftl IIV–112
Lst IIV–112
file-tailoring (continued)
action commands (continued)
  Nxt IIV–112
  Prv IIV–112
  using IIV–112
ALL request IIV–112
attention notice IIV–111, IIV–113
description of IIV–104
displaying INSTALIB members
  ENT IIV–112
  LST IIV–112
END IIV–117
ENT mode IIV–115
indicator symbols IIV–115
INSTALIB members IIV–111
list members IIV–115
LST mode IIV–114
return to phase selection IIV–118
file-tailoring panel
  ALL action complete panel IIV–114
  ALL action request panel IIV–112
  DOC Action panel IIV–116
  ENT mode IIV–115
  in progress IIV–113
  LST mode panel IIV–114
  phase complete verification IIV–117
  return to phase selection IIV–118
FILESEQ parameter commands
  CHANGE.CA DBRC–105
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–125
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–134
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–139
  CHANGE.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–153
  CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–157
  INIT.CA DBRC–225
  INIT.IC DBRC–237
  NOTIFY.CA DBRC–271
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–273
  NOTIFY.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–280
  NOTIFY.PRILOG (for SLDS and TSLDS) DBRC–285
  NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–291
  NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–297
  NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS or TSLDS) DBRC–301
FILESEQ2 parameter commands
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–125
  INIT.IC DBRC–238
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–273
  NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–291
fill characters
  input message fields
    MFS treatment APTM–192
    specifying URDBTM–452
  output device fields
    MFS treatment APTM–207
    specifying APTM–304, URDBTM–442,
    URDBTM–483
FILL= operand (continued)
  MSG statement, specifying URDBTM–442
FILL= NULL APTM–189
filtering log data CG–193
FIN (Finance Communication System)
  defining to operate with MFS APTM–177
  workstation
    entering and exiting formatted mode APTM–182
    FTABs APTM–193
    input modes APTM–192
    physical page positioning APTM–305,
    URDBTM–485
Finance Communication System
  See also FIN (Finance Communication System)
  application program
    converting Finance to SLU P ATM–436
    functions available ATM–435
    MFS considerations ATM–435
    TERMINAL macro ATM–435
  bracket and send/receive protocols ATM–441,
  ATM–471
  IMS facilities ATM–443
  major parts ATM–434
  sample configuration ATM–434
  session parameters ATM–501
  system takeover considerations ATM–440
  terminals supported ATM–434
  VTAM
    commands and indicators ATM–437
    facilities ATM–437
    workstations ATM–437
  Finance work station ISDT–142
  FIND control block function CG–19
  FINISH statement ADB–290, URS–85
  FIRST insert rule APCICS–57
  FIRST insert rule, L command code APDB–33
  first speaker
    ISC contention winner ATM–266
    secondary logical units ATM–266
  FIX, online execution parameter AS–99
  fixed intersection data (FID) ADB–163
  fixed pages, defining ISDT–338
  fixed-length character string APCICS–10
  fixed-length records APDB–217
  fixed-length segments
    specifying minimum size ADB–212
    fixed-length segments, definition ADB–14
  FIXED= keyword
    MSDB Maintenance utility action statement
    URDBTM–150
  FLD (Field) call ADB–131
  FLD (Field) call
    description APDB–122, APDB–225
    FLD/CHANGE APDB–228
    FLD/VERIFY APDB–226
    format APDB–122
    FSAs APDB–123
    parameters APDB–122
    summary APDB–291
    usage APDB–123

Index 155
FLD call function APDB–312, APTM–382
FLDLEN= keyword
  DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–267
FLDTYPE= keyword
  DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–266
float data type JGR–86
flow
  client-bid message OTMA–21
  commit-then-send OTMA–17, OTMA–24
  of resynchronization OTMA–32
  send-then-commit OTMA–18
  send-then-commit with Confirm OTMA–20
  Server-Available OTMA–22
flow diagrams, LU 6.2
  CPI-C driven commit scenario APDG–126
  DFSAPPC, synchronous SL=none APDG–120
  DL/I program backout scenario APDG–127, APDG–128
  DL/I program commit scenario APDG–125
  DL/I program ROLB scenario APDG–128
  local CPI communications driven program, SL=none APDG–120
  local IMS Command
    asynchronous SL=confirm APDG–120
    local IMS command, SL=none APDG–119
    local IMS conversational transaction, SL=none APDG–118
  local IMS Transaction
    asynchronous SL=confirm APDG–117
    asynchronous SL=none APDG–116
    synchronous SL=confirm APDG–115
    synchronous SL=none APDG–114
    multiple transactions in same commit APDG–130
  remote MSC conversation
    asynchronous SL=confirm APDG–123
    asynchronous SL=none APDG–122
    synchronous SL=confirm APDG–124
    synchronous SL=none APDG–121
FM (function management) headers ATM–85
FM (function management) headers
  coding for use with CICS ATM–562
  Finance Communication System ATM–473, ATM–480
  IMS, data descriptor ATM–567
  input FM header length ATM–357
  input FM header length
    ATTACH FM header ATM–357
    output FM header ATM–479
  input message ATM–267
  input process names ATM–380
  inserted by IMS ATM–85
  ISC ATM–355
ISC
  ATTACH, MFS ATM–367
  data descriptor ATM–368, ATM–381
  DPM messages, MFS ATM–364
  error recovery procedure ATM–357, ATM–568
  header format ATM–393
  initiating a process ATM–357
  introduction ATM–355
  invoking ISC edit ATM–356
  MFS ATM–363, ATM–372
FM (function management) headers (continued)
ISC (continued)
  QMODEL, CICS ATM–567
  RAP ATM–358
  RAP, MFS ATM–372
  SCHEDULER ATM–358, ATM–565
  SCHEDULER, MFS ATM–367
  synchronous processing ATM–357
  SYSMSG ATM–360
  system message ATM–360, ATM–568
  message descriptor byte format ATM–474
  message descriptor byte format
    input ATM–474, ATM–475
    output ATM–480, ATM–481
  MFS ATM–567
  output message ATM–270
  output process names ATM–380
  processing mode requested ATM–270
  security ATM–257
  SLU P ATM–474, ATM–481, ATM–482
  type X’42’ (SLU P) ATM–476
FM header
  See FM (function management) headers
FMID (function modification identifier)
  discussion of IIV–7
  installation requirements of IIV–7
FMS keyword
  /DISPLAY MODIFY command CR–229
FMT statement, specifying URDBTM–453
FMTCPY control statement
  MFSBTCH2 procedure URDBTM–392
  MFSU TL procedure URDBTM–389
FMTEND statement, specifying URDBTM–505
FMTIMS statement
  choosing parameters for ODF DGR–133, DGR–134
  control region example DGR–135
  DBRC example DGR–135
  DC example DGR–136
  DL/I example DGR–136
  DP example DGR–136
  Fast Path example DGR–136
  formatted areas DGR–138
  LOG example DGR–136
  options DGR–137
  sample statements DGR–134
  table DGR–134
  VSAM example DGR–136
FMTO parameter AS–100, AS–106
FMTO=D parameter value DGR–3
force format write option (SCA/DSCA) APTM–261
FORCE keyword
  CLSDST command CR–144
  definition CR–54
  PSTOP command CR–444
  SWITCH command CR–630
forced EOV
  Log Archive utility URS–217
FORCER parameter commands
  CHANGE.RECON DBRC–144
  INIT.RECON DBRC–245
FORCSESS keyword
  definition CR–54
format
  AO commands CG–449, CG–459
  Cl in DEDB ADB–116
  DEDB segments ADB–116
  fixed-length segments ADB–14
  HD databases ADB–90
  HDAM segments ADB–96
  HIDAM index segment ADB–98
  HIDAM segments ADB–97
  HISAM segments ADB–66
  HSAM segments ADB–62
  lost during conversation
    restoring CR–363
  PHDAM segments ADB–96
  PHIDAM index segment ADB–98
  PHIDAM segments ADB–97
  pointer segment ADB–191
  variable-length segments ADB–14
FORMAT IV–62
FORMAT command
  data parameter CR–364
  description CR–363
  environments CR–363
  example CR–364
  LTERM keyword CR–363
  modname parameter CR–363
  syntax diagram CR–363
format identifier (FID) CG–451, CG–461
FORMAT keyword
  definition CR–54
  ERESTART command CR–350
  NRESTART command CR–429
FORMAT library URS–197
FORMAT library
  switching to inactive libraries
    MODIFY command CR–407
format library member selection APTM–256
format of
  commands OG–342
  transaction code OG–339
format of standard BPE user exit parameter list BPE–58
format set URDBTM–383
format set
  IMS-provided format sets APTM–243
  testing
    /FORMAT command APTM–176
    /TEST MFS command APTM–176
format, message APTM–181
format, message
  control characters in message prefix ATM–86
  creating with SDF II ATM–79
  input APTM–181
    input
      device-dependent considerations APTM–271,
      APTM–277
    output APTM–263
format, message (continued)
  output device-dependent considerations APTM–273,
  APTM–277
  transparency option ATM–83
FORMATA, INITMOD procedure URS–203
formats
  ACCEPT command APCICS–69
  CHKPK (Checkpoint) command APCICS–69
  DEQ (Dequeue) command APCICS–71
  DLET (Delete) command APCICS–35
  GN (Get Next) command APCICS–36
  GNP (Get Next in Parent) command APCICS–42
  GU (Get Unique) command APCICS–47
  ISRT (Insert) command APCICS–54
  LOAD command APCICS–72
  LOG command APCICS–73
  POS command APCICS–59
  PSB APCICS–32
  QUERY command APCICS–73
  REFRESH command APCICS–74
  REPL (Replace) command APCICS–61
  RETRIEVE command APCICS–65
  ROLB command APCICS–75
  ROLL command APCICS–76
  ROLS command APCICS–77
  SCHD (Schedule) command APCICS–66
  SETS command APCICS–78
  SETU command APCICS–79
  STAT command APCICS–81
  SYMCHKP (Symbolic Checkpoint) command
    APCICS–81
  TERM (Terminate) command APCICS–67
  XRST (Extended Restart) command APCICS–83
formatted dump, offline.
  See ODF (offline dump formatter)
formatting
  MODIFY command OG–145
  offline OG–145
  offline dumps OG–321
  OLDS OG–117
  screen OG–352
forms ATM–87
forms control
  vertical ISDT–154
forms control (FIJP, FIPB, FIFP, SCS1) URDBTM–464
FORMS= operand (DEV statement), specifying
  URDBTM–469
formula
  estimating CFRM list structure size ADB–146
formulas for
  calculating buffers for Fast Path ADB–280, ADB–284
  calculating space for MSDBs ADB–275
  calculating storage for MSDB ADB–270
  size of root addressable area ADB–238
FORS= operand (DEV statement), use for DPM
  APTM–225
forward chain pointer ADB–128
forward recovery
  data sharing OG–222
  description OG–6
forward recovery with data sharing DBRC–38
FPACK/NFPACK option, Fast Path ATM–457
FPAREA parameter, GENJCL.RECOV command
DBRC–212
FPATH keyword on APPLCTN macro AS–56
FPCTRL description ISDT–2, ISDT–80
parameters ISDT–80, ISDT–81
parameters BFALLOC= ISDT–80
INREXIT= ISDT–81
OThread= ISDT–81
syntax diagram ISDT–80
FPCTRL macro AS–50, AS–52
FPPROG keyword
definition CR–54
PURGE command CR–452
FPREGION keyword
definition CR–54
PURGE command CR–452
FPUTIL procedure AS–92, AS–93
FPUTIL procedure description ISDT–224
example ISDT–224
parameters ISDT–225
parameters AGN= ISDT–248
ALTI= ISDT–249
DBD= ISDT–257
DIRC= ISDT–260
IMSID= ISDT–268
PRLD= ISDT–280
REST= ISDT–284
RGN= ISDT–284
SOUT= ISDT–288
SSM= ISDT–288
SYS2 ISDT–291
FPVIRTUAL keyword
definition CR–54
DISPLAY command CR–219
FR status code
for BMP regions ADB–281
for CCTL threads ADB–285
in fast path buffer allocation ADB–280
in fast path buffer allocation for BMPs ADB–283
framing characters (SO/SI) APTM–211
FRB definition/mapping macro DGR–57
FRE controlling ISDT–7
estimating ISDT–7
MFS, and ISDT–507
parameter, BUFPOOLS macro ISDT–67
free block frequency factor (fbff) ADB–237
free logical record ADB–68
free space
chain pointer (CP) field ADB–92
element (FSE) ADB–92
element anchor point (FSEAP) ADB–91
HD (Hierarchical Direct) ADB–91
HDAM (Hierarchical Direct Access Method) ADB–237
HIDAM ADB–237
free space (continued)
HIDAM (Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method)
ADB–96
KSDS ADB–259
percentage factor ADB–238
PHDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access
Method) ADB–237
PHIDAM ADB–237
PHIDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Direct
Access Method) ADB–96
space calculations ADB–311
free space, identifying APCICS–103, APDB–238
FREE storage function CG–17
free storage service
example BPE–70
output BPE–70
parameters BPE–69
freeing virtual storage BPE–69
FREESPACE keyword DBRC–47
FREESPACE parameter ADB–259
FREEZE keyword OG–140
FREEZE keyword
CHECKPOINT command CR–138
definition CR–54
FREQ= operand
SEGMENT statement URS–58
frequency, checkpoint APDG–44
frequently asked questions OTMA–147
FROM keyword JGR–81
FROM key
joins JGR–81
FROMAREA= operand
DB Database Surveyor utility URDBTM–77
Partial DB Reorganization Step 1 (DFSPRCT1)
URDBTM–94
FROMTIME parameter commands
LIST.HISTORY DBRC–257
LIST.LOG DBRC–261
front-end subsystem
CICS
SEND LAST command ATM–539
SEND/RECEIVE command ATM–537
START/RETRIEVE command ATM–542
function of ATM–255
IMS ATM–540, ATM–543
front-end switch OTMA–45
Front-End Switch Exit Routine (DFSFEBJ0) CG–283
Front-End Switch Exit Routine (DFSFEBJ0)
Basic Edit CG–291
description CG–283
example CG–294
FEIB
description CG–286
fields CG–287
FEIB DSECT CG–286
IMS callable services CG–284
IMS environments CG–283
including the routine CG–283
link-editing CG–283
message expansion CG–292
message flow CG–284
master Index and Glossary
Front-End Switch Exit Routine (DFSFEBJ0) (continued)
MFS edit CG–291
naming convention CG–283
registers
  contents on entry CG–284
  contents on exit CG–293
restrictions CG–285
routing CG–291, CG–294
sample routine location CG–284
timer facility CG–292, CG–293
Timer Facility CG–292
Front-End Switch exit routine (DFSFEBJ0), special support ATM–255
FRSPC parameter ADB–237
FRSPC= keyword
  DATASET statement URS–41
FS status code ADB–266
FSA (field search argument)
  connector APDB–124
  description APDB–226
  Field name APDB–123
  FSA status code APDB–123
  Op code APDB–124
  operand APDB–124
  reference APDB–123
  with DL/I calls APDB–226
FSA status code APDB–123
FSDB2AF DD statement JGR–16
FSE (free space element) ADB–92
FSEAP (free space element anchor point) ADB–91
fspf (free space percentage factor) ADB–238
FTAB= operand (DEV statement)
  ALL APTM–194
  ALL parameter APTM–194
  defining APTM–193
  description APTM–193
  FORCE APTM–193
  forced FTABs, FORCE parameter APTM–193
  MIX APTM–194
  mixed FTABs, MIX parameter APTM–194
  specifying URDBTM–462
  with NULL=DELETE specified APTM–196
ftl, file-tailoring action command IIV–112
full format write APTM–259
FULL parameter
  SECURE command CR–555, CR–556
FULL security level OTMA–49
full-duplex message flow OTMA–7
full-duplex paths ADB–440
full-function database
  PCBs and DL/I calls APDB–87
  segment release APDB–36
full-function database segment edit/compression
  See Segment Edit/Compression exit routine
full-function databases
  and the PROCOPT operand APDG–87
  how accessed, CICS APDG–51
  how accessed, IMS APDG–29
full-function segments
  specifying minimum size ADB–212
function abort
  detecting loop, ISC ATM–346, ATM–351
  indicated on LUSTATUS command ATM–342
function management (FM) headers
  ISC
    ATTACH ATM–357
    header format ATM–373
    supported by IMS, summary ATM–355
function-specific parameter list
  AO exit routine (DFSAE00) CG–141
  described CG–15
function/subfunction list DGR–527
FUNCTION= keyword
  Utility Control Facility (UCF) URDBTM–347
Utility Control Facility (UCF)
  DR for HD RR Reload utility URDBTM–349
  DU for HD Reorganization Unload utility URDBTM–350
  DX for HD RR Unload and Reload utilities (combined) URDBTM–352
  IL for initial load program URDBTM–354
  IM for Image Copy utility URDBTM–355
  PR for Prefix Resolution utility URDBTM–357
  PU for Prefix Update utility URDBTM–358
  RR for Secondary Index Reload URDBTM–360
  RU for Secondary Index Unload URDBTM–361
  SN for Database Scan utility URDBTM–364
  SR for HISAM Reorganization Reload utility URDBTM–366
  SU for HISAM Reorganization Unload utility URDBTM–368
  SX for HISAM Reorganization Unload and Reload utilities (combined) URDBTM–370
  ZB for database zaps URDBTM–372
  ZM for module zaps URDBTM–374
FUNCTION=OP statement
  Utility Control Facility (DFSUCF00) URDBTM–348
functions
  ISC and CICS ATM–259, ATM–533
  ISC versus MSC ATM–254
functions of CQS CQS–6
functions of DBRC
  data sharing DBRC–10
database recovery DBRC–10
  logs DBRC–10
FW status code APCICS–7
FW status code
  for CCTL threads ADB–285
in BMP regions ADB–281
in fast path buffer allocation ADB–280
in fast path buffer allocation for BMPs ADB–283

G
GA status code APCICS–7
GAP parameter, CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS)
DBRC–134, DBRC–135
gap, definition AS–321
gather requirements
  for conversational processing APDG–95
gathering requirements
  for database options APDG–67
  for message processing options APDG–91
GB (end of database)
  return status code APDB–30
GB definition/mapping macro DGR–57
GB status code APCICS–7
GBCB definition/mapping macro DGR–57
GC status code ADB–266, ADB–277, APCICS–103
GCMD call APTM–75
GCMD call
  description APTM–75
  format APTM–75, CG–450
  parameters APTM–75
  restrictions APTM–76
  status codes APTM–76
  summary APTM–347
  usage APTM–76
GCMD call function APDB–312, APTM–382
GCMD calls OG–195
GD status code APCICS–7
GE (segment not found)
  return status code APDB–30
general format of HD databases and use of special fields ADB–311
general guidelines for writing requests CSL–16
General Iwait Time Events report
  IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–368
General IWAIT Time Events report
  IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–425
general programming guidelines APCICS–11
general user data area CG–309
Generalized Performance Analysis Reporting (GPAR) AS–180
Generalized Sequential Access Method
  See GSAM (Generalized Sequential Access Method)
Generalized Sequential Access Method (GSAM) APDG–74
Generalized Sequential Access Method (GSAM)
  See GSAM (Generalized Sequential Access Method) ADB–74
Generalized Sequential Access Method.
  See GSAM (Generalized Sequential Access Method)
Generalized Trace Facility (GTF)
  See GTF (Generalized Trace Facility)
Generalized Trace Facility (GTF) USR records DBRC–147
generating a job
  Change Accumulation utility DBRC–185
  Database Image Copy utility DBRC–193
  Database Recovery utility DBRC–211, DBRC–217
  Log Archive utility DBRC–181
  Log Recovery utility DBRC–189
  Online Database Image Copy utility DBRC–202
  generating JCL DBRC–311
  generating user output DBRC–311
generic resource affinities ATM–120
generic resource affinities
  IMS managed ATM–121
generic resource affinities (continued)
  managing with IMS ATM–120
  managing with VTAM ATM–120
  OS/390 ATM–120
  OS/390
    GLOBAL status recovery mode ATM–120
    LOCAL status recovery mode ATM–120
  VTAM managed ATM–121
generic resource groups ATM–17
generic resource groups
  benefits ATM–17
  definition ATM–18
  overview ATM–17
generic resource member, definition ATM–18
generic resource name
  definition ATM–18
  planning for ATM–122
generic resources
  GRSNAME keyword CR–54
  planning for ATM–119
  requirements for using ATM–119
  restrictions on using ATM–120
GENJCL commands, description DBRC–311
GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–11
GENJCL.ARCHIVE command
  log control requirements in RECON DBRC–11
  syntax DBRC–181
GENJCL.CA command DBRC–185
GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–11
GENJCL.CLOSE command DBRC–189
GENJCL.CLOSE command DBRC–16, DBRC–24
GENJCL.CLOSE command DBRC–193
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–16, DBRC–24
GENJCL.OIC command DBRC–202
GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–16
GENJCL.RECEIVE command DBRC–207
GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–16
GENJCL.RECOV command DBRC–211
GENJCL.USER DBRC–16
GENJCL.USER command DBRC–217
GENMAX keyword OG–64
GENMAX parameter
  image copy data sets for future use DBRC–27
  of the INIT.DBDS command DBRC–231
  resetting DBRC–73
  specifying image copy requirements DBRC–15
genXMI parameter JGR–101
Get calls
  D command code APDB–30
  F command code APDB–31
  function APDB–312, APTM–382
  L command code APDB–33
  Null command code APDB–39
  P command code APDB–34
  Q command code APDB–34
  U Command Code APDB–37
  V command code APDB–38
Get Command (GCMD) call
  See GCMD call APTM–75
get hold next (GHN)
  usage APDB–128
Get Message (GMSG) call
   See GMSG call APDB–148, APTM–96
get next call
   See GN call
GET storage function CG–16
get storage service
   examples BPE–69
   output BPE–68
   parameters BPE–67
get system contents directory call
   See GSCD call
get unique call
   See GU call
getAIB method JGR–123
GETFEED trace entry DGR–389
GETFIRST option
   examples APCICS–96
   retrieving first segment in subset APCICS–96
getFunction method JGR–123
getNextException JGR–124
getStatusCode method JGR–123
getting IMS database statistics APCICS–80
getting virtual storage BPE–67
GG status code APCICS–7
GHN (get hold next)
   usage APDB–128
   hold form APDB–131
GHU (Get Hold Unique)
   description APDB–133
GK status code APCICS–7
GLBLZONE (Global Zone)
   attributes for IIV–14
   description of IIV–14
global callable services ATM–128
GLOBAL keyword
   DBDUMP command CR–158
   DBRECOVERY command CR–163
   definition CR–54
   START command CR–578, CR–582
   STOP command CR–606
global online change
   cold start OG–125
   command sequence OG–120
   commands OG–128
   commands
      INITIATE OLC OG–128
      QUERY MEMBER OG–130
      TERMINATE OLC OG–120
functions of AS–402
IMSpelix OG–127
initialization AS–402
initializing AS–406
maintaining AS–412
mixed scope AS–413
overview AS–402
requirements AS–402
restrictions AS–412
RSR, and AS–412
scenarios OG–132
global online change (continued)
   shutting down AS–412
   starting AS–412
   supported environments OG–119
   utility AS–402
Global Online Change utility AS–407, OG–125
Global Online Change Utility (DFSUOLC0)
   description URS–204
   examples URS–207
   JCL URS–205
   OLCSTAT data set URS–204
   parameters URS–205
Global Physical Terminal (Input) Edit Routine
   (DFSGPIX0)
      IMS callable services CG–306
      IMS environments CG–305
      including the routine CG–305
      link-editing CG–305
      naming convention CG–305
      sample routine location CG–306
Global Physical Terminal Input edit routine (DFSGPIX0)
   attributes CG–305
   description CG–305
   IMS environments CG–305
   including the routine CG–305
   link editing CG–305
   naming convention CG–305
   operation CG–305
   registers
      contents on entry CG–307
      contents on exit CG–308
      sample routine location CG–305
      using callable services CG–305
global resource information CSL–96
   global resource information
      macros CSL–110
      maintaining CSL–110
   global resource serialization and XRF AS–298
global service group
   deleting information DBRC–170
   listing DBRC–255
   record DBRC–56
   resetting DBRC–307
global service group (GSG) AS–323
GLT definition/mapping macro DGR–57
GMSG call APTM–98, CG–457, OG–197
GMSG call
   description APDB–148, APDB–150, APTM–96
   format APDB–148, APTM–96
   parameters APDB–148, APTM–96
   restrictions APDB–150, APTM–98
   use APDB–149, APTM–97
GN (Get Next) call
   description APDB–124
   format APDB–125
   hold form (GHN) APDB–128
   parameters APDB–125
   SSAs APDB–127
   usages APDB–126
GN (Get Next) command
   description APCICS–36
GN (Get Next) command (continued)
examples APCICS–41
format APCICS–36
options APCICS–38
restrictions APCICS–41
usage APCICS–40
GN call APTM–76
GN call
description APTM–76
format APTM–77
parameters APTM–77
restrictions APTM–77
summary APTM–347
usage APTM–77
GNP (Get Next in Parent) call
description APDB–129
effect in parentage APDB–130
format APDB–129
hold form (GHNP) APDB–131
parameters APDB–129
SSAs APDB–131
usages APDB–130

GNP (Get Next in Parent) command
description APCICS–41
examples APCICS–46
format APCICS–42
options APCICS–43
restrictions APCICS–47
usage APCICS–46
GO command
DEDDB online utilities URDBTM–532
GO processing option APDG–43
GPAR (Generalized Performance Analysis Reporting) AS–180
GPSB (generated program specification block) AS–20
GPSB (generated program specification block), format APDB–111, APTM–56
GPSB (generated PSB) URS–111
GPSB (Generated PSB)
I/O PCB ADB–300
modifiable alternate response PCB ADB–300
GPT definition/mapping macro DGR–57
GQCB definition/mapping macro DGR–57
GRAFFIN command ATM–120
GRAPHIC= operand (SEG statement)
specifying URDBTM–446
use APTM–203, APTM–276
GRAPHIC= parameter
NO option ATM–84
SEG statement ATM–84
greater-than relational operator APDB–25
greater-than-or-equal-to relational operator APDB–25
Greeting Messages exit routine (DFSGMSG0) CG–303
Greeting Messages exit routine (DFSGMSG0) (continued)
naming convention CG–303
registers CG–304
registers
contents on entry CG–304
contents on exit CG–304
using callable services CG–303
Greeting Messages Exit Routine (DFSGMSG0)
IMS callable services CG–303
IMS environments CG–303
including the routine CG–303
link-editing CG–303
naming convention CG–303
sample routine location CG–303
GRESTATAE command ATM–126
GRNAME parameter OTMA–37
GROUP BY keyword JGR–83
group data elements into hierarchies APDG–16
with their keys APDG–20
GROUP keyword
NEWPW command CR–564
SIGN command CR–564
group name, field in I/O PCB APDB–90, APTM–49
GROUP parameter commands DBRC–194
GROUP parameter commands
GENJCL.IC DBRC–194
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–202
GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–207
GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–212
GENJCL.USER DBRC–217
LIST.DBDS DBRC–253
LIST.HISTORY DBRC–256
GRPMAX parameter commands
CHANGE.CAGRP DBRC–108
INIT.CAGRP DBRC–225
GRPNAME parameter commands
CHANGE.CA DBRC–105
CHANGE.CAGRP DBRC–107
CHANGE.DBDSGRP DBRC–123
DELETE.CA DBRC–168
DELETE.CAGRP DBRC–168
DELETE.DBDSGRP DBRC–170
GENJCL.CA DBRC–186
INIT.CA DBRC–225
INIT.CAGRP DBRC–226
INIT.DBDSGRP DBRC–235
LIST.CAGRP DBRC–250
LIST.DBDSGRP DBRC–254
NOTIFY.CA DBRC–270
GRSNAME keyword
definition CR–54
GSAM (generalized sequential access method)
accessing databases APDB–213
BMP region type APDB–221
call summary APDB–218
CHKP APDB–218
coding considerations APDB–218
GSAM (generalized sequential access method)
(continued)
data areas APDB–106
data set
  attributes, specifying APDB–221
  characteristics, origin APDB–219
  concatenated APDB–221
  DD statement DISP parameter APDB–220
  extended checkpoint restart APDB–220
database, explicitly opening and closing APDB–216
DB PCB mask, fields APDB–214
DB PCB masks APDB–107
DBB region type APDB–221
description APDB–213
designing a program APDB–213
DLI region types APDB–221
fixed-length records APDB–216
I/O areas APDB–217
PCBs and DLI calls APDB–87
record formats APDB–216
records, retrieving and inserting APDB–215
restrictions on CHKP and XRST APDB–218
RSA APDB–107, APDB–215
status codes APDB–217
undefined-length records APDB–216
variable-length records APDB–216
XRST APDB–218
GSAM (Generalized Sequential Access Method)
ADB–74, ADB–76, ADB–326, AS–358
GSAM (Generalized Sequential Access Method)
See also DBD (Database Description) generation
accessing GSAM databases APDG–51
control block dump DGR–261
database type APDG–30
DBD generation
  example URS–96
  specification URS–5, URS–23
description APDG–74
detailed control block diagram DGR–87
formatted dump (DFSZD510)
  description DGR–261
element DGR–263
general control block diagram DGR–86
out-of-space abend DGR–264
PCB generation
  example URS–138
unformatted dump (DFSZD510), example DGR–264
GSAM database APCICS–9
GSAM database
  START PROGRAM command
    integrity can be affected CR–588
GSAM PCB APCICS–31
GSCD (Get System Contents Directory) call
description APDB–150
format APDB–150
parameters APDB–150
usage APDB–151
GSCD call
description APTM–98
format APTM–98
parameters APTM–98
GSCD call (continued)
restrictions APTM–99
summary APTM–347
usage APTM–99
GSG (global service group) AS–323
GSG parameter commands
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–135
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–139
  CHANGE.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–153
  CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–157
GSGNAME parameter commands
  CHANGE.DD DBRC–111
  CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–119
GTF (Generalized Trace Facility)
  use in detailed monitoring AS–180, AS–189
  GTF (Generalized Trace Facility) trace OG–99
  GTF (Generalized Trace Facility) trace
  DBRC-related
    example DGR–405
    formatting and printing DGR–405
    record format DGR–404
    using DGR–404, DGR–405
GTF (Generalized Trace Facility) USR records
  DBRC–147
GU (Get Unique) call APDB–131
GU (Get Unique) call
description APDB–131
  format APDB–132
  hold form (GHU) APDB–133
  parameters APDB–132
  restrictions APDB–134
  SSAs APDB–133
usage APDB–133
GU (Get Unique) command
description APCICS–47
examples APCICS–52
format APCICS–47
options APCICS–48
restrictions APCICS–53
usage APCICS–51
GU call APTM–77
GU call
description APTM–77
  format APTM–78
  parameters APTM–78
  restrictions APTM–79
  summary APTM–347
  usage APTM–78
GU call status codes CG–451
guidelines
  for application program preload AS–207
  for placement of IMS system data sets AS–209
  for specifying passwords AS–121
guidelines, general programming APCICS–11
H
H processing option APDB–239
H= statement
  DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–267
HALDB ADB–78
HALDB
  adding partitions ADB–294
HALDB (continued)
  automatic HALDB partition definition ADB–293
  automatic partition definition ADB–486
  batch import ADB–294
  Change Partition screen ADB–489
  Change Partition screen
    F11 ADB–491
    F5 ADB–491
    F6 ADB–491
    Partition high key ADB–490
    Partition ID ADB–490
    Partition Selection String ADB–490
  changing DL/I access methods
    changing from HDAM and PHDAM to HIDAM and PHIDAM ADB–360
  configuration
    list ADB–505
  copying partitions ADB–294
  creating ADB–291
  data set statement ADB–288
  Database Partition list
    act ADB–496
    anchor ADB–496
    bytes ADB–496
    FBFF ADB–496
    File action bar choice ADB–494
    FSFF ADB–497
    high block ADB–496
    module ADB–496
    name ADB–496
  Database Partitions list ADB–493
  Database Partitions list
    displaying ADB–493
  DBDGEN process ADB–291, ADB–481
  DBDLIB ADB–295, ADB–504
  DBRC commands for RPG–7
  DEFINE CLUSTER command ADB–312
  defining ADB–291
  defining data set groups ADB–294, ADB–492
  Delete a Database panel ADB–502
  deleting a database ADB–295
  deleting partitions ADB–294
  DSPXPDA ADB–502
  DSPXPEA
    See DSPXPEA ADB–502
  DSPXPGA ADB–492
  DSPXPGB ADB–493
  DSPXPGC ADB–493
  DSPXPGL
    See DSPXPGL ADB–493
  DSPXPIE
    See DSPXPIE ADB–493
  DSPXPK RGE ADB–491
  DSPXPLA
    See DSPXPLA ADB–493
  DSPXPLB ADB–495
  DSPXPOA ADB–501
  DSPXRUN command ADB–506
  Example
    /DISPLAY DB Command CR–290
  exporting database definitions ADB–294
  File Action bar ADB–481

HALDB (continued)
  File Action bar
    actions ADB–481
    finding partitions ADB–294
  HALDB Partition Definition utility ADB–291
  help information ADB–479
  importing ADB–503
  importing database definitions ADB–294
  IMS concatenation ADB–503
  IMS configuration ADB–504
  information
    changing ADB–481
    deleting ADB–481, ADB–502
    exporting ADB–481, ADB–502
    importing ADB–481, ADB–503
    opening ADB–501
    viewing ADB–481
  interfaces ADB–477
  ISRDDNP ADB–503
  LCHILD statement ADB–290
  line commands ADB–497
  manual HALDB partition definition ADB–293
  manual partition definition ADB–487
  master ADB–477
  master
    values ADB–481
  master (DSPDBHRC)
    DB header record DBRC–54
    maximum size ADB–79
    migrating to RPG–34
    modifying data set groups ADB–294
    modifying partitions ADB–294
    number of HALDB partitions ADB–291
  overview ADB–78
  partition DBRC–54
  partition DB record (DSPDBHRC) DBRC–54
  partition DBDS records (DSPDBHRC) DBRC–55
  Partition Definition utility ADB–477, ADB–488
  Partition Definition utility
    access ADB–477
    exiting ADB–480
    high key value ADB–488
    modifying fields ADB–488
    panels ADB–477
    RECON ADB–477
    REUSE parameter ADB–312
  partitions
    changing ADB–481
    copying ADB–497
    creating ADB–481
    defining ADB–481
    deleting ADB–497
    manual definition ADB–487
    maximum number ADB–481
    opening ADB–481, ADB–497
    printing information ADB–497
    printing partitions ADB–294
    RECON ADB–295
    RECON data set ADB–504

164 Master Index and Glossary
HALDB (continued)
single partition enhancement RPG–9
single partition processing ISDT–444
sorting partitions ADB–294
types of DBDs DBRC–55
viewing DDNAME ADB–295
viewing partitions ADB–294
HALDB (High Availability Large Database) APDG–77, AS–35, OG–274, URDBTM–7
HALDB (High Availability Large Database) changing ADB–364
changing
HALDB Partition Selection exit routine ADB–364
overview ADB–363
partition boundaries ADB–366
partition key ranges ADB–366
partition structure modification ADB–365
single partitions ADB–364
commands CR–805
HALDB application programs, scheduling against APDB–114
HALDB Partition Selection exit routine (DFSPSE00) changing ADB–364
modifying ADB–364
replacing ADB–364
HALDB partitions
data availability APDB–18
error settings APDB–18
handling APDB–18
initial load of APDB–115
modifying ADB–364
modifying
HALDB Partition Selection exit routine ADB–364
overview ADB–363
partition boundaries ADB–366
partition key ranges ADB–366
partition structure modification ADB–365
single partitions ADB–364
partition structures, updating ADB–365
partitions
changing ADB–364
changing boundaries ADB–366
changing key ranges ADB–366
changing, overview ADB–363
modifying ADB–364
modifying key ranges ADB–366
modifying, overview ADB–363
restrictions for loading logical child segments APDB–18
scheduling APDB–18
status codes APDB–18
HALDB Change Partition panel ADB–292
HALDB Index/ILDS Rebuild utility (DFSPREC0) URDBTM–231
HALDB Index/ILDS Rebuild utility (DFSPREC0) examples URDBTM–234
input and output URDBTM–231
JCL requirements URDBTM–232
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–232
HALDB Index/ILDS Rebuild utility (DFSPREC0) (continued)
JCL requirements (continued)
EXEC statement URDBTM–232
output messages and statistics URDBTM–233
return codes URDBTM–233
utility control statement URDBTM–233
HALDB Migration Aid utility (DFSMIAID0) URDBTM–7
HALDB Migration Aid utility (DFSMIAID0) input ant output URDBTM–7
JCL requirements URDBTM–7
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–8
EXEC statement URDBTM–8
output messages and statistics URDBTM–9
return codes URDBTM–10
utility control statement URDBTM–8
HALDB partition ADB–292
HALDB partition
registering DBRC–239
HALDB Partition Data Set Initialization Utility (DFSUPNT0) URDBTM–69
HALDB Partition Data Set Initialization Utility (DFSUPNT0) examples URDBTM–71
JCL requirements URDBTM–69
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–70
EXEC statement URDBTM–69
restrictions URDBTM–69
return codes URDBTM–71
utility control statement URDBTM–71
HALDB Partition Definition utility (%DFSHALDB) URDBTM–13
HALDB Partition Definition utility (%DFSHALDB) batch JCL requirements URDBTM–16
batch JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–16
examples URDBTM–18
foreground JCL requirements URDBTM–14
foreground JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–15
input and output URDBTM–13
output messages URDBTM–18
restrictions URDBTM–13
return codes URDBTM–18
starting the HALDB Partition Definition utility URDBTM–15
utility control statement URDBTM–17
HALDB partition high key ADB–292
HALDB Partition Selection exit routine (DFSPSE00) changing ADB–364
modifying ADB–364
replacing ADB–364
HALDB Partition Selection Exit Routine (DFSPSE00) CG–89
HALDB Partition Selection Exit Routine (DFSPSE00) description CG–89
IMS callable services CG–90
IMS environments CG–89
including the routine CG–89

Index 165
HALDB Partition Selection Exit Routine (DFSPSE00)
(continued)
- link-editing CG–89
- naming convention CG–89
- sample routine location CG–90
-half session
- definition ATM–298, ATM–301
- pairs ATM–294, ATM–301
- synchronization, ISC ATM–319
-half-duplex message flow OTMA–7
-half-duplex paths ADB–440
-half-duplex protocol, IMS use ATM–328
HALT NET command OG–137
HANDLE ABEND command, CICS APCICS–8
HANDLE CONDITION, CICS ATM–553
hang, diagnosing a control region DGR–10
hardware
- configuration changes AS–277
- performing maintenance AS–277
- XRF requirements AS–255, AS–256
hardware and software requirements
Remote Site Recovery RPG–24
Hardware Data Compression (HDC) Support
building HDC dictionary CG–121
DD name descriptions CG–124
HDCD utility
- building HDC dictionary CG–121
- compression statistics program CG–121
- data integrity validation option CG–121
- object file, HDC dictionary CG–121
- return codes CG–125
how HDC works CG–120
how HDC works Segment length CG–120
how to implement CG–120
introduction CG–120
sample JCL procedure CG–122
using HDCD utility CG–121
Hardware Data Compression Dictionary (HDCD) utility
(DFSZLDU0)
- building HDC dictionary CG–121
- compression statistics program CG–121
- data integrity validation option CG–121
- object file, HDC dictionary CG–121
- return codes CG–125
hardware I/O category, 3270 error recovery analysis DGR–305
hardware requirements CQS–9
HASH (hash trace table) BPE–7
hash routine.
See DEDB Resource Name Hash routine
hash table slots, specifying ISDT–444
HASH=nnn parameter
F irmproc,SET command CR–713
HB (hierarchic backward) pointers ADB–83
HD Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURGL0)
ADB–344
HD Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURGL0)
(description URDBTM–57
examples URDBTM–65
HD Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURGL0)
(continued)
JCL requirements
- DD statements URDBTM–60
- EXEC statement URDBTM–59
- output messages and statistics URDBTM–63
- restrictions URDBTM–58
- return codes URDBTM–65
HD Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURGU0)
ADB–343
HD Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURGU0)
description URDBTM–43
examples URDBTM–52
JCL requirements
- DD statements URDBTM–47
- EXEC statement URDBTM–47
- output messages and statistics URDBTM–50
- restrictions URDBTM–45
- return codes URDBTM–52
HD space search algorithm ADB–103
HD Tuning Aid ADB–239
HDAM
- multiple qualification statements APDB–195
HDAM (Hierarchical Direct Access Method) APDG–69
HDAM (Hierarchical Direct Access Method)
accessing segments ADB–99
calls against ADB–80
changing DL/I access methods changing from HDAM and PHDAM to HIDAM and PHIDAM ADB–360
database records ADB–95
database records, locking ADB–105
deleting segments ADB–103
description of ADB–78
format of database ADB–90
inserting segments ADB–100
loading the database ADB–326
locking ADB–107
logical record length ADB–244
maximum size ADB–79
multiple data set groups ADB–229
options available ADB–80
OS/390 access methods used ADB–78
OSAM (overflow sequential access methods) used ADB–90
overflow area ADB–93
pointers in ADB–81
randomizing module ADB–239
root addressable area ADB–93, ADB–96
segment format ADB–96
size of root addressable area ADB–238
space calculations ADB–305
specifying free space ADB–237
storage of records ADB–93
when to use ADB–80
HDAM and PHDAM Randomizing routines (DFSHDC40)
link-editing CG–84
HDAM and PHDAM Randomizing Routines (DFSHDC40)
attributes CG–84
calling CG–85
HDAM and PHDAM Randomizing Routines

(DFSHDC40) (continued)
description CG–83
IMS callable services CG–84
IMS environments CG–83
IMS.SDFSRESL CG–87
including the routine CG–84
loading CG–84
naming convention CG–84
parameters CG–86
registers
  contents on entry CG–85
  contents on exit CG–87
sample generalized routine CG–87
sample routine location CG–84
sample routines CG–87

HDAM database APCICS–9

HDAM database
See also DBD (Database Description) generation
OSAM ESDS block format DGR–105
segment format DGR–103
VSAM ESDS block format DGR–105

HDAM database, order of root segments APDB–128
HDRCTL= operand
  DIV statement
    specifying URDBTM–478

HDRCTL= operand (DIV statement), use APTM–224
header
  input message
    See FM (function management) headers
  ISC
    See FM (function management) headers
  output message
    See FM (function management) headers
type X’42’
  component identification ATM–476
  data bytes ATM–482
  message descriptor byte ATM–475, ATM–481

header record, RECON DBRC–50
HELP
  general information IV–125
  general information panel IV–125
  table of contents panel IV–124
HELP command IV–93
HELP function
  table of contents IV–124
HERE insert rule APCICS–57
HERE insert rule
  F command code APDB–32
  L command code APDB–33
HF (hierarchic forward) pointers ADB–82
HFS (Hierarchic File System)
  allocating data set for JGR–2
  mounting directory JGR–2
hi-level dump formatting DGR–153
HIDAM (Hierarchical Direct Access Method)
calls against ADB–80

HIDAM (Hierarchical Indexed Data Access Method)
changing DL/I access methods
changing from HDAM and PHDAM to HIDAM and
PHIDAM ADB–360

HIDAM (Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method)
APDG–70
HIDAM (Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method)
accessing segments ADB–99
deleting segments ADB–103
description of ADB–78
format of database ADB–90
index database ADB–79, ADB–96
index segment ADB–97
inserting segments ADB–100
loading the database ADB–326
locking ADB–107
logical record length ADB–244
maximum size ADB–79
multiple data set groups ADB–229
options available ADB–80
pointers in ADB–81
segment format ADB–97
space calculations ADB–105, ADB–305
specifying free space ADB–237
storage of records ADB–96
when to use ADB–80

HIDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method)
deleting segments ADB–103
HIDAM database APCICS–9

HIDAM database
See also DBD (Database Description) generation
OSAM and VSAM ESDS block format DGR–105
segment format DGR–103
starting CR–580
VSAM ESDS block format DGR–105

HIDAM databases
declaring ISDT–9
macro instructions ISDT–78

HIDAM index database
VSAM LRECL format DGR–106

hierarchic
  backward pointers ADB–83
  forward pointers ADB–82
Hierarchical File System (HFS)
  allocating data set for JGR–2
  mounting directory JGR–2

Hierarchical database
  example JGR–73
  relational database, compared to JGR–73
Hierarchical database example, medical APCICS–2,
APDB–20

Hierarchical Direct Access Method
See HDAM (Hierarchical Direct Access Method)
ADB–312

Hierarchical Direct Access Method (HDAM) APDG–69
Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method
See HDAM (Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method)
ADB–312

Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method (HIDAM)
APDG–70
Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method
See HISAM (Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method) ADB–312
Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method (HISAM) APDG–73
Hierarchical Sequential Access Method
See HSAM (Hierarchical Sequential Access Method) ADB–312
Hierarchical Sequential Access Method (HSAM) APDG–72
hierarchy
collection explained ADB–8
data structures APDB–49
definition ADB–7
description APDG–3
grouping data elements APDG–16
restructuring of with secondary indexes ADB–189
sample database APDB–20
High Availability Large Database (HALDB) APDB–18, APDG–77, AS–35, URDBTM–7
high key ADB–292
high key value ADB–293
High Performance Java (HPJ) JGR–5
High-Speed DEDB Direct Reorganization utility (DFBUHDR0) ADB–266, URDBTM–169
High-Speed DEDB Direct Reorganization utility (DFBUHDR0)
   BUFNO command URDBTM–169
   overview URDBTM–169
   recovery and restart URDBTM–171
   statistics collected URDBTM–171
   high-speed sequential control statements, specifying
effects ISDT–426
SETO ISDT–424
SETR ISDT–426
syntax ISDT–423
high-speed sequential processing (HSSP)
description ADB–275
high-speed sequential processing.
See HSSP
high-use program modules, making resident with DFSMPxx ISDT–348
hints and tips
using DBRC DBRC–71
using DBRC
   adjusting GENMAX when it is reached or is too high DBRC–73
   locating the last SLDS Stop Time in RECON
   DBRC–72
   PRILOG compression not working DBRC–74
   PRILOG record sizes DBRC–75
HIOP (high input/output pool)
   VTAM output buffers
     RECNAY execution parameter ATM–59
     RECASZ execution parameter ATM–59
HIOP storage pool OTMA–44
hipserspace buffering ADB–372
hipserspace buffers, VSAM Buffer Pool
   //DFSSTAT URS–441
   IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–370
   IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–400
HISAM Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURRL0) description URDBTM–35
JCL requirements
   DD statements URDBTM–36
   EXEC statement URDBTM–36
   output messages and statistics URDBTM–38
   restrictions URDBTM–36
   return codes URDBTM–41
   utility control statement
   OPTIONS= URDBTM–38
HISAM Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURUL0) description URDBTM–21
JCL requirements
   DD statements URDBTM–21
   EXEC statement URDBTM–21
   output messages and statistics URDBTM–21
   restrictions URDBTM–21
   return codes URDBTM–21
   utility control statement
   OPTIONS= URDBTM–21
HISTORY command DBRC–256
HOLD command
description CR–365
environments CR–365
example CR–365
syntax diagram CR–365
homonym, data element APDG–14  
horizontal partitioning in MSC ATM–195  
HOST macro IIIV–76  
HOUSEHOLD segment APCICS–4, APDB–21  
HPJ (High Performance Java) JGR–5  
HSAM (Hierarchical Sequential Access Method) APDG–72  
HSAM (Hierarchical Sequential Access Method) accessing segments ADB–63  
calls against ADB–63  
deleting segments ADB–64  
description of ADB–60  
inserting segments ADB–64  
options available ADB–61  
OS/390 access methods used ADB–61  
performance ADB–64  
replacing segments ADB–64  
segment format ADB–62  
space calculations ADB–305  
storage of records ADB–61  
when to use ADB–61  
HSAM database APCICS–9  
HSAM database  
See also DBD (Database Description) generation  
block format DGR–102  
delete byte format DGR–101  
flag byte format DGR–101  
segment format DGR–101  
HSB keyword  
deference CR–54  
DISPLAY command  
description CR–220  
example CR–292  
HSBID parameter AS–301  
HSMBR parameter AS–301  
HSSD definition/mapping macro DGR–57  
HSSO definition/mapping macro DGR–57  
HSSP (high-speed sequential processing)  
description ADB–275  
for database recovery ADB–278  
image-copy option ADB–277  
limits and restrictions ADB–276  
private buffer pools ADB–278  
processing option H ADB–277  
reasons for choosing ADB–276  
SETO statement ADB–277  
SETR statement ADB–277  
status CR–221  
UOW locking ADB–278  
using ADB–277  
HSSP (High-Speed Sequential Processing)  
image copy OG–63, OG–161  
RSR OG–269  
HSSP data set DBRC–16  
HSSP data set  
database registered with DBRC DBRC–16  
HSSP definition/mapping macro DGR–57  
HSSP keyword  
deference CR–54  
DISPLAY command  
description CR–221  
HSSP keyword (continued)  
DISPLAY command (continued)  
example CR–293  
HSSR definition/mapping macro DGR–57  
HTAB= operand (DEV statement) specifying URDBTM–469  
use APTM–221  
I/O area APDG–6  
I/O area  
assembler language APCICS–10  
C language APDB–79  
COBOL APCICS–10  
coding APCICS–10, APDB–102  
command-level program APCICS–9  
DL/I APCICS–1  
for XRST APDB–179, APTM–124  
in C language APTM–37  
in CHKIP (symbolic) call APDB–146  
in GMSG call APDB–149  
in GSCD call APDB–151  
in INIT call APDB–153  
in INQY call APDB–158  
PL/I APCICS–10  
restriction APCICS–9  
specifying APTM–52  
symbolic CHKIP APCICS–88  
XRST APCICS–88  
I/O Area  
specifying APDB–101  
I/O Area (input/output area) APDB–101  
I/O area format, AUTH call APTM–62  
I/O area length  
in CHKIP (symbolic) call APDB–146  
I/O area returned  
keywords APDB–139  
map of APDB–139  
I/O errors  
ADS ADB–145  
MADS ADB–145  
multiple area data sets (MADS) ADB–145  
single area data sets (ADS) ADB–145  
I/O PCB ADB–300  
I/O PCB  
in different environments APDG–53  
in GSCD APDB–150  
in INIT call APDB–153  
PCBs and DL/I calls APDB–87  
requesting during PSBGEN APDG–59  
I/O PCB (input/output PCB) APCICS–31  
I/O PCB mask  
12-byte time stamp APDB–90, APTM–49  
description APTM–11  
general description APDB–88, APTM–46  
group name field APDB–90, APTM–49  
input message sequence number APDB–89, APTM–48  
logical terminal name field APDB–89, APTM–47
I/O PCB mask (continued)
  message output descriptor name APDB–89,
  APTM–48
  specifying APDB–88, APTM–46
  status code field APDB–89, APTM–47
  userid field APDB–90, APTM–48
  userid indicator field APDB–91, APTM–50
I/O PCB, and program switch OTMA–52
I/O prevention AS–260, AS–273
I/O prevention
  by availability manager AS–259, AS–273
  by operator AS–273, AS–275
  definition AS–253
  description AS–260
  ensuring completion AS–260, AS–275
  processing AS–260, AS–272
I/O toleration
  definition AS–273
  display screen CR–672
  operator view of AS–273
IAM command
  description CR–367
  DONE keyword CR–367
  environments CR–367
  examples CR–368
  INQU itemname parameter CR–367
  LTERM keyword CR–367
  password CR–16
  PTERM keyword CR–367
  syntax diagram CR–367
IBFPRF definition/mapping macro DGR–57
IBM 3480 tape drive
  using with IMS log data sets ISDT–238
IBM COBOL for MVS & VM APCICS–19
IBM Developer Kit for OS/390, Java 2 Technology Edition JGR–1
IBPOOL definition/mapping macro DGR–57
ICDSN parameter commands
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–126
  creating for future use DBRC–27
  defining DBRC–237
  duplicate, naming convention DBRC–20
  INIT.IC DBRC–237
  maximum number of generations DBRC–28
  naming convention DBRC–20
  nonstandard DBRC–30
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–273
  NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–291
RECON
  adding information DBRC–287
  changing information DBRC–125
  record DBRC–56
  recovery period DBRC–28
  reusing DBRC–29
  selecting DBRC–326
ICDSN2 parameter commands
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–126
  DELETE.IC DBRC–171
  INIT.IC DBRC–238
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–274
  NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–291
ICJCL parameter commands
  CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–119
  GENJCL.CA DBRC–186
  GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–190
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–197
  GENJCL.OIC DBRC–204
  GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–208
  GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–213
  GENJCL.USER DBRC–218
  INIT.DBDS DBRC–232
  skeletal JCL execution member DBRC–352
ICMD call
  commands that can be issued APDB–152,
  APTM–101
  description APDB–151, APDB–153, APTM–99
  format APDB–151, APTM–99
  parameters APDB–151, APTM–99
  restrictions APDB–153, APTM–101
  use APDB–152, APTM–100
ICMD call, security AS–125
ICOFF parameter CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–119
ICOMponent keyword
  ASSIGN command CR–102
  definition CR–55
ICON parameter CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–119
ICRCVJCL parameter skeletal JCL execution member DBRC–360
ICREQ parameter CHANGE.DB command DBRC–111
ICREQ parameter INIT.DB command DBRC–228
ID (task ID) field ADB–92
ID keyword
  definition CR–55
  OPNDST command CR–438
ID statement
  Database Change Accumulation utility (DFSUCUM0)
  URDBTM–222
ICDO trace table entries DGR–337
ICDO trace table entries
  internal trace formats that map entries DGR–337
IDCAMS commands
  DEFINE IIV–81
  DELETE IIV–81
  REPRO IIV–81
identification of
  recovery requirements APDG–43
Identify exit routine CG–526
identify process CG–500
identifying
  application data APDG–11
  online security requirements APDG–91
  output message destinations APDG–99
  security requirements APDG–83
IDLE (/IDLE) command OG–109
IDLE command ATM–227, ISDT–129
IDLE command
  DC keyword CR–371
  description CR–369
IDLE command (continued)
  environments CR–369
  examples CR–371
  LINE keyword CR–369
  LINK keyword CR–370
  master terminal BTAM line CR–138
  NODE keyword CR–371
  NOSHUT keyword
    description CR–369
    restarting CR–370
  syntax diagram CR–369
IDLIST macro
  CONFIG macro, and ISDT–76
  description ISDT–81
  label ISDT–82
  parameters ISDT–82
  parameters
    configname ISDT–82
    id ISDT–82
  syntax diagram ISDT–82
IDP and Fast Path ADB–333
IDs, checkpoint APDG–60
IDSC definition/mapping macro DGR–58
IDXIN= keyword
  UCF FUNCTION=RU control statement
  URDBTM–364
IEBGENER DGR–5
IEBGENER utility IIV–58
IEEQE definition/mapping macro DGR–58
IEFBR14 utility ADB–312, IIV–54
IEHPROGM program ADB–312
IF statement
  parameters
    DATA URDBTM–509
    ENDMPPURDBTM–509
    LENGTH URDBTM–509
    NEXTLP URDBTM–509
    NEXTMSG URDBTM–509
    NEXTMSGP URDBTM–509
    NEXTPP URDBTM–509
    NOFUNC URDBTM–509
    PAGREQ URDBTM–509
  specifying URDBTM–508
IFP (Fast Path regions) IIV–151
IFP (IMS Fast Path) AS–24, AS–108
IFP (IMS Fast Path)
  application program AS–12
  message-driven program AS–12
  non-message-driven program AS–12
  region
    characteristics AS–12
    definition AS–10
  regions OG–83
  restart OG–157
  utility AS–12
IFP (IMS Fast Path) program
  databases that can be accessed APDG–29
  differences from an MPP APDG–34
  recovery APDG–34
  restrictions APDG–34
IFP and MPP regions
  maintaining continuous availability of ADB–415
IFP application programs APCICS–32
IGNORE (N or .) statement APDB–333, APTM–403
II status code APCICS–7
ILDS ADB–296
ILDS (Indirect List Data Set) AS–88, DBRC–17
ILDS (Indirect List Data Set)
  Index/ILDS Rebuild Utility (DFSPREC0) DBRC–13
  ILDS, computing the size of an ADB–296
  ILDS, defining ADB–296
  ILDS, sample JCL ADB–296
  ILE ADB–296
  ILE (Indirect List Entry) AS–88
  ILK ADB–296
  ILLNESS segment APCICS–3, APDB–20
ILPGM= parameter
  UCF FUNCTION=IL control statement URDBTM–354
ILPSBNAM= keyword
  UCF FUNCTION=IL control statement URDBTM–355
ILS (isolated log sender) AS–321
ILS keyword
  DISPLAY command CR–740
  START command CR–747
  STOP command CR–749
image capture program
  CICS application program APDG–165
  IMS application program APDG–142
image copies and data sharing AS–369
image copy
  concurrent OG–62, OG–160
  data set
    creating OG–64
    nonstandard OG–67
    recovery period of OG–64
    reusing OG–66
  data sharing OG–214, OG–217
  definition OG–6, OG–14
  frequency of OG–68
  HISAM OG–66
  HSSP OG–63, OG–161
  recovery after OG–63
  retaining OG–68
  RSR OG–261
  utilities OG–61
  with exclusive control OG–217
image copy 2 JCL DBRC–352
image copy data set
  recovery period DBRC–28
Image Copy Group record DBRC–56
Image Copy utility
  See also Database Image Copy utility (DFSEUDMP0)
  See Online Database Image Copy utility (DFSUICP0)
image-copy option ADB–277
IMBED | NOIMBED parameter ADB–260
immediate program switch APDG–97, APTM–137, ATM–32
immediate program switch
  in conversational programs APTM–140
immediate session termination
   See session termination
IMODULE facility
   CBT pool DGR–567
   IMS control block/work area, locating
      using load list DGR–565
implementing database design ADB–5, ADB–287
implicit API for LU 6.2 devices APDG–112
importance
   Workload Manager AS–175
importing database definitions
   HALDB ADB–294
importing packages JGR–94
IMS
   address space CSL–2
   CICS-IMS DBCTL OTMA–54
command
   restrictions OTMA–54
   communicating with OG–339
   connecting to OG–337
   control region size OTMA–46
   customizing for OTMA OTMA–39
   DB/DC IIV–10
dead-letter queue ATM–113
definitions
   control region execution parameters ATM–104
   enabling shared queues ATM–101
   startup parameters ATM–105
device support with OTMA OTMA–3
disconnecting from OG–343
emergency restart OTMA–38
front-end switch
   planning ATM–111
high-performance access OTMA–3
logging off ATM–13
message handling ATM–14
migrating
   installation configuration changes RPG–37
   Parallel Sysplex RPG–41
   system RPG–39
monitoring OG–95
network
   prerequisites to starting OG–83
network role ATM–7, ATM–9
OTMA parameter
   GRNAME OTMA–37
   OTMA OTMA–37
   OTMAMD OTMA–38
   OTMANM OTMA–38
   OTMASE OTMA–39
   OTMASP OTMA–38
   OTMAASY start-up parameter OTMA–53
procedure for IMS IIV–10
   PROCLIB member DFSPBxxx OTMA–37
   Remote Site Recovery OTMA–54
resource cleanup module (DFSIRMCL0) IIV–11
resynchronization support OTMA–28
sample applications IIV–11, IIV–137
sample transactions IIV–137, IIV–151
scheduler message block (SMB) OTMA–5

IMS (continued)
   shutdown
      forcing OG–144
      overview OG–16
   shutting down OG–137
   signing off ATM–13
   standard flow OTMA–17
   starting or restarting OG–75
   subsystem
      connecting OG–118
   system data set
      reallocating during restart OG–79
   terminal control commands OTMA–46
   tools
      IMS Performance Analyzer OG–97
      productivity OG–11
   tracing operations OG–319
   transactions
      using a nonsynchronized Tpipe OTMA–29
      using a synchronized Tpipe OTMA–29
   use of OTMA OTMA–37
   XRF OTMA–54
IMS (Information Management System)
   terminals supported RPG–22
   Version 8
      overview of enhancements RPG–5
IMS abend as cause of takeover AS–258, AS–270
IMS Adapter for REXX Exit Routine
   IMS callable services CG–299
   IMS environments CG–299
      including the routine CG–299
      link-editing CG–299
      naming convention CG–299
      sample routine location CG–299
IMS application programs OTMA–2
IMS application programs, standard APTM–146
IMS Callable Services
   See callable services CG–10
IMS Classic command
   format CR–15
IMS Command
   entering CR–3
   entering
      LU 6.2 device CR–9
      Master Terminal Format CR–3
      MCS CR–6
      OM API CR–11
      TSO SPOC CR–10, CR–11
IMS command enhancements, overview of RPG–13
IMS Command Language Modification Facility
   (DFSCKWD0)
   command keyword table, modifying CG–167
   error messages CG–169
   IMS callable services CG–168
   IMS environments CG–167
      including the routine CG–168
   KEYWD macro CG–168
      link-editing CG–168
      naming convention CG–167
      routine location CG–168
      SYN macro CG–169
IMS commands
/CANCEL AS–287
/CHANGE AS–74
/CHANGE SURVEILLANCE AS–259
/CHECKPOINT AS–27
/DISPLAY AS–179
/ERESTART BACKUP AS–267, AS–279
/ERESTART COLDYSYS AS–118
/LOGON APPLID AS–261
/MODIFY AS–261, AS–274
/MODIFY COMMIT AS–315
/MODIFY PREPARE AS–315
/NRESTART AS–118
/START IMS AS–266, AS–267
/START SURVEILLANCE AS–259
/STOP SURVEILLANCE AS–259
/SWITCH SYSTEM
planned takeover AS–271, AS–277
takeover process AS–272, AS–275
/UNLOCK SYSTEM
ensuring database integrity AS–260
process during takeover AS–274, AS–292
CICS-IMS session ATM–558
entering AS–10
keyword syntax AS–10
response requirements ATM–488
used on HALDBs CR–805
used to start system ATM–461
IMS component identification numbers DGR–19
IMS components BPE–1
IMS conversation
and commit-then-send mode OTMA–17
IMS conversations
conversational program APTM–134
nonconversational program APTM–135
IMS conversations, administering OTMA–41
IMS Data Capture exit
See Data Capture exit routine
IMS Data Capture exit/function
See Data Capture exit routine
IMS Data Conversion exit/function.
See Data Conversion exit routine
IMS data set placement
in XRF AS–311, AS–315
requirement for XRF AS–255
XRF process, contribution to AS–257
IMS Database Change Accumulation utility
condensing SLDS or RLDS OG–52
IMS database statistics, obtaining APCICS–80
IMS databases
See databases
IMS DataPropagator RPG–5
IMS DB
migration considerations RPG–33
IMS dependent region wait or loop, diagnosing DGR–11
IMS diagnostic aids DGR–313
IMS documentation
changes for IMS Version 8 RPG–57
changes from IMS Version 6 RPG–59
changes from IMS Version 7 RPG–57
feature codes RPG–60
IMS DPROP (IMS DataPropagator) AS–29
IMS dump formatter DGR–4
IMS dump, locating
Fast Path control block DGR–360
Fast Path work area DGR–360
IMS execution modes ATM–535
IMS facilities
available on IMS-CICS session ATM–533, ATM–555
component definition ATM–443, ATM–444
display screen protection ATM–451, ATM–452
Finance Communication System ATM–443
Message Format Service ATM–448
message recovery ATM–449
SLU P ATM–443
terminal-response mode ATM–445
IMS failure AS–254
IMS Fast Path (IFP) programs, description of APDG–33
IMS Front-End Switch OTMA–45
IMS function/subfunction list DGR–527
IMS High Performance Pointer Checker ADB–239
IMS identifier
XRF OG–236
IMS installation enhancements
introduction to RPG–19
IMS Java
administering JGR–3
class library JGR–4
data type support JGR–86
enhancements
overview RPG–151
exceptions JGR–123
IMS Java API Specification JGR–4
installing JGR–1
installing
DFSJSMKD job JGR–2
DFSJSMKDR REXX script JGR–2
HFS data set JGR–2
HFS mount point JGR–2
samples.tar file JGR–2
SMP/E JGR–2
IVP, running and compiling IIV–133
Javadoc JGR–4
JDBC application JGR–93
JDBC support JGR–1
overview JGR–1
packages JGR–4
packages
com.ibm.connector2.ims.db JGR–4
com.ibm.ims.application JGR–4
com.ibm.ims.base JGR–4
com.ibm.ims.db JGR–4
IMS Java API Specification JGR–4
Javadoc JGR–4
problem determination JGR–123
Redbooks JGR–5
restrictions JGR–5
sample application IIV–133
sample applications, running and compiling IIV–133
software requirements RPG–26
supported environments JGR–1
system requirements JGR–1
IMS Java API Specification JGR–4
IMS Java hierarchical database interface about JGR–1
using JGR–135
IMS JDBC Resource Adapter JGR–50
IMS JDBC Resource Adapter configuration JGR–51
deploying JGR–51
DLIDatabaseView subclass name JGR–51
IMS JDBC resource adapter, installing JGR–37
IMS log CG–199
IMS logger OG–268
IMS master terminals AS–302
IMS Message Format Service OTMA–45
IMS message switches, response requirements ATM–325, ATM–487
IMS Monitor AS–166, OG–98
IMS Monitor activating OG–112
description AS–185
for detailed data AS–180, AS–190
for performance analysis AS–191
I/O errors OG–112
log OG–112
MSC and AS–180
MSC considerations ATM–233
performance gathering OG–110
report OG–99
Report Print Program ATM–233
reports
Call Summary AS–166
testing AS–166
using OG–112
IMS Monitor Report Print Program and MSC reports
interpreting for DB/DC URS–434
interpreting for DCCTL URS–380
IMS Monitor Report Print utility (DFSUTR20)
analysis control data set URS–258
definition of terms URS–257
description URS–257
input URS–257
JCL example URS–259
JCL requirements URS–257
statements
DIS URS–258
DLI URS–258
ONLY DLI URS–258
IMS Monitor Reports Buffer Pool Statistics URS–352
Call Summary URS–361
Communication Summary URS–371
Communication-Wait URS–372
Database Buffer Pool URS–369
Deadlock Event Summary URS–372
Distribution-Appendix report URS–375
General Iwait Time Events URS–368
Intent Failure URS–358
Latch Conflict Statistics URS–374
Line Functions URS–371
Log Archive utility (DFSUARCO) URS–215
IMS Monitor Reports (continued)
Message Format Buffer Pool URS–366
Message Queue Pool URS–367
MSC Queuing Summary URS–382
MSC Summaries URS–381
MSC Traffic URS–380
Offline Dump Formatter utility (DFSOFMD0) URS–313
output selection options URS–354
overview URS–351
Pool Space Failure Summary URS–372
Program I/O URS–362
Program Summary URS–360
Programs by Region URS–355
Region and Jobname URS–353
Region Summary URS–355
Region Wait URS–355
Run Profile URS–353
System Configuration URS–352
verifying report occurrences URS–354
VSAM Buffer Pool URS–369
IMS Monitor Reports (DBCTL)
adding to URS–388
Call Summary URS–396
Deadlock Event Summary URS–401
Distribution Appendix report URS–402
Intent Failure URS–394
Latch Conflict Statistics URS–401
output selection options URS–390
overview URS–387
Pool Space Failure Summary URS–401
Program I/O URS–397
Program Summary URS–396
Programs by Region URS–391
Region Summary URS–390
Region Wait URS–391
Run Profile URS–389
System Configuration URS–388
verifying report occurrences URS–390
VSAM Buffer Pool URS–400
IMS Monitor Reports (DCCTL)
Call Summary URS–418
Communication Summary URS–426
Communication Wait URS–427
Distribution Appendix report URS–429
General Iwait Time Events URS–425
Latch Conflict Statistics URS–428
Line Functions URS–426
Message Format Buffer Pool URS–423
Message Queue Pool URS–424
MSC Queuing Summary URS–437
MSC Summaries URS–436
MSC Traffic URS–434
output selection options URS–411
overview URS–407, URS–408
Pool Space Failure Summary URS–428
Program I/O URS–419
Program Summary URS–417
Programs by Region URS–412
Region and Jobname URS–411
Region Summary URS–412
IMS Monitor Reports (DCCTL) (continued)
Region Wait URS–412
Run Profile URS–410
System Configuration URS–410
verifying report occurrences URS–411
IMS Monitor Reports for DB/DC
Log Merge utility (DFSILTMG0) URS–229
Log Recovery utility (DFSILTR0) URS–233
Log Transaction Analysis utility (DFSILTA0) URS–319
Security Maintenance utility (DFSISMP0) URS–179
Statistical Analysis utility (DFSISTS0) URS–325
Transaction Queueing URS–368
VSAM Buffer Pool URS–407
IMS Monitor Reports for DBCTL
Database Buffer Pool URS–407
IMS Monitor timed events
checkpointing URS–349
description URS–347
DL/I call NOT-WAIT times
DB/DC URS–350
DCCTL URS–408
during message input URS–348, URS–349
elapsed execution URS–349
idle for intent URS–349
NOT-WAIT time URS–408
schedule of first DL/I call URS–349
scheduling and termination URS–349
summary
DBCTL URS–387
DCCTL URS–408
trace intervals
DB/DC URS–352
DBCTL URS–388
DCCTL URS–410
wait time URS–349
wait-for-input (WFI)
DB/DC URS–349, URS–366
DCCTL URS–423
IMS password
PASSWORD statement URDBTM–445
specifying URDBTM–494
IMS Performance Analyzer OG–97
IMS procedure (continued)
parameters (continued)
AUTO= ISDT–252
BSIZ= ISDT–252
CCTCVCAN= ISDT–253
CIOP= ISDT–253
CMDCMS= ISDT–254
CPL= ISDT–255
CRC= ISDT–255
CSAPSB= ISDT–256
DBBF= ISDT–257
DBFP= ISDT–257
DBFX= ISDT–257
DBRCNM= ISDT–258
DBWP= ISDT–258
DC= ISDT–259
DESC= ISDT–260
DLID= ISDT–261
DLINM= ISDT–261
DLIPS= ISDT–261
DLQ= ISDT–262
DM= ISDT–262
DMHVF= ISDT–262
DPTY= ISDT–262
DSCT= ISDT–262
EMHB= ISDT–262
EMHL= ISDT–263
EPCB= ISDT–264
ETO= ISDT–264
EXVR= ISDT–264
FBP= ISDT–264
FDRM= ISDT–265
FESTIM= ISDT–265
F= ISDT–265
FMT= ISDT–265
FPDSSIZE= ISDT–265
FPPOP= ISDT–265
FPWP= ISDT–266
FRE= ISDT–266
GRNAME= ISDT–266
GRSNAME= ISDT–266
HIOP= ISDT–267
HSB= ISDT–267
HSBID= ISDT–267
ISMBR= ISDT–267
IMSGROUP= ISDT–267
IMSID= ISDT–268
IOV= ISDT–269
IRLM= ISDT–269
IRLMNM= ISDT–270
ISIS= ISDT–270
LGMSGSZ= ISDT–271
LGNR= ISDT–271
LHTS= ISDT–271
LOGT= ISDT–272
L= ISDT–272
LTERM= ISDT–273
LUMC= ISDT–273
LUMP= ISDT–273
MCS= ISDT–274
PRDR= ISDT–279
PRLD= ISDT–280
IMS procedure (continued)
parameters (continued)
PSB= ISDT–280
PSBW= ISDT–281
PST= ISDT–281
QBUF= ISDT–282
QBUFMAX= ISDT–282
QBUFSZ= ISDT–282
QTL= ISDT–283
QU= ISDT–283
RCF= ISDT–283
RCFTCB= ISDT–284
RDMM= ISDT–284
READNUM= ISDT–284
RECA= ISDT–284
RECASZ= ISDT–284
RES= ISDT–284
RGN= ISDT–284
RGSUF= ISDT–284
RSRMBR= ISDT–285
RVFY= ISDT–285
SAV= ISDT–285
SGN= ISDT–285
SHARE= ISDT–287
SHM= ISDT–287
SOD= ISDT–288
SOUT= ISDT–288
SP= ISDT–288
SRCH= ISDT–288
SSM= ISDT–288
SU= ISDT–290
SVC2= ISDT–290
SVID= ISDT–290
SYS= ISDT–291
SYS= ISDT–291
SYS2= ISDT–291
TRACK= ISDT–291
TRN= ISDT–292
TSR= ISDT–292
UHASH= ISDT–292
UHTS= ISDT–292
USERVAR= ISDT–293
VAT= ISDT–293
VSPEC= ISDT–293
WADS= ISDT–293
WKAP= ISDT–293
YEAR= ISDT–294
PSB pools ISDT–225
IMS restart processing OTMA–42
IMS secondary terminals AS–302
IMS services available to ESAP CG–504
IMS Spool API AS–235
IMS Spool API
AFP AS–236
application requirements AS–236
application requirements
JES print data sets AS–236
CHNG call
description AS–238
with OUTN option AS–239
with PRTO option AS–238
with TXTU option AS–239
design considerations AS–235
dynamic output AS–238
JES as a Data Manager AS–237
native terminal support AS–235
OEM print server AS–236
operational considerations AS–235
OUTN option AS–239
output data set AS–238
print data set characteristics AS–238
PRTO option AS–238
SETO call AS–239
TXTU option AS–239
IMS Spool API.
See Spool API
IMS Standard User Exit Parameter List CG–269
IMS Structured Call Interface (SCI) DBRC–63
IMS subsystem
starting
START irImprpr CR–697
IMS Syntax Checker AS–91
IMS system definition macros
XRF-related keywords for terminals AS–303
IMS system generation
class-1 terminals, defining AS–302
class-2 terminals, defining AS–302
coding IMS system definition macros AS–301
defining master and secondary terminals AS–302
IMS system log
as surveillance mechanism AS–258, AS–270
during takeover AS–257, AS–273
establishing as surveillance AS–265
failure of AS–255
initialize backup sessions, used to AS–261
override takeover indication AS–259
placement of AS–311
recording
message queues AS–269
MFS pool loading AS–269
session information AS–257
status of dependent region activities AS–269
tracking, used for AS–258, AS–269
IMS system services CG–557
IMS TM
DB2 considerations APTM–28
password APTM–192
IMS tools from IBM RPG–69
IMS trace parameters ADB–258
IMS transaction abend ATM–573
IMS transactions
defining ISDT–12
TRANSACT macro, using ISDT–12
IMS Version 8
Database Manager enhancements RPG–5
DB enhancements
Batch Remote Recovery Service support RPG–5
CSA VSCR RPG–5
Database Image Copy 2 RPG–5
DBRC RPG–6
Fast Path RPG–8
Java RPG–9
parallel database processing RPG–10
RSR RPG–10
enhancements
APPC/IMS, overview RPG–87
APPC/OTMA, overview RPG–89
BPE, overview RPG–93
Control Center for IMS RPG–17
Coordinated Online Change, overview RPG–111
CQS, overview RPG–99
Database Image Copy 2, overview RPG–121
DBRC, overview RPG–123
DEDB area, overview RPG–131
DEDBs non-recoverable RPG–133
IMS Java, overview RPG–151
IMSplex, overview RPG–141
LE runtime parameters, overview RPG–139
log records RPG–223
Operations Manager (OM), overview RPG–157
packaging, overview RPG–169
RACF abend suppression RPG–14
Resource Manager (RM), overview RPG–183
SCI, overview RPG–201
Syntax Checker, overview RPG–207
Sysplex terminal management, overview
RPG–209
TSO SPOC application, overview RPG–221
VSO, shared, overview RPG–191
performance considerations RPG–19
system enhancements RPG–13
system enhancements
BPE RPG–15
commands RPG–13
coordinated online change RPG–17
CQS RPG–16
CSL RPG–16
IMS installation RPG–19
IVP RPG–14
LE runtime parameter overrides RPG–13
OM RPG–16
RM RPG–17
SCI RPG–17
Syntax Checker RPG–18
system management RPG–14
terminal management RPG–18
Transaction Trace RPG–18
TSO SPOC application RPG–18
TM enhancements
APPC/IMS RPG–11

IMS Version 8 (continued)
TM enhancements (continued)
APPC/OTMA RPG–11
Java RPG–12
Sysplex terminal management RPG–13
Transaction Manager enhancements RPG–11
IMS Version 8 enhancements
RSR, overview RPG–175
IMS Version 8 TM
migration considerations RPG–35
IMS-CICS communication
alternate facility ATM–557
application coding for ATM–554
asynchronous processing flow ATM–542
ATTACH parameters ATM–562
CICS transactions, definition ATM–552
coding
function management headers ATM–562
system generation options ATM–545
facility
alternate ATM–557
principal ATM–557
IMS commands ATM–558
IMS-CICS ISC ATM–552
initiating sessions ATM–552
integrity of session ATM–570
LU 6.1 links
compatible nodes ATM–546
description ATM–545
Macro-Level Resource Definition ATM–545
multiple links ATM–550
Resource Definition Online ATM–545
MFS support ATM–567
preparing CICS tables ATM–545
principal facility ATM–557
processing flows
RECEIVE ATM–541
RETRIEVE ATM–544
SEND INVITE ATM–538
SEND LAST ATM–539
SEND/RECEIVE ATM–542
START/RETRIEVE ATM–542
synchronous ATM–538
recovery and restart ATM–568
SCHEDULER parameters ATM–565
session
binding ATM–570
initiation ATM–552
processing outstanding traffic ATM–571
reestablishing ATM–570
resynchronizing ATM–570
sync points ATM–560
termination ATM–553
sync points ATM–560
terminating a session ATM–553
transaction
attributes supported ATM–535, ATM–557
types supported ATM–535, ATM–557
IMS-issued subsystem detected deadlocks URS–281
IMS-provided formats
/DISPLAY command format APTM–244
IMS-provided formats (continued)
- DFS057I block error message format APTM–244
- multisegment format APTM–244
- multisegment system message format APTM–244
- output message default format APTM–244
- system message format APTM–244

IMS-to-IMS communication, LU 6.1 protocols ATM–286, ATM–289
IMS-to-IMS sessions, ISC protocol restrictions ATM–288
IMS.ACBLIB ADB–299
IMS.ACBLIB
- members layout DGR–53
- partitioned data set DGR–53
IMS.ACBLIB as a staging library AS–81
IMS.ADFSISRC DBRC–6
IMS.ADFSISRC OTMA–65
IMS.DBDLIB ADB–287
IMS.FORMAT APTM–176
IMS.FORMAT
- compression APTM–175
- member selection APTM–256
- use APTM–176
IMS.FORMAT as a staging library AS–81
IMS.FORMAT library
- backup and restore operations URDBTM–394
IMS.FORMAT, output from MFS ATM–72
IMS.JOBS data set AS–91
IMS.MATRIX
- allocating the size AS–139, AS–156
- initialized security tables AS–151
- new versions AS–138
IMS.MODSTAT, used for active library status AS–82
IMS.PGMLIB
- optimizing retrieval AS–196
- PSB names as members AS–22
IMS.PROCLIB ATM–51, ATM–218, DBRC–6
IMS.PROCLIB
- CFNAMES control statement and AS–385
- DFSFIXxx member AS–269
- DFSHSVxx member
- parameters AS–271
- purpose of AS–259
- DFSBPxxxx
  - See DFSBPxxxx
  - external subsystems AS–17
  - generated members AS–90
- OLDSDEF statement (PROCLIB) OG–45
- specifying members in an XRF complex AS–304
- tailoring AS–90
IMS.PROCLIB members
- altering ISDT–317
- DBFMSDBx ISDT–321
- DFS62DTx ISDT–396
- DFSDCxxxx ISDT–325
- DFSDFRxx ISDT–336
- DFSFIXnnn ISDT–338
- DFSHSVxx ISDT–342, ISDT–347, ISDT–348
- DFSPINTxx ISDT–346
- DFSORSxx ISDT–350
- DFSBPBDCC ISDT–351
- DFSBPBDC ISDT–351

IMS.PROCLIB members (continued)
- DFSBPBDS ISDT–351
- DFSRSRx ISDT–351
- DFSSPMxxx ISDT–362
- DFSQxxx ISDT–365
- DFSVFLq ISDT–367
- DFSVSMxxx ISDT–367
- execution, preparing for ISDT–321
- generated ISDT–315
- initializing ISDT–318
- modifications, controlling ISDT–320
- renaming ISDT–318
- specifying ISDT–321
- tailoring ISDT–315, ISDT–318
IMS.PSBLIB ADB–296
IMS.REFERAL APTM–176
IMS.REFERAL
- compression APTM–176
- handling of ITBs APTM–176
IMS.REFERAL library
- backup and restore operations URDBTM–394
- partitioned data set (PDS) directory URDBTM–385
IMS.REFERAL APTM–246
IMS.REFERAL library URDBTM–411
IMS.SDFSMAC, attention notice IIV–25
IMS.TFORMAT, use APTM–175
IMSACBA, INITMOD procedure URS–203
IMSASAP II reports
- testing AS–166
- tuning AS–191
IMS BATCH procedure ISDT–193, ISDT–213, ISDT–214,
- ISDT–224, ISDT–235, ISDT–236, ISDT–241,
- ISDT–243, ISDT–246
IMS BATCH procedure
- DD statements ISDT–236
- parameters ISDT–236
- parameters
  - AGN= ISDT–248
  - ALTID= ISDT–249
  - APARM= ISDT–250
  - CKPTID= ISDT–253
  - CPUTIME= ISDT–255
  - DIRCA= ISDT–260
  - IMSID= ISDT–268
  - IMSPLEX= ISDT–268
  - IN= ISDT–268
  - LOCKMAX= ISDT–271
  - MBR= ISDT–274
  - NBA= ISDT–275
  - OBA= ISDT–275
  - OPT= ISDT–275
  - PARDLI= ISDT–277
  - PREINIT= ISDT–279
  - PRLD= ISDT–280
  - PSB= ISDT–280
  - RGN= ISDT–284
  - SOUT= ISDT–288
  - SPIE= ISDT–288
  - SSM= ISDT–288
  - STIMER= ISDT–289
  - SYS2= ISDT–291
IMSBATCH procedure (continued)
parameters (continued)
TEST= ISDT–291

IMSCOBGO procedure
and the IBM 3480 tape drive ISDT–238
DD statements ISDT–238
description ISDT–236
parameters ISDT–238
parameters
BK0= ISDT–252
BUF= ISDT–252
CKPTID= ISDT–253
DBRC= ISDT–258
EXCPVR= ISDT–264
FMTO= ISDT–265
IMSID= ISDT–268
IMSPLEX= ISDT–268
IOB= ISDT–269
IRLM= ISDT–269
IRLMNM= ISDT–270
LOGA= ISDT–272
LOGT= ISDT–272
MBR= ISDT–274
MON= ISDT–274
PRLD= ISDT–280
PSB= ISDT–280
RGN= ISDT–284
RST= ISDT–285
SOUT= ISDT–288
SPIE= ISDT–288
SRCH= ISDT–288
SWAP= ISDT–290
SYS2= ISDT–291
TEST= ISDT–291

IMSCOBOL procedure
DD statements ISDT–240
description ISDT–239
parameters ISDT–240
parameters
MBR= ISDT–274
SOUT= ISDT–288
SYS2= ISDT–291

IMSCTF
description ISDT–2
setting checkpoints ISDT–3

IMSCTF macro
description ISDT–82
parameters ISDT–83
parameters
APNDG= ISDT–83
CORE= ISDT–83
CPLG= ISDT–83
LOG= ISDT–83
PRDR= ISDT–84
RDS= ISDT–84
SVCKNO= ISDT–84
syntax diagram ISDT–82

IMSCTF macro statement, CPLG keyword AS–76

IMSCTRL
description ISDT–2
selecting a lock manager ISDT–4

IMSCTRL (continued)
use without specifying MODBLKS ISDT–85
IMSCTRL macro IIV–59
IMSCTRL macro
archiving OLDS DBRC–11
defining regions ISDT–2
description ISDT–85
parameters DBRC–8, ISDT–86
parameters
CMDCHAR= ISDT–86
DBRC= ISDT–87
DBRCNM= ISDT–88
DCLWA= ISDT–88
DESC= ISDT–89
DLINM= ISDT–89
ETOFEAT= ISDT–89
GSGNAME= ISDT–90
HSB= ISDT–90
IMSID= ISDT–91
IRLM= ISDT–91
IRLMNM= ISDT–92
MAXCLAS= ISDT–92
MAXIO= ISDT–92
MAXREGN= ISDT–92
MCS= ISDT–93
MODBLKS ISDT–95
MSVERIFY ISDT–96
MSVID= ISDT–93
NAMECHK= ISDT–93
NUCLEUS ISDT–96
ON-LINE ISDT–96
RSRFET= ISDT–94
SYSTEM= ISDT–94
syntax diagram ISDT–85
system definition types ISDT–29

IMSCtrl macro statement
HSB keyword AS–302
LGEN subparameter AS–48
MAXREGN keyword AS–74
naming the IMS subsystems AS–258
SYSTEM keyword AS–47

IMSCTRL macro, MSC system definition ATM–218
IMSDALOC procedure, process URS–170
IMSEException class JGR–123

IMSEXIT.
See Log Archive Utility exit routine

IMSFIELDMessage JGR–25

IMSFIELDMessage class subclassing JGR–16, JGR–17

IMSF procedure AS–92

IMSF procedure
DD statements ISDT–241
description ISDT–241
parameters ISDT–241
parameters
AGN= ISDT–248
ALOT= ISDT–248
ALTID= ISDT–249
APARM= ISDT–250
CPUTIME= ISDT–255
DBLDL= ISDT–257

Index 179
IMSFP procedure (continued)
parameters (continued)
  DIRCA= ISDT–260
  IMSID= ISDT–268
  LOCKMAX= ISDT–271
  MBR= ISDT–274
  NBA= ISDT–275
  OPT= ISDT–275
  PREINIT= ISDT–279
  PRLD= ISDT–280
  PSB= ISDT–280
  RGN= ISDT–284
  SOD= ISDT–288
  SOUT= ISDT–288
  SSM= ISDT–288
  STIMER= ISDT–289
  SYS2= ISDT–291
  TLIM= ISDT–291

IMSGEN

description ISDT–2

IMSGEN macro IIV–11

IMSGEN macro
assembler and binder options ISDT–101
COMM macro, and ISDT–137
communication options parameters
  MFSTEST= ISDT–108
  SYMSG= ISDT–108
data set option parameters
  MACLIB= ISDT–103
  MACSYS= ISDT–103
  MODGEN= ISDT–104
  NODE= ISDT–104
  OBJDSET= ISDT–104
  PROCLIB= ISDT–104
  SCEERUN= ISDT–105
  UMACO= ISDT–105
  UMACx= ISDT–105
  USERLIB= ISDT–105
description ISDT–98
general communication options ISDT–108
IMS data set options ISDT–103
JCL statement parameters
  JCL= ISDT–106
  JOBCTL= ISDT–105
  JPRTY= ISDT–106
  MFSDFMT= ISDT–106
  ONEJOB= ISDT–107
  SCL= ISDT–107
  UJCLx= ISDT–107
JCL statements ISDT–105
MFS, and ISDT–503
parameters ISDT–100
parameters
  ASM= ISDT–101
  ASMPRT= ISDT–101
  LKPRT= ISDT–101
  LKRGN= ISDT–101
  LKSIZE= ISDT–102
  SUFFIX= ISDT–102
  TERM= ISDT–103
  UPDTPRT= ISDT–103

IMSGEN macro (continued)
relationship to COMM and SECURITY ISDT–137
sample IMSGEN macro statement ISDT–109
SECURITY macro, and ISDT–137
security options ISDT–108
security options parameters
  PSWDSEC= ISDT–108
  SECCNT= ISDT–108
  TERMSEC= ISDT–108
syntax diagram ISDT–98
IMSGEN macro statement, security options AS–115,
  AS–151
IMSGEN SUFFIX IIV–10
IMSID IIV–10
IMSID, online execution parameter AS–102
IMSI
  when an IMSplex and MSC network coexist
  ATM–244
IMSMMessageQueue JGR–124
IMSM MSG job ISDT–242
IMSM SV procedure ATM–218
IMSM SV procedure (Multiple Systems Verification utility
  DFSUMSV0) URDBTM–426
IMSp lex AS–395
IMSp lex
  address spaces participating CSL–2
  affinity
  in an MSC-IMSplex configuration ATM–240
  APPC and OTMA messages
    processing MSC remote transactions ATM–245
  ARM AS–415
  automatic RECON loss notification AS–403
  batch environment AS–404
  command format CR–21
  commands AS–414, OG–38
  commands
    benefits AS–414
    classic AS–415
    format AS–415
  configuration AS–397
  configuration recommendation CSL–7
  coordinating processes using macros CSL–111
  CQS AS–404
  creating AS–403
  CSL AS–397
  CSL
    configuration AS–404
    recovery AS–415
    starting AS–410
    CSL, with AS–395
  CSLZORY AS–415
  CSLZSHUT AS–411
data sharing AS–357
  definition ATM–13, CSL–1
displaying information OG–131
  DLI/SAS AS–404
  enhancements
    overview RPG–141
  global online change AS–402, AS–406, OG–127
global online change
  functions of AS–402
IMSplex *(continued)*

illustration CSL–1
IMS control region AS–405
IMSIDs
  when an IMSplex and MSC network coexist ATM–244
  introduction to RPG–14
  issuing commands to CSL–23
link definitions in an IMSplex
  deleting ATM–244
  managing ISDT–431
Master IMS control region AS–402
member CSL–1
message routing
  in an MSC-IMSplex configuration ATM–238
  modifying resources OG–119
MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling)
  coexistence ATM–237
  migration ATM–240
  sharing MSNAME definitions and SYSIDs ATM–240
MSC MSNAME definitions
  duplication ATM–243
  sharing MSNAME definitions and SYSIDs ATM–240
MSNAME definitions
  deleting ATM–244
OM AS–397
OM
  initializing AS–406
  OM API AS–414
  overview AS–399
  RACF AS–409
  security AS–408
  security user exit routine AS–409
optional components AS–404
optional functions AS–401
preparing for REXX SPOC API CSL–215
pseudoabend U0830
  avoiding ATM–247
querying statistics CSL–23
recovery AS–415
requirements AS–403
resource structure AS–404
resource structure
  recommendations AS–405
resources
  managing ATM–127
RM AS–397
RM
  initializing AS–406
  overview AS–400
  recommendations AS–405
RSR tracking OG–264
SCI AS–397
SCI
  initializing AS–406
  overview AS–400
  security AS–408
security
  example AS–408

IMSplex *(continued)*

sharred queues AS–404
shutting down AS–410
Single Point of Control CSL–4
SPOC AS–401, AS–414
SPOC
  commands AS–414
  maintaining AS–413
starting AS–410
starting CSL address spaces OG–75
SYSIDs
  cloning MSC SYSIDs in an IMSplex ATM–244
  managing MSC SYSIDs in an IMSplex ATM–244
  sharing MSNAME definitions and SYSIDs ATM–240
terminating online change OG–131
typical configuration CSL–7, RPG–141
XRF OG–234

IMSPLEX
  CHANGE.RECON DBRC–144
  DSPSCIX0 DBRC–145
IMSplex commands
  OM API CR–11, CR–13
  QUERY CR–455
  TERMINATE CR–633
  UPDATE CR–675
IMSplex component AS–396
IMSPLEX macro
  data set option parameters
    IMSPLEX= ISDT–103
IMSplex member AS–397
IMSplex, definition CQS–2
IMSPLI procedure
  DD statements ISDT–243
  parameters ISDT–242
  parameters
    MBR= ISDT–274
    SPIE= ISDT–288
    SYS2= ISDT–291
IMSPLIGO procedure
  DD statements ISDT–245
  description ISDT–243
  parameters ISDT–245
  parameters
    BKO= ISDT–252
    BUF= ISDT–252
    CKPTID= ISDT–253
    DBRC= ISDT–258
    EXCPVR= ISDT–264
    FMTO= ISDT–265
    IMSID= ISDT–268
    IMSPLEX= ISDT–268
    IOB= ISDT–269
    IRLM= ISDT–269
    IRLNM= ISDT–270
    LOGA= ISDT–272
    LOGT= ISDT–272
    MGR= ISDT–274
    MON= ISDT–274
    PRLD= ISDT–280
    PSB= ISDT–280
IMSPLIGO procedure (continued)
parameters (continued)
  RGN= ISDT–284
  RST= ISDT–285
  SOUT= ISDT–288
  SPIE= ISDT–288
  SRCH= ISDT–288
  SWAP= ISDT–290
  SYS2= ISDT–291
  TEST= ISDT–291

IMSQUERY extended function
arguments APDB–274, APTM–330
usage APDB–274, APTM–330

IMSRDR procedure
DD statement ISDT–246
description ISDT–245
MVS, and ISDT–414
parameters ISDT–245
parameters
  CLASS= ISDT–254
  MBR= ISDT–274
  SYS2= ISDT–291
storing ISDT–191

IMSRXTRC command APDB–264, APDB–266,
APTM–320, APTM–322

IMSWTnnn procedure (Spool SYSOUT Print utility
DFSUPRT0) URDBTM–519
in physical databases ADB–174
in the physical DBD ADB–173
in-doubt UOR OG–42
in-flight transactions
definition of AS–258
  processing during takeover AS–273, AS–274
in-flight UOR OG–42
inactive and active libraries IIV–13
inactive libraries AS–81
IINACTIVE parameter DELETE.LOG (for RLDS and
SLDS) command DBRC–173
Include statement JGR–109
INCORROUT keyword procedure DGR–25
INCR= keyword
MSDB Maintenance utility action statement
URDBTM–150
INDDS= keyword
control statements
  UCF FUNCTION=DR URDBTM–349
  UCF FUNCTION=DX URDBTM–353
  UCF FUNCTION=PR URDBTM–358
  UCF FUNCTION=PU URDBTM–360
  UCF FUNCTION=RR URDBTM–361
  UCF FUNCTION=SR URDBTM–367
  UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–371
independent AND APDB–207
independent overflow part of area (IOVF)
description ADB–116
  extending online ADB–424
INDEX IIV–90
index database
  See DBD (Database Description) generation
INDEX database APCICS–9
INDEX DBD generation
  logical DBD URS–9
  overview URS–8
  primary HIDAM index URS–8
  secondary index URS–8
index field, secondary JGR–109
INDEX function (MFS Service utility DFSUTSA0)
URDBTM–414
INDEX function (service utility), overview APTM–176
INDEX items IIV–115
index maintenance exit routine ADB–196
index segment ADB–97
index set records ADB–260
Index/ILDS Rebuild Utility (DFSPREC0) DBRC–13
INDEX= operand
  DBDGEN LCHILD statement URS–74
indexed databases ADB–79
indexed databases
  HIDAM ADB–96
  HISAM ADB–64
  PHIDAM ADB–96
indexed field in SSAs APDB–206
INDEXED keyword DBRC–47
indexing, secondary
  DL/I Returns APDB–208
  effect on program APDB–205
  multiple qualification statements APDB–206
  SSAs APDB–205
  status codes APDB–208
indicator symbols IIV–115
INDICES parameter ADB–199
INDICES= operand
  SENSEG statement URS–130
Indirect List data set ADB–296
Indirect List Data Set (ILDS)
  HALDB
    partitions AS–88
    pointers
      direct AS–88
      indirect AS–88
  Indirect List Entry ADB–296
  Indirect List Entry (ILE) AS–88
  indirect list key ADB–296
INDOUBT command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–532
INDOUBT keyword, description CR–55
infinite loop, stopping APDB–260, APTM–316
Information Management System (IMS).
  See IMS
INIT
  using with DBQUERY APDB–154
INIT (Initialize) call
    automatic INIT DBQUERY APDB–155
database availability, determining APDB–154
description APDB–153
  enabling data availability, status codes APDB–155
  enabling deadlock occurrence, status codes
    APDB–156
format APDB–153
INIT STATUS GROUPA APDB–155
INIT STATUS GROUPB APDB–156

INDEX DBD generation
  logical DBD URS–9
  overview URS–8
  primary HIDAM index URS–8
  secondary index URS–8
index field, secondary JGR–109
INDEX function (MFS Service utility DFSUTSA0)
URDBTM–414
INDEX function (service utility), overview APTM–176
INDEX items IIV–115
index maintenance exit routine ADB–196
index segment ADB–97
index set records ADB–260
Index/ILDS Rebuild Utility (DFSPREC0) DBRC–13
INDEX= operand
  DBDGEN LCHILD statement URS–74
indexed databases ADB–79
indexed databases
  HIDAM ADB–96
  HISAM ADB–64
  PHIDAM ADB–96
indexed field in SSAs APDB–206
INDEXED keyword DBRC–47
indexing, secondary
  DL/I Returns APDB–208
  effect on program APDB–205
  multiple qualification statements APDB–206
  SSAs APDB–205
  status codes APDB–208
indicator symbols IIV–115
INDICES parameter ADB–199
INDICES= operand
  SENSEG statement URS–130
Indirect List data set ADB–296
Indirect List Data Set (ILDS)
  HALDB
    partitions AS–88
    pointers
      direct AS–88
      indirect AS–88
  Indirect List Entry ADB–296
  Indirect List Entry (ILE) AS–88
  indirect list key ADB–296
INDOUBT command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–532
INDOUBT keyword, description CR–55
infinite loop, stopping APDB–260, APTM–316
Information Management System (IMS).
  See IMS
INIT
  using with DBQUERY APDB–154
INIT (Initialize) call
    automatic INIT DBQUERY APDB–155
database availability, determining APDB–154
description APDB–153
  enabling data availability, status codes APDB–155
  enabling deadlock occurrence, status codes
    APDB–156
format APDB–153
INIT STATUS GROUPA APDB–155
INIT STATUS GROUPB APDB–156
INIT (Initialize) call (continued)  
parameters APDB–153  
performance APDB–155  
performance considerations (IMS online) APDB–155  
restrictions APDB–157  
status codes APDB–155  
usage APDB–153  

INIT call  
description APTM–101  
determining data availability APTM–102  
format APTM–101  
parameters APTM–101  
performance considerations APTM–103  
summary APTM–347  
usage APTM–102  

INIT call function APDB–313, APTM–383  

INIT request  
initializing DRA CG–567  

INIT SELF command IIV–75  

INIT system service call APDG–46  

Init-Term exit routine  
contents of registers BPE–44  
parameter list BPE–44  
recommendations BPE–44  
INIT.ADS command DBRC–9  

INIT.ADS command  
description DBRC–223  

INIT.CA command DBRC–224  

INIT.CAGRP command DBRC–225  

INIT.DB ADB–477  

INIT.DB command  
description DBRC–227  

INIT.DBDS command  
description DBRC–230  
REUSE keyword DBRC–15  

INIT.DBDSGRP command DBRC–17, DBRC–235  

INIT.GSG command DBRC–236  

INIT.IC command DBRC–237  

INIT.PART command DBRC–239  

INIT.PART command  
parameter descriptions DBRC–240  

INIT.RECON command DBRC–11  

INIT.RECON command  
description DBRC–243  
establishing RECONs for log control DBRC–9  
initializing the RECON DBRC–42  
recovering RECONs DBRC–61  

INIT.SG command DBRC–247  

initial load program  
basic ADB–321  
Fast Path ADB–318  
restartable, using UCF ADB–321  
writing ADB–318  

initialization  
IMSpelix, in an ATM–132  
initialization errors APDG–161, APDG–169  

Initialization exit routine (DFSINTX0)  
description CG–309  
ETO= keyword setting CG–309  
IMS callable services CG–310  
IMS environments CG–310  
including the routine CG–310  
link-editing CG–310  
naming convention CG–310  
registers CG–311  

registers  
contents on entry CG–311  
contents on exit CG–311  
sample routine location CG–310  
using callable services CG–310  

initialization phase  
description AS–266  
illustration of AS–267  
procedures for operators AS–267  

Initialization-Termination (Init-Term) user-supplied exit routine  

cqs CQS–52  

initialize  
area data set DBRC–223  
change accumulation data set DBRC–224  
change accumulation group DBRC–225  
database DBRC–227  
database data set DBRC–230  
database data set groups DBRC–235  
global service group DBRC–236  
image copy data sets DBRC–237  
RECON header records DBRC–243  
service group DBRC–247  

initialize call  
See INIT call  
initializing data sets  
See allocating IMS system data sets  

initializing DBRC  
DBRC procedure DBRC–8  
IMSCTRL Macro DBRC–8  

initializing IMS system data sets AS–80  

initializing RECON DBRC–9  

initializing sessions  
initial installation environment options IIV–98  
option change verification IIV–100  
option selection IIV–98  
overview IIV–89  
phase selection IIV–104  
primary option menu IIV–98  
table merge IIV–102  

initiate a process CSL–117  

INITIALIZE OLC AS–402  

INITIALIZE OLC command OG–120, OG–128  

INITIALIZE OLC command  
error handling OG–130  
return and reason codes OG–130  

initiating a takeover  
procedure for AS–271  
process during takeover AS–272  
purpose of AS–277  

initiating network changes at takeover AS–274
input initiation, session
See session initiation
INITMOD procedure IV–58
INITMOD procedure
  DFSMREC control statement URS–203
  FORMATA URS–203
  IMSACBA URS–203
  JCL URS–202
  MODBLKSA URS–203
  MODSTAT record URS–203
  PROC statement URS–202
INOP state ATM–39
input bracketing
  replies ATM–476
  rules ATM–476
input component
  identification for header type X’42’ ATM–476
  relationship to output component ATM–272
  versus output component ATM–443
input edit/routing sample
  Fast Path CG–277
input editing option
  ISC ATM–267
  SLU P ATM–453
input errors, IMS detection of ISC ATM–348
input field tab (FTAB)
  See FTAB= operand (DEV statement) APTM–193
input for a DL/I program APDB–48
input for DBDGEN utility
  DBD ADB–287
INPUT keyword
  ASSIGN command CR–102
  definition CR–55
input message
backing out ISC ATM–319
  bracketing ATM–474, ATM–476
  chained messages ATM–337, ATM–477
  Fast Path ATM–457
  field attribute data APTM–191
  fill characters APTM–192
  Finance Communication System chaining indicator ATM–473
  format APTM–15
  formatting options APTM–184
header
  DPM ATM–475
  Finance format ATM–473
  MID name location ATM–473, ATM–475
  optional MFS fields ATM–475
  SCS ATM–475
  SLU P format ATM–474
  use ATM–473, ATM–475
  IMS TM password APTM–192
input modes APTM–192
input substitution character APTM–199
ISC bracketing ATM–328
literal fields APTM–191
message descriptor byte
  header type X’42’ ATM–475
  MID name indicator bit ATM–474, ATM–475
  MFS APTM–22
input message (continued)
  MFS formatting of APTM–183
  MFS input formatting, activating ATM–363, ATM–476
  multiple transmissions for one message ATM–477
  nonlinear fields APTM–191
  origin of for MFS purposes ATM–477
  requirements ATM–473
  response requirements ATM–484
  SLU P
    chaining indicator ATM–473
    restriction ATM–476
  sync point
    availability ATM–320
    ISC ATM–319
    with multiple physical pages APTM–198, APTM–235
input message field
  defining APTM–192
  record mode APTM–192
  stream mode APTM–192
Input Message Field edit routine (DFSME000)
  attributes CG–313
  calling CG–313
  defining edit routines CG–314
  description CG–313
  example CG–313
  IMS environments CG–313
  including the routine CG–313
  interfaces CG–315
  link editing CG–313
  naming convention CG–313
  parameter list format CG–315
  performance considerations CG–314
  registers
    contents on entry CG–315
    contents on exit CG–316
    using callable services CG–313
Input Message Field edit Routine (DFSME000)
  attributes CG–313
  calling CG–313
  defining edit routines CG–314
  description CG–313
  example CG–313
  IMS environments CG–313
  including the routine CG–313
  link-editing CG–313
  naming convention CG–313
  sample routine location CG–313
input message format
  device-dependent information APTM–271,
  APTM–277
  field and segment format APTM–271
  formatting options, examples APTM–185
Input Message Segment Edit Routine (DFSME127)
  attributes CG–317
  calling CG–317
  defining edit routines CG–318
  description CG–317
  example CG–321
  IMS callable services CG–317
  IMS environments CG–317
  including the routine CG–313
  link-editing CG–313
  naming convention CG–313
  sample routine location CG–313
input message format
  device-dependent information APTM–271,
  APTM–277
  field and segment format APTM–271
  formatting options, examples APTM–185
Input Message Segment Edit Routine (DFSME127)
Input Message Segment Edit Routine (DFSME127)  
(continued)  
performance considerations CG–318  
registers  
contents on entry CG–319  
contents on exit CG–320  
sample routine location CG–317  
Segment edit routine CG–321  
using callable services CG–317  
input message sequence number, field in I/O PCB APDB–89, APTM–48  
input message, response requirements ATM–325  
input messages, defining JGR–16  
input modes  
record mode  
  description APTM–192  
  process of record in APTM–201  
  treatment of nulls APTM–195  
  with ISC APTM–201  
specifying URDBTM–462  
stream mode  
  description APTM–192  
  process of record in APTM–201  
  treatment of nulls APTM–195  
  with ISC APTM–201  
input system (MSC) ATM–201  
input, maximum length from MVS consoles CR–7  
Input/Output Edit exit routine (DFSYIOE0) OTMA–40  
input/output error processing DBRC–61  
INQU  
  ltermname parameter  
  IAM command CR–367  
inquiry call  
  See INQY call  
inquiry flag processing CG–502  
INQY (Inquiry) call  
  description APDB–157  
  format APDB–158  
  map of INQY subfunction to PCB type APDB–163  
  parameters APDB–158  
  querying  
    data availability APDB–159  
    environment APDB–160  
    PCB APDB–161  
    program name APDB–162  
    restriction APDB–163  
  return and reason codes APDB–163  
  usage APDB–158  
INQY call OTMA–50  
INQY call (continued)  
  return and reason codes APTM–113  
  summary APTM–347  
  usage APTM–104  
INQY call function APDB–313, APTM–383  
INQY DBQUERY APDB–159  
INQY ENVIRON, data output APDB–160  
INQY FIND APDB–161  
INQY PROGRAM APDB–162  
INQY system service call APDG–46  
ininsert call  
  See ISRT call  
INSERT function CG–23  
INSERT keyword JGR–80  
INSERT parameter  
  example JGR–80  
  WHERE clause JGR–80  
INSERT parameter  
  free space for a KSDS ADB–257, ADB–259  
  using in splitting CIs ADB–69  
ininsert rules for logical relationships ADB–180, ADB–181,  
ADB–429, ADB–433  
in insert strategy  
  choosing ADB–257  
in inserting  
  first occurrence of a segment APDB–31  
  last occurrence APDB–33  
  segments APDB–135  
ininserting a segment  
  as first occurrence APDB–32  
  as last occurrence APDB–33  
  GSAM records APDB–215  
  in sequence APDB–31  
  path of segments APDB–31  
  root APDB–136  
  rules to obey APDB–135  
  specifying rules APDB–136  
ininserting segments  
  DEDB SDEPs ADB–266  
  HD databases ADB–100  
  HISAM databases ADB–68  
  HSAM databases ADB–64  
  MSDB (main storage database) ADB–129  
in inspections  
  code inspections ADB–28  
  security inspection ADB–28  
INSTALIB  
  using during file-tailoring phase IIV–62, IIV–90  
in installation  
  considerations  
    DLT feature IIV–9  
    ETO feature IIV–9  
    installing IRLM IIV–8  
    installing multiple copies of IMS, attention notice  
      IIV–10  
    IVP preconditioning for CICS IIV–11  
    RLT feature IIV–9  
    using FMIDs IIV–7  
    IRLM IIV–8  
  multiple copies of IMS  
    different IMS types IIV–10
installation (continued)
multiple copies of IMS (continued)
different release levels IIV–11
same release level and type IIV–10
problems, preventing IIV–65
service
attention notice IIV–79, IIV–83
preventive IIV–79
installation configuration changes
migration considerations RPG–37
installation enhancements
introduction to RPG–19
installation of
IMS batch environment IIV–99
IMS DB/DC environment IIV–99
IMS DBCTL environment IIV–99
IMS DCCTL environment IIV–99
IMS XRF environment IIV–99
installation verification programs (IVPs)
CICS JGR–68
DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures JGR–61
JBP region JGR–11
JMP region JGR–8
WebSphere Application Server for z/OS JGR–39
installing IMS Java
DFSJSMKD job JGR–2
DFSJSMKDR REXX script JGR–2
HFS data set JGR–2
HFS mount point JGR–2
samples.tar file JGR–2
SMP/E JGR–2
installing OTMA OTMA–37
INSTANCE keyword
SET command CR–745
instance, as part of RSR name AS–324
INSTATBL
using HLQs with IIV–62
instructor
schedules APDG–25
skills report APDG–24
int data type JGR–86
INTEGER data type JGR–86
integrity
batch programs APDB–247
how DL/I protects data APDG–58
IMS-CICS session ATM–570
maintaining, database APDB–244
message ATM–570
message
IMS-CICS session ATM–570
in ISC ATM–257
NOCHECK PROTECT ATM–542
read without APDG–87
using ROLB APDB–245
using ROLB
MPPs and transaction-oriented BMPs APDB–246
using ROLL APDB–245
using ROLS APDB–247
intelligent remote stations AS–33
intent conflict DGR–38
Intent Failure Summary Report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–358
IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–394
interactive dump formatter
description DGR–152
using DGR–153
Interactive Dump Formatter URS–313
interactive problem control system.
See IPCS (interactive problem control system)
interchange unit code, ATTACH FM header ATM–375
interface
HALDB ADB–477
interface block, DL/I APCICS–2
interface considerations, attention notice IIV–65
interface information BPE–57
interface modules IIV–69
interface, AIB APDG–6
interfaces, DL/I APDB–113
interfaces, DL/I.
See DL/I interfaces
interim log error ID record
Log Recovery utility URS–237
INTERIM parameter commands
DELETE.LOG (for OLDS) DBRC–172
DELETE.LOG (for RLDS and SLDS) DBRC–174
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–277
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–281
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for SLDS and TSLDS) DBRC–286
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–294
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–297
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS or TSLDS) DBRC–301
intermediate backout point
backing out APDB–248
intermediate backout points APCICS–88
intermediate system (MSC) ATM–201
intermediate/back-end (IBE) links CG–283
internal control statements, summary APDB–303
internal execution mode, ISC ATM–270
Internal Resource Lock Manager
See IRLM (Internal Resource Lock Manager)
Internal Resource Lock Manager (IRLM)
in data sharing AS–363
internal trace environment DGR–4
internal trace table
description DGR–346
interpret table
example of AS–261
initialization of AS–262
XRF’s use of AS–261
interpreting
//DFSSTAT Reports URS–439
IMS Monitor Reports
DBCTL URS–385
DCCTL URS–407
MSC URS–434
Transaction Analysis Report URS–383
Transaction Analysis Reports URS–455
intersection data ADB–162
intersystem communication
  See ISC (intersystem communication)
Intersystem Communication
  See ISC (Intersystem Communication)
Intersystem Communications (ISC)
  subsystems supported RPG–27
intersystem control block diagram DGR–89
INTERVAL keyword
  definition CR–55
  DISPLAY command CR–221
interval value AS–264
INTERVAL value
  CHANGE command CR–129
INTERVENTION REQUIRED category
  3270 error recovery analysis DGR–305
INTF (interface trace table)
  CQS trace table type BPE–8
  SCI trace table type BPE–11
INTP (interface parameter trace table) BPE–11
introduction to OTMA OTMA–1
Introduction to Resource Recovery APDG–108
invalid destinations in MSC ATM–209
INVALID parameter commands
  CHANGE.CA DBRC–105
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–126
invalid phase selection notification IIV–105
invalid processing and ROLB/SETS/ROLLS calls
  APDG–98
INVALID2 parameter
  CHANGE.IC command DBRC–126
  description CR–693
IOASIZE= parameter
  PSBGEN statement URS–134
IOB (input/output block) ADB–258
IOBF parameter ADB–248
IOEROPN= parameter
  PSBGEN statement URS–135
IOPCB OTMA–5
IOVF
  See independent overflow part of Area
IOVF CI
  diagnosing CI problem in DEDB
    first CIs DGR–358
    other CIs DGR–359
IOVF control intervals ISDT–269
IPCS
  dump formatter.
  See interactive dump formatter
IPCS (interactive problem control system)
  using with ODF DGR–132
IPCS (Interactive Problem Control System)
  Interactive Dump Formatter URS–313
  Offline Dump Formatter URS–315
  Offline Dump Formatter, user control statement
  URS–315
IPDS and IMS Spool API APDG–181
IQMRH0 AS–85
IRLM
  CICS, and ISDT–451
  coupling facility structure names ISDT–392
  DEADLOK parameter ISDT–259
IRLM (continued)
  dumping ISDT–309
  DXRJPROC ISDT–219
  execution parameters ISDT–402
  IMSCTRL macro
    IRLM parameter ISDT–91
    IRLMNM parameter ISDT–92
  lock table entries, maximum number of ISDT–272
  LOCKTIME parameter ISDT–395
  performance and DEADLOK parameter ISDT–260
  SDUMP ISDT–309
  starting ISDT–219
  startup procedure ISDT–219
IRLM (internal resource lock manager)
  failures OG–172
  monitoring OG–113, OG–206
  recovery OG–223
  RSR OG–277
  service aid
    description DGR–349
    dump DGR–349
    SYS1.LOGREC DGR–349
  start OG–204
  starting OG–81
  stopping OG–144, OG–204
  tracing OG–100, OG–113
IRLM (Internal Resource Lock Manager)
  activate
    for batch systems AS–368
    for IMS online systems AS–368
  as cause of takeover AS–271
  as single lock manager AS–76
  block-level data sharing ADB–107
  commands CR–693
  considerations
    address space IIV–9
    installing on multiple IMS systems IIV–9
  data set attributes.
    See data sets
  data sharing DBRC–19
  data sharing, role in AS–363
  database integrity DBRC–19
  execution parameters AS–390, AS–391
  failure AS–271
  failure as cause of takeover AS–254
  illustration of AS–276
  in sysplex data sharing AS–386
  installation of AS–370, AS–390
  IRLM IVP subset
    installation of IIV–8
  keyword procedure DGR–23
  latch unavailable DGR–46
  lock request example DGR–96
  locking protocols ADB–105
  messages at takeover AS–292
  online execution parameter AS–100
  overall control block diagram DGR–95
  procedure for WAIT state DGR–45
  processing during takeover AS–275
  RLM IVP subset
    APF authorization IIV–73
IRLM (Internal Resource Lock Manager) (continued)
  RLM IVP subset (continued)
    availability of IIV–101
defaults for IIV–101
dump formatting module IIV–73
installation of IIV–101
  naming suggestions for VTAM interface IIV–76
  PPT entry requirements IIV–73
  subsystem names IIV–73
  sharing modes AS–391
  storage manager pool diagram DGR–96
tuning AS–373
  used as local lock manager AS–277
  with batch backout DBRC–36
IRLM structure
  calculating the size of AS–387
  explained AS–376
  specifying AS–385
IRLMGRP= parameter
  START irlmproc command CR–698
IRLMID parameter commands
  CHANGE.SUBSYS DBRC–161
  NOTIFY.SUBSYS DBRC–303
IRLMID= parameter
  START irlmproc command CR–698
IRLMNM, online execution parameter AS–100
IRLMNMI= parameter
  START irlmproc command CR–698
irlmproc parameter
  F irlmproc,SET command CR–712
irlmx parameter
  F irlmproc,STATUS command CR–715
irrecoverable messages, ISC sync points ATM–323
irrecoverable output OTMA–17
irrecoverable transactions ATM–288
irrecoverable-inquiry transactions
  LU 6.2 application program ATM–65
  response requirements ATM–65, ATM–487
ISC
  node
    ASSIGN OUTPUT command CR–106
    CLSDST command CR–144
  parallel-session node
    DELETE command CR–170
  subpool CR–72
  user
    CLSDST NODE USER command CR–144
ISC (Intersystem Communication) (continued)
  output format control (continued)
    trailing blank compression APTM–230
    variable length output APTM–228
  output modes APTM–227
  subsystem definition APTM–183
  use of DPN field APTM–183, APTM–256
  use of RDPN field APTM–183, APTM–256
ISC (Intersystem Communication) APDG–34
ISC (Intersystem Communication)
  application program ATM–276, ATM–589
  application program
    accessing ATM–276, ATM–278
    example ATM–589
    not using MFS ATM–277
    using MFS ATM–277
  ATTACH FM header URDBTM–478
  basic functions ATM–253, ATM–254
  binding an ISC session ATM–300
  CICS and IMS functions ATM–259
  CICS-IMS ATM–533, ATM–575
  Class 2 terminal ATM–257
  configurations ATM–258, ATM–259
  control block storage, parallel sessions ATM–269
  conversation mode termination extension ATM–318
  data flow control ATM–253
  DFC protocols ATM–327
  DFC protocols
    availability ATM–320
    backing out input messages ATM–319
    BID command ATM–327
    bracket and half-duplex ATM–328
    bracketing input messages ATM–328
    bracketing output messages ATM–331
    CANCEL command ATM–336
    chaining ATM–337
    CHASE command ATM–337
    conversation mode errors ATM–318
    exception response ATM–317
    half-session synchronization ATM–319
    LUSTATUS ATM–341
    paged message errors ATM–344
    recoverability supplemented by LWA ATM–319
    response mode errors ATM–317
    response requirements ATM–319
    RSHUT command ATM–345
    RTR command ATM–344
    selective receiver ERP ATM–345
    sync point, input messages ATM–319
  DFC sync point ATM–320
  DFC sync point
    exception ATM–320
    irrecoverable messages ATM–323
    MFS messages ATM–322
    on output ATM–321
    recoverable messages ATM–321
    distributed processing ATM–255
    distributed services, support for ATM–256
    editing facilities
      invoking FM headers ATM–356
    overview ATM–267, ATM–268
ISC (Intersystem Communication) (continued)
editing options ATM–82
END NODE command CR–344
error handling
MTO notified ATM–346
sender ERP ATM–349
error recovery, purge after exception response ATM–338
execution mode ATM–256, ATM–270
execution mode
external specification ATM–270
internal definition ATM–270
internal, with CICS ATM–535
processing mode ATM–271
synchronous versus asynchronous ATM–271
Fast Path and AS–24
FM headers ATM–278, ATM–355, ATM–562
FM headers
ATTACH ATM–357
ATTACH, MFS ATM–367
CICS session ATM–562
data descriptor ATM–368
DPM messages, MFS ATM–364
error recovery procedure ATM–357
header format ATM–373, ATM–393
initiating a process ATM–357
introduction ATM–355
invoking ISC edit ATM–356
MFS ATM–363, ATM–372
OMODEL ATM–369, ATM–372
RAP (reset attached process) ATM–358
RAP (reset attached process), MFS ATM–372
routing messages ATM–278
SCHEDULER ATM–358
SCHEDULER, MFS ATM–367
supported by IMS ATM–355
synchronous processing ATM–357
SYMSG ATM–360
half session, primary versus secondary ATM–300
IMS commands, issuing ATM–268
IMS facilities ATM–255, ATM–257, ATM–267, ATM–274
IMS support for ATM–255
IMS support, CICS ATM–533
IMS-to-CICS configuration ATM–258
IMS-to-IMS configuration ATM–258
IMS-to-IMS session ATM–286
IMS-to-IMS session
buffer sizes ATM–287
defining parallel session ATM–287
defining single session ATM–287
dequing messages ATM–304
design considerations ATM–286, ATM–289
limit of parallel sessions ATM–286
MSC and ISC coexistence ATM–286
protocol restrictions ATM–288
remote control ATM–287
restriction on conversation mode ATM–287
routing to back-end IMS ATM–287
introduction ATM–253, ATM–261

ISC (Intersystem Communication) (continued)
link between active and alternate IMS
as surveillance mechanism AS–258, AS–270
as takeover condition AS–259
definition of AS–257
establishing as surveillance AS–265
illustration of AS–288
initializing AS–266
recommendation for XRF AS–287
used for synchronization AS–268
message integrity ATM–257
message integrity, CICS ATM–569
message resynchronization ATM–302
message resynchronization sessions ATM–302, ATM–310
summary ATM–325
message routing ATM–278
message routing
FM headers ATM–278
parameters ATM–278, ATM–279
through MSC links ATM–286
MSC coexistence ATM–286
network operation ATM–286
node
shutdown and deallocation CR–507
node definition ATM–289
node definition
COMM macro ATM–291
example ATM–289
macros used ATM–289
NAME macro ATM–292
SUBPOOL macro ATM–292
summary ATM–294
TERMINAL macro ATM–293
output editing option ATM–267
output protocols ATM–275, ATM–276
parallel sessions issuing IMS commands ATM–268
passing CICS data to IMS ATM–261
protocols ATM–253
protocols
defined ATM–297
restrictions on IMS-to-IMS sessions ATM–288
summary ATM–253, ATM–254
RCOMPT command
valid parameters CR–512
resynchronization procedure ATM–303
resynchronization procedure
cold start, to recover sessions ATM–304
commands, recovery at failure ATM–306
controlling backout of work unit ATM–304
execution mode, recovery at failure ATM–306
maintaining sequence numbers ATM–303
output available at restart ATM–305
recovering from in-bracket failure ATM–304
restart process ATM–307
session failure, IMS failure ATM–306
session failure, IMS still running ATM–306
routing ATM–254
routing examples ATM–279, ATM–286
routing parameters ATM–279
SC protocols ATM–299

Index 189
ISC (Intersystem Communication) (continued)
SC protocols
binding sessions ATM–300
cold start recovery ATM–304
commands, recovery at failure ATM–306
controlling pending work units ATM–304
designing restart procedures ATM–303
execution mode, recovery at failure ATM–306
maintaining sequence numbers ATM–303
output available at restart ATM–305
recovering from in-bracket failure ATM–304
resolving bind race ATM–301
restart process ATM–307
session failure, IMS failure ATM–306
session failure, IMS still running ATM–306
session initiation ATM–299
session states ATM–309
session termination ATM–311, ATM–349
XRF, session initiation ATM–300
security ATM–257
sense codes ATM–352
sense codes
received ATM–352
sent ATM–352
session
connecting to OG–85
session control ATM–253
session, terminating OG–143
statically defining ATM–289
STOP NODE USER command CR–610
test mode ATM–269
transaction types supported, CICS session ATM–535,
ATM–557
users, assigning OG–109
versus CICS ATM–557
VTAM API ATM–265
VTAM API
CICS ATM–533
IMS ATM–265
VTAM facilities ATM–263, ATM–266
XRF complex ATM–257, ATM–300
ISC (Intersystem Communication) link
starting DC trace DGR–270
stopping DC trace DGR–270
ISC edit, non-MFS programs ATM–277
ISC surveillance link ISDT–162, ISDT–170
ISC-CICS installation options ATM–545
ISL definition/mapping macro DGR–58
isolated log sender CG–193
isolated log sender (ILS) AS–321
isolation of
duplicate values APDG–19
repeating data elements APDG–17
ISOLOG keyword
definition CR–55
START command CR–585
ISPF
batch job ADB–506
ISPF (Interactive Systems Productivity Facility)
HELP command IIV–93
logical screen limitation IIV–94
ISPF member list ADB–480
ISP FN member list
display ADB–480
ISPF panels
configuration ADB–479
database name ADB–479
executing ADB–480
fields
HALDB utility ADB–478
HALDB utility ADB–478
HALDB utility
actions ADB–478
help information ADB–479
option ADB–479
ISPL definition/mapping macro DGR–58
ISPTSTART ADB–506
ISPTLIB ADB–502, IIV–97
ISRDDNP ADB–503
ISRT (Insert) call
D command code APDB–31
description APDB–134
F command code APDB–32
format APDB–134
L command code APDB–33
loading a database APDB–33
parameters APDB–134
RULES parameter APDB–32
SSAs APDB–136
with MSDB, DEDB or VSO DEDB APDB–225
ISRT (Insert) command
description APCICS–53
examples APCICS–58
format APCICS–54
insert rules APCICS–57
options APCICS–55
restrictions APCICS–58
usage APCICS–57
ISRT (insert), loading a database ADB–314
ISRT call APTM–79
ISRT call
description APTM–79
format APTM–79
issuing to other terminals APTM–127
message call
in conversational programs APTM–139
parameters APTM–79
referencing alternate PCBs APTM–127
restrictions APTM–82
Spool API functions APTM–81
summary APTM–347
usage APTM–80, APTM–127
ISRT call function APDB–313, APTM–383
ISRT system service call APDG–179
issue checkpoints APDG–31
Issue Command (ICMD) call
See ICMD call APDB–151, APTM–99
issuing
a basic checkpoint APCICS–69
an extended restart APCICS–83
checkpoints in batch or BMP programs APCICS–87
ISWITCH macro

description CG–6

exiting cross-memory mode CG–9

ITASK ECB posting DGR–177

ITB (intermediate text block) URDBTM–385

ITB (intermediate text block), relationship between ITBs and control blocks APTM–175

iterative processing (MFLD/DFLD)

DO statement URDBTM–448, URDBTM–487

ENDDO statement URDBTM–453, URDBTM–504

PRINT GEN effects URDBTM–514

RCD statement with DFLD URDBTM–490

restrictions URDBTM–488

IVP

enhancements

coeexistence RPG–49

introduction to RPG–14

process

IVP II–87

overview II–88

service II–84

user modifications to II–90

IVP dialog

application programs II–131, II–161

database record format II–134

default override II–105

delta libraries II–96

Execution phase overview II–90

file- tailoring overview II–90

invalid phase selection notification II–105

invoking II–94

process codes II–133, II–161

session initialization

option change verification II–100

option selection II–98

overview II–89

phase selection II–104

table merge II–102

start-up messages II–96

syntax for invoking II–94

variable-gathering overview II–89

IVP dialog data sets

IMS.INSTALIB II–13

IMS.INSTATBL II–14

IVP jobs and tasks

Steps Ax for IVP Preparation II–177, II–178

Steps Cx for System Definition (SYSDEF) II–178

Steps Dx for Interface IMS to MVS and VTAM II–178

Steps Ex for Prepare IVP Applications and System II–179

Steps Fx for IVP Execution - DBB System (Batch) II–179

Steps Gx for IVP Execution - DBC System (DBCTL) II–180

Steps Hx for IVP Execution - DBT System (DB/DC) II–181

Steps Ix for IVP Execution - XRF System II–183

IVP jobs and tasks (continued)

Steps Jx for IVP Execution - DCC System (DCCTL) II–184

Steps Lx for Execution - IMS Sample Application II–185

Steps Mx for Execution - FP Sample Application II–185

Steps Nx for Execution - Partition DB Sample Application II–186

Steps Ox for Common Service Layer Sample Application II–187

Steps Px for Index of Additional PDS Members II–188

IVP Phase Selection panel II–104

IVP sample application II–131

IVP Sample Application APDB–45

IVP Systems II–88

IVP Systems

initial installation environments II–129

screen format II–134, II–162

usage of IMS facilities

DBB (DB) II–129

DBC (DBCTL) II–129

DBT (DB/DC) II–129

DCC (DCCTL) II–130

SRF (DB/DC with XRF) II–130

IVP variable-gathering phase II–105

IVP variables

data set allocation II–172

genral II–169

IVPREXX exec APDB–287, APTM–343

IVPREXX sample application APDB–259, APTM–315

IVPs (installation verification programs)

CICS JGR–68

DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures JGR–61

JBP region JGR–11

JMP region JGR–8

WebSphere Application Server for z/OS JGR–39

IXCMIAPU AS–380

IXCMSGO macro

MSGCNTL parameter OTMA–65

J

Java

enhancements

introduction to RPG–9, RPG–12

IVP, running and compiling II–133

sample applications, running and compiling II–133

Java Batch Processing (JBP)

applications APDG–37

databases that can be accessed APDG–29

Java batch processing (JBP) regions JGR–i

Java batch processing (JBP) regions

DB2 UDB for z/OS access

application programming JGR–32

configuring JGR–15

programming model JGR–28

description JGR–7

IVP JGR–11

programming models JGR–27
Java Batch Processing (JBP) regions
  program switching JGR–33
Java data types JGR–86
Java dependent regions
  starting OG–83
Java Message Processing (JMP)
  applications APDG–37
  databases that can be accessed APDG–29
Java message processing (JMP) regions JGR–i
Java message processing (JMP) regions
  DB2 UDB for z/OS access
  application programming JGR–32
  configuring JGR–15
  programming model JGR–20
description JGR–7
IVP JGR–8
IVP
  DFSJMP procedure JGR–9
  DFSJVMEV member JGR–9
  DFSJVMMS member JGR–9
  JVM.out file JGR–9
programming models JGR–19
Java Message Processing (JMP) regions
  program switching JGR–33
Java sample application IIV–133
JAVA_HOME ENVAR keyword JGR–60
java.math.BigDecimal JGR–86
java.sql.Connection interface JGR–84
java.sql.DatabaseMetaData interface JGR–85
java.sql.Date JGR–86
java.sql.Driver interface JGR–85
java.sql.PreparedStatement interface JGR–86
java.sql.ResultSet interface JGR–86
java.sql.ResultSetMetaData interface JGR–86
java.sql.Statement interface JGR–85
java.sql.Time JGR–86
java.sql.Timestamp JGR–86
JAVAENV data set
  creating JGR–59
  sample JGR–60
JAVAERR DD statement JGR–9
JAVAOUPUT DD statement JGR–9
JBP (Java Batch Processing)
  applications APDG–37
  databases that can be accessed APDG–29
JBP (Java batch processing) regions JGR–i
JBP (Java batch processing) regions
  DB2 UDB for z/OS access
  application programming JGR–32
  configuring JGR–15
  programming model JGR–28
description JGR–7
IVP JGR–11
IVP
  samples.tar file JGR–12
  program switching JGR–33
  programming models JGR–27
JCB (job control block) trace
  content DGR–217
  function codes DGR–218
  output sample DGR–218
JCB definition/mapping macro DGR–58
JCL (job control language)
  generated by DBRC DBRC–6
  generating DBRC–311
  printing 6701-MRQE records DGR–288
  printing QCF SCRAPLOG records DGR–287
  skeletal execution members explained DBRC–6
  tailoring for utilities DBRC–11
JCL (Job Control Language)
  for allocating data sets ADB–312
  for initial load program ADB–325
JCL (job control language), requirements APDB–340,
  APDB–344, APTM–410, APTM–414
JCL allocation DBRC–45
JCLIN ISDT–51
JCLOUT parameter
  command GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–182
  skeletal JCL DBRC–312
JCLPDS parameter
  commands DBRC–182
  commands
    GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–182
    GENJCL.CA DBRC–186
    GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–190
    GENJCL.IC DBRC–197
    GENJCL.OIC DBRC–204
    GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–208
    GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–213
    GENJCL.USER DBRC–218
  skeletal JCL DBRC–312
JDBC
  connecting to IMS database JGR–94
  Connection object, returning JGR–94
data types JGR–86
  explanation JGR–73
  importing packages JGR–94
  interfaces
    java.sql.Connection JGR–84
    java.sql.DatabaseMetaData JGR–85
    java.sql.Driver JGR–85
    java.sql.PreparedStatement JGR–86
    java.sql.ResultSet JGR–86
    java.sql.ResultSetMetaData JGR–86
    java.sql.Statement JGR–85
  interfaces, limitations JGR–84
  jdbc:dli JGR–94
  sample application JGR–93
  SQL keywords, supported JGR–76
  using JGR–93
  writing an application JGR–93
JDBC drivers
  DB2 JDBC/SQIJ 1.2 driver JGR–15
  DB2 JDBC/SQIJ 2.0 driver JGR–15
  DB2 Universal JDBC driver JGR–15
JES (job entry subsystem)
  failure of AS–255
  planning considerations AS–297, AS–299
JES Spool/Print server APDG–181
JMP (Java Message Processing)
  applications APDG–37
  databases that can be accessed APDG–29
JMP (Java message processing) regions JGR–i
JMP (Java message processing) regions
DB2 UDB for z/OS access
  application programming JGR–32
  configuring JGR–15
  programming model JGR–20
description JGR–7
IVP JGR–8
IVP
  DFSJMP procedure JGR–9
  DFSJVMEV member JGR–9
  DFSJVMMS member JGR–9
  JVM.out file JGR–9
  samples.tar file JGR–9
  program switching JGR–33
programming models JGR–19
JMP applications
  message handling
    conversational transactions JGR–21
    multi-segment messages JGR–23
    multiple input messages JGR–25
    repeating structures JGR–24
  programming models JGR–19
JMP region OG–83
job accounting ISDT–106
job control block.
  See JCB (job control block) trace
Job Control Language
  See JCL (Job Control Language) ADB–312
job control language (JCL)
  See JCL (job control language)
job entry subsystem
  See JES (job entry subsystem)
JOB parameter commands
  GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–182
  GENJCL.CA DBRC–186
  GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–190
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–197
  GENJCL.OIC DBRC–204
  GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–208
  GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–213
  GENJCL.USER DBRC–218
job summary report OG–99
JOB= keyword
  SB Test utility SELECT statement URDBTM–328
JOBCL
  skeleton JCL execution member DBRC–6,
  DBRC–341
JOBLIB DD statement
  Program-Isolation-Trace Report utility (DFSPIRP0)
  URDBTM–320
JOBNAME keyword
  /DISPLAY command
    ACTIVE CR–206
    definition CR–55
JOBS
  using in file-tailoring and execution phase IIV–90
joining segments JGR–79
JOURNAL parameter APDG–180
JRNAD codes DGR–244
JUST= operand (MFLD statement), specifying
URDBTM–451
justification
  of input messages APTM–184
  specifying URDBTM–451
JVM, debugging
  DEBUG=Y JGR–127
  log messages JGR–127
  reset trace events JGR–127
JVMOPMAS=
  parameter description ISDT–270
JVMOPWKR=
  parameter description ISDT–270
K
KSDDD= keyword
  control statements
    UCF FUNCTION=RR URDBTM–360
    UCF FUNCTION=RU URDBTM–362
    UCF FUNCTION=SR URDBTM–367
    UCF FUNCTION=SU URDBTM–367
    UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–371
key compression CG–114
key feedback area
  command-level program APCICS–9
  DB PCB, length field APDB–93
  length field in DB PCB APDB–215
  length field in DIB APCICS–9
overview APDB–93
key sensitivity APDG–85
KEY sensitivity ADB–182
KEY= operand
  MSDB Maintenance utility MSDBINIT statement
  URDBTM–151
KEYRANGE= operand
  DB Database Surveyor utility URDBTM–76
  Partial DB Reorganization Step 1 (DFSPRCT1)
  URDBTM–94
keys
  ascending sequence ADB–61
  concatenated ADB–193, APDB–29
  duplicate ADB–190
  unique in secondary indexes ADB–194
KEYS keyword DBRC–47
keys, data APDG–20
KEYWD macro statement
  ALL parameter CR–17
  generic parameters CR–18
modifying command keyword table CG–167
keyword
  %IC DBRC–358
  %ICDSN2 DBRC–358
  %ICDSN3 DBRC–358
  %ICDSN4 DBRC–358
  %ICUNIT2 DBRC–358
  %ICUNIT3 DBRC–358
  %ICUNIT4 DBRC–358
  %ICVCNT2 DBRC–358
  %ICVCNT3 DBRC–358
  %ICVCNT4 DBRC–358

Index 193
keyword  (continued)
%ICVOLS2 DBRC–358
%ICVOLS3 DBRC–358
%ICVOLS4 DBRC–358
See also individual keyword listings
changes for IMS Version 8 CR–xxv
component identification procedure DGR–19
CONTROLINTERVALSIZE DBRC–46
CYLINDERS DBRC–47
DEFINE CLUSTER DBRC–46
definition DGR–17
dictionary DGR–465
environments
  DB/DC CR–41
  DBCTL CR–41
  DCCTL CR–41
FREESPACE DBRC–47
guidelines for entering CR–16
INDEXED DBRC–47
KEYS DBRC–47
list CR–41
NAME DBRC–47
NONSPANNED DBRC–47
NOWRITECHECK DBRC–47
RECORDSIZE DBRC–47
reserved words CR–783
selecting DGR–19
SHAREOPTIONS DBRC–47
SPEED DBRC–47
substitution DBRC–314
synonyms CR–41
type-of-failure DGR–19
types used with CHNG and SETO calls DGR–342
using dependency keywords DGR–47

keyword procedure
ABENDUxxxx DGR–21
ABENDxxx DGR–20
DOC DGR–23
INCORROUT DGR–25
IRLM DGR–23
MSG DGR–25
PERFM DGR–24
SAP analysis DGR–31
WAIT/LOOP DGR–28

keyword, SYSSERVE APCICS–68

keywords
See also commands, keywords, macro keywords
MAXAPPL IIV–75
MAXREGN IIV–59

keywords, symbolic
See symbolic keywords, JCL execution member
KSCISZ= keyword
  HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0)
  URDBTM–26

KSREC= keyword
  HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0)
  URDBTM–26

L
L (CALL) statement APDB–306, APTM–376
L= keyword
  DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–267
label ISDT–82
label field ISDT–76
LABEL field
  alternate PCB statement URS–116
  DBD generation URS–32
  DL/I PCB statement URS–118
  GSAM PCB statement URS–128
LANG
  PROCLIB member BPE–4
LANG= Option on PSBGEN for PL/I Compatibility with
  Language Environment APDB–114, APTM–58
LANG= parameter
  PSBGEN statement URS–133
Language Environment
  characteristics of CEETDLI APTM–57
  LANG = option for PL/I compatibility APDB–114,
  APTM–58
  supported languages APTM–57
Language Environment for MVS & VM APDB–113
Language Environment for MVS & VM, with IMS
  APTM–57
language independent interfaces APTM–12
language interface CG–551
language interface entry points CG–551
language interface module CG–550, ISDT–461
language interfaces, DL/I APDB–113
language interfaces, DL/I.
  See DL/I interfaces
language unique interfaces APTM–12
language utility
  See MFS language utility
Large SYSGEN Sort/Split Input Exit Routine
  (DFSSS050)
  attributes CG–171
  description CG–171
  IMS callable services CG–171
  IMS environments CG–171
  including the routine CG–171
  link-editing CG–171
  naming convention CG–171
  registers
    contents on entry CG–172
    contents on exit CG–172
  restrictions CG–171
  sample routine location CG–171
  using callable services CG–171
Large SYSGEN Sort/Split Output Exit Routine
  (DFSSS060)
  description CG–175
  IMS callable services CG–175
  IMS environments CG–175
  including the routine CG–175
Large SYSGEN Sort/Split Output Exit Routine
(DFSSS060) (continued)
link-editing CG–175
naming convention CG–175
registers
  contents on entry CG–176
  contents on exit CG–176
restrictions CG–175
sample routine location CG–175
large system generation
  See LGEN (large system generation)
Large System generation
  See see LGEN
LAST insert rule APCICS–57
last inserted sequential dependent segment, retrieving
the location of the APCICS–59
LASTSCAN command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–532
LATC (latch trace table) BPE–7
LATC parameter ADB–258
Latch Conflict Statistics report
  IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–374
  IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–401
  IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–428
latch trace
  example DGR–211
  format DGR–207
  latch manager trace entries DGR–208, DGR–209
  system locate control function entries DGR–210
  use manager trace entries DGR–209
LB status code APCICS–7
LCCB definition/mapping macro DGR–58
LCD definition/mapping macro DGR–58
LCDSECT definition/mapping macro DGR–58
LCF (logical child first) pointer ADB–156
LCCHILD statement
  abbreviations URS–72
  description ADB–289
  HALDB ADB–290
  HDAM and PHDAM databases URS–70
  HIDAM and PHIDAM databases URS–71
  HIDAM Primary index relationship URS–69
  HIDAM Primary Index relationship URS–69
  HISAM databases URS–70
  in logical relationships ADB–170, ADB–173
  in secondary indexing ADB–203
  INDEX databases URS–72
  keywords URS–72
  logical relationships URS–69
  PSINDEX databases URS–72
  secondary index relationship URS–69
  Secondary Index relationship URS–69
LCL (logical child last) pointer ADB–156
LCRE definition/mapping macro DGR–58
LDEL= operand (DEV statement), specifying
  URDBTM–463
LE dynamic runtime parameters, overriding APTM–112
LE runtime parameter overrides
  enhancements
  introduction to RPG–13
LE runtime parameters
  enhancements
  overview RPG–139
LEAVEGR keyword
  CHECKPOINT command CR–140
  definition CR–56
LEID (list entry ID), definition CQS–2
length field APTM–187
length of key feedback area APDB–215
less-than-relational operator APDB–25
less-than-or-equal-to relational operator APDB–25
LEV definition/mapping macro DGR–58
level in hierarchy ADB–11
LEVEL keyword
  /TRACE command CR–652
  definition CR–56
level number field in DIB APCICS–8
level number, field in DB PCB APDB–92
level of sharing definitions DBRC–19
levels in VSAM index ADB–260
LGDK device ISDT–84
LGEN
  configuration ISDT–30, ISDT–44
  preprocessor ISDT–43
  SMP/E JCLIN ISDT–52
  stage 1 processing ISDT–42
  stage 2 processing ISDT–42
  storage requirements ISDT–46, ISDT–47
  system definition ISDT–42
  system generation ISDT–47
LGEN (large system generation)
  additional data sets AS–48
  assembling the system generation AS–48
  assembly cycles AS–48
  description AS–47
  IMSCTRL macro statement AS–48
  LGENIN data set AS–48
  LGENOUT data set AS–48
  online change AS–48
  stage 1 processing AS–47
  storage requirements AS–48
  system definition AS–48
LGEN subparameter
  checking keywords AS–46
  IMSCTRL macro statement AS–48
  preprocessor AS–230
  stage 1 processing AS–230
LGEN/MODBLKS system generation
  description AS–48
  online change AS–48
LGEN/MSVERIFY system generation
  description AS–48
  online change AS–48
LIBPATH ENVAR keyword JGR–60
libraries
  active AS–81
  active and inactive IIV–55
Index 195
libraries (continued)
IMS.ACBLIB ADB–299
IMS.DBDLIB ADB–287
IMS.PSBLIB ADB–296
inactive AS–81
maintenance AS–277, IIV–57
staging AS–81
libraries, online change ATM–79
library status information CR–226
licensed programs, contribution to XRF AS–257
limit access with signon security APDG–91
limit count scheduling AS–62
limit priority scheduling AS–62
limiting
number of full-function database calls APDB–35
limiting IRLM use of CSA, MAXCSA= parameter AS–391
limiting log data CQS–188
limits for locking resources DGR–254
line
inclusive parameter CR–17
line failure AS–255
Line Functions report
IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–426
LINE keyword
/TRACE command CR–653
ASSIGN command CR–102
BROADCAST command CR–114
definition CR–56
DELETE command CR–169
DEQUEUE command CR–182
DISPLAY command
description CR–222
example CR–293
END command CR–343
EXCLUSIVE command CR–357
EXIT command CR–360
IDLE command CR–369
LOOPTEST command CR–405
MONITOR command CR–415
PSTOP command CR–444
PURGE command CR–452
RSTART command CR–546
START command CR–585
STOP command CR–608
TEST command CR–644
LINE macro
CONFIG macro, and ISDT–76
description ISDT–110
parameters ISDT–110
parameters
ADDR= ISDT–111
BACKUP= ISDT–111
BUFFSIZE= ISDT–111
CONFIG= ISDT–111
IDS= ISDT–112
MODEL= ISDT–112
RESP= ISDT–112
VERIFY= ISDT–112
syntax diagram ISDT–110
SYSIN Local Card Reader ISDT–113
LINE macro statement
ADDR keyword AS–302
BACKUP keyword AS–303
statement for BTAM terminals AS–71
line problem, diagnosing using DC trace DGR–276
line width URDBTM–469
Line-and-Terminal statistics report URS–457
Line-Functions report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–371
LINEGRP macro
CONFIG macro, and ISDT–76
description ISDT–113
parameters ISDT–114
parameters
BACKUP= ISDT–115
CODE= ISDT–115
DDNAME= ISDT–115
EDIT= ISDT–115
FEAT= ISDT–115
MODE= ISDT–116
UNITYPE= ISDT–116
syntax ISDT–113
LINEGRP macro statement IIV–58
LINEGRP macro statement
BACKUP keyword AS–303
System/7 operation AS–73
link
inclusive parameter CR–17
MSC, in ATM–195
priorities, setting ATM–220
queuing time assessments ATM–236
security in MSC ATM–226
status CR–223
link editing, EXEC DLI APCICS–29
LINK keyword
/TRACE command CR–653
ACTIVATE command CR–93
CHANGE command CR–126
CHANGE command
ASR CR–126
COLDSESS CR–126
FORCSESS CR–126
MODE CR–127
SYNCSSESS CR–126
definition CR–56
display command
description CR–223
examples CR–294
IDLE command CR–370
MSASSIGN command CR–417
PSTOP command CR–444
RSTART command CR–546
link problem
diagnosing DGR–365
MSS1 and MSS2 record description DGR–370
link queuing time assessments URS–382, URS–437
link to another online program APDG–57
link-editing, reference APDB–53, APDB–70
Link-Receive Routing exit routine in MSC ATM–211
linkage editor options with EXEC DLI APCICS–29
linking IMS to OS/390 IIV–68
deleting MSC link definitions in an IMSplex ATM–244
MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling)
definitions in an IMSplex ATM–240
LIPB definition/mapping macro DGR–58
list entry controls, definition CQS–2
list entry ID (LEID), definition CQS–2
LIST function (MFS Service utility DFSUTSA0)
URDBTM–417
list header number, definition CQS–2
list header, definition CQS–2
LIST parameter APDG–143
LIST parameter commands
GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–183
GENJCL.CA DBRC–186
GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–191
GENJCL.IC DBRC–197
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–204
GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–209
GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–213
GENJCL.USER DBRC–218
list structure
  defining ADB–146
definition ATM–15
estimating size ADB–146
overflow, definition ATM–15
primary, definition ATM–15
list structure, definition CQS–2
LIST.BKOUT command DBRC–249
LIST.CAGRP command DBRC–250
LIST.DB command DBRC–251
LIST.DBDS DBRC–16
LIST.DBDS command DBRC–253
LIST.DBDSGRP DBRC–17
LIST.DBDSGRP command DBRC–254
LIST.GSG command DBRC–255
LIST.HISTORY DBRC–16
LIST.HISTORY command DBRC–256
LIST.LOG DBRC–11
LIST.LOG (for a category of records) command DBRC–260
LIST.LOG (for a PRILOG family) command DBRC–258
LIST.RECON command
description DBRC–262
fields displayed by command DBRC–425
sample listing DBRC–371
LIST.SUBSYS command DBRC–264
LIST= operand
  alternate PCB statement URS–117
  GSAM PCB statement URS–128
  PSBGEN statement URS–127
listing
  backout records DBRC–249
category of records DBRC–260
change accumulation group DBRC–250
database DBRC–251
database data set DBRC–253
database groups DBRC–254
database histories DBRC–256
global service group DBRC–255
PRILOG family DBRC–258
listing (continued)
  RECON DBRC–262, DBRC–371
  subsystem DBRC–264
listing data elements APDG–11
lists, using with client request CQS–79
LIT (Language Interface Token) ISDT–461
literal fields
  input message, default literals APTM–191
  output message
    length, padding to maximum APTM–449
    length, password parameter APTM–494
    specifying length APTM–451
    system literals APTM–209
    truncating literals APTM–489
    with ISC APTM–450
literals CQS–78
literals, using CQS–78
LKASID parameter
  CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–120
  INIT.DBDS command DBRC–234
LL field APTM–138
LL field
  in input message APTM–15
  in output message APTM–16
LLB definition/mapping macro DGR–58
LMCT keyword
  ASSIGN command CR–102
definition CR–56
LNK parameter for surveillance AS–305
LNK parameter in member DFSHSBxx AS–265, AS–266
LOAD (load), description ADB–314
LOAD command
description ADB–314
examples ADB–314
format ADB–314
options ADB–314
usage ADB–314
load module function CG–17
load module service BPE–70
load module service
  examples BPE–72
  output BPE–71
  parameters BPE–71
load program, writing ADB–314
loading databases
description ADB–305
introduction ADB–5
MSDB (main storage database) ADB–273
sample programs ADB–320, ADB–321
loading ESAP CG–545
loading external subsystem modules CG–546
loading TM exit routines CG–309
LOCAL keyword
  DBDUMP command CR–159
  DBRECOVERY command CR–164
definition CR–56
  MSASSIGN command CR–418
  START command CR–579, CR–582, CR–585
  STOP command CR–606
local list entry CQS–2
local online change CSL–15

Index  197
log (continued)
change accumulation OG–52
compression OG–60
content of OG–59
controlling the characteristics of OG–113
CQS, recovery OG–156
Data Capture exit routine OG–60
data sharing OG–219
errors OG–153
FMTIMS statement example DGR–136
IMS Monitor OG–112
introduction OG–6
MVS OG–49
OLDS OG–45
records
printing OG–95
reports OG–96
sync points OG–43
records gaps OG–281
recovery OG–154
reducing OG–60
RLDS OG–48
RSR OG–268
RSR tracking OG–265
SLDS OG–47
system utilities OG–95
tracing OG–51
WADS OG–46
log (data) recovery CG–199
log (data) recovery
emergency restart (online) CG–200
Log Recovery utility CG–200
LOG (Log) call
description APDB–163
format APDB–163
parameters APDB–163
restrictions APDB–165
usage APDB–164
log allocation record DBRC–56
Log Analysis report ATM–237
Log Analysis report
ID column for MSC entries ATM–237
MSC transactions ATM–237
Log Analysis utility
Fast Path (DBFULTA0) URS–291
log analysis, database-related DGR–255
log analysis, Fast Path information ADB–333
Log Archive exit routine (IMSEXIT)
description CG–179
Log Archive Exit Routine (IMSEXIT)
IMS callable services CG–179
IMS environments CG–179
including the routine CG–179
link-editing CG–179
naming convention CG–179
parameters CG–179
record types CG–190
sample routine CG–182
sample routine location CG–179
termination CG–181
written log CG–191
Log Archive utility IIV–52, OG–50

Log Archive utility (DFSUARC0)
- Batch DASD SLDS archive URS–216
- control statements URS–222
- COPY statement URS–223
- copying log records into user data sets URS–217
- creating an RLDS URS–216
- DD Statements URS–220
- description DBRC–11, URS–215
- error processing URS–225
- examples URS–226
- EXIT statement URS–225
- IMSPLEx parameter URS–220
- JCL requirements URS–220
- OLDS archive URS–215
- OLDS input URS–217
- omitting log records on SLDS URS–217
- optional functions URS–216
- program output URS–218
- RLDS (Recovery Log Data Set) URS–216
- SLDS input URS–218
- SLDS statement URS–222
- specifying forced end of volume URS–217
- specifying user exit routines URS–217

LOG call APTM–113

LOG call
- description APDG–160, APTM–113
- examples APTM–115
- format APTM–114
- on LOG I/O area APTM–115
- parameters APTM–114
- restrictions APTM–115
- restrictions on I/O area APTM–115
- summary APTM–347
- usage APTM–115
- use in monitoring APDG–168

LOG call function APDB–313, APTM–383

LOG command
- description APCICS–72, CR–403
- environments CR–403
- example CR–403
- examples APCICS–73
- format APCICS–73
- options APCICS–73
- restrictions APCICS–73
- syntax diagram CR–403
- usage APCICS–73

log control
- valid commands DBRC–11

log data set, retrieving call image capture data DGR–222

log data sets, records DBRC–50, DBRC–51

log error ID record, interim
- Log Recovery utility URS–237

log facility concepts AS–26

log facility, Fast Path performance ADB–382

Log Filter Exit Routine (DFSFTFX0) (continued)
- IMS callable services CG–194
- IMS environments CG–194
- IMS-supplied Log Filter exit routine CG–196
- including the routine CG–194
- initialization and termination calls CG–196
- link-editing CG–194
- naming convention CG–194
- recovery environment CG–196
- sample routine location CG–194

log management, RSR AS–330

Log Merge utility ATM–236

Log Merge utility
- log output, control of ATM–236
- MSC logs ATM–236

Log Merge utility (DFSLTMG0)
- control of log output URS–383, URS–437
- control statement format URS–229
- controlling the log merge URS–229
- coordinating MSC logs URS–383, URS–437
- DD Statements URS–231
- description URS–229
- JCL requirements URS–231
- MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling) URS–229
- program inputs URS–229
- program outputs URS–231
- restriction URS–229
- sample control statement URS–231

LOG parameter
- DBD statement URS–29
- for surveillance AS–305
- in member DFSHSBxx AS–265, AS–266
- SEGMENT statement URS–67

log record
- Statistical Analysis utility URS–326

log records
- all records used to analyze IMS problems DGR–113
- control statements for printing CQS–187
- copying CQS–188
- data area format DGR–128
- DD statements for printing CQS–187
- description CQS–185, DGR–459
- enhancements for IMS Version 8 RPG–223
- for service errors DGR–347
- JCL for printing CQS–187
- limiting log data CQS–188
- log sequence field format DGR–128
- prefix area format DGR–127
- printing CQS–187, DGR–461
- produced by Spool API DGR–346
- record format field DGR–128
- table CQS–185, DGR–459
- type 18 APDG–61
- type 67D0 DGR–123, DGR–346, DGR–347
- type X'49' DGR–126
- type X'50' DGR–256
- type X'67' DGR–127, DGR–130
- type X'6703' DGR–305
- type X'67D0' DGR–123
- type X'68' DGR–346
- types CQS–185, DGR–459
log records (continued)
  viewing format CQS–185, DGR–113, DGR–459
  X'18' APDG–42
log records, deleting DBRC–76
Log Recovery utility OG–154
Log Recovery utility (DFSULTR0)
  active region messages URS–240
  CLS mode URS–233
  CLS mode error listing URS–237
  Control Statements URS–243
  creating a new log URS–245
  creating an interim log URS–244
  DD statements URS–241
  description URS–233
  dual log input URS–235
  Dump of data records URS–239
  DUP mode URS–233
  DUP mode error listing URS–237
  DUP mode, warning URS–233
  error block listing (SYSPRINT) URS–237
  error processing URS–246
  examples URS–247
  generating a job DBRC–189
  input URS–234
  interim log error ID record URS–237
  JCL requirements URS–241
  modes URS–233, URS–236
  OLDS recovery URS–234
  output URS–236
  print active PSB reports URS–246
  PSB mode URS–233
  REP mode URS–233
  REP mode verification messages URS–239
  single log input URS–234
  SLDS recovery URS–234
log reduction ADB–334
log router AS–320, DGR–432
log router
  conversations OG–270
  RSR OG–270
log sequence field format DGR–128
Log Service exit routine CG–558
log subrecord and data area formats DGR–128
LOG system service call APDG–174
log token, definition CQS–2
Log Transaction Analysis utility (DFSILTA0) OG–96
Log Transaction Analysis utility (DFSILTA0)
  description URS–319
  ID column for MSC entries URS–438
  MSC statistics URS–383, URS–437
  parameter descriptions URS–320
  program inputs URS–320
  program outputs URS–320
  reports produced
    description URS–460
    Log-Analysis report URS–460
  save queue times AS–202
  used for monitoring AS–179
Log Transaction Analysis utility, MSC statistics ATM–236
log volumes, specifying (continued)
  all DBRC–32
log write-ahead (LWA) ATM–257
log, FMTIMS statement example DGR–133
log, system APDG–32
LOGCHAR macro AS–262
LOGCLJCL skeletal JCL execution member DBRC–350
Logger exit routine (DFSLGXX0)
  initialization call CG–200
Logger Exit Routine (DFSLGXX0) CG–199
Logger Exit Routine (DFSLGXX0)
  attributes CG–200
    description CG–199
    IMS callable services CG–200
    IMS environments CG–199
    including the routine CG–200
    link-editing CG–199
    naming convention CG–199
    OLDS/SLDS write call CG–200
    parameter list CG–202
    registers
      contents on entry CG–201
      contents on exit CG–205
      sample routine location CG–200
    termination call CG–201, CG–204
    using callable services CG–199
Logger Exit Routine (DFSLGXX0))
  registers CG–201
logging
  accumulating logs using DFSUCUM0 DBRC–31
  coexistence considerations RPG–55
  condensing logs using DFSUCUM0 DBRC–31
  dual OG–45, OG–54
  overview OG–11
  reducing, for Fast Path OG–51
  single OG–54
  understanding OG–45
logging in MSC AS–180
logging off from XRF IMS AS–261
logging off, definition ATM–13
logging on to alternate IMS AS–264
logging on to alternate subsystem AS–257
logging on to XRF IMS
  illustration of AS–263
  procedure for user AS–260
  processing of logon message AS–261
logging on, definition ATM–13
logging, MSC ATM–233
logic
  for initial load program ADB–320
  for restartable initial load program ADB–322
logic review AS–34
logical AND, Boolean operator APDB–193
logical child APDB–208
logical child first (LCF) pointer ADB–156
logical child in logical relationships ADB–150, ADB–154
logical child last (LCL) pointer ADB–156
logical child segments
  restrictions for HALDBs APDB–18
logical databases ADB–160
logical DBD ADB–174, ADB–181
logical destinations in MSC ATM–200
logical LINK
  starting DC trace DGR–270
  stopping DC trace DGR–270
logical link path ATM–196
logical link path
  commands for controlling ATM–230
  effect of commands on OG–106
  in MSC ATM–196
  queue counts CR–231
  verifying consistency OG–110
logical links, multisystem control block URDBTM–428
logical network design ATM–32
LOGICAL operand
  DATASET statement URS–35
logical OR, Boolean operator APDB–193
logical page
  selection
    conditional URDBTM–480
logical page advance function (NEXTLP), MFS
  ATM–450
logical page advance request
  See NEXTLP request
logical page request
  See LPAGE
logical page requests function (PAGE=nn), MFS
  ATM–450
logical page. See LPA GE LPAGE
  input APTM–190
logical parent APDB–208
logical parent in logical relationships ADB–150,
  ADB–154
logical parent pointer
  See LP (logical parent) pointer ADB–154
logical parent's concatenated key (LPCK) ADB–155
logical record length (LRECL) URDBTM–172
logical records
  HD (Hierarchical Direct) ADB–90
  HISAM ADB–65, ADB–241, ADB–244
  overhead ADB–308
  secondary indexes ADB–191
logical relationships ADB–52
logical relationships
  analyzing requirements ADB–53
  and Data Capture exit routine ADB–217
  bidirectional physically paired ADB–150
  bidirectional virtually paired ADB–153
  comparison with secondary indexes ADB–206
  concatenated segments ADB–161
  counter ADB–162
  crossing ADB–175, ADB–178
  defining APDG–82
  delete rule restrictions ADB–217
  delete rules ADB–180, ADB–439, ADB–469
  description APDG–80
  description of ADB–149, ADB–181
  DLET calls ADB–441
  DLIModel utility example JGR–115
  effect on programming APDB–210
  establishing ADB–164
  example APDG–80
logical relationships (continued)
  insert rules ADB–180, ADB–430, ADB–433
  intersection data ADB–162
  introduction APDB–208
  ISRT call ADB–430
  loading databases ADB–326
  logical child ADB–150, ADB–154, APDB–208
  logical parent ADB–150, ADB–154, APDB–208
  paths ADB–160, ADB–161
  performance considerations ADB–181
  physical parent ADB–150, ADB–154, APDB–208
  pointers ADB–154, ADB–159
  procedures for adding to existing databases
  ADB–393
  processing segments APDB–208
  programming, effect APDB–208
  REPL call ADB–434
  replace rules ADB–180, ADB–433, ADB–437
  restrictions on modifying ADB–409
  rules ADB–469
  rules for defining ADB–173, ADB–174, ADB–175,
  ADB–181
  secondary indexes, with ADB–201
  sequence fields ADB–168, ADB–169
  specifying in DBD ADB–170, ADB–173, ADB–174,
  ADB–175
  status codes APDB–211
  uses ADB–149
  virtual logical children ADB–169
logical structure APDB–208
logical term name ISDT–128, ISDT–130
logical terminal
  See also see LTERM
  effect of commands on OG–105
  LTERM keyword CR–56
logical terminal (LTERM)
  See also LTERM (logical terminal)
  MSC and ATM–211
logical terminal name, field in I/O PCB APDB–89,
  APTM–47
logical terminal, ending APCICS–69, APCICS–81
logical unit
  See LUNIT command
  LOGMODE parameter IIV–75
logical unit attributes
  LUNIT command
  LOGMODE parameter IIV–75
logical unit of work
  See LUNIT command
logical unit of work, ending APCICS–69, APCICS–81
logical unit status command
  See LUNIT command
logical units, multisystem control block
  URDBTM–425, URDBTM–430
logical twin backward (LTB) pointer ADB–158
logical twin chains ADB–183
logical twin forward (LTF) pointer ADB–158
logical twin pointer ADB–475
logical unit
  definition ATM–6
    programmable, definition ATM–8
logical unit definitions for VTAM IIV–75
logical unit name
  LUNAME keyword CR–57
logical unit of work
  See LUNIT command
logical unit of work, ending APCICS–69, APCICS–81
logical unit status command
  See LUNIT command
LOGMODE parameter IIV–75
logo panel IIV–97
Logoff Exit Routine (DFSLGFX0) CG–323
Logoff Exit Routine (DFSLGFX0) attributes CG–323
Logoff Exit Routine (DFSLGFX0) (continued)
description CG–323
IMS callable services CG–323
IMS environments CG–323
including the routine CG–323
link-editing CG–323
naming convention CG–323
registers CG–324
registers
contents on entry CG–324
contents on exit CG–325
sample routine location CG–323
using callable services CG–323
XRF considerations CG–323
LOGON APPLID command AS–261
logon descriptor
definition ATM–140
generic, definition ATM–140
group, definition ATM–141
specific, definition ATM–141
Logon exit routine (DFSLGNX0)
See DFSLGNX0 (Logon exit routine)
Logon Exit Routine (DFSLGNX0) CG–327
Logon Exit Routine (DFSLGNX0) attributes CG–327
description CG–327
IMS callable services CG–328
IMS environments CG–327
including the routine CG–328
link-editing CG–327
logon descriptors CG–328
LOGOND= keyword CG–328
naming convention CG–327
registers CG–329
registers
contents on entry CG–329
contents on exit CG–330
sample routine location CG–328
using callable services CG–327
XRF considerations CG–328
Logon message
definition of AS–260
example of AS–261
illustration of AS–263
processing of AS–261, AS–263
Logon mode
default logon mode table ATM–265
session initiation ATM–439
LOGON MODE table ATM–61
LOGOND keyword
definition CR–56
OPNDST command CR–438
LOGOND= keyword CG–328
LOGR (system logger) policy CQS–12
LOGRET parameter
INIT.RECON DBRC–245
LOGRET parameter of CHANGE.RECON DBRC–145
long busy ADB–146
long data type JGR–86
lookaside
defining VSO private buffer pool ADB–137
lookaside (continued)
key
CHANGE.DBDS command ADB–139
INIT.DBDS command ADB–139
VSO buffer pool option ADB–142
loop, diagnosing a control or DLI region DGR–10
loop, diagnosing an IMS dependent region DGR–11
LOOPTEST command
description CR–405
environments CR–405
example CR–405
LINE keyword CR–405
PTERM keyword CR–405
syntax diagram CR–405
looptest mode
DISPLAY LINE PTERM command CR–405
LOPEN keyword
definition CR–56
RSTART command CR–546
lost messages in MSC ATM–227
low-level dump formatting DGR–153
LP (logical parent) pointer ADB–154
LP (logical parent) pointer
correcting bad pointers ADB–475
definition ADB–154
performance considerations ADB–181
LPAGE
to, conditional LPAGE selection APTM–301
operands URDBTM–444
operands
COND= URDBTM–444
NXT= URDBTM–444
PROMPT= URDBTM–444
SOR= URDBTM–444
output APTM–204
output
conditional selection URDBTM–444
format APTM–273
formatting with multiple APTM–206
overview APTM–190
LPCK (logical parent's concatenated key) ADB–155
LPRI keyword
ASSIGN command CR–102
BMP transactions CR–102
definition CR–56
LRECL (logical record length) URDBTM–172
LRECL format DGR–103
LSO (local storage option)
DL/I address space, specifying ISDT–4
PSB pools, defining ISDT–5
storage considerations ISDT–4
LSO (local storage option)
affect of LSO=Y on accounting procedures AS–79
for IRLM control blocks AS–391
online execution parameter AS–100
specifying DL/I address space with AS–77
specifying for online systems AS–100
LSO= CG–9
LSR (Local Shared Resources option) DBRC–46
List
execution phase action command IIV–120
file-tailoring action command IIV–112
variable-gathering action command IIV–106

LST mode
file-tailoring phase IIV–114
panel IIV–106
using action codes IIV–106
variable-gathering phase IIV–106

LST Mode
DOC action panel for variable gathering IIV–108
execution phase IIV–120

LTB (logical twin backward) pointer ADB–158
LTB definition/mapping macro DGR–58

LTERM
status CR–223
ADB–125, OTMA–8

LTERM
POOL macro ISDT–133
specifying ISDT–128
static user assignment OG–109
sysplex, in a ATM–129

LTERM (logical terminal)
chains ATM–33
component definition ATM–375
convention for naming ATM–272, ATM–444
definition ATM–10, ATM–26
definition to RM ATM–129
master terminal ATM–35
method for naming ATM–443
name uniqueness ATM–127, ATM–129
network design ATM–32
queues ATM–33
relationship to physical terminals ATM–32
resource type consistency ATM–128
separating input and output devices ATM–34
subpools, users and components ATM–272

LTERM control block
preventing deletion of CR–66, CR–107

LTERM creation CG–379

LTERM keyword
/DISPLAY command
EMHQ CR–224
QCNT CR–224

ASSIGN command
data considerations CR–105
description CR–103
master terminal CR–103
physical terminal CR–103
PRIMARY parameter CR–104

BROADCAST command
ALL parameter CR–115
description CR–114

 definition CR–56
DELETE command CR–169
DEQUEUE command CR–183

DISPLAY command
description CR–223
examples CR–294
FORMAT command CR–363
genetic parameters CR–18
IAM command CR–367

LTERM keyword (continued)
LOCK command CR–400
PSTOP command CR–445
PURGE command CR–452
RMxxxxxx command CR–538
SET command CR–559
START command CR–586
STOP command CR–609
UNLOCK command CR–670

LTERM security AS–121

LTERM security
LTERM profiles AS–121
password protection with commands AS–123
restricting commands to terminals AS–122

LTERM support for APPC CG–332

LTERM, local and remote APDG–133

LTERM, remote
ETO, and CG–381

LTERM= operand
PCB TYPE=TP parameter URS–116

LTF (logical twin forward) pointer ADB–158
LTH= operand (DFLD statement), specifying
URDBTM–495
LTH= operand (MFLD statement), specifying
URDBTM–451
LU 6 terminal
TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
VTAM devices ISDT–139
LU 6.2 URS–181
LU 6.2
application programs APTM–10
command authorization AS–121
conversations APTM–144
descriptors AS–53, ATM–27
LU 6.2 application program
DEALLOCATE CR–360
descriptor CR–218
ending conversations CR–360
EXIT command CR–360
network-qualified LU name
status CR–218
status
related activity CR–209
specific device CR–224
LU 6.2 device
allocating a synchronous conversation CR–9
command
format CR–9
response CR–12
security defaults CR–37
supported CR–36
multisegment command input CR–7
releasing a conversation CR–533
stop scheduling transactions CR–605
LU 6.2 devices, signon security APDG–91

LU 6.2 Edit Exit Routine (DFSLUEE0)
attributes CG–331
changing a message CG–332
description CG–331
IMS callable services CG–331
IMS environments CG–331

Index 203
LU 6.2 Edit Exit Routine (DFSLUEE0) (continued)
including the routine CG–331
link-editing CG–331
LTERM support for APPC CG–332
MOD name support for APPC CG–332
naming convention CG–331
parameter list format CG–334
registers CG–332
registers
contents on entry CG–332
contents on exit CG–333
sample routine location CG–331
using callable services CG–331
LU 6.2 partner program design
DFSAPPC message switch APDG–133
flow diagrams APDG–113
integrity after conversation completion APDG–131
scenarios APDG–124
LU 6.2 user data area CG–309
LU 6.2 User Edit Exit
using APTM–27
LU Manager Trace DGR–314
LUDEFN= operand (PDB statement), specifying
URDBTM–506
LUNAME keyword
/TRACE command CR–653
ALLOCATE command CR–95
definition CR–57
DEQUEUE command CR–183
DISPLAY command
description CR–224
examples CR–295, CR–296
EXIT command CR–360
network-qualified LU name CR–183
START command CR–586
STOP command CR–609
LUSIZE= operand (PDB statement), specifying
URDBTM–505
LUSTATUS command ATM–341
LUSTATUS command
CICS ATM–537, ATM–558
commit ATM–343
conversation mode
requesting normal termination ATM–318
sending errors ATM–318
function abort ATM–342
NO-OP ATM–343
paging errors ATM–344
protocol ATM–341
queue empty ATM–342
response mode errors ATM–317
SLU P system ATM–491
terminating test mode ATM–269
LWA (log write-ahead) ATM–319
LXB (continued)
DFSCMC00 module, MSC analyzer DGR–371
DFSCMC10 module
abnormal-end appendage DGR–373
channel-end appendage DGR–373
shutdown appendage DGR–373
LXB trace
DFSCMC40 module
attention DIE routine DGR–372
I/O request DIE routine DGR–372
DFSCMC50 module
shutdown processing routine DGR–371
example DGR–374
using DGR–370
M
M command code
examples APDB–40
subset pointers, moving forward APDB–40
macro
DEQ DBRC–44
DFP Record Management Services DBRC–44
GRS DBRC–43
IMSTCTRL DBRC–11
OBTAIN DBRC–44
RESERVE DBRC–43
macro keywords ATM–59
macro keywords
APPLID on COMM macro ATM–58
COMM on BUFPOLS macro ATM–59
CPLOG on IMSCTF macro AS–76
EDIT on TRANSACTION macro AS–58, AS–59
INQ on TRANSACTION macro AS–57
INQUIRY on TRANSACTION macro AS–59
MAXREGN on IMSCTRL macro AS–74
MODE on TRANSACTION macro AS–58
MODETBL on ETO logon descriptor ATM–61
MODETBL on TERMINAL macro ATM–61
MSGTYPE on TRANSACTION macro AS–59
NORACFCM on SECURITY macro AS–136
PASSWD on COMM macro ATM–58
PASSWD on SECURITY macro AS–123, AS–135
PROCLIM on TRANSACTION macro AS–59
PTY on TRANSACTION macro AS–62
RACFCOM on SECURITY macro AS–136
RCLASS on SECURITY macro AS–135, AS–142
RECANY on COMM macro ATM–59
SECCNT on SECURITY macro AS–135
SECVL on SECURITY macro AS–123, AS–135
SPA on TRANSACTION macro AS–58
SYSTEM on IMSCTRL macro AS–47
TERMNAL on SECURITY macro AS–123, AS–135
TRANCMD on SECURITY macro AS–123, AS–135
TYPE on SECURITY macro AS–133, AS–135
WFI on TRANSACTION macro AS–57
macro statements
APPLCTN
description ISDT–59
online programs, declaring ISDT–9
BUFPOLS
description ISDT–65
MFS pool size, controlling ISDT–7
coding conventions ISDT–59
COMM ISDT–68
CONFIG ISDT–76
CTLUNIT ISDT–77
macro statements (continued)

DATABASE
  data sharing ISDT–8
  online databases, declaring ISDT–9
  FPCTRL ISDT–80
  guidelines ISDT–57
IDLIST ISDT–81
IMSCTF ISDT–82
IMSCtrl
  checkpoint frequency, setting ISDT–3
  data sharing ISDT–8
  description ISDT–85
  LGEN system definition ISDT–42
IMSGEN ISDT–98
LINE ISDT–110
LINEGRP ISDT–113
maximum occurrences ISDT–58
MSGQUEUE ISDT–117
MSLINK ISDT–122
MSNAME ISDT–124
MSPLINK ISDT–125
NAME ISDT–128
POOL ISDT–133
relationships between COMM, IMSGEN, and
  SECURITY ISDT–137
rcode naming rules ISDT–57
RTCODE ISDT–133
SECURITY ISDT–134
SPAREA ISDT–138
STATION ISDT–138
SUBPOOL ISDT–139
system configuration macros
  BUFPOOLS ISDT–2
  FPCTRL ISDT–2
  IMSCTF ISDT–2
  IMSCTRL ISDT–2
  IMSGEN ISDT–2
  MSGQUEUE ISDT–2
  SECURITY ISDT–2
system configuration macros, use of ISDT–2
system definition macros, use of ISDT–1, ISDT–55
TERMINAL
  2740 terminal ISDT–140
  2741 terminal ISDT–140
  2780 terminal ISDT–140
  3270 terminal ISDT–140
  3600 work station ISDT–140
  Finance work station ISDT–140
  LU 6 ISDT–140
  SLU 1 ISDT–140
  SLU 2 ISDT–140
  SLU P ISDT–140
  SPOOL ISDT–140
  System/3 terminal ISDT–140
  System/7 terminal ISDT–140
TRANSACT
  description ISDT–172
  IMS transactions, defining ISDT–12
TYPE ISDT–186
VTAMPOOL ISDT–188

macro table, using ISDT–31
macros
  CSLOREGO CSL–83, CSL–84
  DATABASE APDG–88
  DFSCAOI CG–23
  DFSCCBLK CG–19
  DFSCSTRG CG–16
  DFSMDA APDG–47, IIV–53
  HOST IIV–76
  PCB ADB–287
  PSB ADB–287
  TERMINAL IIV–59
  TRANSACT APDG–37
macros for mapping control blocks DGR–55
macros for XRF system definition AS–301
macros, changed RPG–33
macros, XCF OTMA–45
MADS AS–338
MADSIOT keyword
  /DISPLAY AREA command CR–211
  definition CR–57
  START command CR–587
  STOP command CR–609
MADSIOT (Multiple Area Data Set I/O Timing)
  calculating list structure storage size ADB–146
  CF RM ADB–146
  coupling facility ADB–146
  long busy ADB–146
main storage database
  See also MSDB (main storage database)
  See MSDB (main storage database) ADB–326
Main Storage Database
  See see MSDB
main storage database (MSDB) APDG–71
main storage database (MSDB)
  See also Fast Path, MSDB
  See MSDB (main storage database)
main storage utilization, Fast Path ADB–385
main storage-to-main-storage
  access method trace description DGR–365
  save set trace description DGR–365
main() method JGR–18
maintaining database integrity APCICS–87
maintaining global resource information CSL–96
maintaining separate copies of data sets AS–311
maintenance ATM–77
maintenance
  databases, planning ADB–261
  secondary indexes ADB–197
  verifying with test system AS–164
  with online change AS–82
  XRF OG–245
maintenance procedures OG–328
maintenance utility (DFSUACB0) ADB–299
major structure APCICS–10
making changes online
  Global Online Change Copy utility URS–204
  Online Change Copy utility URS–197
making CICS ready ATM–552
making IMS ready ATM–298, ATM–461

Index  205
making keys unique using system related fields  
ADB–194
managing structure usage CQS–41
managing subset pointers in DEDBs with command codes APDB–224
managing system definition  
initialization AS–43
online change AS–43, AS–229
mandatory data sets  
replication IIV–60
shared IIV–60
many-to-many mapping ADB–46, APDG–21
MAP definition (MAPDEF) APDB–264, APDB–266, APTM–320, APTM–322
map name  
See *mapname
MAP reading (MAPGET) APDB–264, APDB–268, APTM–320, APTM–324
MAP writing (MAPPUT) APDB–264, APDB–269, APTM–320, APTM–325
mapped conversation, APPC APDG–107
mapping  
MAPDEF APDB–266, APTM–322
MAPGET APDB–268, APTM–324
MAPPUT APDB–269, APTM–325
mapping control blocks.  
See control block mapping
mapping data aggregates ADB–46
mapping macros for control blocks DGR–55
mappings, determining APDG–21
marooned data, definition AS–321
mask  
AIB APDB–94
DB PCB APDB–91
mask, data APDG–6
master CQS, definition CQS–2
master database  
definition AS–319
Master IMS control region AS–402
MASTER keyword  
definition CR–57
MASTER parameter  
BROADCAST command CR–115
DISPLAY command  
description CR–226
examples CR–298
RDISPLAY command CR–513
SMCOPY command CR–570
master terminal ATM–62
master terminal  
ASSIGN command CR–99
choice of device AS–72
configuring ISDT–23
defining  
for BTAM AS–302
for VTAM AS–302
definition AS–10
device choice ATM–35
devices, choosing ISDT–22, ISDT–23
display screen CR–4
display screen format CR–3
master terminal (continued)  
entering commands CR–3
IMSplex, in an AS–414
issuing timeout APTM–131
logon requirements ATM–62
messages to CR–14
MSC routing ATM–211
reserving an LTERM ATM–26
security  
enforcing security options AS–123
use of signon verification AS–123
status CR–226
UNLOCK DATABASE command CR–670
UNLOCK PROGRAM command CR–670
UNLOCK TRANSACTION command CR–670
XRF complex ATM–35
XRF display screen format CR–4
master terminal devices OG–372
master terminal operator (MTO)  
See MTO (master terminal operator)
master trace table Size, MVS DGR–6
master-slave MSC relationship ATM–196
MATRIX IIV–62
MATRIX library URS–197
MATRIX library  
switching to inactive libraries
MODIFY command CR–407
MAX keyword JGR–83
MAXAPPL keyword IIV–75
MAXCONV keyword
START command CR–747
MAXCSA= parameter AS–391
MAXCSA= parameter
START irlmproc command CR–698
maximum length of command input from MVS consoles CR–7
maximum number of generations, image copy data sets,
GENMAX parameter DBRC–119, DBRC–231
maximum size  
HALDB ADB–79
HDAM database ADB–79
HIDAM database ADB–79
PHDAM database ADB–79
PHIDAM database ADB–79
MAXOLDS parameter GENJCL.ARCHIVE command DBRC–183
MAXPROCS keyword OG–272
MAXQ and Q command code APDB–35
MAXQ= parameter keyword
PSBGEN statement URS–134
MAXREGN keyword IIV–59
MAXREGN keyword
CHANGE command CR–129
definition CR–57
MAXSLDS keyword CR–129
MAXUSRS= parameter
START irlmproc command CR–698
MBR parameter ADB–175
MBR= parameter
DBD generation URS–12
MBR=parameter (continued)
  PSB generation URS–113
MCS (multiple console support) console CR–6
MDT (modified data tag) APTM–219
measurements and tuning IMS CR–68
medical database example APDB–20
medical database example
  description APCICS–2, APDB–20
  segments APCICS–2, APDB–20
MEMBER keyword
  definition CR–57
MEMBER parameter commands
  GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–183
  GENJCL.CA DBRC–187
  GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–191
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–197
  GENJCL.OIC DBRC–204
  GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–209
  GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–213
  GENJCL.USER DBRC–217
  INIT.DBDSGRP DBRC–235
members
  See skeletal JCL
memory-to-memory link in MSC ATM–195
merging logs DBRC–33
merging logs for MSC ATM–236, URS–383, URS–437
message
  See also system messages
  AOI OG–192
  architected form OTMA–56
  batching AS–63
  bypassing MFS editing ATM–84
  control characters ATM–86
  control information summary OTMA–65
  CQS0009W CQS–33
  CQS0020I CQS–34
  CQS0031A CQS–34
  CQS0032A CQS–35, OG–140
  CQS0033A CQS–37, CQS–98
  CQS0034A CQS–34, CQS–46
  CQS0102E CQS–36
  CQS0205E CQS–41
  CQS0242E CQS–63
  CQS0288I CQS–25
  CQS0300I CQS–49
  destination
    CHANGE DESCRIPTOR command CR–124
    destination determination OTMA–40
  DFS3871I OG–236
  DFS3872I OG–236
  DFS3873I OG–236
  DFS3906I OG–146
  DFS3907I OG–146
  DFS395A OG–157
  DFS554A OG–70
  DFS555I OG–70
  DFS681I OG–157
  DFS682I OG–157
  editing
    description APTM–19
    input message APTM–20, APTM–22
message (continued)
  editing (continued)
    output APTM–21
    output message APTM–21, APTM–27
    skipping line APTM–20
    using Basic Edit APTM–20
    using ISC Edit APTM–21
    using LU 6.2 User Edit Exit APTM–27
    using MFS Edit APTM–21
  editing of output segments ATM–85
  editing performed by IMS ATM–82
  encryption OTMA–45
  examples of how to select OTMA–43
  expedited message handling AS–25
  extending OTMA–4
  Fast Path exclusive AS–25
  field
    architecture level OTMA–69
    chain flag OTMA–74
    command type OTMA–70
    commit-confirmation flag OTMA–70
    message type OTMA–69
    prefix flag OTMA–74
    processing flag OTMA–73
    reason code OTMA–75
    recoverable sequence number OTMA–75
    response flag OTMA–70
    segment sequence number OTMA–75
    send-sequence number OTMA–75
    sense code OTMA–75
    Tpipe name OTMA–74
  flow
    client-bid OTMA–21
    commit-then-send OTMA–17, OTMA–24
    deallocate OTMA–16
    definition OTMA–5
    in full-duplex environment OTMA–12
    resynchronization OTMA–33
    send-then-commit OTMA–18
    send-then-commit with Confirm OTMA–20
    Server-Available OTMA–22
    use of queues in tpipe OTMA–11
    using transaction pipes OTMA–10
    using XCF OTMA–10
  flow in an OTMA environment OTMA–6
  format
    indexing AS–73
    options AS–197
  formatting and editing ATM–79
  from terminals APTM–14
  full-duplex flow OTMA–7
  half-duplex flow OTMA–7
  I/O PCB APTM–19
  IEA793A OG–146
  IEA922E OG–146
  IMS OTMA–58
  IMS handling ATM–14
  in conversations APTM–139
  in-flight
    device LUs ATM–63
    program LUs ATM–63
message (continued)
input APTM–15, APTM–22, AS–9
input
fields, contents of APTM–15
input descriptor (MID), control block APDG–94
IST63 SI OG–244
IXC58SE CQS–42
IXC586I CQS–42
migrating AS–86
MTO ATM–98
output APDG–99, APTM–16, APTM–27, AS–9
output
fields, contents of APTM–16
output descriptor (MOD), control block APDG–94
output segment editing ATM–84
prefix
application data OTMA–87
contents OTMA–22, OTMA–23, OTMA–25
overview OTMA–14
security data OTMA–84
state-data section OTMA–75
syntax OTMA–65
user data section OTMA–86
printing APTM–20
processing of APTM–14
processing of
summary APTM–17
processing options APDG–91
queue
built-in alternate AS–268
data set AS–84
processing during takeover AS–273
recorded on log AS–269
testing users AS–85
queue data set size OTMA–46
queues
using Queue Control Facility OG–103
receiving by program APTM–14
recoverable OTMA–28
result APTM–19
resynchronization
sample OTMA–34
sample OTMA–88
sample
acknowledge receipt of CBResynch OTMA–35
acknowledge receipt of SRVResynch OTMA–35
client-bid request with resynchronization
OTMA–34
REPResynch command OTMA–36
REQResynch command OTMA–35
SRVResynch command OTMA–35
successful resynchronization OTMA–36
sample flows OTMA–21
scheduling AS–59
scheduling
definition ATM–29
Fast Path ATM–20
security checking OTMA–2
selective recovery OTMA–43
sending OTMA–14
sending to other application programs APTM–130
message (continued)
sending to other operators OG–341
sensitivity to nongraphic message data ATM–84
sequence numbers OTMA–15
sequential order OTMA–20
transactions and AS–9
type
command OTMA–69
commit confirmation OTMA–69
data OTMA–69
response OTMA–69
transaction OTMA–69
types APTM–14
Z2 field ATM–86
message advance function (NEXTMSG) ATM–450
message advance protect
See NEXTMSG request
message advance protect function (NEXTMSGP)
ATM–450
message advance request
See NEXTMSG request
message buffering with a Fast Path-capable system
ATM–21
message calls
call summary APTM–347
list of APTM–12
message contention ATM–302, ATM–455
Message Control/Error exit routine (DFSCMUX0)
ATM–223, ATM–232
Message Control/Error Exit Routine (DFSCMUX0)
CG–337
Message Control/Error Exit Routine (DFSCMUX0)
attributes CG–337
calling the routine CG–338
default actions CG–346
description CG–337
exit flags CG–346
IMS callable services CG–338
IMS environments CG–337
including the routine CG–337
interface block (MSNB) CG–342
interface block (MSNB)
contents on entry CG–342
contents on exit CG–343
interface block (MSNB), description CG–341
link-editing CG–337
linking convention CG–337
registers CG–341
registers
contents on entry CG–341
contents on exit CG–341
rerouting messages CG–339
sample routine location CG–338
using callable services CG–337
X’6701’ log record CG–345
message descriptor byte
input FM header ATM–474, ATM–475
output message ATM–480, ATM–481
message editor
See MFS message editor
Message Format Buffer Pool APTM–260
Message Format Buffer Pool Report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–366
IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–423
message format pool
size, estimating ISDT–7
size, specifying ISDT–400
message format service OTMA–45
message format service
See MFS (message format service)
Message Format Service
See MFS (Message Format Service)
Message Format Service (MFS).
See MFS (message format service)
message format service.
See MFS (message format service)
message formatting options
input
description APTM–184
examples APTM–185
performance factors APTM–263
output
description APTM–203
effects on segments APTM–275
performance factors APTM–263
specifying URDBTM–442
Message Formatting Service
See see MFS
message formatting service. See MFS (message format service APTM–20
message headers
See FM (function management) headers
Message Input
Segment Format APTM–16
message input descriptor
See MID (message input descriptor)
message input descriptor (MID)
See MID
message integrity ATM–257
Message Output
Segment Format APTM–17
message output descriptor
See MOD (message output descriptor)
message output descriptor (MOD)
See MOD
message output descriptor name, field in I/O PCB
APDB–89, APTM–48
message output header
See output message header
message processing application
building JGR–16
message processing program
See MPP (message processing program)
Message Processing Region
data communication EXEC parameters ISDT–405,
ISDT–409
parameters, categories and purposes ISDT–404
performance-related parameters ISDT–406
PSB-related EXEC parameters ISDT–405, ISDT–408
recovery-related parameters ISDT–402, ISDT–407,
ISDT–410
Message Processing Region (continued)
region-control EXEC parameters ISDT–405,
ISDT–409
security-related EXEC parameters ISDT–403,
ISDT–407, ISDT–411
message processing regions
starting OG–82
message processing trace
See BUFMSTRA (message processing) trace
message protocol CSL–21
message queue
DASD space allocation IIV–53
data sets
allocation restrictions IIV–53
deleting ATM–107
migration/recall system restrictions IIV–53
space restrictions IIV–53
message queue data set allocation ISDT–117
message queue data sets ISDT–117
Message Queue Pool Report
IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–424
Message Queue Pool Report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–367
Message Queue Space Notification exit routine
(DFSQSPC0) AS–102
message queue, definition ATM–21
message queues
dumping OG–103
recovery OG–103, OG–151
message recovery
Finance Communication System ATM–455
message resynchronization ATM–325, ATM–456
MFS ATM–449
MSC ATM–231
restriction ATM–456
SLU P system ATM–455
message requeuer OTMA–42
Message Requeuer (MRQ) DGR–469
Message Requeuer (MRQ)
AIBREASN Codes list DGR–472
AIBREASN Codes Set by DFSQMRQ0 DGR–469
Message Requeuer (MRQ)/Queue Control Facility (QCF) DGR–283
Message Requeuer (MRQ)/Queue Control Facility (QCF)
AIBREASN codes
description DGR–288
DFSQMRQ0 processor module DGR–283
JCL
printing 6701-MRQE records DGR–288
printing QCF SCRAPLOG records DGR–287
key fields and offsets of diagnostic records DGR–286
key fields in message DGR–287
messages successfully requeued DGR–290
MRQE diagnostic records DGR–287
obtaining additional diagnostics DGR–289
sample of successful message requeue DGR–290
sample SCRAPLOG record and description DGR–285
Message Requeuer program
See MRQ (Message Requeuer program)
message resynchronization ATM–302
message resynchronization associated system definition options ATM–303
CICS-IMS session ATM–570
description ATM–303, ATM–570
design considerations ATM–303, ATM–463
direction and bracket indicators ATM–471
effects on normal data transmission ATM–456, ATM–463
Fast Path ATM–459
how and when initiated ATM–302, ATM–456
last inbound/outbound ATM–456
OPTACK results of specifying ATM–456
options for message sequence numbers ATM–463
performing ATM–570
polarity of half-session pairs ATM–303
purpose ATM–302
requirements ATM–302, ATM–456
send/receive and bracket protocol ATM–471
sequence numbers ATM–303, ATM–464
STSN
flow, primary-to-secondary ATM–312
flow, secondary-to-primary ATM–313
format ATM–314, ATM–464
use of ATM–308
message routing
examples ATM–279, ATM–286
in ISC
across an MSC link ATM–286
use of routing parameters ATM–279
types of ATM–199
message routing routines
Multiple Systems Coupling CG–421
non-discardable messages CG–359
Message Service exit routine CG–559
message sets
TCO OG–188
message switch OTMA–51
message switch
ATTACH FM header ATM–373
examples ATM–280, ATM–286
in shared queues environment OTMA–54
ISC ATM–278, ATM–279
message switch, ISC ATM–268
Message Switching (Input) Edit Routine (DFSCNTE0)
description CG–347
example CG–348
IMS callable services CG–347
IMS environments CG–347
including the routine CG–347
link-editing CG–347
naming convention CG–347
registers
contents on entry CG–347
contents on exit CG–347
sample routine location CG–347
using callable services CG–347
Message Switching (Input) Edit Routine (DFSCNTE0)
attributes CG–347
message switching, DFSAPPc ATM–425
message-control information section of message prefix OTMA–65
message-driven program
IFP application program AS–12
MPP AS–12
message-driven programs AS–24
messages
input, defining JGR–16
migrating RPG–36
multi-segment JGR–23
output, defining JGR–17
prefix size changes RPG–35
repeating structures
defining in IMS Java JGR–24
routing
in an MSC-IMSplex configuration ATM–238
routing by TYPE CSL–89, CSL–90
SPA JGR–21
subsequent JGR–23
messages and codes BPE–2
Messages report
element URS–459
Messages—Program-To-Program Report
element URS–458
Messages—Queued-But-Not-Sent Report
element URS–459
metadata classes
creating JGR–97
generated JGR–100
methods of data storage
combined file APDG–1
database APDG–2
separate files APDG–1
MFLD (message field statement) APTM–184
MFLD (message field statement)
ATTR= operand URDBTM–451
FILL= operand URDBTM–452
FILL=NULL APTM–189
function APTM–184
iterative processing URDBTM–446, URDBTM–448
JUST= operand URDBTM–451
LTH= operand URDBTM–451
printing generated MFLD statements URDBTM–447
MFS
buffer pool use ISDT–507
BUFFPOOLS macro ISDT–503
COMM macro ISDT–503
CONFIG macro ISDT–506
FREs ISDT–507
IMSGEN macro ISDT–503
INDEX directory ISDT–506
MSGQUEUE macro ISDT–503
pool space, allocating ISDT–7
pool space, defining ISDT–7
system definition and programming considerations ISDT–503
TERMINAL ISDT–504
TYPE macro ISDT–504
MFS (message format service) IIV–134, IIV–162
MFS (message format service)
  bypass CR–28
  components APTM–174
  editing message APTM–20
  editing output messages APTM–21
  example APTM–171
  how input messages are formatted by MFS
    APTM–183
  input message
    formats APTM–22, APTM–24, APTM–25,
    APTM–26, APTM–184, APTM–185
  formats input message APTM–184
  introduction APTM–167
  message editor APTM–174
  online performance APTM–168
  output message
    formats APTM–27
    formatting APTM–202
    processing output message APTM–202
    password CR–16
    pool manager APTM–175
    remote programs APTM–179
    supported devices APTM–177
MFS (Message Format Service) ATM–71
MFS (Message Format Service)
  administration ATM–76
  advantages ATM–77
  application programs, accessing with ISC ATM–277
  Bid options ATM–451
  BTAM error
    diagnosing DGR–305
    diagram of normal BTAM path DGR–305
  bypassing MFS ATM–84
  bypassing with ISC application programs ATM–277
  components, overview ATM–79
  control blocks APDG–94
  control functions ATM–449
  control functions
    Finance Communication System ATM–449
    NEXTLP ATM–450
    NEXTMSG ATM–450
    NEXTMSGP ATM–450
    NEXTPP ATM–450
    PAGE=nn ATM–450
    SLU P ATM–450
  control requests, response requirements ATM–488
  data bytes output message ATM–482
  default format ATM–391
  defining ATM–448
  delete characters ATM–85
  diagnosing problems DGR–310
  DPM ATM–479
  DPM option ATM–84
  edit of ISC messages ATM–268
  editing ATM–84
  escape characters, not supported in ISC ATM–363
  facilities available ATM–448
  FM headers ATM–363
  FM headers
    activating input formatting ATM–363
    activating output formatting ATM–364
MFS (Message Format Service) (continued)
  FM headers (continued)
    ATTACH ATM–367
    data descriptor ATM–368
    DPM messages ATM–364
    editing ATM–363
    facilities available ATM–363
    MOD name ATM–364
    QGET ATM–370
    QGETN ATM–370
    QMODEL ATM–369, ATM–372, ATM–567
    QPURGE ATM–371
    QSTATUS ATM–371
    QXFR ATM–371
    RAP (reset attached process), MFS ATM–372
    SCHEDULER ATM–367
    specifying MID name ATM–364
    types ATM–363, ATM–372
  FORMAT command CR–363
  format errors not detected ATM–363
  formatting ATM–462
  formatting
    activating input ATM–462
    activating output ATM–477
  input formatting ATM–363
  input messages ATM–71
  input segments ATM–85
  introduction ATM–71
  invalid paging request ATM–452, ATM–455
  Language utility ATM–72, ATM–79
  libraries, online change ATM–79
  logical paging AS–295
  message editor ATM–79
  message recovery ATM–449
  MFSTEST mode AS–169
  MFSTEST=YES on IMSGEN macro AS–169
  MID/MOD chaining ATM–449
  module trace
    CIBSTRAC DGR–312
    CIBTRACE DGR–313
  MSC ATM–217
  online error detection ATM–365
  online performance ATM–78
  output formatting ATM–449, ATM–483
  output formatting
    MOD name ATM–483
    typical application program procedure ATM–483
  output formatting, ISC ATM–364
  output messages
    editing segments ATM–84
    how MFS defines ATM–71
  overview APDG–94, ATM–11, ATM–71
  page delete function, not supported in ISC ATM–365
  paging, CICS ATM–535, ATM–557
  pool loading recorded on log AS–269
  pool manager ATM–79
  Service utility ATM–79
  SLU P ATM–449
  SLU P
    benefits ATM–449
    station-by-station, availability ATM–449
MFS (Message Format Service) (continued)
sync point, ISC messages ATM–322
terminal keyboard lock and unlock ATM–84
test formats AS–169
testing formats online
  MFSTEST mode AS–169
  online execution requirements AS–169
  system definition requirements AS–169
MFS bypass
printer byte restriction APTM–289
protected and unprotected messages APTM–240
specifying for 3270 or SLU 2 APTM–289
specifying for 3290 with partitioning APTM–291
MFS bypass option effect ATM–72
MFS device characteristics table
  entries ATM–23
  how used ATM–152
  use with non-SNA 3270 devices ATM–153
MFS Device Characteristics table (DFSUDT0x),
description APTM–246
MFS Device Characteristics Table utility (DFSUTB00)
  DD statements
    DCT URDBTM–407
    DCTIN URDBTM–407
    DCTLINK URDBTM–407
    DEFLTS URDBTM–407
    PROCLIB URDBTM–407
    STEPLIB URDBTM–407
    SYSIN URDBTM–407
    SYSLIB URDBTM–407
    SYSLIN URDBTM–407
    SYSLMOD URDBTM–407
    SYSPRINT URDBTM–407
    SYSUT1 URDBTM–407
description URDBTM–403
EXEC statement
  DCTSFUF= URDBTM–406
description URDBTM–406
  DEVCHAR= URDBTM–406
  DSCMSUF= URDBTM–406
  DSCTSUF= URDBTM–406
MFS descriptor format URDBTM–407
MFSDDCT procedure URDBTM–403
PROC statement
  DCTSFUF= URDBTM–406
description URDBTM–405
  DSCMSUF= URDBTM–406
  DSCTSUF= URDBTM–406
restrictions URDBTM–403
MFS device descriptor, definition ATM–141
MFS device, defined pool space AS–73
MFS Distributed Presentation Management (DPM)
  See DPM
MFS dynamic directory AS–74
MFS formats
  changing OG–123
MFS keyword
  TEST command CR–644
MFS language utility APTM–175
MFS language utility
  compilation statements URDBTM–435
  compilation statements
    ALPHA URDBTM–435, URDBTM–510
    COPY URDBTM–435, URDBTM–510
    EJECT URDBTM–515
    END URDBTM–515
    EQU URDBTM–511
    invalid statement sequence URDBTM–437
    PRINT URDBTM–514
    RESCAN URDBTM–512
    SPACE URDBTM–514
    STACK URDBTM–513
    summary URDBTM–439
    syntax URDBTM–435
    syntax errors URDBTM–437
    SYSIN URDBTM–435
    SYSLIB URDBTM–435
    SYSPRINT URDBTM–435
    TITLE URDBTM–514
    UNSTACK URDBTM–513
construction of member names APTM–256
functions APTM–175
modes APTM–175
statistics maintained APTM–175
treatment of EGCS input/output APTM–212
use of MFS libraries APTM–175
MFS Language utility (DFSUPAA0)
  batch mode
    description URDBTM–390
    MFSBTCH1 procedure URDBTM–391
    MFSBTCH2 procedure URDBTM–391
  control blocks URDBTM–383, URDBTM–384
dnames (MFSRVC)
    FORMAT URDBTM–401
    REFIN URDBTM–401
    SYSIN URDBTM–401
    SYSPRINT URDBTM–402
    SYSSNAP URDBTM–401
dnames (MFSULT, MFSBTCH1, and MFSBTCH2)
    DUMMY URDBTM–401
    FORMAT URDBTM–401
    REFOUT URDBTM–401
    REFOUT URDBTM–401
    REFOUT URDBTM–401
    REFOUT URDBTM–401
    REFOUT URDBTM–401
    UPRINT URDBTM–401
description URDBTM–383
  FMTCPY control statement
    MFSBTCH2 procedure URDBTM–392
    MFSULT procedure URDBTM–389
  format set URDBTM–383
JCL parameter descriptions
  COMPR= URDBTM–399
  COMPR2= URDBTM–400
  COMPR3= URDBTM–400
  DEVCHAR= URDBTM–400
  DIRUPDT= URDBTM–400
  DIRUPDT= URDBTM–400
MFS Language utility (DFSUPAA0) (continued)
JCL parameter descriptions (continued)
LN= URDBTM–400
MBR= URDBTM–400
PCOMP= URDBTM–399
PSUBS= URDBTM–399
PXREF= URDBTM–399
RGN= URDBTM–400
SN= URDBTM–400
SNODE= URDBTM–400
SOR= URDBTM–400
SOUT= URDBTM–400
JCL requirements
MFSBACK procedure URDBTM–395
MFSBTCH1 procedure URDBTM–391
MFSBTCH2 procedure URDBTM–392
MFSREST procedure URDBTM–397
MFSTEST procedure URDBTM–394
MFSUTL procedure URDBTM–388
modes URDBTM–383
REFCPY control statement
MFSBTCH1 procedure URDBTM–391
MFSULT procedure URDBTM–389
standard mode (MFSUTL procedure)
phase 1 URDBTM–387
phase 2 URDBTM–387
preprocessor URDBTM–384
region parameter estimate URDBTM–402
test mode (MFSTEST procedure)
description URDBTM–392
phase 1 processor URDBTM–393
phase 2 URDBTM–394
region parameter estimate URDBTM–402
source statement preprocessor URDBTM–393
MFS libraries APTM–175
MFS libraries
IMS.TFORMAT APTM–175
online change APTM–175
MFS message editor APTM–176
MFS pool manager
storage management APTM–176
MFS Service utility ATM–75
MFS Service utility
procedure MFSRVC for index AS–217
use in tuning AS–202
MFS Service utility (DFSUTSA0)
DD statements
STEPLIB DD URDBTM–413
SYSPRINT DD URDBTM–413
SYSSNAP DD URDBTM–413
DELETE function URDBTM–414
description URDBTM–411
EXEC statement
description URDBTM–413
PARM= URDBTM–413
REGION= URDBTM–413
INDEX function URDBTM–414
LIST function
output URDBTM–419
LIST function output URDBTM–417
MFSRVC procedure URDBTM–412
MFS Service utility (DFSUTSA0) (continued)
PROC statement
description URDBTM–412
DEVCHAR= URDBTM–412
SOUT= URDBTM–413
SYS2= URDBTM–413
RELATE function URDBTM–416
restrictions URDBTM–412
SCRATCH function URDBTM–415
utility control statement keywords
DEV= URDBTM–422
DEVCHAR= URDBTM–422
DIV= URDBTM–423
FEAT= URDBTM–423
FMT= URDBTM–421
MDL= URDBTM–423
MSG= URDBTM–421
PDB= URDBTM–422
TBL= URDBTM–422
utility control statement parameters
ALL URDBTM–421
FORMAT URDBTM–421
INDEX URDBTM–421
REFER URDBTM–421
utility control statements URDBTM–420
MFS service utility, INDEX function APTM–176
MFSBACK procedure (MFS Language utility)
backup URDBTM–384
description URDBTM–394
JCL requirements URDBTM–395
MFSBTCH1 procedure (MFS Language utility)
description URDBTM–391
JCL requirements URDBTM–391
MFSBTCH2 procedure (MFS Language utility)
description URDBTM–391
DIRUPDT= URDBTM–388
JCL requirements URDBTM–392
MFSRVC procedure (MFS Service utility) URDBTM–412
MFSTEST (message format service test facility)
ISDT–73, ISDT–108
MFSTEST mode AS–169
MFSTEST mode
TEST command CR–643
MFSTEST procedure ATM–79
MFSTEST procedure (language utility)
pool manager APTM–175, APTM–177
use of IMS.TFORMAT library APTM–175
MFSTEST procedure (MFS Language utility)
JCL requirements URDBTM–394
region parameter estimate URDBTM–402
step 1 (phase 1) URDBTM–393
step 1 (source statement preprocessor)
URDBTM–393
step 2 (phase 2) URDBTM–394
MFSUTL procedure (MFS Language utility)

- DIRUPDT= URDBTM–388
- generation URDBTM–383
- JCL requirements URDBTM–388
- region parameter estimate URDBTM–402
- step 1 (phase 1) URDBTM–387
- step 1 (preprocessor) URDBTM–384, URDBTM–386
- step 2 (phase 2) URDBTM–387

MID (message input descriptor) APTM–169, ATM–79

- description APTM–169
- input formatting functions APTM–184
- language statements used to create URDBTM–438
- relationship to other control blocks APTM–249

MOD (message output descriptor) APTM–168

- description APTM–168
- language statements used to create URDBTM–438
- name specification APTM–288, ATM–364, ATM–483
- purpose ATM–78

migration

- compatibility RPG–53
- Database Image Copy 2 RPG–33
- DB RPG–33
- DBRC RPG–38
- DEDB SDEPs RPG–34
- fallback plan RPG–43
- general RPG–31
- RECON data set RPG–31
- security RPG–37
- specific RPG–33
- HALDBs RPG–34
- IMS to Parallel Sysplex RPG–41
- IMSS to an IMSplex RPG–40

MODE parameter APDG–40, IIV–75

MODE= operand (DEV statement), specifying URDBTM–462

MODE= keyword

/(DISPLAY command

- NODE CR–232
- ALLOCATE command CR–95
- definition CR–57
- OPNDST command CR–438
- RSTART command CR–547

MODE parameter APDG–40, IIV–75

MODEL= parameter

DATASET statement URS–35
modes, terminal
conversation ATM–37
ETO and exclusive mode ATM–38
exclusive mode ATM–38
lock ATM–38
LU 6.2 ATM–37
response ATM–37
SNA QUIESCE ATM–39
test mode ATM–38
MODETBL parameter IIV–75
MODETBL= keyword
overriding the defaults ATM–266
specifying a default LOGON MODE identifier
ATM–61
use during ISC logon ATM–266
modifiable alternate PCBs APDB–243
modifiable alternate PCBs
changing the destination APTM–129
CHNG call APTM–129
description APTM–128
modifiable alternate response PCB ADB–300
modifiable application program
LU 6.2 descriptor ATM–416
MSC APTM–147
remote execution, MSC APTM–147, ATM–408
modified data tag (MDT) APTM–219, URDBTM–497
MODIFY (/MODIFY) command OG–119
MODIFY (/MODIFY) command
PREPARE OG–127
MODIFY command OG–145
MODIFY command
ABORT keyword CR–408
COMMIT keyword CR–408
description CR–407
environments CR–407
examples CR–411
PASSWORD keyword CR–411
PREPARE keyword CR–410
RACF keyword CR–411
syntax diagram CR–407
TERMINAL keyword CR–411
TRANCMDS keyword CR–411
MODIFY FDBRPROC commands
DUMP CR–707
RECOVER CR–707
STATUS CR–707
STOP CR–708
TERM CR–708
MODIFY IMS commands
DUMP CR–701
DUMPxxxx CR–701
FORCExxx CR–702
RECONNECT CR–703
RECONNRSTR CR–704
STOP CR–705
STOPxxxx CR–705
MODIFY irlmproc commands
ABEND CR–709
DIAG,DELAY CR–710
PURGE,imsname CR–711
SET CR–712
MODIFY irlmproc commands (continued)
STATUS CR–715
MODIFY keyword
definition CR–58
DISPLAY command
description CR–226
test mode CR–298, CR–299, CR–300
MODIFY= operand
PCB TYPE=TP parameter URS–116
modifying a database
description of ADB–389
introduction ADB–5
modifyng data set groups
HALDB ADB–294
modname parameter
FORMAT command CR–363
MODS keyword
/DISPLAY MODIFY command CR–229
MODSTAT CSL–15
MODSTAT
DD statement AS–402
MODSTAT data set AS–314, AS–402
MODSTAT record, INITMOD procedure URS–203
MODSTAT2 AS–402
module directory, locating DGR–53
MODULE keyword
/DTRACE command CR–653
definition CR–58
module zap capability
Utility Control Facility (DFSUCF00) URDBTM–341
module-to-function-to-subfunction list DGR–485
module-to-waiting-resource list DGR–557
modules
DFSVC000 IIV–10
DFSVNUCx IIV–10
DRA interface IIV–11
dump formatting (DFSAFMD0) IIV–11
suffix rules IIV–10
MON parameter ADB–332
MONITOR command
description CR–415
environments CR–415
example CR–415
LINE keyword CR–415
PTERM keyword CR–415
syntax diagram CR–415
monitor data set, dynamic allocation
See Dynamic Allocation Macro (DFSMDA)
MONITOR command
/DTRACE command CR–654
/TRACE command
test MODE CR–655
definition CR–58
Monitor Report Print program.
See IMS Monitor Report Print utility
monitor trace interval
IMS Monitor Report (DB/DC) URS–352
IMS Monitor Report (DBCTL) URS–388
IMS Monitor Report (DCCTL) URS–410
Monitor-Overhead report
description URDBTM–318
Monitor-Overhead report  (continued)

fields in the report URDBTM–318

Monitor, IMS

See IMS Monitor

monitoring AS–371

monitoring

/DISPLAY command AS–179, AS–189
and tuning Fast Path systems ADB–333
application program elapsed time

DCCTL URS–417
database buffers
DB/DC URS–369
DBCTL URS–399

DBCTL considerations AS–185
dependent regions
DB/DC URS–355
DBCTL URS–390
DCCTL URS–412
description of ADB–331
establishing objectives AS–188
events for Fast Path ADB–335
Fast Path systems AS–181
for MSC AS–180
frequency AS–179
I/O for application program DL/I calls

DCCTL URS–419
IMS OG–95, OG–319
IMS Monitor OG–98
in test environments AS–166
internal resource usage
DB/DC URS–372
DBCTL URS–401
DCCTL URS–428
introduction ADB–5

IRLM activity OG–206
line activity
DB/DC URS–371
DCCTL URS–426
message handling
DB/DC URS–372
DCCTL URS–427
message queue handling
DB/DC URS–362, URS–367
DBCTL URS–395, URS–397
DCCTL URS–424
message queue users AS–85
MFS activity
DB/DC URS–366
DCCTL URS–423
multiple systems AS–180
procedures AS–173, AS–186
reasons for AS–173
reports ADB–331
strategies AS–173, AS–186
structure OG–207
system OG–206
tools AS–179
using frequency distribution
DB/DC URS–375

monitoring (continued)

using frequency distribution (continued)

DBCTL URS–402
DCCTL URS–429
XRF OG–241
monitoring and tuning, MSC ATM–233
monitoring performance OTMA–46
movement in hierarchy ADB–10

MOVENEXT option
examples APCICS–97
use when moving subset pointer forward APCICS–97
moving subset pointer forward APCICS–97

MPP
message processing
programs IIV–143
regions IIV–151

starting OG–82

MPP (message processing program)
coding in assembler language APTM–156
coding in C language APTM–156
coding in COBOL APTM–158
coding in Pascal APTM–160
coding in PL/I APTM–162
coding necessary information APTM–155
databases that can be accessed APDG–29, APDG–32
description APDG–32
executing APDG–33
input APTM–155
region
characteristics AS–12
definition AS–9
starting AS–12
skeleton MPP APTM–156
stopping processing within a specified region
CR–612

MPPs APCICS–32

MPPs
ROLB APDB–246
MRMB definition/mapping macro DGR–58
MRQ DGR–469
MRQ (Message Requeuer program)
default MRQ BMP program name CR–657
ERESTART BUILDO command CR–348
NRESTART BUILDO command fails CR–429

MRQE diagnostic records
control blocks and mapping macros DGR–288
description DGR–287
sample JCL for printing DGR–288

MSASSIGN (/MSASSIGN) command OG–110

MSASSIGN command
description CR–417
environments CR–417
examples CR–418
LINK keyword CR–417
LOCAL keyword CR–417
MSC considerations ATM–228
MSC linking ATM–196
MSNAME keyword CR–418
MSPLINK keyword CR–418
syntax diagram CR–417
MSASSIGN command *(continued)*
SYSID keyword CR–418
TRANSACTION keyword CR–418
usage considerations ATM–228

MSC
APPLCTN macro, and ISDT–61
descriptor ATM–141
example ISDT–491
LU 6.2 application transactions buffer size ATM–219
macro statements, preparing ISDT–19
shared queue environment, in a ATM–115

MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling)
conversational programming APTM–142
description APTM–132
directed routing APTM–132
MSVERIFY command CR–421
receiving messages from other IMS TM systems
APTM–132
sending messages to other IMS TM systems
APTM–134
serial transaction processing ATM–221

MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling) ATM–418, OTMA–41,
URDBTM–425

MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling) /DEQUEUE command ATM–232
abnormal-end appendage DGR–373
administration
APPC ATM–213
affinity
in an MSC-IMSplex configuration ATM–240
analyzer trace entry DGR–371
APPC and OTMA messages
remote processing ATM–245
asynchronous LU 6.2 transactions ATM–215
attention DIE routine DGR–372
BUFMSTRA (message processing) trace, description
DGR–365
BUFSMVID trace DGR–375
channel-end appendage DGR–373
channel-to-channel access method trace stack
DGR–370
coeexistence with ISC ATM–286
communication task trace
description DGR–363
diagram DGR–364
comparison to ISC ATM–254
concepts ATM–195
definition of transaction codes ATM–217
definition ATM–195
data flow ATM–198
data partitioning ATM–195
defining priorities ATM–220
defining with the CTC option IIV–70
definition ATM–195
destinations ATM–201
destination system ATM–201
detailing control block diagram DGR–93
directed routing, program-to-program switch
ATM–209
ETO, and CG–381
exit routines
terminal routing CG–421
Fast Path and AS–24
functions compared to ISC ATM–254
general control block diagram DGR–92
I/O request DIE routine DGR–372
IMS Monitor Report Print Program URS–380,
URS–434
IMSIDs
in an IMSplex ATM–244
IMSplex
sharing MSNAME definitions and SYSIDs
ATM–240
IMSplex with shared queues
coeexistence ATM–237
initializing ATM–226
input system ATM–201
intermediate system ATM–201
Interpreting Distribution Appendix Output URS–433
Interpreting IMS Monitor MSC Report URS–380,
URS–434
introduction ATM–195
ISC facility ATM–254
link definitions
in an IMSplex ATM–240
in an IMSplex
link definitions
in an IMSplex
links
defining for XRF AS–304
subsystems that communicate through AS–275
Log Analysis Report
ID column for MSC entries URS–438
use for MSC transactions URS–438
Log Merge utility
coordinating MSC logs URS–383, URS–437
input URS–229
output URS–229
Log Transaction Analysis utility (DFSILTA0)
URS–383, URS–437
Log-Analysis Report
ID column for MSC entries URS–384
use for MSC transactions URS–383
logical destinations ATM–200
logical links ATM–196
logical links
deleting from an IMSplex ATM–244
logical links, SDLC link ATM–196
LTERM, remote CG–381
main storage-to-main storage access method trace
DGR–365
main storage-to-main storage save set trace
DGR–365
MCS-Queuing Report
interpreting URS–380
merging logs for MSC URS–383, URS–437
Message Control/Error exit routine CG–337
MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling) (continued)
message routing ATM–199
message routing
in an MSC-IMSplex configuration ATM–238
migration to IMSplex ATM–240
minimizing resource consumption ATM–213
monitoring AS–180
monitoring and tuning ATM–233
MSASSIGN command CR–417
MSC conversation failure ATM–217
MSC-Queuing Report
assessing link queuing times URS–382, URS–437
example URS–383, URS–437
interpreting URS–434
MSC-Summaries Report
assessing queue sizes URS–381, URS–436
content URS–381, URS–436
example URS–382, URS–436
interpreting URS–380, URS–434
MSC-Traffic Report
content URS–380, URS–434
determining cross system queuing URS–434
determining cross-system queuing URS–380
example URS–381, URS–435
MSNAME definitions
sharing in an IMSplex ATM–240
MSNAME definitions in an IMSplex
deleting ATM–244
MSNAME duplication in an IMSplex with shared queues ATM–243
MSS1 and MSS2 record description DGR–370
network IIV–9, IIV–11
non-VTAM links buffer size ATM–219
operating procedures ATM–226
overview ATM–11
performance ATM–233
performance information AS–180
physical links ATM–195
physical links
deleting from an IMSplex ATM–244
pseudoabend U0830
avoiding ATM–247
Queuing Summary Report ATM–234
recoverable versus irrecoverable transactions ATM–418
recovering transactions in APPC ATM–418
recovery considerations ATM–231
routing path ATM–199
security considerations ATM–225
service aid DGR–363
shared queues
MSNAME duplication ATM–243
sharing MSNAME definitions and SYSIDs ATM–240
shutdown appendage DGR–373
shutdown processing routine DGR–371
standard application programs ATM–406
support for APPC/IMS ATM–417
SYSID tables
deleting MSNAME definitions in an IMSplex ATM–244
MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling) (continued)
SYSIDs
cloning in an IMSplex ATM–244
managing in an IMSplex ATM–244
sharing in an IMSplex ATM–240
system definition ATM–217
TM and MSC exit routine CG–350
Traffic Report ATM–234
transaction statistics URS–383, URS–437
utility for verifying names ATM–224
VTAM links buffer size ATM–219
MSC (multisystem communications)
assignment OG–110
IMS commands OG–324
initializing OG–323
message resynchronization OG–170
stopping OG–323
MSC message resynchronization control user exit CG–349
MSC Program Routing exit routine ATM–211
MSC Routing exit routine CG–349
MSC Routing exit routine
description CG–349
MSC Summaries Report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–380
IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–434
MSDB OTMA–45
MSDB
DBFMSDBx member ISDT–321
MSDB (main storage database) APDG–30, APDG–71
MSDB (main storage database)
call restrictions APDB–231
calls against ADB–128
checkpoint data set CR–430
commit point processing APDB–229
data locking APDB–230
DBDUMP command CR–158
DBRECOVERY command CR–163
definition of AS–268
deleting segments ADB–129
description of ADB–125
design considerations ADB–269, ADB–278
ERESTART command CR–347
Fast Path considerations AS–24
inserting segments ADB–129
loaded by alternate IMS AS–268
loading AS–95
loading the database ADB–326, ADB–389
LOCK DATABASE command CR–400
MSDB Maintenance utility (DBFDBMA0) ADB–126
nonrelated APDB–224
not supported for data sharing AS–358
NRESTART command CR–430
options available ADB–125
page fixing ADB–273
PCBs and DL/I calls APDB–87
placement of AS–314
position ADB–130
processing APDB–225
processing
data locking APDB–230
reloading CR–349
MSDB (main storage database) (continued)
restrictions on changing DBD ADB–389
storage of records ADB–127
terminal related APDB–224
types
description APDB–224
nonrelated APDB–23
related APDB–22
updating segments APDB–225
when to use ADB–124, ADB–126
MSDB (Main Storage Database)
STOP DATABASE command CR–607
MSDB DBD generation, description URS–7
MSDB Dump Recovery utility (DBFDBDR0)
description URDBTM–263
examples URDBTM–267
input and output URDBTM–264
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–265
EXEC statement URDBTM–265
return codes URDBTM–267
utility control statements URDBTM–266
MSDB Maintenance utility (DBFDBMA0)
description URDBTM–145
examples URDBTM–152
input and output URDBTM–147
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–148
EXEC statement URDBTM–148
restrictions URDBTM–147
return codes URDBTM–152
utility control statement
action statements URDBTM–149
run statements URDBTM–149
MSDB-to-DEDB Conversion utility
control statements URDBTM–283
conversion URDBTM–281
DBT Unload/Reload, using a tool other than
URDBTM–284
fallback URDBTM–282
Fast Path (DBFUCDB0) URDBTM–281
summary report URDBTM–284
using a tool other than DBT Unload/Reload
URDBTM–284
MSDBCPC1 data set ADB–275
MSDBCPC2 data set ADB–275
MSDBDUMP data set ADB–275
MSDBDUMP data set
/DBDUMP command URDBTM–264
MSDB Dump Recovery utility URDBTM–263
MSDBLOAD keyword
definition CR–58
NRESTART command CR–430
MSDBs (main storage database)
processing commit points APDB–229
MSG keyword
description CR–58
MSG keyword procedure DGR–25
MSG statement
FILL= operand URDBTM–442
NXT= operand URDBTM–442
MSG statement (continued)
OPT= operand URDBTM–442
PAGE= operand URDBTM–442
SOR= operand URDBTM–442
TYPE= operand URDBTM–442
MSGAGE keyword
description CR–58
MSGEND statement
specifying URDBTM–453
MSGNUM= keyword
UCF FUNCTION=OP control statement
URDBTM–349
MSGQ primary list structure ATM–103
MSGQUEUE macro
description ISDT–2, ISDT–117
MFS, and ISDT–503
parameters ISDT–118
parameters
BUFFERS= ISDT–118
DSET= ISDT–118
MRQPSBN= ISDT–118
RECLNG= ISDT–119
SHUTDWN= ISDT–122
syntax diagram ISDT–117
MSLINK definitions
deleting from an IMSplex ATM–244
MSLINK macro
description ISDT–122
parameters ISDT–122
parameters
BACKUP= ISDT–122
MODETBL= ISDT–123
MSPLINK= ISDT–123
OPTIONS= ISDT–123
PARTNER= ISDT–124
syntax diagram ISDT–122
MSLINK macro, logical links ATM–219
MSNAME
as a TM resource ATM–130
RM definition ATM–130
MSNAME definitions
deleting from an IMSplex ATM–244
in a shared queues group
duplication ATM–243
sharing among systems in an IMSplex ATM–240
MSNAME keyword
Broadcast command CR–113
definition CR–58
DEQUEUE command CR–183
DISPLAY command
description CR–231
examples CR–302
generic parameters CR–18
MSASSIGN command CR–418
MSVERIFY command CR–421
PURGE command CR–453
START command CR–587
STOP command CR–610
MSNAME macro
description ISDT–124
label field ISDT–124
MTM link in MSC ATM–195
MTO CSL–6
MTO (master terminal operator) ATM–62
MTO (master terminal operator)
/OPNDST command ATM–61
/RSTART LINK command ATM–226
abilities and responsibilities OG–313
assignment of logical link ATM–195
auditing operational control OG–316
conversational transactions, controlling OG–317
ISC errors ATM–346
messages ATM–98
monitoring IMS OG–319
MSC and master terminal operators ATM–228
network operations, planning for OG–315
notification of session rejection ATM–310
operations, controlling OG–313
PF keys OG–314
procedures
content OG–303
resources controlled by OG–315
restarting the terminal ATM–83
termination of transmission ATM–227
MTO (Master Terminal Operator)
backup AS–10
responsible AS–10
secondary AS–10
MULT= operand (DPAGE statement)
specifying URDBTM–484
MULT= operand (DPAGE statement), specifying
APTM–305
MULT1 parameter ATM–276, ATM–332
MULT2 parameter ATM–276, ATM–332
multi-segment messages JGR–23
multichain input message switches restriction ATM–375
MULTJOB parameter commands
GENJCL.IC DBRC–197
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–204
GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–213
GENJCL.USER DBRC–219
multiple
cold starts in a test environment DBRC–80
DB PCBs APDB–202
positioning APDB–197
processing APDB–197
qualification statements APDB–193
qualification statements, DEDB APDB–195
qualification statements, HDAM APDB–195
qualification statements, PHDAM APDB–195
multiple area data set (MADS) AS–338
Multiple Area Data Set I/O Timing (MADSIOT)
calculating list structure storage size ADB–146
CFRM ADB–146
coupling facility ADB–146
long busy ADB–146
multiple area data sets (MADS)
I/O errors ADB–145
MADSIOT ADB–145
multiple console support
See MCS (multiple console support) console
multiple copies of IMS
running on one operating system IIV–11
multiple data set groups
description of ADB–227
HD databases ADB–229
introduction ADB–18
specifying in DBD ADB–231
storage of records ADB–230
uses ADB–228
using ADB–227
multiple external subsystems CG–552
multiple IMS systems, module suffix rules IIV–10
multiple message queues
long AS–84
short AS–84
multiple mode APDG–39, APDG–42
multiple physical pages
input messages
specifying URDBTM–484
multiple physical pages, input messages
description APTM–198
specifying APTM–305
terminating (ENDMPPI request) APTM–235
multiple positioning
advantages of APDB–200
effecting your program APDB–200
resetting position APDB–202
multiple signons ATM–60
multiple signons
description ATM–173
naming conventions for ATM–173
sysplex environment, in ATM–174
multiple systems ATM–213
multiple systems coupling
See also MSC (multiple systems coupling)
See also MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling)
Multiple Systems Coupling
See also MSC (Multiple System Coupling)
See also MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling)
See see MSC
Multiple Systems Coupling (MSC)
coexistence considerations RPG–49
exits no longer supported RPG–36
requirements RPG–22
serial transaction processing ATM–221
subsystems supported RPG–27
Multiple Systems Coupling.
See MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling)
Multiple Systems Verification utility (DFSUMSV0)
ATM–208
Multiple Systems Verification utility (DFSUMSV0)
description URDBTM–425
EXEC statement URDBTM–427
IMSMSV procedure URDBTM–426
input validation URDBTM–428
invoking the procedure URDBTM–427
logical links URDBTM–428
logical terminals URDBTM–425, URDBTM–430
MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling) URDBTM–425
Multiple Systems Verification utility (DFSUMSV0)
(continued)
multisystem control block verification URDBTM–428
multisystem path map URDBTM–430
output messages URDBTM–430
partner IDs URDBTM–428
physical links URDBTM–428
prerequisites URDBTM–426
PROC statement
ALL= URDBTM–427
CLASS= URDBTM–427
description URDBTM–427
DSM= URDBTM–427
DSN= URDBTM–427
REG= URDBTM–427
SER= URDBTM–427
UNIT= URDBTM–427
procedure for executing URDBTM–426
processing phases URDBTM–428
restrictions URDBTM–425
SYSID paths
description URDBTM–429
local URDBTM–429
remote URDBTM–429
transaction code attributes
consistency between systems URDBTM–429
description URDBTM–429
local URDBTM–429
remote URDBTM–429
utility control statements
description URDBTM–432
examples URDBTM–433
Multiple Systems Verification utility, using ATM–224
multisegment command input
3270 Information Display System CR–7
display screen CR–6
EOM CR–7
EOS CR–7
example CR–8
LU 6.2 device CR–7
multisegment format APTM–244
multisystem communication
initialization ATM–226
termination ATM–227
multisystem control blocks URDBTM–428
multisystem path map, MSC URDBTM–430
MULTSIGN keyword
definition CR–58
ERESTART command CR–351
NRESTART command CR–430
MVS
applications using XCF OTMA–13
failures OG–149
IMS procedures, and ISDT–414
IMSRDR procedures, and ISDT–414
log data set OG–49
log stream OG–49
multiple console support CR–6
program OTMA–2
system console
maximum length of command input CR–7

Index 221
MVS (continued)
  system console (continued)
  messages to CR–14
  outstanding reply numbers CR–7
MVS (Multiple Virtual Storage)
  Structure Alter command AS–390
MVS & VM translator APCICS–29
MVS access methods
  used by HISAM ADB–65
MVS Automatic Restart Manager CQS–35
MVS environment APDB–256, APTM–312
MVS files
  access to APDG–30, APDG–51
  description APDG–52
MVS program properties table
  adding CQSINIT0 CQS–16
  updating CQS–16
MVS Program Properties Table
  CQS Entry for MVS PPT Table IIV–66
  CSL Entry for MVS PPT Table IIV–67
  IMS Entry for MVS PPT Table IIV–66
  installing MVS PPT Entries IIV–67
  IRLM Entry for MVS PPT Table IIV–66
MVS Scheduler JCL Facility (SJF) APDG–180
MVS storage map diagram DGR–94
MVS system trace table DGR–6
MVS/ESA
  command
    entering CR–3
    F fdbrproc CR–707
    F fdbrproc,DUMP command CR–707
    F fdbrproc,RECOVER command CR–707
    F fdbrproc,STATUS command CR–707
    F fdbrproc,STOP command CR–708
    F fdbrproc,TERM command CR–708
    F irlmproc,ABEND command CR–709
    F irlmproc,DIAG,DELAY command CR–710
    F irlmproc,PURGE,imsname command CR–711
    F irlmproc,SET command CR–712
    F irlmproc,STATUS command CR–715
    F irlmproc,DUMP command CR–701
    F irlmproc,FORCExxxx command CR–702
    F irlmproc,RECONNECT command CR–703
    F irlmproc,RECONNSTR command CR–704
    F irlmproc,STOP command CR–705
    F irlmproc,STOPxxxx command CR–705
    P cqsjob CR–721
    P irlmproc command CR–723
    S irlmproc command CR–697
  used for IMS CR–693
STOP AREA command CR–605
STOP JES2 CANCEL command CR–612
STOP MVS/ESA CANCEL command CR–612
MVS/ESA, extended addressing capabilities
  addressing mode (AMODE) APTM–59
  DCCTL environment APTM–59
  preloaded program APTM–59
  residency mode (RMODE) APTM–59
MYLTERM APDB–231

N
  N command code APDB–33
  NA APDB–154
  NAK codes OTMA–59
  name field, segment APDB–24
  NAME keyword DBRC–47
  NAME macro ATM–292
  NAME macro
    defining an ISC session ATM–292
    description ISDT–128
    for remote logical terminals ATM–197
    MSNAME macro ATM–223
  parameters
    COMPT= ISDT–132
    EDIT= ISDT–132
    ICOMPT= ISDT–132
    Iterm ISDT–130
    OUTPUT= ISDT–132
    remote Iterm name ISDT–131
  syntax diagram ISDT–129
  used to relate components ATM–273
  NAME macro statement, for BTAM terminals AS–71
  NAME parameter
    in a DBD ADB–175, ADB–203
    in the SENFLD statement ADB–219
  name type ATM–128
  name uniqueness, resource
    disabling enforcement ATM–20, ATM–128
  NAME= parameter
    statements
      alternate PCB statement URS–116
      DBD URS–22
      DL/I PCB URS–119
      FIELD URS–77
      GSAM PCB URS–128
      LCHILD URS–72
      SEG URS–57
      SENFLD URS–132
      SENSEG URS–129
      XDFLD URS–83
  names of data elements APDG–13
  naming convention
    examples of defining ADB–135
    naming convention, coupling facility structure ADB–135
    naming conventions ADB–21, APDG–9, ATM–76
  naming conventions
    change accumulation data sets DBRC–20
    data sharing, and AS–367
    DBRC data sets DBRC–19
    duplicate image copy data sets DBRC–20
    establishing AS–35
    examples of AS–35
    HALDB AS–35
    image copy data sets DBRC–20
    RSR, for AS–322
    SSIDs in RECON SSYS records, for DBRC–77
    SSIDs processed by batch backout, for DBRC–77
    suggestions AS–35
  NBA (normal buffer allocation)
    for CCTL ADB–282
NBA (normal buffer allocation) (continued)
in DBCTL environment ADB–282
limit ADB–281
use of ADB–279
NBA parameter ADB–270
NBA/FPB limit ADB–285
NBR= keyword
  SB Test utility SELECT statement URDBTM–329
NBRSEGS parameter ADB–274
NCCF (Network Communications Control Facility)
  VTAM application name
    changing in USERVAR table AS–274
    communicating new name AS–261
    XRF process, contribution to AS–261
NCP (Network Control Program) ATM–8
NCP (Network Control Program)
  communications network tuning AS–208
  failure AS–255
  maintaining control blocks for backup sessions
  AS–260
  requirement for XRF AS–250, AS–255
  storage considerations AS–300
  switching sessions at takeover AS–260, AS–261, AS–274
  XRF process, contribution to AS–260
NCP (Network Control Programs) ATM–7
NCP considerations IIV–76
NCP delay IIV–76
NDM (Non-Discardable Messages) routine APDG–39
NE status code ADB–198
NEGOF option
  File Select and Formatting Program (DFSERA10)
    URS–266
negotiable bind ATM–301
NetView
  automated operations OG–181
  NetView environment CSL–215
  network ATM–5
network
  administration ATM–23
  activities ATM–23
  APPC/IMS, operating with ATM–12
  changes to definition AS–227
  communications ATM–5
  definition ATM–58, ATM–223
  design considerations ATM–23
  documentation AS–37
  documenting requirements ATM–24
  ensuring readiness AS–166
  failures OG–168
  fixing availability OG–311
  ID, deleting OG–110
  logical terminal network design ATM–32
  multiple systems, effect of ATM–223
  nonswitched communications network ATM–35
  operating
    establishing communication ATM–12
    IMS-CICS ATM–552, ATM–553
  network (continued)
  operating (continued)
    ISC ATM–298, ATM–299
    SLU P ATM–434
    SLU P system ATM–63
  operations, preparing for ATM–57
  planning ATM–23
  restarting after remote takeover ATM–66
  shutdown OG–143
  shutting down ATM–298, ATM–469
  starting
    Finance Communication System ATM–63,
    ATM–461, ATM–462
    SLU P system ATM–63, ATM–462
  terminating
    Finance Communication System ATM–468, ATM–470
    SLU P system ATM–470
    VTAM and NCP parameters ATM–58
    XRF OG–243, OG–252
network architecture models OTMA–1
Network Communications Control Facility
  See NCCF (Network Communications Control Facility)
network operators at XRF complex
  adding entries in USERVAR table AS–262
  MODIFY USERVAR command AS–262, AS–274
  responsibilities resulting from XRF AS–256
  updating entries in USERVAR table AS–261
network terminal option
  See NTO (network terminal option)
Network Terminal Option (NTO) Device Support
  RPG–22
network-qualified LU name APDG–134, ATM–424,
network, communications
  See communications network
networking ATM–213
  new active subsystem, starting
    RSR takeover OG–290
NEWTIME parameter commands
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–135
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–139
  CHANGE.SELOG (for RLDS) DBRC–153
  CHANGE.SELOG (for SLDS) DBRC–157
NEWVOL parameter commands
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–135
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–139
  CHANGE.SELOG (for RLDS) DBRC–153
  CHANGE.SELOG (for SLDS) DBRC–157
NEXTLP request
  description APTM–235
  operator control table function APTM–234
  specifying URDBTM–503
  specifying PF key function URDBTM–468
NEXTMSG request
  description APTM–235
  specifying URDBTM–503
  specifying PF key function URDBTM–468
NEXTMSGP request
  description APTM–235
NEXTMSGP request (continued)
  specifying URDBTM–503
  specifying PF key function URDBTM–468
NEXTPP request
  specifying URDBTM–503
  specifying PF key function URDBTM–468
  use APTM–235
NI status code APCICS–8
  no free logical record ADB–69
NO parameter for surveillance AS–306
  no work to do (wait/loop) DGR–37
NO-OP indicated on LUSTATUS command ATM–343
NOAUTH parameter commands
  CHANGE.DB DBRC–111
  CHANGE.DBDs DBRC–118
NOBACK parameter CHANGE.DB command
  DBRC–111
NOBACKOUT keyword
  definition CR–58
  START command CR–582
NOBACKUP parameter CHANGE.SUBSYS command
  DBRC–161
NOBMP keyword
  definition CR–59
  ERESTART command CR–351
NOBUILDQ keyword
  definition CR–59
  NRESTART command CR–428
NOCATDS parameter commands
  CHANGE.RECON DBRC–141
  INIT.RECON DBRC–244
NOCFSTR2 parameter CHANGE.DBDS command
  DBRC–118
NOCHECK keyword
  RECOVER command
  START CR–525
NOCHECK parameter
  CHANGE.RECON DBRC–145
  INIT.RECON DBRC–245
NOCMDAUTH keyword
  definition CR–59
  ERESTART command CR–351
  NRESTART command CR–430
NOCMDAUTHE keyword
  definition CR–59
  ERESTART command CR–351
  NRESTART command CR–430
NOCOMP keyword
  definition CR–59
NOCQSSHUT keyword
  CHECKPOINT command CR–140
  definition CR–59
NODBALLOC keyword
  definition CR–59
  START command CR–582, CR–585
node
  status CR–231
  node definition, ISC ATM–289, ATM–295
NODE keyword
/DISPLAY command
  EMHQ keyword CR–232
  MODE CR–232
  QCNT CR–232
/TRACE command CR–655
  ACTIVATE command CR–93
  ASSIGN command CR–106
  BROADCAST command CR–115
  CHANGE command CR–127
  CHANGE command
    ASR CR–127
    COLDSESS CR–127
    FORCSESS CR–127
    MODE CR–127
    SYNCSESS CR–127
    USER CR–128
  CLSDST command CR–144
  definition CR–59
  DELETE command CR–169
  DEQUEUE command CR–183
  DISPLAY command
    description CR–231
    examples CR–302
  END command CR–343
  EXCLUSIVE command CR–358
  EXIT command CR–360
  generic parameters CR–18
  IDLE command CR–371
  LOCK command CR–400
  OPNDST command CR–438
  QUIESCE command CR–507
  RSTART command CR–547
  START command CR–587
  STOP command CR–610
  TEST command CR–644
  UNLOCK command CR–670
  USER keyword combinations CR–789
node name
  See also VTAM, node
  uniqueness ATM–130
NODE parameter
  for SYSTEM data sets IIV–13
  of IMSGEN macro IIV–13
node user descriptor ATM–164
NODE= keyword IIV–11
NODEFLT parameter commands
  CHANGE.CAGRP DBRC–107
  GENJCL.CA DBRC–187
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–198
  GENJCL.OIC DBRC–204
  GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–214
  GENJCL.USER DBRC–219
NOFEQV keyword
  DBDUMP command CR–159
  DBRECOVERY command CR–164
  definition CR–60
NOFORCER parameter commands
  CHANGE.RECON DBRC–144
  INIT.RECON DBRC–245
NOICREQ parameter CHANGE.DB command DBRC–111
NOICREQ parameter INIT.DB command DBRC–228
NOJOB parameter commands
GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–182
GENJCL.CA DBRC–186
GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–190
GENJCL.IC DBRC–197
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–204
GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–208
GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–213
GENJCL.USER DBRC–218
NOLIST parameter commands
GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–183
GENJCL.CA DBRC–186
GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–191
GENJCL.IC DBRC–197
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–204
GENJCL.RECEIVE DBRC–209
GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–213
GENJCL.USER DBRC–218
NOLKASID parameter
CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–120, DBRC–234
NOLOG parameter
DBD statement URS–29
SEGM statement URS–67
non-authorized clients
environmental requirements CSL–19
non-conversational program OTMA–54
non-discardable messages CG–359
Non-Discardable Messages Exit Routine (DFSNDMX0) CG–359
Non-Discardable Messages Exit Routine (DFSNDMX0)
alternate destinations CG–360
attributes CG–359
description CG–359
IMS callable services CG–359
IMS environments CG–359
including the routine CG–359
link-editing CG–359
naming convention CG–359
processing options CG–360
registers CG–362
registers
 contents on entry CG–362
 contents on exit CG–366
restrictions CG–360
sample routine location CG–359
using callable services CG–359
non-message-driven program
BMP AS–12
IFP utility AS–12
non-shared queues environment CG–153
non-swappable work on alternate IMS AS–287
non-terminal-related database ADB–125
nonconversational program
definition APTM–135
NONE parameter
SECURE command CR–555, CR–556
NONE security level OTMA–48
NONEW parameter commands
CHANGE.RECON DBRC–146
INIT.RECON DBRC–247
nongraphic message data ATM–84
nonliteral input fields
defining APTM–191
nonnegotiable bind ATM–301
NONRECOV parameter, CHANGE.DB DBRC–112
nonrecoverable database
DL/I defined as OG–165
Fast Path defined as OG–166
nonrecoverable databases OG–165
nonrelated (non-terminal-related) MSDB APDB–224
NONSPANNED keyword DBRC–47
nonstandard character URDBTM–436, URDBTM–510
nonstandard image copy data sets
description DBRC–30
RECON
 adding information DBRC–304
 changing information DBRC–162
 deleting information DBRC–178
nonstandard macros IIV–66
onswitched communication lines ISDT–110
onswitched communications network ATM–35
NOPASSWORD keyword
definition CR–60
ERESTART command CR–352
NRESTART command CR–431
NOPFA keyword
DBDUMP command CR–159
DBRECOVERY command CR–164
definition CR–60
STOP command CR–607
NOPREL parameter CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–121
NOPREO parameter CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–121
NOPROT parameter ADB–198
NOPUNCH parameter
Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0) URDBTM–110
noreadback URDBTM–258
NORECOV parameter CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–121
NOREUSE keyword OG–64
NOREUSE parameter
CA data set DBRC–34
CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–120
command
CHANGE.CAGRP DBRC–108
image copy data sets for future use DBRC–27
INIT.CAGRP DBRC–226
INIT.DBDS DBRC–232
NOREVERSE keyword
definition CR–60
normal buffer allocation (NBA)
for CCTL ADB–282
in DBCTL environment ADB–282
use of ADB–279
Normal Call exit routine CG–530
Index 225
normal operations
  alternate IMS tracking during AS–269
  alternate tracking during AS–257
  IMS system log AS–258
NORMAL parameter commands
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–132
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–134
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–138
  CHANGE.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–150
  CHANGE.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–153
  CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–157
  CHANGE.SUBSYS DBRC–161
  NOTIFY.SUBSYS DBRC–303
normal priority for scheduling AS–62
normal restart DBRC–38
NOSAVE keyword
  ASSIGN command CR–106
  definition CR–60
NOSCAN option ATM–479
NOSEQCK statement
  Database Recovery utility (DFSURDB0)
  URDBTM–243
NOSHUT keyword
  definition CR–61
  IDLE command
    description CR–369
    restarting CR–370
NOSORT command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–532
  NOSTAE and NOSPIE APDG–47
  not message-driven option
    Fast Path Log Analysis utility URS–309
    not-equal-to relational operator APDB–25
    not-found status code
      description APDB–188
      position after APDB–188
notational conventions, commands DBRC–96
NOTCOVER parameter
  CHANGE.DB command DBRC–111
  CHANGE.DBDS command DBRC–119
NOTERMINAL keyword
  definition CR–61
  ERESTART command CR–351
  NRESTART command CR–431
nothing to process, when change accumulation says DBRC–78
notify message CG–500
notify Message CG–549
NOTIFY.ALLOC command DBRC–267
NOTIFY.BKOUT command DBRC–269
NOTIFY.CA command DBRC–270
NOTIFY.PRILOG DBRC–11
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for OLDS) command DBRC–275
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for RLDS) command DBRC–279
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for SLDS and TSLDS) command DBRC–283
NOTIFY.RECOV command DBRC–287
NOTIFY.REORG command DBRC–290
NOTIFY.SECLOG DBRC–11
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for OLDS) command DBRC–293
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) command DBRC–295
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS) command DBRC–299
NOTIFY.SUBSYS command DBRC–302
NOTIFY.UIC command
  description DBRC–304
notifying DBRC that log data sets have moved DBRC–79
NOTRANAUTH keyword
  definition CR–61
  ERESTART command CR–351
  NRESTART command CR–431
NOTRANCMDS keyword
  definition CR–61
  ERESTART command CR–352
  NRESTART command CR–432
NOTRDY keyword
  COMPT command CR–148
  definition CR–61
  RCOMPT command CR–511
NOUSER keyword
  definition CR–61
  ERESTART command CR–352
  NRESTART command CR–431
NOVSO parameter DBRC–122
NOTERMINAL keyword CR–431
NOTRANAUTH keyword CR–431
NOTRANCMDS keyword CR–432
NOUSER keyword CR–431
NOVSO parameter
  CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–122, DBRC–233
NOWRITECHECK keyword DBRC–47
NPRI keyword
  ASSIGN command
    BMP transactions CR–106
    definition CR–61
  NRESTART (/NRESTART) command
    cold start OG–88
    message queue recovery OG–103
    warm start OG–79, OG–89
  NRESTART command ATM–88
  NRESTART command
    BUILDQ keyword CR–428
    CHECKPOINT keyword CR–429
    CMDAUTH keyword CR–429
    CMDAUTHE keyword CR–429
    description CR–427
    environments CR–427
    examples CR–432
    FORMAT keyword CR–429
    MSDLLOAD keyword CR–430
    MULTSIGN keyword CR–430
    NOBUILDQ keyword CR–428
    NOCMDAUTH keyword CR–430
    NOCMDAUTHE keyword CR–430
    NOPASSWORD keyword CR–431
    NOTERMINAL keyword CR–431
    NOTRANAUTH keyword CR–431
    NOTRANCMDS keyword CR–432
    NOUSER keyword CR–431
    PASSWORD keyword CR–431
    restart
      security definition CR–427
      SNGLSIGN keyword CR–431
      syntax diagrams CR–425
      TERMINAL keyword CR–431
      TRANAUTH keyword CR–431
NRESTART command (continued)
TRANCMDS keyword CR–432
USER keyword CR–432
with data sharing CR–429
NSTATS keyword
  HISAM Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURRL0)
  URDBTM–38
  HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0)
  URDBTM–27
NTO (Network Terminal Operations)
  See SLU
NTO (network terminal option)
  IAM command CR–367
NTO device
  TERMINAL macro statement ISDT–141
NTO logical devices OG–370
NU APDB–154
  nucleus
      security tables from IMS.MATRIX AS–138
      when generated AS–47
  nucleus generation ISDT–95
null
  coding in COBOL APTM–275
  compression
      example APTM–187
      prevention URDBTM–446
      specifying APTM–300, URDBTM–479
  deleting on input (DPM) APTM–195
  fill character
      input message fields APTM–184, URDBTM–452
      output device fields APTM–207, URDBTM–442
  segment, output APTM–274
  transmitting to IMS TM APTM–196
  truncating fields with APTM–203
Null command code APDB–39
null keywords CR–19
null output message
  purpose ATM–477
  when not sent ATM–448
  when sent ATM–483
null word
  reserved words CR–783
NULL= operand (DIV statement)
  example APTM–195
  options APTM–195
  specifying APTM–295, URDBTM–475
NULLVAL operand, use CG–95
NULLVAL parameter ADB–196, ADB–204
NULLVAL= operand
  XDFLD statement URS–84
nuserpw keyword
  SIGN command CR–564
Nxt
  execution phase action command IIV–120
  file-tailoring action command IIV–112
  variable-gathering action command IIV–106
NXT= operand (LPAGE statement), specifying URDBTM–444
NXT= operand (MSG statement), specifying URDBTM–442
NXTOLDS parameter commands
  NOTIFY.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–278
  NOTIFY.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–294

O
O (OPTION) Statement APDB–333, APTM–403
O= keyword
  control statements
      DFSERA10 CONTROL URS–264
      DFSERA10 OPTION URS–266
  OASN (origin application schedule numbers)
      status CR–234
  OASN (origin application sequence number) CG–552
OASN keyword
  definition CR–61
  DISPLAY command
      description CR–234
      examples CR–307
  OBA (overflow buffer allocation)
      for CCTT threads ADB–283
      in DBCTL environment ADB–283
      use of ADB–279
OBJDSET IIV–62
object
  DLIConnection, creating JGR–135
  obtaining
      IMS database statistics APCICS–80
      recent information from the DIB APCICS–74
      status code APCICS–73
  obtaining 6701-MRQB records DGR–289
  OCLSTAT CSL–15
ODBA
  application execution environment
      establishing APDG–136, APDG–139
  application programs
      testing APDG–171
      writing APDG–135
  APSB (allocate program specification block)
      APDG–137
  CIMS APDG–136
  DB2 Stored Procedures APDG–139
  DPSB (deallocate program specification block)
      APDG–138
  DRA (Database Resource Adapter) APDG–135
  RRS/MVS APDG–135
  server program APDG–139
ODBA (Open Database Access) APDG–135, JGR–49
ODBA (Open Database Access)
  reconnecting OG–93
ODBA application programs
  security considerations in AS–127
ODF (offline dump formatter)
  control blocks, locating DGR–148
  description DGR–131
  dump data set input DGR–131
  executing DGR–132
  FMTIMS parameter
      table DGR–134
  introduction DGR–131
ODF (offline dump formatter) (continued)
  output order DGR–149
  recommendations for using DGR–132
  SDUMP input DGR–131
  title format DGR–146
  using DGR–132
  using with IPCS DGR–132
ODF (Offline Dump Formatter) AS–100, AS–106
OFF keyword
  SIGN command CR–565
Offline Dump Formatter (DFSOFMD0)
  description URS–313
  dump format control data set
    DD statement URS–316
    description URS–317
    subset options URS–317
  environments
    DB batch URS–315
    DB/DC URS–314
    DBCTL URS–314
    DCCTL URS–314
    TM batch URS–315
  input URS–315
  IPCS URS–315
  load modules URS–314
  migration considerations URS–314
  output URS–315
  restrictions URS–314
  SDUMP URS–314
offline dump formatter.
  See ODF (offline dump formatter)
offline dump formatting IIV–71, OG–145, OG–321
offline dump formatting module
  DFSOFMD0 IIV–71
OFFLINE keyword
  definition CR–61
  RECOVER command
    ADD CR–519
    START CR–524
offloading trace data set DGR–5
OFFSET= keyword
  DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–266
OFTAB= operand
  DIV statement
    specifying URDBTM–479
  DPAGE statement
    specifying URDBTM–485
OFTAB= operand (DIV statement), specifying
  APTM–228, APTM–299
OFTAB= operand (DPAGE statement), specifying
  APTM–228, APTM–306
OlJCCL parameter
  commands DBRC–120
  commands
    CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–120
    INIT.DBDS DBRC–232
  skeletal JCL execution member DBRC–358
OID
  See 3270 operator identification card reader
OLC= parameter AS–406
OLCSTAT
  cold start OG–125
OLCSTAT data set AS–407
OLCSTAT data set
  attributes AS–407
  description URS–204
  format AS–407
  initializing URS–204
  recover procedure URS–204
OLCUTL procedure, process URS–198
OLDS (online log data set) CG–200
OLDS (online log data set)
  See also logging
    access method OG–45
    allocating IIV–48, OG–45
    and RECON OG–46
    and recover points URS–218
    archive URS–215
    archiving OG–45, OG–104
    archiving DBRC DBRC–11
    block sizes IIV–49
    blocksize OG–55
    buffer, changing OG–113
    buffers OG–58
    changing characteristics of OG–57, OG–113
    changing information DBRC–131, DBRC–150
    closing from WADS OG–46
    commands
      CHANGE.PRILOG DBRC–131
      CHANGE.SECLOG DBRC–150
      DELETE.LOG (for OLDS) DBRC–172
      GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–181
      GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–191
      NOTIFY.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–275
      NOTIFY.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–293
DASD allocation AS–83
ddnames requirements IIV–49
defining OG–45, OG–54
definition OG–12
degraded mode logging OG–54
devices for OG–57
dual OLDSs URS–217
dual or single OG–54
dynamic allocation IIV–49
environment OG–45
formatting IIV–51
input to Log Archive utility URS–217
location, changing OG–113
mode, changing OG–113
newly initialized volumes OG–117
number of OG–55
OLDSDEF control statement IIV–50
read error OG–154
RECON
  adding information DBRC–275, DBRC–293
  deleting information DBRC–172
  records DBRC–50
  recovery OG–155
  recovery using the Log Recovery utility URS–234
  requirement for XRF AS–250
  reusing OG–50
OLDS (online log data set) (continued)
selecting in JCL DBRC–321
size of OG–55
stopping OG–46
termination URS–218
volume, formatting OG–117
write error OG–153
OLDS keyword
definition CR–61
DISPLAY command
description CR–234
examples CR–307
START command CR–588
STOP command CR–611
SWITCH command CR–630
OLDSDEF control statement IIV–50
OLDSDEF statement OG–45
OLDVOL parameter commands
CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–135
CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–139
CHANGE.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–154
CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–158
OLIC= operand
PSBGEN statement URS–135
OM
client CSL–88
command security CSL–39
directives CSL–91
OM (Operations Manager) AS–397
OM (Operations Manager)
function of AS–400
initializing AS–406
OM API AS–414
overview AS–399
security AS–408
shutting down AS–410, AS–411
starting AS–410, OG–75
stopping OG–144
XRF OG–234
OM API
command example CR–15
commands CR–11
commands
responses CR–13
OM client
planning considerations CSL–21
OM directives
and SCI Input exit routine CSL–91
command CSL–91
command response CSL–93
CSLOMI response CSL–93
query response CSL–93
OM exit routine PROCLIB member
EXITMBR parameter BPE–12
OM trace table types
* (asterisk) BPE–9
CSL BPE–9
ERR BPE–9
OM BPE–9
PLEX BPE–9
recommendations BPE–9
omitting log records on SLDS
Log Archive utility URS–217
ON parameter
SIGN command CR–563
one-to-many mapping ADB–46, APDG–21
ONEJOB parameter commands
GENJCL.IC DBRC–197
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–204
GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–213
GENJCL.USER DBRC–219
online
change function IIV–13
online change ADB–414, CSL–15
online change
cold start OG–124
command sequence OG–120
commands OG–119
controlling OG–213
DEDB OG–123
description OG–119
DISPLAY MODIFY command ATM–66
for security changes AS–145, AS–150, AS–158
global
See also global online change
cold start OG–125
command sequence OG–120
commands OG–128
IMSp lex OG–127
scenarios OG–132
terminating OG–131
initiating OG–128
LGEN system generation AS–48
libraries ATM–79
library preparation AS–81
local
cold start OG–125
command sequence OG–120
sysplex OG–126
Online Change utility ATM–79
performance considerations OG–124
programs OG–121
RACF
restriction for changing RACF profiles online
AS–128
RSR OG–269, OG–276
system definition OG–120
system definition changes allowed AS–230
transactions OG–121
XRF OG–123
XRF complex, in a AS–315
online change (local)
enhancements to RPG–17
online change (utility), description APTM–175
online change commands
INITIATE OLC OG–120
QUERY OG–120
TERMINATE OLC OG–120
Online Change Copy utility (DFSUOCU0)
active library URS–197
cancellation URS–198
DD statements URS–200

Index 229
Online Change Copy utility (DFSUOCU0) (continued)

description URS–197
DFSMREC control statement URS–203
EXEC statement URS–200
inactive library URS–197
INITMOD procedure URS–202
INITMOD procedure, JCL URS–202
JCL URS–201
libraries used URS–197
MSDB URS–198
OLCUTL procedure URS–198
PROC statement URS–199, URS–202
requirements URS–197
restrictions URS–198
staging library URS–197

Online Change data sets IV–56
online change process
terminating CR–47

Online change utilities
Global Online Change URS–197
Online Change Copy URS–197

Online Change utility (DFSUOCU0) AS–407

Online Change utility (DFSUOCU0)
maintaining copies of IMS data sets AS–315
to initialize active libraries AS–81

online command syntax DBRC–98

Online Database Image Copy utility (DFSUICP0)
DBRC–26

Online Database Image Copy utility (DFSUICP0)
creating data sets for future use DBRC–27
description DBRC–24, URDBTM–205
example URDBTM–210
execution recorded by DBRC DBRC–15
generating a job DBRC–202

JCL requirements

DD statements URDBTM–207
EXEC statement URDBTM–207
output URDBTM–206
PSBGEN specifications required URS–114, URS–121
recovery and restart URDBTM–206
restricted from Utility Control Facility URDBTM–334
restrictions URDBTM–205
return codes URDBTM–210
utility control statement URDBTM–209

Online Database Image Copy utility JCL
See OICJCL parameter

online databases, declaring ISDT–9
online ddnames AS–82
online DEDB utility region parameters AS–109

online environment
call image capture trace DGR–222

online execution requirements for MFSTEST AS–169

online forward recovery

RSR OG–283
tracking site OG–283

online forward recovery, definition AS–320

online log data set
See OLDS (online log data set)

online log data set (OLDS)
records DBRC–50

ONLINE parameter commands
LIST.SUBSYS DBRC–264
NOTIFY.IC DBRC–274
NOTIFY.SUBSYS DBRC–303

online performance APTM–168, APTM–263, ATM–78

online processing
databases that can be accessed APDG–51
description APDG–52, APDG–53
linking and passing control to other applications
APDG–57

performance, maximizing APDG–58

online programs APDG–32

online programs
characteristics ISDT–10
declaring ISDT–9

online programs, command-level samples
assembler APCICS–12
C APCICS–23
COBOL APCICS–15
PL/I APCICS–19

online recovery service DBRC–5

online security
password security APDG–92
supplying information about your application
APDG–93
terminal APDG–91

online system
definition AS–8

online system data sets
dependencies AS–82
list of AS–82

online system, design of AS–41

online testing
during system test AS–167
MFS formats AS–169
MFSTEST mode AS–169
with Batch Terminal Simulator AS–168

online updater
reinstating OG–215

ONLY DLI statement, Monitor Report Print utility
(DFSUTR20) URS–258

op code APDB–124

OPCTL= operand (DFLD statement), specifying
URDBTM–503

OPEN (Open) call
description APDB–137
format APDB–137
usage APDB–138

Open Database Access (ODBA)
accessing IMS databases ISDT–447
defining PSB names ISDT–9
defining security ISDT–448
interface ISDT–447
overview ISDT–447
setup ISDT–447

open systems interconnection OTMA–1

Open Transaction Manager Access
CHNG call APTM–68
PURG call APTM–83
SETO call APTM–87
Open Transaction Manager Access (OTMA)
status CR–236
operand
FSA APDB–124
operands
/CK ADB–194
/SX ADB–194
See parameters
operating procedures
designing
using graphics OG–322
using text OG–322
Operation Manager
user exit list PROCLIB member CSL–34
operation parameter, SNAP external call APDB–173
operational procedures, testing AS–165
operations
automated OG–18, OG–190
automated
NetView OG–181
controlling with the MTO OG–313
end-user
establishing instructions for OG–332
introduction OG–3
messages, sending OG–341
MTO, auditing OG–316
personnel OG–299
procedures
designing OG–322
developing OG–299, OG–331
documenting OG–301
maintenance OG–328
multisystem OG–323
planning OG–302
record keeping OG–306
testing OG–329
testing and maintaining OG–343
remote terminal operator
problem reporting OG–336
responsibilities, establishing OG–312
setting up operator actions OG–313, OG–315
specifying resources OG–315
terminal OG–337
tools OG–11
Operations Manager
administration tasks CSL–37
and SPOC CSL–3
choosing a master client CR–21
client requests CSL–54
command routing CSL–38
configuration requirements CSL–6
definition and tailoring CSL–31
execution parameters CSL–31
functions provided CSL–3, CSL–31
initialization parameters PROCLIB member CSL–35
overview CSL–3, CSL–31
registering command processing clients CSL–37
requests
command deregistration CSL–78
command response CSL–85
CSLOMCMOD CSL–55
Operations Manager (continued)
requests (continued)
CSLOMI CSL–62
CSLOMORY CSL–72
CSLOMREG CSL–82
unsolicited output CSL–79
sample startup procedure CSL–32
shutting down CSL–38
starting CSL–37
statistics header CSL–53
user exit list PROCLIB member CSL–35
user exit routines CSL–40
user exit routines
BPE Statistics CSL–52
client connection CSL–40
input CSL–43
output CSL–45
security CSL–49
XML output CSL–201
Operations Manager (OM) ISDT–431
Operations Manager (OM)
See also OM (Operations Manager)
API
commands supported by CR–37, RPG–162
enhancements
overview RPG–157
introduction to RPG–16
operator
FSA APDB–227
SSA APDB–24
operator control of MFS APTM–233
operator control tables
functions
ENDMPPPI request APTM–235
NEXTLP request APTM–235
NEXTMSG request APTM–235
NEXTMSGP request APTM–235
NEXTPP request APTM–235
language statements used to create
IF URDBTM–508
TABLE URDBTM–508
TABLEEND URDBTM–510
OPCTL= operand (DFLD statement) URDBTM–503
operator logical paging
description APTM–206, APTM–234
format design considerations APTM–234
in partitioned format mode, 3180 APTM–243
in partitioned format mode, 3290 APTM–241
paged messages ATM–369, ATM–371
paging errors ATM–366
QXFR FM header ATM–388
SLU P, MFS option ATM–450
specifying URDBTM–442
sync points ATM–322
transaction codes and page requests APTM–234
VTAM indicators ATM–333, ATM–336
when in effect ATM–327
operators
Boolean APDB–193
relational APDB–193
operators at XRF complex AS–292
operators at XRF complex

See also network operators at XRF complex

brining up
alternate IMS AS–257
new alternate IMS AS–278, AS–279
third system as alternate IMS AS–279

communicating with each other AS–273, AS–275
ensuring I/O prevention is complete AS–275
initializing IRLM AS–276

initiating a takeover

practical uses AS–277
procedure for AS–271
takeover process AS–272

manual control at takeover AS–272
performing I/O prevention
active IMS AS–272
manually AS–260, AS–275

procedures at takeover AS–272
reestablishing service on class-3 terminals AS–251
reinstating RACF reverify capability AS–299

replying GO to message AVM005A
alternate IMS, when I/O prevention complete AS–273
at takeover AS–292
in-flight transactions AS–274

replying GO to message AVM006E AS–260
requesting SNAPQ checkpoint AS–268
resetting the CPC AS–275

responsibilities resulting from XRF AS–256

starting dependent regions on alternate IMS AS–269

OPNDST command

description CR–438
environments CR–437

examples CR–440
ID keyword CR–438
logging on ATM–171
LOGOND keyword CR–438
MODE keyword CR–438
NODE keyword CR–438
Q keyword CR–439

relation to MODETBL keyword ATM–61
results of using ATM–180
syntax diagram CR–437

UDATA keyword CR–440
USER keyword CR–440
USERD keyword CR–440

OPT= operand (MSG statement), specifying
URDBTM–442

OPTACK

OPTIONS=OPTACK ATM–454

OPTACK option

Fast Path ATM–457
Finance Communication System ATM–487
message resynchronization, effects ATM–456
SLU P ATM–455, ATM–485

optimizing

application program load AS–207
dispatching priority AS–194
I/O contention AS–221
IMS system data sets AS–209, AS–216
message format buffer pool AS–202

optimizing (continued)
message format libraries AS–217
message queues AS–216
number of message regions AS–199
processing priority for IMS regions AS–213
PSB and DMB pools AS–203
scheduling/termination AS–212
with page fixing AS–197

option change verification IIV–100
option change verification panel IIV–100

OPTION keyword

/TRACE command CR–656, CR–660
definition CR–62

OPTION statement APDB–333, APTM–403

optional functions

Data Capture exit routines ADB–213
field-level sensitivity ADB–218
GSAM databases ADB–77
HD databases ADB–80
HISAM databases ADB–65
HSAM (Hierarchical Sequential Access Method) ADB–61

logical relationships ADB–149, ADB–181
MSDB databases ADB–125
multiple data set groups ADB–227
secondary indexes ADB–184
segment edit/compression facility ADB–210
SHISAM databases ADB–76
SHSAM databases ADB–75

variable-length segments ADB–207

optional replication data sets IIV–61

options OG–319

options

ACCEPT command APCICS–69
AUTOSCH IIV–59

CHKP (Checkpoint) command APCICS–69

CMPAT APCICS–32

DEQ (Dequeue) command APCICS–71

DLET (Delete) command APCICS–35

GN (Get Next) command APCICS–38

GNP (Get Next in Parent) command APCICS–43

GU (Get Unique) command APCICS–48

ISRT (Insert) command APCICS–55

LOAD command APCICS–72

LOCKCLASS APCICS–70

LOG command APCICS–73

POS command APCICS–59

QUERY command APCICS–73

REFRESH command APCICS–74

REPL (Replace) command APCICS–61

RETRIEVE command APCICS–65

ROLB command APCICS–75

ROLL command APCICS–76

ROLS command APCICS–77

SCHD (Schedule) command APCICS–66

SETS command APCICS–78

SETU command APCICS–80

STAT command APCICS–81

SYMCHKP (Symbolic Checkpoint) command APCICS–82

TERM (Terminate) command APCICS–67
options (continued)

XRST (Extended Restart) command APCICS–83

options for subset pointers

GETFIRST APCICS–96
MOVENEXT APCICS–97
SET APCICS–98
SETCOND APCICS–99
SETZERO APCICS–97

options list parameter APTM–69

options list parameter

CHNG call APTM–69
CHNG call
advanced print function APTM–69
APPC APTM–70
SETO call APTM–87
SETO call
advanced print function APTM–87
APPC APTM–87

Options statement JGR–102, JGR–104
OPTIONS statement ISDT–462

OPTIONS statement

fixing buffers in VSAM ADB–248
for OSA M ADB–261
for VSAM ADB–256, ADB–258
OSAM ADB–261
use in splitting CIs ADB–69

options, CICS

system generation ATM–545
table preparation ATM–545

options, processing; field in DB PCB APDB–93,
APDB–215

OPTIONS= DPAGE or PPAGE
MFS DPM ATM–364, ATM–479
output message ATM–388

OPTIONS= operand
DIV statement
specifying URDBTM–475

OPTIONS= operand (DIV statement)
effects on performance APTM–266
specifying APTM–295
use APTM–223
use with ISC APTM–226

OPTIONS= statement
Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0)
URDBTM–110
HISAM Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURRL0)
URDBTM–38
HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURUL0)
URDBTM–27

OPTIONS=OPTACK ATM–454

OR operator

IMS rules JGR–83
OR, logical APDB–193
ORDER BY keyword JGR–83
order statements, binder ISDT–50
orderly session termination
CICS ATM–553
ISC ATM–311
VTAM ATM–468

ORIGIN= operand
DPAGE statement
specifying URDBTM–484
ORIGIN= operand (DPAGE statement), specifying
APTM–305
originator’s token, explanation of OTMA–84
ORS (Online Recovery Service)
compared to DFSURDB0 OG–159
remote terminal commands OG–334
ORS (Online Recovery System)
activating trace for ISDT–385
tracing activity ISDT–385

OS/390

abend formatting II–71
APF authorization
IRLM considerations II–73
JCL considerations II–65, II–72
rules for II–72
APPC/MVS administration dialog updates II–72
channel-to-channel (CTC) channel-end appendage
II–70
command
used for IMS CR–693
commands
CANCEL AS–287
START AS–266

DBRC Type 4 SVC II–71
defining IMS SVCs to II–69
failure
as cause of takeover AS–254
surveillance mechanism alerts alternate IMS
AS–258

formatting dump routing II–71
IMS SVC modules II–69
installing MVS PPT Entries II–67
interface considerations, attention notice II–65
interface modules II–69
IRLM PPT II–73
IRLM subsystem names
creating II–73
link-editing II–68
nonstandard macros II–66
offline dump formatting II–71
planning considerations AS–297
preventing installation problems II–65
required IMS links to II–68
requirement for XRF AS–255
resource clean-up module II–70
starting availability manager AS–266
steps required to run under II–68
system log ATM–15
use for message format buffer pool AS–74
XRF planning considerations AS–299
XRF process, contribution to AS–259, AS–260

OS/390 access methods
used by HD ADB–78
used by HSAM ADB–61

OS/390 application programs
accessing IMS databases using ODBA ISDT–447
OS/390 command syntax CSL–27
OS/390 formula in sizing structures AS–387
OS/VS COBOL APCICS–19
OS/VS COBOL and Language Environment APDB–113
OSAM
buffer pools, defining ISDT–376, ISDT–411, ISDT–412
coupling facility ISDT–392, ISDT–394
data set
maximum size ADB–79
I/O errors, tracing ISDT–384
sequential buffering ISDT–414
subpools, defining ISDT–376, ISDT–413
OSAM (overflow sequential access method)
allocating data sets IIV–54
buffer pool
/DISPLAY POOL command CR–242
enhanced buffer pool
/DISPLAY POOL command CR–243
reallocating data sets IIV–54
sample OSAM data set allocation JCL IIV–54
OSAM (Overflow Sequential Access Method)
adjusting buffers ADB–372
allocation of data sets ADB–312
buffer pool diagram DGR–70
data sets AS–86
DECB with IOB in use DGR–73
description ADB–249, ADB–473
options ADB–261
structure
calculating the size of AS–389
explained AS–376
specifying AS–385
track space used ADB–244
used by HD ADB–90
OSAM and VSAM ESDS block format DGR–105
OSAM buffer pool, retrieving statistics APDG–147
OSAM data set
maximum size ADB–473
OSAM data sets block size URS–39
OSAM Sequential Buffering AS–205
OSAM Sequential Buffering (SB)
See SB (OSAM Sequential Buffering) ADB–249
OSAM-Buffer-Pool Report URS–441
OSAMGTF keyword
/TRACE command CR–656
definition CR–62
OTMA
commands that support CR–36
control flow, tracing ISDT–386
DCC procedure ISDT–202
generic resource (GRNAME) parameter ISDT–266
message prefix sizes ISDT–120
security default commands CR–37
shared queue environment ATM–112
shared queue environment
asynchronous messages ATM–113
synchronous messages ATM–113
stopping OG–138
OTMA (IMS Open Transaction Access Manager)
protected messages OTMA–54
OTMA (IMS Open Transaction Manager Access)
benefits OTMA–3
OTMA (IMS Open Transaction Manager Access)
(continued)
capabilities OTMA–2
client OTMA–2, OTMA–13
client
in XRF environment OTMA–42
comparison of protocols OTMA–4
descriptor OTMA–39
DFS1269E message DGR–341
differences from other protocols OTMA–4
dumps DGR–342
IMS application programs OTMA–2
IMS environments supported OTMA–2
installing OTMA–37
introduction OTMA–1
log records DGR–342
message
prefix length OTMA–45
message switch OTMA–51
module-to-cross reference table DGR–340
Prerouting exit routine (DFSYPRX0) OTMA–5
program switch OTMA–51
restrictions OTMA–45
resynchronization protocol OTMA–30
security levels OTMA–48
server OTMA–2
support for /EXIT command OTMA–41
trace
description DGR–338
format of trace records DGR–339
verb-to-code cross reference table DGR–341
OTMA (Open Transaction Manager Access)
MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling)
processing remote transactions in an IMSplex
ATM–245
sample messages OTMA–88
OTMA Callable Interface (C/I) OTMA–95
OTMA Callable Interface (C/I)
error codes and messages OTMA–114
getting started with OTMA–96
initializing OTMA–97
introduction to OTMA–95
otma_alloc API OTMA–104
otma_close API OTMA–113
otma_create API OTMA–101
otma_free API OTMA–112
otma_open API OTMA–102
otma_openx API OTMA–103
otma_receive_async API OTMA–111
otma_send_async API OTMA–108
otma_send_receivex API OTMA–108
restrictions OTMA–98
sample programs OTMA–122
security for OTMA–98
OTMA Destination Resolution Exit Routine
(DFSYDRU0) CG–367
OTMA Destination Resolution Exit Routine
(DFSYDRU0)
attributes CG–367
IMS callable services CG–368
OTMA Destination Resolution Exit Routine
(DFSYDRU0) (continued)
IMS environments CG–367
including the routine CG–367, CG–368
link-editing CG–368
naming convention CG–367
registers at entry CG–368
registers at exit CG–369
sample routine location CG–368
using callable services CG–367

OTMA GROUP keyword
/DISPLAY command
ACTIVE CR–205

OTMA Input/Output Edit exit routine (DFSYIOE0)
attributes CG–371
registers at entry CG–372
registers at exit CG–373
using callable services CG–371

OTMA Input/Output Edit Exit Routine (DFSYIOE0) CG–371

OTMA Input/Output Edit Exit Routine (DFSYIOE0)
IMS callable services CG–372
IMS environments CG–371
including the routine CG–372
link-editing CG–372
naming convention CG–371
sample routine location CG–372

OTMA keyword
definition CR–62
DISPLAY command
description CR–236
examples CR–307
OTMA keyword CR–307
SECURE command CR–556
START command CR–588
STOP command CR–611

OTMA parameter OTMA–37
OTMA Prerouting Exit Routine (DFSYPRX0) attributes CG–375
IMS callable services CG–375
IMS environments CG–375
including the routine CG–375
naming convention CG–375
prerouting input messages CG–375
registers at entry CG–376
registers at exit CG–377
sample routine location CG–375
using callable services CG–375

OTMA Prerouting Exit Routine (DFSYPRX0)
link editing CG–375
otma_alloc API OTMA–104
otma_close API OTMA–113
otma_create API OTMA–101
otma_free API OTMA–112
otma_open API OTMA–102
otma_openx API OTMA–103
otma_receive_async API OTMA–111
otma_send_async API OTMA–108
otma_send_receive API OTMA–105
otma_send_receivex API OTMA–108
OTMA, processing conversations with APTM–148

OTMAASY option OTMA–53
OTMAMD parameter OTMA–38
OTMANM parameter OTMA–38
OTMASE parameter OTMA–39
OTMASP parameter OTMA–38
out-of-space abend, GSAM DGR–264

OUTBND keyword
CHANGE command CR–124, CR–128
OUTBND= parameter ISDT–329

OUTDDS= parameter
control statements
UCF FUNCTION=DU URDBTM–351
UCF FUNCTION=DX URDBTM–353
UCF FUNCTION=IL URDBTM–355
UCF FUNCTION=IM URDBTM–356
UCF FUNCTION=PR URDBTM–358
UCF FUNCTION=RU URDBTM–362
UCF FUNCTION=SN URDBTM–365
UCF FUNCTION=SU URDBTM–369
UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–371

outlining values
overline URDBTM–501
underline URDBTM–501
vertical line URDBTM–501
output
available at ISC restart ATM–305
controlling ATM–87, ATM–90
MFS DPM ATM–479
output algorithms
RU chain ATM–377
VLVB ATM–377
output bracketing ATM–482
output component
defining ATM–276
relationship to input component ATM–271
selection
identification number ATM–273, ATM–444
modifying ATM–272, ATM–444
system messages ATM–360, ATM–444
output component ID byte, output message ATM–480
output component protection, extended ATM–452
Output Creation Exit Routine (DFSINSX0) attributes CG–380
description CG–379
IMS callable services CG–380
IMS environments CG–380
including the routine CG–380
link-editing CG–380
naming convention CG–380
registers CG–383
registers
contents on entry CG–383
contents on exit CG–385
sample routine location CG–380
supplying data CG–381
user descriptors CG–381
using callable services CG–380
output data sets, creating DGR–6
output devices, control characters by type ATM–86
output editing option, SLU P ATM–453
output errors, MFS online detection ATM–365
output field tab separator, rules for inserting APTM–228
output function management headers, ISC ATM–562
OUTPUT keyword
  ASSIGN command
    description CR–106
    definition CR–62
output message APTM–183
output message
  between brackets
    design considerations ATM–448
    figure ATM–447
    how handled ATM–447
    ISC ATM–308
    message switching ATM–487
cursor positioning APTM–218
default system control area APTM–208
description ATM–477
device field attributes APTM–209
extended field attributes for devices APTM–209
extended graphic character set (EGCS) APTM–211
Fast Path
  Finance systems ATM–458
  SLU P systems ATM–458
fill characters for device fields APTM–207
Finance Communication System
  multiple transmission ATM–477
  read type field (SMSCRT) ATM–478
  read-flags field (SMSCRF/SMSCRE) ATM–478
format APTM–16
formatting options APTM–203
formatting options
  description APTM–203
  specifying URDBTM–442
formatting, activating MFS ATM–364, ATM–483
header APTM–183
header
  length URDBTM–474
  structure and content URDBTM–478
how MFS formats messages APTM–202
ISC bracketing ATM–331
literal fields APTM–209
logical paging APTM–204
MFS DPM ATM–364
mixed DBCS/EBCDIC fields APTM–212
null
  purpose ATM–477
  when sent ATM–483
operator logical paging APTM–206
output bracketing ATM–482
output FM header
  Finance format ATM–479
  ID byte ATM–480
  message descriptor byte (Finance) ATM–480
  message descriptor byte (SLU P) ATM–481
  MFS data bytes (Finance) ATM–480
  MFS data bytes (SLU P) ATM–482
  response requests ATM–484
  SLU P format ATM–481
physical paging APTM–206
printing APTM–20
processing APTM–202
output message (continued)
  prompt facility APTM–219
  segmenting ATM–477
  sending APTM–131
  sequence number URDBTM–448
SLU P system
  multiple transmission ATM–477
  read type field (SMSCRT) ATM–478
  read-flags field (SMSCRF/SMSCRE) ATM–478
sync point requested, ISC ATM–321
system control area (SCA) APTM–208
temporarily stopping ATM–468
to other application programs APTM–130
to other IMS TM systems APTM–134
truncation APTM–203
types ATM–477
using Basic Edit APTM–21
using MFS APTM–27
when committed ATM–321
  with directed routing APTM–134
output message format
  default APTM–244
  device-dependent information APTM–273,
    APTM–277
output messages, defining JGR–17
output messages, identifying destinations for APDG–99
output protocols, determining ATM–275
output response requested by message type ATM–485
output sequence and information from IMS Monitor Report
  DB/DC URS–352
  DBCTL URS–387
  DCCCTL URS–409
output thread ADB–145
Output User Creation exit routine (DFSINSX0)
  See DFSINSX0 (Output User Creation exit routine)
output, printing with IMS Spool API AS–235
OUTPUT= parameter, not used in ISC ATM–292
outstanding reply numbers
  MVS system console CR–7
Overall Summary of Resource Usage and Contentions for All Transaction Codes and PSBs Report
  Fast Path Log Analysis utility URS–300
Overall Summary of Transit Times by Transaction Code for IFP Regions Report
  Fast Path Log Analysis utility URS–300
overflow buffer allocation (OBA)
  See OBA (overflow buffer allocation) ADB–283
overflow data set ADB–65
Overflow Sequential Access Method
  See OSAM (Overflow Sequential Access Method) ADB–473
overflow sequential access method.
  See OSAM (overflow sequential access method)
overflow space allocation, changing ADB–423
overflow structure, definition CQS–2
OVERFLOWQ keyword
  definition CR–62
DISPLAY command
    description CR–237
    examples CR–308
overhead
  DEDB CI resources ADB–307
  logical records ADB–308
overlap, storage APCICS–9
overline, on fields URDBTM–501
overload avoidance, MSC ATM–214
OVERRIDE keyword
  definition CR–62
  ERESTART command CR–352
overrides, PROCESS statement APCICS–29
overriding
  FIRST insert rule APDB–33
  HERE insert rule APDB–32, APDB–33
  insert rules APDB–136
OVFLW= operand
  DATASET statement URS–36
P command code APDB–34
P cqsjob command
  description CR–721
  syntax diagram CR–721
P irimproc command
  description CR–723
  example CR–723
  syntax diagram CR–723
P processing option APCICS–103, APDB–30, APDB–239
P-TOKEN keyword
  /DISPLAY UOR command CR–271
P= keyword
  DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–269
PAC definition/mapping macro DGR–58
packaging
  enhancements
    overview RPG–169
PACKEDDECIMAL data type JGR–86
packing density ADB–240
page advance function (NEXTPP), MFS ATM–450
page advance request
  See NEXTPP request
  page bit APTM–205
  page delete function, MFS ATM–365
page fixing
  DREF storage AS–197
  expanded storage AS–197
  for control region AS–197
  using member DFSF1xx AS–197
  page fixing MSDBs ADB–273
  page protection state ATM–39
PAGE= operand (DEV statement)
  specifying URDBTM–463
  use APTM–220
PAGE= operand (MSG statement), specifying
  URDBTM–442
PAGEREQ function APTM–234
paging errors
  ISC ATM–344
  online detection, MFS ATM–366
  paging requests APTM–202
paging, operator logical
  description APTM–234
  format design considerations APTM–234
  in partitioned format mode, 3180 APTM–243
  in partitioned format mode, 3290 APTM–241
  specifying URDBTM–442
  transaction codes and page requests APTM–234
PAGINGOP= operand (PDB statement), use APTM–241
PAIR= keyword
  LCHILD statement URS–74
panels
  copyright IIV–98
  execution phase—phase complete verification
    IIV–122
  execution phase—return to phase selection
    IIV–123
  execution phase—ENT Mode IIV–121
  execution phase—LST Mode IIV–120
  file-tailoring in progress IIV–113
  file-tailoring—ALL action complete IIV–114
  file-tailoring—ALL action request IIV–112
  file-tailoring—DOC Action IIV–116
  file-tailoring—ENT mode IIV–115
  file-tailoring—LST Mode IIV–114
  file-tailoring—phase complete verification
    IIV–117
  file-tailoring—return to phase selection IIV–118
  HELP -- general information IIV–125
  HELP table of contents IIV–124
  initial installation environment options IIV–98
  IVP Phase Selection IIV–104
  logo IIV–97
  option change verification IIV–100
  sub-option change verification IIV–101
  sub-option selection IIV–100
  table merge completed IIV–103
  table merge in progress IIV–102
  table-merge request IIV–101
  variable gathering—DOC action IIV–108
  variable gathering—ENT mode IIV–107
  variable gathering—LST mode IIV–106
  variable gathering—phase complete verification
    IIV–109
  variable gathering—return to phase selection IIV–110
PAPL definition/mapping macro DGR–58
parallel database processing enhancements,
  introduction to RPG–10
parallel session support IIV–75, ISDT–188
parallel sessions
  bind requirements ATM–301
  ISC, defining IMS-to-IMS sessions ATM–287
  users permitted ATM–272
parameter
  allocated output CSL–196
  CFIRLM AS–385
  CFOSAM AS–385
  CFVSAM AS–385
  CIC DBRC–26
  DBRC for online IMS DBRC–8
  descriptions for INIT.PART DBRC–240
  FDRMBR AS–11
  GENMAX DBRC–27
  GRNAME OTMA–37
parameter (continued)
in member DFSHSBxx
coding IMS for XRF AS–304
NOREUSE DBRC–27, DBRC–34
OTMA OTMA–37
OTMAMD OTMA–38
OTMANM OTMA–38
OTMASE OTMA–39
OTMASP OTMA–38
performance-related AS–99
record type DBRC–317
RECOVPD DBRC–15
REUSE DBRC–27
selection criteria DBRC–317
STARTNEW DBRC–61

parameter list
Field edit routine CG–313, CG–316
Segment edit routine CG–319, CG–321

parameter list format
in DFSPRE60 CG–222
in DFSPRE70 CG–226

parameter lists
abnormal termination CQS–172
BPE Statistics user exit BPE–45
Client Connection user exit CQS–54
Client Disconnect user exit CQS–54
create named storage service BPE–73
CSCBLK CG–19
CSSTRG CG–16
delete module service BPE–73
destroy names storage service BPE–75
DFSCAOI CG–23
free storage service BPE–69
generating in your exit routine CG–13
get storage services BPE–67
Initialization and Termination user exit BPE–44
Initialization user exit CQS–53
load module service BPE–71
Queue Overflow user exit CQS–56, CQS–57
restart entry CQS–172
retrieve named storage service BPE–74
standard BPE user exit BPE–58
Structure Event exit routine
checkpoint CQS–177
Deferred Resync Complete CQS–175
resync, CQS CQS–175
structure overflow CQS–180
structure rebuild CQS–178
structure rebuild lost UOWs CQS–178
structure status change CQS–180
Structure Event user exit CQS–67
Structure Event user exit
checkpoint CQS–68
connect CQS–67
overflow CQS–70
Rebuild CQS–69
status change CQS–71
Structure Inform exit routine CQS–182
Structure Statistics user exit BPE–46, CQS–58
Termination user exit CQS–53

parameters
ALL CR–17
AOS= ISDT–327
APPCIOT= ISDT–327
assembler language, DL/I call format APDB–75
BGWRT ADB–256
BKO APDG–32
BSIZ
in DB/TM environment ADB–278
in the DBCTL environment ADB–282
BWO(TYPEIMS) ADB–259
BYTES ADB–195
C language, DL/I call format APDB–77
CNBA ADB–282
COBOL, DL/I call format APDB–80
CONSTANT ADB–204
DB Monitor ADB–332
DBBF
in DB/TM environment ADB–278
in the DBCTL environment ADB–281
DBCLID APDG–137
DBFX
in DB/TM environment ADB–278
in the DBCTL environment ADB–282
DDATA ADB–195
description CR–16
DISP ADB–258
DL/I ADB–258
DLOG ADB–258
DUMP ADB–258, ADB–261
ERASE APDG–86
EXIT ADB–214
EXTRTN ADB–196, ADB–204
FPB ADB–282
FPOB ADB–283
FREESPACE ADB–259
FRSPC ADB–237
generic
description CR–18
LTERM keyword CR–18
group
description CR–19
IMBED | NOIMBED ADB–260
inclusive CR–17
INDICES ADB–199
INSERT
free space for a KSDS ADB–257, ADB–259
using in splitting CIs ADB–69
IOBF ADB–248
JOURNAL APDG–180
LATC ADB–258
LGNR ADB–334
LIST APDG–143
LOCK ADB–258
LOCKMAX APDG–43
MBR ADB–175
MODE APDG–40
MON ADB–332
NAME
in a DBD ADB–175, ADB–203
in the SENFLD statement ADB–219
parameters (continued)
NBA ADB–270
NBRSEGS ADB–274
NOPROT ADB–198
NULLVAL ADB–196, ADB–204
OUTBND= ISDT–329
PARENT ADB–161, ADB–175

PARENT
in logical relationships ADB–172, ADB–175
to specify PCF and PCL pointers ADB–86
to specify PCF pointers ADB–85

Pascal, DL/I call format APDB–83
PASSWD ADB–33
PL/I, DL/I call format APDB–85
POINTER ADB–173
PROCPT ADB–32, ADB–267, APDG–85
PROCSQ ADB–186, ADB–189
PROT ADB–198
PTR ADB–83
RECORD ADB–244
REPL ADB–220
REPLICATE | NOREPLICATE ADB–260
RMNAME ADB–93

RMNAME
HDAM options ADB–240
PHDAM options ADB–240
specifying number of blocks or CIs ADB–239
specifying number of RAPS ADB–92

RTRUNC APDG–97
RULES ADB–429, ADB–469
SCHD ADB–258
SEGMENT ADB–203
SHARELVL ADB–124
SOURCE ADB–173, ADB–182
SPEED | RECOVERY ADB–259
SRCH ADB–204
START ADB–195
SUBS ADB–258
SUBSEQ ADB–194, ADB–204
system initialization, displayed CR–428, CR–578
TRANSACT APDG–40
TXTU APDG–181
TYPE ADB–220
VERSION ADB–215
VSAMFIX ADB–248, ADB–258
VSAMPLS ADB–258
WFI APDG–37

PARENT parameter ADB–85, ADB–161, ADB–172, ADB–175
parent segment, definition ADB–7

PARENT= operand
SEGM statement URS–57
SENSEG statement URS–130

parentage, P command code APDB–34
PARLIM keyword
ASSIGN command
description CR–106
definition CR–62

PARM parameter JGR–111

PARM= keyword (continued)
subparameters of
TOKEN= subparameter URS–288
XFMT= subparameter URS–287

PARM1= and PARM2= on EXEC statement AS–94
parmcount APTM–163

PARMLIST definition/mapping macro DGR–58

parsing error return codes APTM–363

PART exec APDB–280, APTM–336

PART parameter
DELETE.PART DBRC–175

Partial Database Reorganization utility (DFSPRCT1 and
DFSPRCT2)
checkpoint/restart URBMT–89
description URBMT–87

JCL requirements
DD statements (Step 1) URBMT–89
DD statements (Step 2) URBMT–90
EXEC statement (Step 1) URBMT–89
EXEC statement (Step 2) URBMT–90

restricted from Utility Control Facility URBMT–334

return codes URBMT–96

step 1 prereorganization URBMT–88
step 1 utility control statement URBMT–93
step 2 unload/reload pointer resolution URBMT–89
step 2 utility control statement URBMT–95

Partial Database Reorganization utility (DFSPRCT1)
ADB–351

partition
activating APTM–219
considerations for defining APTM–262
defining APTM–255
descriptor (PD) APTM–255
descriptor block (PDB) APTM–255
initialization options
for the 3180 APTM–243
for the 3290 APTM–241

uses APTM–261

partition DB record (DSPDBHRC)
HALDB
TYPE=PART DBRC–54

partition DBDS records (DSPDSHRC)
HALDB
types of DBDSs DBRC–55

Partition Default information screen
anchor ADB–484
automatic definition ADB–484, ADB–486
block size ADB–485
bytes ADB–485
data set name prefix ADB–484
database name ADB–484
default JCL ADB–486
free block freq. factor ADB–485
free space percentage ADB–485
high block number ADB–484
image copy JCL ADB–486
input data set ADB–484
max. image copies ADB–485
module name ADB–484
online image copy JCL ADB–486
Partition Default information screen (continued)

- partition ID ADB–484
- receive JCL ADB–486
- recovery period ADB–485
- recovery utility JCL ADB–485
- reusable? ADB–486
- use defaults for DS groups ADB–484

Partition Definition utility

- HALDB, defining ADB–291
- partition high key ADB–292
- partition record (DSPPTNRC)

Partition high key

- HALDB
- PHDAM DBRC–54
- partition set, description APTM–255
- partition set, language statements used to create
  - PD URDBTM–506
  - PDB URDBTM–505
  - PDBEND URDBTM–508
- partition structure modification ADB–365
- partitioned data set (PDS) directory URDBTM–385
- partitioned data set.
  - See PDS (partitioned data set)
- partitioned database ADB–78
- partitioned database
  - help information ADB–479
  - information screen
    - database name ADB–482
    - database organization ADB–482
    - number of data set groups ADB–483
    - part. selection routine ADB–482
    - recoverable? ADB–482
    - RSR global service group ADB–482
    - RSR tracking type ADB–482
    - share level ADB–482
  - panel ADB–478

Partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access Method (PHDAM)

- APDG–67, APDG–69, URS–95
- Partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method (PHIDAM)
  - APDG–67, APDG–70, URS–96
- Partitioned Secondary Index (PSINDEX) APDG–77
- partitioning sample application IVL–161
- partitions ADB–292, ADB–293
- partitions
  - changing ADB–364
  - changing
    - boundaries ADB–366
    - key ranges ADB–366
    - overview ADB–363
  - partition structure modification ADB–365
  - modifying ADB–364
  - modifying
    - boundaries ADB–366
    - key ranges ADB–366
    - overview ADB–363
  - partition structure ADB–365

PARTNAME exec APDB–281, APTM–337

Partner Product Exit Routine (DFSPPUE0)

- using callable services CG–207

Partner Product Exit Routine (DFSPPUE0)

- attributes CG–207
- description CG–207

Partner Product Exit Routine (DFSPPUE0) (continued)

- IMS callable services CG–207
- IMS environments CG–207
- including the routine CG–207
- link-editing CG–207
- naming convention CG–207
- registers
  - content on entry CG–208
  - contents on exit CG–208
- sample routine location CG–207
- partner systems in MSC linking ATM–196
- PARTNUM exec APDB–281, APTM–337
- parts of DL/I program APDB–12

Pascal

- application programming APTM–40
- batch program, coding APDB–65
- DL/I call formats APTM–42
- DL/I call formats, example APDB–84
- DL/I program structure APDB–65
- parameters, DL/I call format APDB–83
- passing PCBs APTM–55
- PCBs, passing APDB–109
- skeleton MPP APTM–160
- SSA definition examples APDB–105
- syntax diagram, DL/I call format APDB–82
- pass control of processing APDG–6
- pass control to other applications APDG–57
- passing a conversation to another IMS TM system
  - APTM–142
- passing control
  - restrictions APTM–141
  - to a conversational program APTM–140
  - to another program in a conversation APTM–140

PassTicket keyword

- SIGN command CR–564
- passtickets, using instead of passwords ISDT–332
- PASSWD parameter ADB–33
- PASSWD= parameter
  - DBD statement URS–26
- password OG–110
- password
  - command CR–16
  - definition CR–16
  - RACF CR–16
  - security
    - DELETE command CR–170
    - SMU CR–16
    - terminals CR–16
- PASSWORD keyword

  - CHANGE command CR–128
  - definition CR–62
  - DELETE command CR–170
  - ERRESTART command CR–352
  - MODIFY command CR–411
  - NRESTART command CR–431
  - SET command CR–745
  - PASSWORD parameter (DFLD statement), specifying URDBTM–494
- password protection ADB–33
- password reverification CG–309
password security APDG–92, APDG–93, URS–182
password security
/LOCK and /UNLOCK command URS–182
PASSWORD statement, specifying URDBTM–445
password, IMS
description APTM–192
specifying URDBTM–494
passwords AS–113
passwords
command keywords AS–123
in ACB AS–302
masking AS–147
protection with command keywords AS–123
with AO application programs AS–125
PAT definition/mapping macro DGR–58
PATE definition/mapping macro DGR–58
path call APDB–30
path call
D command code APDB–30
definition APDB–27
each APDB–27
overview APDB–27
path command APCICS–63
paths
full duplex ADB–440
half duplex ADB–440
in hierarchy ADB–8
in logical relationships ADB–160
third access ADB–440
PATIENT segment APCICS–2, APDB–20
PAYMENT segment APCICS–4, APDB–21
PC= parameter
START irlmproc command CR–699
PCA definition/mapping macro DGR–58
PCB (program communication block)
adress list, accessing APDB–98
alternate APCICS–31
alternate PCB ATM–273
alternate PCB statement ADB–297
call APDG–56
coding ADB–296
database PCB statement ADB–297
description APDG–4
DL/I calls, relationship APDB–87
DLINFO call APDB–265, APTM–321
express APDG–100
for an LTERM not in I/O PCB ATM–444
I/O PCB ATM–273
in application programs, summary APCICS–32
introduction ADB–18
language interfaces, relationship with APTM–12
mask APTM–11
masks
description APDB–13
GSAM databases APDB–213
I/O PCB APDB–88, APTM–46
maximum number of database PCBs in a PSB
ADB–297
modifiable alternate PCBs APDB–243
types APCICS–31, APDB–111, APTM–56
PCB (schedule a PSB) call
description APDB–165
format APDB–165
parameters APDB–165
usage APDB–165
PCB definition/mapping macro DGR–58
PCB lists APTM–56
PCB parameter list in assembler language MPPs
APTM–156
PCB statement JGR–103
PCB statement
database PCB size URS–117
DL/I or Fast Path database URS–117
GSAM URS–128
SENSEG statement URS–129
PCB, express alternate
See express alternate PCB.
PCBINFO exec APDB–278, APTM–334
PCBNAME= parameter
alternate PCB statement URS–117
DL/I PCB statement URS–119
GSAM PCB statement URS–128
PCBs, alternate
See modifiable alternate PCBs
PCBs, modifiable
See modifiable alternate PCBs
PCF (physical child first) pointers
correcting ADB–475
description ADB–84
PCH keyword
COMPT command CR–147
definition CR–63
RCOMPT command CR–511
PCHSEGTS APDB–139
PCIB definition/mapping macro DGR–58
PCL (physical child last) pointers
correcting ADB–475
description ADB–85
PCLBSGTS APDB–139
PCPB definition/mapping macro DGR–58
PCPSEGRTS APDB–139
PCSEGRTS APDB–139
PCT definition/mapping macro DGR–58
PD statement (partition definition)
CELLSIZE= operand URDBTM–507
PID= operand URDBTM–506
PRESPACE= operand URDBTM–506
SCROLLI= operand URDBTM–508
specifying URDBTM–506
use APTM–255
VIEWLOC= operand URDBTM–507
VIEWPORT= operand URDBTM–506
WINDOWOF= operand URDBTM–507
PD= operand
DPAGE statement
specifying URDBTM–485
PD= operand (DPAGE statement), specifying
APTM–306
PDA definition/mapping macro DGR–59
PDB (partition descriptor block)
function APTM–255

Index 241
PDB (partition descriptor block) (continued)
  language statements used to create
  PD APTM–255
  PDBEND URDBTM–439
  summary URDBTM–439
  LUDEFN= operand URDBTM–506
  LUSIZE= operand URDBTM–505
  PAGINGOP= operand APTM–241
PDB (partition descriptor block),
  SYSMSG= operand URDBTM–505
PDB= operand (DEV statement), specifying
  URDBTM–472
PDBEND statement, specifying URDBTM–508
PDIR definition/mapping macro DGR–59
PDIR parameter (MFS Service utility) URDBTM–421
PDL definition/mapping macro DGR–59
PDS (partition data set) member sections CG–176
PDS (partitioned data set) IIV–10
PDS (partitioned data set)
  LGEN system generation AS–48
  used online AS–92
PDS directory ADB–480
PDS keyword
  /DISPLAY MODIFY command CR–229
  COMPT command CR–147
  definition CR–63
  RCOMPT command CR–511
PDS members DBRC–6
PEC definition/mapping macro DGR–59
PEN= operand (DEV statement), specifying
  URDBTM–468
PEN= operand (DFLD statement), specifying
  URDBTM–503
PERFM keyword procedure DGR–24
performance OTMA–46
performance
  analysis tools
    RMF II AS–191
    avoiding split segments ADB–212
    checkpointing the queue structure CR–151
    comparison of databases ADB–78
    criteria AS–174, AS–175
    discussion ADB–237, ADB–263
    displaying global queue information CR–249
    evaluating OG–97
    execution-time options
      for IMS procedure AS–98
      for MPP region AS–104
    factors
      data sharing, and AS–372
      for system initialization AS–194
    objectives AS–174
    gathering data OG–110
    generating data with /TRACE CR–656
    HISAM ADB–70, ADB–74
    HSAM ADB–64
    impact APDG–180
    logical relationships ADB–181
    maximizing online APDG–58
    monitoring ADB–331
    objectives AS–174
performance (continued)
  of MSC AS–180
  parameters for AS–99
  planning
    shared-queues environment, in a AS–210
    procedures AS–179
    records CR–141
  reporting aids
    as part of monitoring AS–179
    list of AS–191
    serial search CR–18
    statistics for measurements and tuning CR–68
    tuning a database ADB–337
    when using /CQCHKPT CR–151
    when using /DISPLAY ALL CR–212
    when using /DISPLAY QCNT CR–249
  performance considerations, IMS Version 8 RPG–19
  performance factors
    3270 or SLU 2 APTM–265
    all devices APTM–263
    large screen 3270 or SLU 2 devices APTM–265
    performance tuning CQS–82
    performance-related EXEC parameters ISDT–406
  period usage
    See usage
  Persistent Reusable Java Virtual Machine JGR–1
  Persistent Session Tracking
    Termination of ATM–54
  PF keys for MTO OG–314, OG–358
  PFK= operand (DEV statement), specifying
    URDBTM–467
  phase selection IIV–104
  phases of the XRF process AS–266
PHDAM
  multiple qualification statements APDB–195
  PHDAM (partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access Method)
    RAPs (root anchor points) ADB–92
  PHDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access Method)
    APDG–67, APDG–69
  PHDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access Method)
    access methods ADB–11
    accessing segments ADB–99
    calls against ADB–80
    changing DL/I access methods
      changing from HDAM and PHDAM to HIDAM and
      PHIDAM ADB–360
    counters, introduction ADB–15
    data set naming conventions ADB–23
    database records ADB–95
    database records, locking ADB–105
    DBCTL support ADB–56
    DBD generation
      example URS–95
    deleting segments ADB–103
    description of ADB–78
    format of database ADB–90
    inserting segments ADB–100
    loading the database ADB–326
    locking ADB–107
    logical record length ADB–244
    multiple data set groups ADB–229
PHDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access Method) (continued)
options available ADB–80
OS/390 access methods used ADB–78
overflow area ADB–93
pointers in ADB–81
pointers, introduction ADB–15
randomizing module ADB–239
root addressable area ADB–93, ADB–96
segment format ADB–96
size of root addressable area ADB–238
space calculations ADB–305
specifying free space ADB–237
storage of records ADB–93
PHDAM database APDB–128
PHIDAM database
  segment format DGR–103
  variable-length segment format DGR–107
PHIDAM
  access methods ADB–11
  database reorganization procedures ADB–353
  Example
  /DIS HALDB master PARTMAST CR–290
  /DIS Partition PART2 CR–290
PHIDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Direct Access Method)
  calls against ADB–80
PHIDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Data Access Method)
  changing DL/I access methods
  changing from HDAM and PHDAM to HIDAM and PHIDAM ADB–360
PHIDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method) APDG–67, APDG–70
PHIDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method)
  accessing segments ADB–99
  counters, introduction ADB–15
  data set naming conventions ADB–23
  DBCTL support ADB–56
  DBD generation
    example URS–96
  description of ADB–78
  format of database ADB–90
  index database ADB–79, ADB–96
  index segment ADB–97
  inserting segments ADB–100
  loading the database ADB–326
  locking ADB–107
  logical record length ADB–244
  maximum size ADB–79
  multiple data set groups ADB–229
  options available ADB–80
  pointers in ADB–81
  pointers, introduction ADB–15
  segment format ADB–97
  space calculations ADB–105, ADB–305
  specifying free space ADB–237
  storage of records ADB–96
  when to use ADB–80
PHIDAM database
  segment format DGR–103
  variable-length segment format DGR–107
  physical block size ADB–244
  physical child first pointers ADB–84, ADB–475
  physical child last pointers ADB–85, ADB–475
  physical link
    CTC type ATM–219
    failure ATM–228
  physical links, MSC ATM–195, URDBTM–428
  physical page positioning (FIN) APTM–305,
  URDBTM–485
  physical paging
    description APTM–206
    POS= operand (DFLD statement) URDBTM–496
    specifying multiple input pages APTM–305,
    URDBTM–484
  physical parent APDB–208
  physical parent in logical relationships ADB–150,
  ADB–154
  physical parent pointer
    See PP (physical parent) pointer ADB–157
  physical security AS–147
  physical structure of a database APDG–4
Physical Terminal (Input) Edit Routine (DFSPIXT0)
  description CG–387
  example CG–390
  IMS callable services CG–388
  IMS environments CG–387
  including the routine CG–387
  interface CG–388
  link-editing CG–387
  naming convention CG–387
  operation CG–387
  registers
    contents on entry CG–389
    contents on exit CG–389
  sample routine location CG–388
Physical Terminal (Output) Edit Routine (DFSCTTO0)
  description CG–391
  example CG–394
  IMS callable services CG–392
  IMS environments CG–391
  including the routine CG–391
  link-editing CG–391
  naming convention CG–391
  registers
    contents on entry CG–392
    contents on exit (if cancel request) CG–394
    contents on exit (if no cancel request) CG–393
  sample routine location CG–392
physical terminals
  defining ATM–147
  device class control ATM–86
  separating input and output devices ATM–34
  physical twin backward pointers ADB–87, ADB–475
  physical twin forward pointers ADB–86, ADB–475
  physically adjacent ADB–60, ADB–64
PI (program isolation)
  in the DB/DC environment AS–28
  problem analysis DGR–254

Index 243
PI (program isolation) (continued)
trace facility DGR–254
use of IRLM alternative AS–76
with PROCOPT=GO option AS–70
PI (program isolation), lock protocols ADB–105
PI keyword OG–100
PI keyword
/TRACE command CR–656
definition CR–63
PID= operand (PD statement), specifying URDBTM–506
PITR keyword
/DISPLAY RECOVERY command CR–251
definition CR–63
RECOVER command
START CR–525

PL/I
application programming APTM–42
batch program, coding APDB–68
DL/I call formats APTM–45
DL/I call formats, example APDB–86
DL/I call-level sample APD–70
DL/I command-level sample APCICS–19
DL/I program, multitasking restriction APDB–68
entry statement APDB–108
entry statement restrictions APTM–163
I/O area APCICS–10
MPP coding notes APTM–163
optimizing compiler APTM–163
parameters, DL/I call format APDB–85
passing PCBs APTM–55
PCBs, passing APDB–110
pointers in entry statement APDB–110, APTM–55
program
variable names, mandatory APCICS–6
return statement APDB–108
skeleton MPP APTM–162
SSA definition examples APDB–106
syntax diagram, DL/I call format APDB–84
UIB, specifying APDB–99
PL/I for MVS & VM and Language Environment
APDB–113
PL/I language APDG–47
PL/I modules, organizing ISDT–415
PL/I subroutines, preloading AS–207
planned takeover
changing IMS system definition AS–277
definition of AS–271
description of AS–255
example of AS–279
limitations of AS–277
operator procedures for AS–277
practical uses of AS–277
planning
administration, overview AS–6
application change, example of AS–224
availability of service OG–310
introduction OG–3
scheduling algorithm AS–59
system definition changes AS–227
planning considerations CSL–20
planning for CQS
hardware requirements CQS–9
software requirements CQS–9
PLEX
OM trace table type BPE–9
RM trace table type BPE–10
SCI trace table type BPE–11
PLI/370 and Language Environment APDB–113
PLITDLI APDB–249
PLITDLI procedure
description ISDT–248
PLMCT keyword
ASSIGN command
description CR–106
definition CR–63
PNT definition/mapping macro DGR–59
pointer field ADB–192
POINTER parameter ADB–173
pointer segment ADB–186, ADB–191
POINTER= operand
LCHILD statement URS–73
SEGM statement URS–58, URS–60
pointers
correcting ADB–475
direct-address ADB–78
FCP (forward chain pointer) ADB–128
HB (hierarchic backward) ADB–83
HD ADB–81
HF ADB–82
HISAM (Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access
Method) ADB–67
in logical relationships ADB–159
in secondary indexes ADB–192, ADB–193
introduction ADB–15
LCF ADB–156
LCL ADB–156
logical relationships ADB–154
logical twin ADB–475
LP (logical parent) ADB–154, ADB–475
LTB ADB–158
LTF ADB–158
mixing types ADB–88
PCF (physical child first) ADB–84
PCL (physical child last) ADB–85
PP ADB–157
PTB ADB–87
PTF ADB–86
sequence in a segment’s prefix ADB–90, ADB–161
symbolic ADB–187, ADB–192
types ADB–357
pointers, subset
DBD, defining APCICS–94
description APCICS–91
GETFIRST option APCICS–96
MOVENEXT option APCICS–97
preparation for using APCICS–93
PSB, defining APCICS–94
sample application APCICS–94
SET option APCICS–98
SETCND option APCICS–99
SETZERO option APCICS–97
pointers, subset (continued)
  status codes APCICS–101
policies
  ARM CQS–12
  CFRM CQS–12
  defined CQS–11
  defining CQS–12
  LOGR CQS–12
  SFM CQS–12
polling features ISDT–116
POOL keyword
  definition CR–63
  DISPLAY command
    description CR–238
    examples CR–308, CR–316
POOL macro ISDT–133
POOL macro statement AS–72
pool manager APTM–175, ATM–79
pool manager
  MFS APTM–175
  MFS
    buffer pool APTM–176
    control block management APTM–176
    description APTM–175
  MFS description ATM–79
  MFSTEST ATM–79
  MFSTEST, description APTM–175, APTM–177
Pool Space Failure Summary report
  IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–401
  IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–428
Pool-Space-Failure-Summary report
  IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–372
POOLHDR definition/mapping macro DGR–59
POS (Position) call
  description APDB–138, APDB–236
  examples APDB–141
  format APDB–138
  I/O area APDB–139
  parameters APDB–139
  unqualified
    keywords APDB–139
  usage APDB–141
POS call function APDB–313, APTM–383
POS command
  description APCICS–59
  EXEC DLI command format APCICS–59
  format APCICS–59
  free space, identifying APCICS–103
  locating a specific sequential dependent
    APCICS–102
  locating the last inserted sequential dependent
    APCICS–102
  options APCICS–59
  usage APCICS–60
  using with DEDBs APCICS–101
POS command restriction APCICS–60
POS)=MULT APDB–197
POS= operand (DFLD statement), specifying
  URDBTM–494
POS= parameter keyword
  PCB TYPE=DB parameter URS–126
position
  establishing in database APDB–133
  hierarchy ADB–10
  MSDB ADB–130
position in the database, determining the current
  APCICS–64
position, reestablishing with checkpoint calls APDG–43,
  APDG–60
positioning
  after DLET APDB–185
  after ISRT APDB–187
  after REPL APDB–187
  after retrieval calls APDB–184
  after unsuccessful calls APDB–188
  after unsuccessful DLET or REPL call APDB–188
  after unsuccessful retrieval or ISRT call APDB–189
  CHKPT, effect APDB–243
  current, after unsuccessful calls APDB–188
  determining APDB–183
  multiple APDB–197
  understanding current APDB–183
post code list DGR–178
post-implementation review ADB–29
post-installation IVP uses IIV–91
post-takeover phase
  description of AS–278
  illustration of AS–278
posting of ITASK ECBs DGR–177
potential transactions, Fast Path AS–25
PP (physical parent) pointer ADB–157
PPAGE statement, specifying URDBTM–486
PPRE definition/mapping macro DGR–59
PPT entry requirements IIV–73
PQE definition/mapping macro DGR–59
practical uses of the planned takeover AS–277
pre-formatting data set space ADB–259
preallocated CIs ADB–266
prechained save area CG–8
preconditioning for other products, CICS IIV–11
prefix
  of message OTMA–14
  of segment ADB–14
  rules OTMA–15
prefix area format for log records DGR–127
prefix descriptor byte ADB–471
Prefix Resolution utility (DFSURG10) ADB–346
prefix syntax OTMA–65
Prefix Update utility (DFSURGP0) ADB–347
PREINIT parameter, input restart APDB–340,
  APTM–410
preinitialization routines, specifying in DFSHSBxx
  ISDT–346
preinstallation
  CBPDO user IIV–7
  CustomPac IIV–7
  PTFs IIV–7
  ServerPac user IIV–7
  SOURCEIDs for PTFs IIV–7
  PRELOAD parameter CHANGE.DBDS command
  DBRC–121
preloaded programs APDB–116
PREOPEN parameter CHANGE.DBDS command
   DBRC–121
PREP request CG–573
PREPARE command OG–121
PREPARE keyword
   definition CR–63
   MODIFY command CR–410
prepared statements
   java.sql.PreparedStatement interface JGR–86
PreparedStatement object JGR–93
preparing an APARs DGR–49
preparing programs
   for EXEC DLI APCIICS–11
   for EXEC DLI execution APCICS–28
preprocessor
   executing ISDT–45
   parameters, defining ISDT–46
   storage requirements, estimating ISDT–46
preprocessor for system definition AS–46
Prerereorganization utility (DFSURPR0) ADB–345
prerequisites for this book OG–xix
Prerouting exit routine (DFSYPRX0) OTMA–5,
   OTMA–40, OTMA–45
preset destination mode APTM–183
preset mode
   3270 Information Display System
      MFS bypass CR–28
ASSIGN command
   LINE keyword CR–102
   LTERM keyword CR–103
   NODE keyword CR–106
   RCLSDST command CR–509
   RESET command CR–535
resetting
   /IAM command CR–559
   SET command CR–559
   START command CR–585, CR–587
PRESPACE= operand (PD statement), specifying
   URDBTM–507
preventative service
   installing IIV–79
   preventing structure full CQS–41
preventive maintenance AS–277
preventive service
   Authorized Program Analysis Report (APAR) IIV–77
   Program Temporary Fix (PTF) IIV–77
PRILOG
   closing an open online DBRC–75
   compression DBRC–74
   compression, automatic DBRC–59
PRILOG family
   listing records DBRC–258
PRILOG records OG–271
primarily sequential processing APDG–73
primary data set groups
   See multiple data set groups
primary data set, defined ADB–65
primary error recovery procedure ATM–437
primary option panel options
   DBB IIV–99
   DBC IIV–99
primary option panel options (continued)
   DBT IIV–99
   DCC IIV–99
   XRF IIV–99
primary resource name (PRN)
   See PRN
primary structure, definition CQS–3
print checkpoint log records, how to APDG–61
Print Dump Exit Control Table IIV–73
print mode APTM–221
PRINT option
   File Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSERA10)
   URS–265
PRINT statement (language utility) URDBTM–514
print utility.
   See DFSERA10 program
printed output AS–87, AS–235
printed output
   /ASSIGN command ATM–87
   3270 printer components ATM–88
   3270R and ETO ATM–88
   candidate printers ATM–88
   controlling ATM–87, ATM–89
   operational considerations ATM–89
   printer component ATM–87
   shared printers ATM–89
   spooled output control ATM–88
   VTAMLST definitions ATM–88
printed page format control
   bottom margin APTM–222, URDBTM–470
   horizontal tabbing APTM–221
   left margin position APTM–221, URDBTM–470
   line density APTM–222, URDBTM–463
   line width APTM–221
   number of lines per page URDBTM–463
   page depth APTM–221
   top margin APTM–222, URDBTM–470
   vertical tabbing APTM–221
printer
   local OG–365
printers
   associated ATM–111
   candidate ATM–88
   sharing ATM–89, ATM–90
prior releases of IMS Release Planning Guide RPG–33
PRIORITY keyword
   definition CR–63
   DISPLAY command CR–248
priority of session recovery
   class-1 terminals, defining AS–302
   class-2 terminals, defining AS–302
   default values for IMS support AS–301, AS–302
   defining MSC links AS–304
private buffer pool
   VSO
      defining with DFSVSMMxx VSPEC member
         ADB–135
   description ADB–135
private context OTMA–51
PRLD, online execution parameter AS–100

246 Master Index and Glossary
PRN (primary resource name)
ATTACH FM header ATM–379
message routing, ISC ATM–278
SCHEDULER FM header ATM–379
PRN= operand
DIV statement
specifying URDBTM–478
PRN= operand (DIV statement), specifying APTM–299
problem determination APDG–161, APDG–169
Problem Determination JGR–123
PROC statement URS–11
PROC statement
MFS Device Characteristics Table utility (DFSUTB00)
URDBTM–405
Multiple Systems Verification utility (DFSUMSV0)
URDBTM–427
Spool SYSOUT Print utility (DFSUPRT0)
URDBTM–518
PROC statement parameters JGR–111
PROC= keyword
MSDB Maintenance utility (DBFDBMA0)
URDBTM–149
procedure
ACBGEN URS–157
DBDGEN URS–11
IMSDALOC URS–170
INITMOD URS–202
OLCUTL URS–198
PSBGEN URS–113
Security URS–184
SECURITY URS–184
procedure library modifications AS–93
procedures
adding a DEDB ADB–420
adding logical relationships ADB–393
adding secondary indexes ADB–411
adding segment edit/compression facility ADB–412
adding segment types ADB–390
adding variable-length segments ADB–411
adjusting HDAM options ADB–370
adjusting PHDAM options ADB–370
Asynchronous Data Capture ADB–413
calculating database size ADB–305
CBLTDLI ISDT–248
changing DASD ADB–369
changing DL/I access methods ADB–354
changing DL/I access methods
  changing from HDAM and PHDAM to HIDAM and
  PHIDAM ADB–360
  HDAM to HDIDAM ADB–359
  HDAM to HISAM ADB–358
  HIDAM to HDAM ADB–357
  HIDAM to HISAM ADB–356
  HISAM to HDAM ADB–355
  HISAM to HIDAM ADB–355
changing from HDAM and PHDAM to HIDAM and
  PHIDAM ADB–360
changing hierarchic structure
  changing sequence of segment types ADB–367
  combining segments ADB–368
changing segment size ADB–392
procedures (continued)
content OG–303
converting concatenated keys ADB–413
CQS CSL–14
DBBBATCH ISDT–193
DBC ISDT–196
DBRC ISDT–201
DCC ISDT–202
DD statements ISDT–294
deleting a DEDB ADB–420
deleting segment types ADB–391
description of ADB–19
DFSJBP ISDT–210
DFSJMP ISDT–211
DFSMPR ISDT–213
DLIBATCH ISDT–214
DLISAS ISDT–216
DXRJPROC ISDT–219
extending DEDB IOVF online ADB–424
FDR ISDT–220
FPUTIL ISDT–224
IMS CSL–14, ISDT–225
IMSBATCH ISDT–235
IMSCOBGO ISDT–236
IMSCOBOL ISDT–239
IMSFP ISDT–241
IMSPI ISDT–242
IMSPIGO ISDT–243
IMSRDR ISDT–245
introduction ADB–6
modifying a database ADB–389
operations
designing OG–322
developing OG–299, OG–331
documenting OG–301
maintenance OG–328
multisystem OG–323
planning OG–302
record keeping OG–306
testing OG–329, OG–343
parameters ISDT–248
PLITDLI ISDT–248
RDIBATCH ISDT–246
reorganization
HD database ADB–353
HISAM database ADB–352, ADB–353
PHDAM database ADB–353
PHIDAM database ADB–353
primary index ADB–353
storing ISDT–191
sysgen-supplied, cataloged ISDT–189, ISDT–191
procedures, installation DBRC–7
process database records APDG–6
process of requests APDG–6
process of requirements, analyzing APDG–27, APDG–49
PROCESS statement overrides APCICS–29
process step directive CSL–145
process step response directive CSL–146
processing
  commit-point in DEDB APDB–239

Index 247
commit-point in MSDB APDB–229
database, several views APDB–202
DEDBs APCICS–91, APDB–232
Fast Path databases APDB–223
Fast Path, P (position) option APCICS–103
GSAM databases APDB–213
MSDBs and VSO DEBDs APDB–225
multiple APDB–197
options
field in DB PCB APDB–93, APDB–215
H (position), for Fast Path APDB–239
P (path) APDB–30
P (position), for Fast Path APDB–239
segments in logical relationships APDB–208
processing a message APTM–17
processing affinity
in an MSC-IMSplex configuration ATM–240
processing continuity AS–26
processing intent AS–359
processing load
adjusting OG–108
processing mode APDG–39
processing option H ADB–277
processing option P
and NBA limit ADB–281
and NBA/FPB limit ADB–285
in determining the size of the UOW ADB–267
processing options
A (all) APDG–85
D (delete) APDG–85
defined APDG–83
E (exclusive) APDG–86
G (get)
description and concurrent record access
APDG–86
general description APDG–85
GO (read only)
description APDG–87
invalid pointers and T and N options APDG–87
N option APDG–87
risks of GOx options APDG–87
T option APDG–87
I (insert) APDG–85
K (key) APDG–85
R (replace) APDG–85
processing options, as part of scheduling AS–60
processing, Fast Path AS–24
processing, mixed mode ADB–125
processor module for QCF DGR–283
processor utilization, MSC ATM–214
processors, requirements of RPG–21
PROCLIB IIIV–62
PROCLIB
See also see IMS.PROCLIB members
BPE CSL–15
CQS CSL–14
CSL manager CSL–15
EXITMBR parameter BPE–11
IMS CSL–14
members CSL–14

PROCLIB (continued)
members
BPE CSL–15
STATINTV parameter BPE–12
PROCLIB library
START SUBSYS command CR–590
STOP SUBSYS command CR–613
PROCLIB members
format rules BPE–3
general information BPE–3
LANG BPE–4
sharing configurations BPE–4
TRCLEV BPE–4
PROCOPT parameter APDG–85
PROCOPT parameter
establishing security ADB–32
in HSSP ADB–277
option H ADB–277
option K ADB–298
option P ADB–267
PROCOPT= operand
Fast Path URS–121
PCB
    type=DB URS–119
type=GSAM URS–128
SENSEG statement URS–130
PROCOPT=GO APDG–42
PROCSEQ parameter ADB–186, ADB–189
PROCSEQ= operand
PCB TYPE=DB statement URS–127
production configuration documentation AS–38
production cycle
defining OG–310
productivity aids
Batch Terminal Simulator for testing AS–168
data dictionary AS–36
for monitoring AS–179
for tuning AS–191
PROFILE parameter
SECURE command CR–556
PROFILE security level OTMA–48
program
batch structure APDB–12
CSLULXCB CSL–215
design APDB–48
design efficiency APCICS–11
time entry APCICS–2
restarting APDB–243
program characteristics
BMP application AS–56
declaration of AS–54
PSB performance options AS–55
program communication block
See PCB (program communication block)
program communication block (PCB) APDG–4
program communication block (PCB)
See PCB (program communication block)
program communication block.
See DB (database program communication block)
program deadlock APDB–156, APDG–32
program deadlock
  how resolved AS–28
  with block-level sharing AS–373, AS–391
program function keys (3270)
  literals for master terminal format APTM–245
  specifying URDBTM–467
Program I/O report
  IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–397
  IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–419
program isolation
  See PI (program isolation)
Program Isolation (PI) Trace Record Format and Print
Module (DFSPERA40)
  control statements URS–283
  output sample URS–283
program isolation lock manager ADB–105
Program Isolation Trace Report utility (DFSPIRP0)
OG–100
program isolation.
  See PI (program isolation)
PROGRAM keyword
/DISPLAY command
  ACTIVE CR–207
/TRACE command CR–657
  definition CR–63
DELETE command CR–169
DISPLAY command
  description CR–247
  examples CR–316
LOCK command CR–400
START command CR–588
STOP command CR–611
UNLOCK command CR–670
program library, optimizing AS–219
program load
  preload option AS–100, AS–207
program modules, making high-use resident ISDT–348
program output
  Log Archive utility URS–218
program parameters
  LOCKMAX DGR–254
program properties table CSL–13
program scheduling
  for BMPs AS–69
  into message classes AS–61
  introduction AS–22
  message priorities AS–61
program sensitivity APDG–45
program specification block
  See PSB (program specification block)
program specification block (PSB) APDG–4
program specification block (PSB)
  abend U3303 AS–65
  resetting after ten U3303 abends AS–67
  stopped due to 10 U3303 abends AS–65
program structure
  batch APTM–10
  conversational APTM–136
Program Summary Report
  IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–360
  IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–396
Program Summary Report (continued)
  IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–417
program switch
  OTMA–51
program switch
  CM0 messages OTMA–51
  CM1 messages OTMA–51
  deferred APDG–96
  immediate APDG–97
  race condition OTMA–52
  usage scenarios OTMA–51
  usage scenarios
    for protected transactions OTMA–54
    single-stream OTMA–51
    to multiple programs OTMA–52
    with express PCB OTMA–52
    with OTMAASY option OTMA–53
    without ISRT to I/O PCB OTMA–52
program switches JGR–33
program tab function
  3270 or SLU 2 APTM–208
  fill character APTM–260, URDBTM–442
program temporary fix (PTF) AS–277
program test APDG–141
program testing using SYSIN/SYSOUT AS–171
program types, environments and database types
  APDG–28
program waits APDG–43
Program-I/O report
  description URDBTM–309
  fields in the report URDBTM–309
  using the report URDBTM–310
Program-I/O Report
  IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–362
Program-Isolation-Trace Report utility (DFSPIRP0)
  description URDBTM–319
  example URDBTM–321
  input and output URDBTM–319
  JCL requirements
    DD statements URDBTM–320
    EXEC statement URDBTM–320
    JOBLIB DD statement URDBTM–320
  utility control statement URDBTM–321
program-to-program message switching
  conversational APTM–140
  nonconversational APTM–130
  restrictions APTM–130
  security checks APTM–130
program-to-program switch ATM–216, OTMA–45
program-to-program switch
  conversational transactions ATM–208
  destination name ATM–204
  nonconversational transactions ATM–208, ATM–209
  remote destination verification ATM–216
program, assembling CQS–81
programmable remote systems OG–366
Programmed Cryptographic Facility AS–149
programmed symbol
  buffers APTM–266
  feature APTM–209
  solving problems APTM–268
  specifying local ID URDBTM–499
programming guidelines APDB–47
mixed language APDB–115
secondary indexing APDB–205
programming considerations RPG–28
programming guidelines, general APCICS–11
programming languages supported RPG–28
programming models
JBP applications
  with rollback JGR–28
  without rollback JGR–27
JMP applications JGR–19
JMP applications
  DB2 UDB for z/OS data access JGR–20
  IMS data access JGR–20
  with rollback JGR–20
  without rollback JGR–19
WebSphere Application Server for z/OS applications
  bean-managed EJBs JGR–54
  container-managed EJBs JGR–55
programs
application, characteristics of ISDT–10
BMP APCICS–32
DB Monitor ADB–331
DB Monitor Report print ADB–331
DFSDDLT0 ADB–304
DL/I image capture APDG–165
DL/I test ADB–304, APDG–141, APDG–165
IEFBR14 utility ADB–312
IEHPROGM program ADB–312
  online APDG–32
  online, declaring ISDT–9
  running ADB–322
TM batch APDG–32
writing a load program ADB–314, ADB–325
Programs by Region Report
  IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–355
  IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–391
  IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–412
prompt facility for output messages APTM–219
PROMPT= operand (LPAGE statement), specifying URDBTM–444
Propagating captured data asynchronously
  IMS support for CG–469
propagating data AS–110, CG–44
PROT parameter ADB–198
protected conversations OTMA–51
protected resource, definition ATM–398
protected resources APDG–108
protecting resources with RACF, DLISAS procedure AS–148
protecting the screen
  PROTECT option APTM–241
  specifying parameter on DLFD statement URDBTM–496
protocol
  display screen ATM–451
  extended output component ATM–452
protocol (continued)
  output ATM–275
  request CSL–21
  restrictions on IMS-to-IMS sessions ATM–288
protocol, locking APDG–86
PRT keyword
  COMPT command CR–147
  definition CR–64
  RCOMPT command CR–511
PRTKN keyword
  definition CR–64
PRTSYS= keyword
  DFSERA10 OPTION URS–269

Prv
  execution phase action command IIV–120
  file-tailoring action command IIV–112
  variable-gathering action command IIV–106
PS (programmed symbols)
  administering ATM–497
  definition ATM–497
  designing applications ATM–499
  determining if loaded ATM–497
  example of loading ATM–497
  how to load ATM–497, ATM–499
  solving load problems ATM–498
PSB
  in a CICS online program
    scheduling a APCICS–66
    terminating a APCICS–67
  pools
    defining ISDT–5
PSB (program specification block)
  abend U3303 AS–65
  APSB (allocate program specification block)
    APDG–113, APDG–137
  as mask over data structure ADB–31
  CMAPAT=YES APDG–31
  coding ADB–296
  defined ADB–18
  description APDB–19, APDG–4
  DPSB (deallocate program specification block)
    APDG–138
  format APCICS–32, APDB–111
  metadata class JGR–97
  performance options AS–55
  program name convention AS–22
  requests
    in CCTL regions AS–200
    resetting after ten U3303 abends AS–67
    resource security AS–151
    sample JGR–91
    scheduling in a call-level program APDG–56
    stopped due to 10 U3303 abends AS–65
    using dictionary to generate ADB–18
    XMI description JGR–97
PSB (Program Specification Block)
  control statement formats
    alternate PCB URS–115
    DL/I or Fast Path database PCB URS–117
    END URS–136
    GSAM PCB URS–128
PSB (Program Specification Block) (continued)
control statement formats (continued)
I/O PCB URS–115
PSBGEN URS–132
SENFLD URS–131
SENSEG URS–129
description URS–111
examples
application database URS–145
Fast Path URS–140
Field Level Sensitivity URS–139
GSAM URS–138
logical database URS–142
sample hierarchic data structure URS–137
shared secondary index URS–150
execution URS–114
generating
control statement formats URS–162
control statements URS–115
input and output URS–111
overview URS–111
specifying options for DEDBs URS–129,
URS–132, URS–136
output
assembly listing URS–137
control statement listing URS–136
diagnostics URS–136
error conditions URS–137
load module URS–137
PCBNAME = parameter URS–139
PCBs (Program Communication Blocks) URS–111
Requirements URS–111
Rules URS–111
six input/output statement types URS–111
PSB (program specification block), format APTM–56
PSB definition/mapping macro DGR–59
PSB keyword
definition CR–64
DISPLAY command
description CR–247
examples CR–317
TRACE command CR–658
PSB parameter commands DBRC–104
PSB parameter commands
CHANGE.BKOUT DBRC–104
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–203
GENJCL.USER DBRC–219
NOTIFY.BKOUT DBRC–269
PSB performance options
choosing ISDT–10
dynamic ISDT–11
not resident ISDT–10
resident ISDT–10
PSB pools, defining
/DISPLAY POOL PSBP command ISDT–5
ACBGEN utility ISDT–5
BUFFPOOLS macro ISDT–65
performance options ISDT–10
PSB statement JGR–102, JGR–106
PSB-related EXEC parameters ISDT–405, ISDT–408
PSB= operand
ACB Maintenance utility URS–160
Partial DB Reorganization Step 1 (DFSPRCT1)
URDBTM–94
PSBGEN IIIV–11
PSBGEN (Program Specification Block Generation)
ADB–298
PSBGEN (Program Specification Block Generation) utilities ADB–296, ADB–420
PSBGEN procedure, process URS–113
PSBGEN statement
LANG= parameter URS–133
maximum number of database PCBs URS–117
PSB generation URS–132
PSBLIB library ADB–296
PSBNAME= parameter
PSBGEN statement URS–133
PSDB definition/mapping macro DGR–59
pseudo wait-for-input (PWFI)
See PWFI (pseudo wait-for-input)
pseudoabend APDG–45
pseudoabend U0830
avoiding ATM–247
pseudoabend, cause DGR–222
PSINDEX
data set naming conventions ADB–23
DDNAME requirements ADB–23
PSINDEX (Partitioned Secondary Index) APDG–77
PSS keyword
/DISPLAY MODIFY command CR–229
PST (partition specification table), online execution parameter AS–99
PST active DGR–36
PST analysis DGR–34
PST definition/mapping macro DGR–59
PST-Accounting Report URS–439
PSTLRPRM codes DGR–237
PSTOP command
description CR–444
environments CR–443
examples CR–446
FORCE keyword CR–444
LINE keyword CR–444
LINK keyword CR–444
LTERM keyword CR–445
MSPLINK keyword CR–445
PURGE keyword CR–444
REGION keyword CR–445
syntax diagram CR–443
TRANSACTION keyword CR–446
PSTOP LINK command ATM–227
PSTOP state ATM–66
PT (program tab) function
3270 or SLU 2 APTM–208
fill character APTM–260, URDBTM–442
PTB (physical twin backward) ADB–475
PTB (physical twin backward) pointers ADB–87
PTBWA definition/mapping macro DGR–59
PTE definition/mapping macro DGR–59
pterm
inclusive parameter CR–17
Index 251
PTERM keyword
ASSIGN command CR–107
BROADCAST command CR–115
definition CR–64
DELETE command CR–169
DEQUEUE command CR–182
DISPLAY command
description CR–247
examples CR–318
END command CR–343
EXCLUSIVE command CR–357
EXIT command CR–360
IAM command CR–367
LOCK command CR–400
LOOPTEST command CR–405
MONITOR command CR–415
TEST command CR–644
UNLOCK command CR–670
PTF (physical twin forward) ADB–475
PTF (physical twin forward) pointers ADB–86
PTF (program temporary fix)
using SMP/E IIV–77
PTFs IIV–7
PTK definition/mapping macro DGR–59
PTR parameter ADB–83
PTR= keyword
LCHILD statement URS–73
SEG statement URS–60
PTX definition/mapping macro DGR–59
PUNCH parameter
Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0) URDBTM–110
PUNCH statement APDB–334, APTM–404
PURG call APTM–82, OTMA–50
PURG call
and OTMA environment APTM–83
description APTM–82, APTM–128
format APTM–82
parameters APTM–82
restrictions APTM–84
Spool API APTM–84
summary APTM–348
usage APTM–83
using CHNG with APTM–129
PURG call function APDB–313, APTM–383
PURG system service call APDG–180
PURGE DGR–42
PURGE
error recovery procedure ATM–338
error recovery procedure
begins ATM–338
DFC protocol ATM–339
DFC support layer ATM–338
ends ATM–338
multichain ATM–338
single ATM–338
spanning chains ATM–338
state after selective receiver purge ATM–340
state after sender purge ATM–339
sender ERP ATM–350
purge call
See PURG call
PURGE command
APPC keyword CR–452
description CR–452
environments CR–451
examples CR–453
FPFPROG keyword CR–452
FPREGION keyword CR–452
LINE keyword CR–452
LTERM keyword CR–452
MSNAME keyword CR–453
syntax diagram CR–451
TRANSACTION keyword CR–453
PURGE keyword OG–141
PURGE keyword
CHECKPOINT command CR–138
definition CR–64
DEQUEUE command CR–183
PSTOP command CR–444
PURGE state ATM–66
PURGE1 keyword
definition CR–64
DEQUEUE command CR–184
PURGLIST parameter NOTIFY.CA command DBRC–271
PWFI (pseudo wait-for-input), description AS–64
PXPARMS definition/mapping macro DGR–59
Q
Q command code APDB–250
Q command code
and the DEQ call APDB–36
example APDB–35
full function and segment release APDB–36
lock class APDB–35
MAXQ APDB–35
Q command codes, locking ADB–106
Q keyword
definition CR–64
DISPLAY command
description CR–248
examples CR–318
OPNDST command CR–439
QASTSPE variable IIV–72
QBLKS data set restriction IIV–53
QC status code APDG–37
QCB definition/mapping macro DGR–59
QCF OG–103, OG–152
QCF
See queue control facility
QCF (Quality Control Facility)
cold queues
recovering ATM–108
structures
monitoring ATM–108
recovering ATM–108
QCF (Queue Control Facility) IQMRH0 AS–85
migrating messages AS–86
monitoring users AS–85
QCF (Queue Control Facility) (continued)

testing IMS AS–171
User Queue Space Notification Exit routine AS–85
QCF SCRAPLOG records, sample JCL for printing
DGR–287

QCNT keyword

/DISPLAY command
  LTERM CR–224
  NODE CR–232
  RECOVERY CR–273
  TRANSACTION CR–270
  USER CR–273
definition CR–64
DISPLAY command
description CR–249
examples CR–320
DISPLAY LTERM command
examples CR–295
DISPLAY NODE command
cr examples CR–306
DISPLAY USER command
cr examples CR–341
QEC command ATM–468
QEL definition/mapping macro DGR–59
QERROR state ATM–38
QGET FM header
description ATM–370
format ATM–383
QGETN FM header
description ATM–370
format ATM–384
QLOCK state ATM–38
QLOCK state
  START LTERM command CR–586
QMBA definition/mapping macro DGR–59
QMODEL FM headers
  CICS ATM–567
  formats ATM–383, ATM–389
  QGET ATM–370
  QGETN ATM–370
  QPURGE ATM–371
  QSTATUS ATM–371
  QXFR ATM–371
  reply or output ATM–371
  request or input ATM–370
  supported by IMS ATM–369
QPURGE FM header
  format ATM–385
  received by IMS ATM–371
QSAM (Queued Sequential Access Method)
  access to GSAM databases ADB–76
  and OSAM data set ADB–473
  processing HSAM databases ADB–61
  processing SHSAM databases ADB–75
QSTATUS FM header
  format ATM–386
  sent by IMS ATM–371
QSTOP state ATM–66
QTU/QTL, online execution parameters AS–102
qualification statement (continued)
  field name APDB–24
  field value APDB–24, APDB–25
  multiple qualification statements APDB–193
  multiple qualification statements, DEDB APDB–195
  multiple qualification statements, HDAM APDB–195
  multiple qualification statements, PHDAM APDB–195
  overview APDB–24
  relational operator APDB–24, APDB–25
  segment name APDB–24
  structure APDB–24
qualified call
definition APDB–24
overview APDB–19, APDB–24
qualified SSA
  qualification statement APDB–24
  structure APDB–24
  structure with command code APDB–27
qualifier codes
  ETO parsing errors DGR–335
  screen-attribute errors DGR–335
  VTCB-creation errors DGR–335
qualifying
  DL/I calls with command codes APDB–27
  SSAs APDB–24
qualifying an LU name ATM–424
quantitative relationship between data aggregates
  APDG–21
QUERY command OG–120
QUERY command
description APCICS–73
environments
  IMSPLEX keyword CR–457
  LE keyword CR–457
  MEMBER keyword CR–458
  OLC keyword CR–458
  STRUCTURE keyword CR–458
  TRAN keyword CR–458
example APCICS–73
format APCICS–73, CR–455
format
  IMSPLEX keyword CR–455
  LE keyword CR–455
  MEMBER keyword CR–455
  OLC keyword CR–456
  STRUCTURE keyword CR–456
  TRAN keyword CR–456
IMSPLEX keyword
description CR–459
LE keyword
description CR–463
MEMBER keyword
description CR–465
OLC keyword
description CR–471
options APCICS–73
restrictions APCICS–74
STRUCTURE keyword
description CR–475
TRAN keyword
description CR–478
QUERY command  
 usage APCICS–73
QUERY MEMBER command OG–130
QUERY OLC command OG–131
query resources CSL–129
query response directive CSL–93
querying statistics CSL–23
questions, frequently asked OTMA–147
queue
 suspend OG–89
queue blocks data set IIV–41, IIV–42
queue control facility OTMA–42
queue control facility
 identifying message categories OTMA–43
 support for non-shared queues OTMA–43
 support for shared queues OTMA–43
Queue Control Facility OG–103
Queue Control Facility
 See also QCF (Queue Control Facility)
 recovery OG–152
Queue Control Facility (QCF)/Message Requeuer (MRQ) DGR–283
Queue Control Facility (QCF)/Message Requeuer (MRQ)
 DFSQMRQ0 processor module DGR–283
 JCL
 printing 6701-MRQE records DGR–288
 printing MRQ SCRAPLOG records DGR–287
 key fields and offsets of diagnostic records DGR–286
 key fields in message DGR–287
 messages successfully requeued DGR–290
 MRQE diagnostic records DGR–287
 obtaining additional diagnostics DGR–289
 sample of successful message requeue DGR–290
 sample SCRAPLOG record and description DGR–285
queue empty indication ATM–342
QUEUE keyword
 See Q keyword
queue manager
 concurrent I/O AS–84
 page fixing AS–197
 trace report AS–216
Queue Manager
 in XRF environment ATM–98
 planning for ATM–97
queue manager trace
 description DGR–211
 record format DGR–212
queue name, definition CQS–3
Queue Overflow user-supplied exit routine
 CQS CQS–55
queue rotation ATM–333
Queue Space Notification Exit Routine (DFSQSPO/DFSQSSPO) CG–395
Queue Space Notification Exit Routine (DFSQSPO/DFSQSSPO)
 attributes CG–396
 call types CG–397
 description CG–395
 IMS callable services CG–397
Queue Space Notification Exit Routine
 (DFSQSPO/DFSQSSPO)  (continued)
IMS environments CG–396
 including the routine CG–397
 link-editing CG–397
 naming convention CG–396
 parameters CG–400
 registers
 contents on entry CG–399
 contents on exit CG–400
 sample routine location CG–397
 special considerations CG–397
 threshold values CG–400
 using callable services CG–396
queue structures CQS–6
queue type
 definition CQS–3
queued subsystem ATM–555
queues URDBTM–450
queues
 balancing group ATM–21
 definition CQS–3
 logical terminals ATM–33
 object on the cold queue CQS–82
 registering interest in CQS–82
 shared
 See shared queues
 types, definition CQS–3
queueing options, setting AS–197
 quick reschedule
 description AS–63
 specifying AS–63
QUIESCE command
 description CR–507
 environments CR–507
 example CR–508
 NODE keyword CR–507
 syntax diagram CR–507
 USER keyword CR–507
QUIESCE keyword OG–142
QUIESCE keyword
 CHECKPOINT command CR–140
 definition CR–65
 quiesce request CSL–182
 quiesce-at-end-of-chain command, VTAM ATM–468
QUITCI command
 DEEB online utilities URDBTM–533
QXFR FM header
 as output ATM–371
 format ATM–387, ATM–389
 Queue Space Notification Exit Routine
 (DFSQSPO/DFSQSSPO)  (continued)
IMS environments CG–396
 including the routine CG–397
 link-editing CG–397
 naming convention CG–396
 parameters CG–400
 registers
 contents on entry CG–399
 contents on exit CG–400
 sample routine location CG–397
 special considerations CG–397
 threshold values CG–400
 using callable services CG–396
queue structures CQS–6
queue type
 definition CQS–3
queued subsystem ATM–555
queues URDBTM–450
queues
 balancing group ATM–21
 definition CQS–3
 logical terminals ATM–33
 object on the cold queue CQS–82
 registering interest in CQS–82
 shared
 See shared queues
 types, definition CQS–3
queueing options, setting AS–197
 quick reschedule
 description AS–63
 specifying AS–63
QUIESCE command
 description CR–507
 environments CR–507
 example CR–508
 NODE keyword CR–507
 syntax diagram CR–507
 USER keyword CR–507
QUIESCE keyword OG–142
QUIESCE keyword
 CHECKPOINT command CR–140
 definition CR–65
 quiesce request CSL–182
 quiesce-at-end-of-chain command, VTAM ATM–468
QUITCI command
 DEEB online utilities URDBTM–533
QXFR FM header
 as output ATM–371
 format ATM–387, ATM–389
R
 R command code APDB–41
 race condition OTMA–52
 race condition
 avoiding OTMA–53
 race, BIND ATM–301
 RACF CQS–37, CSL–153
RACF

See also Resource access control facility (RACF)

command security CSL–39

DLISAS procedure ISDT–217

FACILITY class definition OTMA–37

IMS procedure ISDT–225

online change

restriction for changing RACF profiles online

AS–128

passtickets, using ISDT–332

RACF (Resource Access Control facility)

MODIFY RACF command CR–411

SECURE command CR–555

SIGN ON command CR–563

RACF (Resource Access Control Facility) IV–63,

OTMA–45, OTMA–47

RACF (Resource Access Control Facility)

authorization AS–408

authorizing dependent region startup AS–132

CCTL region AS–158

ETO security ATM–10, ATM–156

element of dependent region JCL AS–145

implementing with IMS AS–141

IMSpex

authorization AS–409

security AS–408

security example AS–408

multiple system security ATM–225

OPERCMDS

example AS–409

OM AS–409

PassTickets AS–118, AS–140

PassTickets

creating PassTickets AS–119

security AS–119

using PassTickets AS–119

VTAM VGR environment AS–120

password protection AS–130

placement of data sets AS–299

planning considerations AS–299

protecting databases AS–148

protecting system libraries and data sets AS–147

resource class descriptor table AS–141

resource classes for IMS AS–141, AS–151

signon password reverifying AS–129

transaction security ATM–429

unauthorized terminal use ATM–44

RACF (Resources Access Control facility)

password CR–16

RACF abend suppression RPG–14

RACF data space

reinitializing OG–110

RACF keyword

MODIFY command CR–411

RACF signon security APDB–90, APTM–48

RACROUTE SAF APDB–90, APTM–49

random distribution of DB records ADB–423

randomizer

routine, new ADB–417

standard ADB–423

Two Stage ADB–419

randomizer routines, changing ADB–416

randomizer, deleted routine ADB–418

randomizing module

DEDB design ADB–267

in HDAM database records ADB–239

in PHDAM database records ADB–239

introduction ADB–78

randomizing modules CG–73

randomizing routine

exit routine APDB–128, APDB–195

RAP (root anchor point) ADB–416

RAP CI

diagnosing CI problem in DEDB

CI format DGR–358

RAP FM header

description ATM–358

example ATM–358

format ATM–389

MFS ATM–372

Rapid Network Reconnect

and IMS Shutdown ATM–54

Changing Levels of Support ATM–53

defining level of persistent support for VTAM ATM–68

defining level RNR support for VTAM ATM–68

Defining VTAM for ATM–68

Persistent Session Tracking ATM–54

Signon Security ATM–56

Specifying Levels of Support ATM–53

Terminal Reconnect Protocols ATM–55

using with XRF or VGR ATM–55

Rapid Network Reconnect (RNR)
migrating RPG–36

RAPs (root anchor points)
explained ADB–92

HIDAM ADB–98

number ADB–95

PHIDAM ADB–98

Rational Rose

metamodel JGR–102

RBA (relative byte address) ADB–67

RBNIQ=keyword

UCF FUNCTION=ZB control statement

URDBTM–374

RCD statement, specifying URDBTM–490

RCDCTL= operand

DIV statement

specifying URDBTM–474

RCDCTL= operand (DIV statement)
specifying APTM–295

use APTM–222

RCF= parameter

overriding with ERESTART COLDSYS command

CR–349

overriding with NRESTART COLDSYS command

CR–428

RCLSDST command

description CR–509

randomizer (continued)

route, new ADB–417

standard ADB–423

Two Stage ADB–419

randomizer routines, changing ADB–416

randomizer, deleted routine ADB–418

randomizing module

DEDB design ADB–267

in HDAM database records ADB–239

in PHDAM database records ADB–239

introduction ADB–78

randomizing modules CG–73

randomizing routine

exit routine APDB–128, APDB–195

RAP (root anchor point) ADB–416

RAP CI

diagnosing CI problem in DEDB

CI format DGR–358

RAP FM header

description ATM–358

example ATM–358

format ATM–389

MFS ATM–372

Rapid Network Reconnect (RNR)
migrating RPG–36

RAPs (root anchor points)
explained ADB–92

HIDAM ADB–98

number ADB–95

PHIDAM ADB–98

Rational Rose

metamodel JGR–102

RBA (relative byte address) ADB–67

RBNIQ=keyword

UCF FUNCTION=ZB control statement

URDBTM–374

RCD statement, specifying URDBTM–490

RCDCTL= operand

DIV statement

specifying URDBTM–474

RCDCTL= operand (DIV statement)
specifying APTM–295

use APTM–222

RCF= parameter

overriding with ERESTART COLDSYS command

CR–349

overriding with NRESTART COLDSYS command

CR–428

RCLSDST command

description CR–509
RCLSDST command (continued)
  environments CR–509
  example CR–510
  syntax diagram CR–509
RCMD call APTM–116, CG–458, OG–197
RCMD call
  description APDB–166, APDB–167, APTM–115
  format APDB–166, APTM–115
  parameters APDB–166, APTM–115
  restrictions APDB–167, APTM–116
  use APDB–166, APTM–116
RCOMPT command
  CNS keyword CR–511
  CRD keyword CR–511
  description CR–511
  environments CR–511
  example CR–512
  PCH keyword CR–511
  PDS keyword CR–511
  PRT keyword CR–511
  RDR keyword CR–511
  syntax diagram CR–511
  TDS keyword CR–511
  UDS keyword CR–511
  VID keyword CR–511
RCPB definition/mapping macro DGR–59
RCREG APCICS–15
RCS keyword
  /DISPLAY MODIFY command CR–229
  definition CR–65
RCTE definition/mapping macro DGR–59
RCVTIME keyword
  definition CR–65
  RECOVER command
    START CR–524
RCVTIME parameter
  GENJCL.RECOV DBRC–214
  NOTIFY.RECOV DBRC–288, DBRC–289
RCVTOKEN keyword
  /DISPLAY RECOVERY command CR–251
  /RECOVER command
    ADD CR–519
    definition CR–65
  RECOVER command
    REMOVE keyword CR–521
    START CR–524
RCVTRACK parameter
  CHANGE.DB command DBRC–113
  CHANGE.DBD command DBRC–121
RCVYCONV= ATM–41
RCVYFP= ATM–42
RCVYSTSN= ATM–41
RDF (record definition field) ADB–308
RDBATCH procedure (continued)
  parameters (continued)
    CKPTID= ISDT–253
    DBRC= ISDT–258
    EXCPVR= ISDT–264
    FMTO= ISDT–265
    IMSID= ISDT–268
    IMSPLEX= ISDT–268
    IOB= ISDT–269
    IRLM= ISDT–269
    IRLMNX= ISDT–270
    LOCKMAX= ISDT–271
    LOGA= ISDT–272
    MBR= ISDT–274
    MIN= ISDT–274
    PRLD= ISDT–280
    PSB= ISDT–280
    RGN= ISDT–284
    RST= ISDT–285
    SOUT= ISDT–288
    SPIE= ISDT–288
    SRCH= ISDT–288
    SSM= ISDT–288
    SWAP= ISDT–290
    SY= ISDT–291
    SYS= ISDT–291
    TEST= ISDT–291
RDIBATCH procedure (continued)
  parameters
    CKPTID= ISDT–253
    DBRC= ISDT–258
    EXCPVR= ISDT–264
    FMTO= ISDT–265
    IMSID= ISDT–268
    IMSPLEX= ISDT–268
    IOB= ISDT–269
    IRLM= ISDT–269
    IRLMNX= ISDT–270
    LOCKMAX= ISDT–271
    LOGA= ISDT–272
    MBR= ISDT–274
    MIN= ISDT–274
    PRLD= ISDT–280
    PSB= ISDT–280
    RGN= ISDT–284
    RST= ISDT–285
    SOUT= ISDT–288
    SPIE= ISDT–288
    SRCH= ISDT–288
    SSM= ISDT–288
    SWAP= ISDT–290
    SY= ISDT–291
    SYS= ISDT–291
    TEST= ISDT–291
RDIBATCH procedure
  description CR–513
  environments CR–513
  examples CR–513
  MASTER parameter CR–513
  syntax diagram CR–513
RDLWA definition/mapping macro DGR–59
RDIP (return destination process name)
  in input message MFLD URDBTM–478
  specifying in MFLD statement APTM–298
  use on Finance or SLU P workstations APTM–256
  use with ISC subsystem communication APTM–183
RDIP (Return Destination Process Name)
  ATTACH FM header ATM–380
  message routing, ISC ATM–278
  RDPN= operand
  DIV statement
    specifying URDBTM–478
  RDPN= operand (DIV statement), specifying APTM–298
  RDR keyword
    COMPT command CR–147
    definition CR–65
    RCOMPT command CR–511
  RDS (restart data set)
    as surveillance mechanism AS–258, AS–270
    content OG–48
    definition OG–12
    definition of AS–257
    establishing as surveillance AS–265
    parameter
      for surveillance AS–306
      in member DSHSBxx AS–265
      placement of AS–314
read access AS–359
read access to databases ISDT–79
read access, specify with PROCOPT operand APDG–85
read errors
DEDDB
  VSO ADB–143
recovery OG–158
read flags field, output messages ATM–478
read type field, output messages ATM–478
read without integrity APDG–87
read-only access AS–359
read-only access to databases ISDT–79
read-only access, specify with PROCOPT operand APDG–87
READBACK statement
  Batch Backout utility (DFSBBOO00) URDBTM–259
readiness level
database AS–325
reading segments in MSDBs APDB–226, APDB–231
READNUM keyword
definition CR–65
  RECOVER command
    START CR–524
READOFF parameter CHANGE.DB command
  DBRC–113
READON parameter CHANGE.DB command
  DBRC–113
READY keyword
  COMPT command CR–147, CR–148
definition CR–65
  start request CSL–184
ready state CSL–22
ready state
  COMPT command CR–148
ready-to-receive (RTR) command
  See RTR (ready-to-receive) command
real logical child ADB–153, ADB–156, ADB–184
real storage
defining DFSFIxxx AS–269
  need for during takeover AS–260
  page fixing AS–269
  used during tracking AS–269
reason code, checking APTM–13
reason codes
  callable service CG–25
  CSLRMDEL CSL–114
  CSLRMPRI CSL–119
  CSLRMRR CSL–121
  CSLRMRPS CSL–125
  CSLRMRT CSL–129
  CSLRMQRY CSL–133
  CSLRMREG CSL–137
  CSLRMUPD CSL–142
  CSLSCBFR CSL–170
  CSLSCDRLG CSL–172
  CSLSCMSG CSL–178
  CSLSCQRY CSL–182
  CSLSCQSC CSL–183
  CSLSCRDY CSL–185
  CSLSCRREG CSL–190
  CSLSCRQR CSL–193
reason codes (continued)
  CSLSCRQS CSL–199
  INITIATE OLC command OG–130
  online change failure OG–133
reassigning links in MSC ATM–228
rebuild lost UOW entry, CQS CQS–179
rebuilding structures CQS–43
Recapitulation-of-the-Analysis Report
  Fast Path Log Analysis utility URS–304
RECDCT parameter commands
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–126
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–274
  NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–292
receive-any buffer analysis DGR–303
receive-any buffers ATM–59
receiving messages, from other IMS TM systems
  APTM–132
RECFM= operand
  DATASET statement URS–41
recommendations
  IMSID=
do not use characters for the IMSID that match the beginning characters of an z/OS command ISDT–91, ISDT–268
  specify unique IMSID for batch regions to avoid confusion over which regions are issuing messages ISDT–91
RECON
  active DBRC–48
  allocation DBRC–41
  automatic loss notification AS–403
  availability DBRC–42
  backup DBRC–58
  changing log control records DBRC–10
  concurrent image copy data set DBRC–15
  contention problems DBRC–42
  creating DBRC–46
  data sharing record types DBRC–57
  data sharing records DBRC–18
  data-sharing environment, in a AS–361
  Database Image Copy 2 data set DBRC–16
  defining DBRC–41
  defining requirements in DBRC–12
  description DBRC–41, DBRC–58
  DSECTS DBRC–371
  dynamic allocation DBRC–45
  enqueue problems, causes of DBRC–81
  extending DBRC–46
  header records DBRC–50
  HSSP image copy data set DBRC–16
  initial access DBRC–48
  initialization DBRC–42
  keywords DBRC–46
  maintaining DBRC–58
  maintaining records DBRC–58
  overview DBRC–41
  preserving integrity of DBRC–63
  recovering DBRC–61
  recovery record types DBRC–51
  registering databases DBRC–9
  reorganizing DBRC–60
RECON (continued)
sample listing DBRC–371
security considerations DBRC–47
serialization DBRC–43
shared among multiple processors DBRC–42
spare DBRC–48
upgrading DBRC–67
version migration DBRC–67
VSAM CREATE mode DBRC–45

RECON data set DGR–377
RECON data set
adding or spare OG–117
changing the characteristics of OG–117
HALDB ADB–504
listing records DGR–377
OLDS information OG–46
recovering OG–152
replacing active OG–117
SLDS information OG–47
unusable OG–153
use of OG–48

RECON I/O exit routine DBRC–6
RECON I/O Exit Routine (DSPCEXT0) CG–209, CG–210, CG–211
RECON I/O Exit Routine (DSPCEXT0)
attributes CG–209
description CG–209
IMS callable services CG–209
IMS environments CG–209
including the routine CG–209
link-editing CG–209
naming convention CG–209
parameters CG–211
performance considerations CG–211
registers
contents on entry CG–211
contents on exit CG–214
sample routine location CG–209
using callable services CG–209

RECON initialization token (RIT) DBRC–17
RECON Loss Notification DBRC–63
RECON record types DBRC–49
RECON1 parameter, BACKUP.RECON command DBRC–99
RECONs, both are unusable DBRC–61
record
database processing APDG–6
database, description of APDG–3
record deactivation ADB–112
Record Deactivation ADB–112
record definition field (RDF) ADB–308
record descriptor word (RDW), IMS Spool API APDG–181

Record Format and Print Module (DFSERS30) (continued)
resultant state of the lock URS–279
Selecting only the Deadlock block URS–281
special situations URS–280
subsystem detected deadlocks URS–281
record keeping OG–306
record log information DBRC–10
record mode
description APTM–192
input example APTM–197
process of record in APTM–201
specifying URDBTM–462
treatment of nulls APTM–195
with ISC APTM–201
RECORD parameter ADB–244
record search argument
See RSA (record search argument)
calendar search argument (RSA) ADB–76
record type parameter DBRC–317
RECORD= operand
DATASET statement URS–41
recording
data availability APDG–15
information about your program APDG–177
recording recovery related information DBRC–5
records
BACKOUT DBRC–51
change accumulation group DBRC–51
change accumulation run DBRC–52
data sharing DBRC–57
database DBRC–53
database allocation DBRC–57
database data set DBRC–53
database data set group DBRC–52
database recovery DBRC–51
DBDS group DBRC–52
DEDB DBRC–55
deleting unnecessary DBRC–58
global service group DBRC–56
image copy DBRC–56
in RECON DBRC–49
log allocation DBRC–56
log data set DBRC–50
maintaining RECON DBRC–58
RECON header DBRC–50
recovery DBRC–57
reorganization DBRC–56
subsystem DBRC–57
RECORDSIZE keyword DBRC–47
RECOVABL parameter
CHANGE.DB DBRC–112
INIT.DB DBRC–228

recovcp parameter
MSDB Dump Recovery URDBTM–266
RECOVER ADD command
environments CR–517
examples CR–527
RECOVER command CR–515
RECOVER command
ADD keyword CR–518
RECOVER command (continued)
ADD keyword
  AREA CR–520
  CAGROUP CR–520
  DATAGROUP CR–520
  DB CR–520
  DBDS keyword CR–520
  DBDSSGRP keyword CR–520
  OFFLINE keyword CR–519
  RCVTOKEN CR–519
  RECOVGRP keyword CR–520
  STAGLOBAL keyword CR–519
  STALOCAL keyword CR–519
  usage CR–518
  USEAREA CR–519
  USEDBDS keyword CR–519
REMOVE keyword CR–521
REMOVE keyword
  ALLENTRIES keyword CR–522
  AREA keyword CR–522
  CAGROUP keyword CR–522
  DATAGROUP keyword CR–522
  DB keyword CR–522
  DBDS keyword CR–522
  DBDSSGRP keyword CR–522
  RCVTOKEN keyword CR–521
  RECOVGRP keyword CR–522
  usage CR–521
START keyword CR–523
START keyword
  ERRORABORT CR–524
  ERRORCONT CR–524
  NOCHECK keyword CR–525
  OFFLINE keyword CR–524
  PITR keyword CR–525
  RCVTIME CR–524
  RCVTOKEN CR–524
  READNUM CR–524
  STAGLOBA CR–524
  STALOCAL CR–524
  usage CR–523
STOP keyword CR–525
STOP keyword
  ALLENTRIES keyword CR–526
  AREA keyword CR–526
  CAGROUP keyword CR–526
  DATAGROUP keyword CR–526
  DB keyword CR–526
  DBDS keyword CR–526
  DBDSSGRP keyword CR–526
  RECOVGRP keyword CR–527
  SAVE keyword CR–526
  syntax diagram CR–525
  usage CR–525
TERMINATE keyword CR–527
TERMINATE keyword usage CR–527
RECOVER Commands DBRC–13
RECOVER REMOVE command
  examples CR–528
RECOVER START command
  examples CR–529
RECOVER STOP command
  examples CR–531
recoverable databases
  CHANGE.DB command DBRC–24
  Image Copy utilities DBRC–24
  INIT.DB command DBRC–24
recoverable in-doubt structure.
  See RIS
recoverable input, acknowledging ATM–454
recoverable message sent, sequence numbers
  ATM–463
recoverable messages OTMA–28
recoverable messages, ISC sync points ATM–321
Recoverable Resource Manager Services attachment
  facility ADB–57, AS–17
Recoverable Resource Manager Services attachment
  facility (RRSAF) JGR–15
recoverable resources APDG–108
recoverable service element
  See RSE (recoverable service element)
recoverable transactions OTMA–28
recoverable versus irrecoverable messages ATM–484, ATM–487
recoverable versus irrecoverable transactions ATM–418
recoverable-inquiry transactions, response requirements
  IMS ATM–484, ATM–486
  ISC ATM–321, ATM–324
recovering a database DBRC–34
recovering a database
  archiving log records DBRC–39
  batch support DBRC–36
  DBRC role DBRC–35
  dynamic backout DBRC–36
  process DBRC–34
  recovery facilities DBRC–36
  setting up recovery mechanisms DBRC–36
  without DBRC DBRC–38
recovering CQS CQS–43
recovering data in message queues and databases
  AS–273
recovering databases APCICS–87
recovering send-then-commit OTMA–17
Recovering the RECON
  RECON Loss Notification DBRC–63
recovering transactions in APPC ATM–418
recovery ADB–5, ADB–260
recovery
  3270 errors OG–360
  ACBLIB failures OG–152
  after image copy OG–63
  batch backout OG–221
  CCTL failures OG–171
  CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–121
complications OG–8
concepts DBRC–3
concurrent image copy OG–160
considerations OG–327
considerations in conversations APDG–98
control region failures OG–150
coordinating with DB2 OG–293
CPI Communications failures OG–168
recovery (continued)

CQS failures OG–170
CQS log OG–156
data set failures OG–151
data sharing OG–173, OG–222
data sharing
IRLM OG–223
planning procedures OG–220
sysplex OG–225
database OG–159
database
making recoverable OG–104
database data set or area, adding information to RECON DBRC–287
database failure OG–158
DBRC DBRC–10
DEDB OG–164
dependent regions
failures OG–156
description DBRC–62
description of OG–4
determining extent of AS–325
DL/I
I/O errors OG–161
dynamic backup OG–73, OG–221
emergency restart failures OG–150
executing related functions OG–102
facilities OG–220
Fast Path ATM–42
FDBR (Fast Database Recovery).
See FDBR
forward
data sharing OG–222
DBRC OG–164
description OG–6
HSSP image copy OG–161
I/O PCB, requesting during PSBGEN APDG–59
identifying requirements APDG–43
IMS process DBRC–3
in a batch-oriented BMP APDG–35, APDG–56
in a DBCTL environment OG–7, OG–171
in batch programs APDG–32
in data sharing
planning procedures DBRC–35
transaction recovery OG–223
without DBRC DBRC–38
introduction OG–4, OG–149
IRLM failures OG–172
level of OG–160
log data set
deleting information DBRC–172
log data set, adding information to RECON DBRC–279, DBRC–295
log errors OG–154
LU 6.2 failures OG–168
mechanisms OG–5
message queues OG–103, OG–151
messages for AO application CG–465
methods, comparing OG–159
MSDB Dump Recovery URDBTM–266
multiple systems OG–327

recovery (continued)

MVS failures OG–149
network failures OG–168
nonrecoverable databases OG–165
OLDs OG–155
overhead of OG–10
overview DBRC–3
period, of image copy data sets DBRC–28
planning OG–162, OG–220
procedures AS–34
process OG–8
read errors OG–158
RECON DBRC–61, OG–152
record DBRC–57
region controller failures OG–157
remote terminal commands OG–334
resource status ATM–39
RIS OG–42
RSR AS–324
services
introduction OG–6
SLDS OG–156
steps OG–8
strategy OG–162
structure failures OG–170
structures CQS–45
structures, for restart CQS–33
sysplex
data sharing OG–225
tokens OG–42
tools OG–11
user access problems OG–178
using change accumulation OG–163
using DBRC OG–164
using DBRC
introduction OG–7
using RLDS OG–164
utilities OG–104
utilities
input to OG–48
introduction OG–6
utilities, input to OG–47
VTAM message resynchronization OG–170
what IMS cannot recover OG–9
write errors OG–158
XRF environment OG–8
recovery considerations for MSC ATM–231
recovery control
data set
commands to generate JCL and user-defined output DBRC–311
header record DBRC–50
listing DBRC–262
recovery control data set
See also RECON
I/O error processing DBRC–61
records DBRC–49
replacing discarded RECON DBRC–62
Recovery Control utility (DSPURX00)
description DBRC–6
recovery coordinator CG–497
recovery environment
  distributed resources, definition ATM–400
  local resources, definition ATM–400
recovery EXEC DLI commands
  basic CHKP APCICS–87
  SYMCHKP APCICS–88
  XRST APCICS–88
recovery functions CQS–8
recovery functions for DBDSs DBRC–10
RECOVERY keyword
  definition CR–65
  DISPLAY command
  description CR–250
recovery level tracking (RLT) AS–325
recovery log data set
  See RLDS (recovery log data set)
recovery log data set (RLDS)
  records DBRC–50
recovery of databases APDG–61
recovery of OTMA messages, selective OTMA–43
recovery period OG–64
recovery period, definition of DBRC–28
recovery procedures ATM–50
Recovery process
  distributed APDG–110
  local APDG–109
recovery records, database DBRC–51
recovery service
  PROCLIB member (DFSORSxx) ISDT–350
  recovery token CG–503, CG–552
recovery utilities DBRC–5
Recovery utility
  See Database Recovery Control utility
recovery-related EXEC parameters ISDT–402, ISDT–407, ISDT–410
recovery-related execution-time options
  for IMS procedure AS–101
  for MPP region AS–104
Recovery, Resource APDG–108
RECOVGRP keyword
  definition CR–66
  RECOVER command
    ADD keyword CR–520
    REMOVE keyword CR–522
    STOP keyword CR–527
RECOVJCL parameter
  commands
    CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–121
    INIT.DBDS DBRC–233
    skeletal JCL execution member DBRC–362
RECOVPD keyword OG–64
RECOVPD parameter DBRC–15
RECOVPD parameter commands
  CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–121
  INIT.DBDS DBRC–233
RECTIME parameter commands
  CHANGE.CA DBRC–105
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–125
  CHANGE.UIC DBRC–163
RECTIME parameter commands (continued)
  DELETE.ALLOC DBRC–166
  DELETE.CA DBRC–168
  DELETE.IC DBRC–171
  DELETE.RECOV DBRC–176
  DELETE.REORG DBRC–177
  DELETE.UIC DBRC–179
recursive structures ADB–164, ADB–168, ADB–206
RECVJCL parameter CHANGE.DBDS command
DBRC–122
redundant data APDG–1
reentrance APCICS–15
reestablish position in database APDG–43
REFCOPY control statement
  MFSBTCH1 procedure URDBTM–391
  MFSULT procedure URDBTM–389
REFERAL IIV–62
REFRESH command APDIC–105
REFRESH command
  description APCICS–74
  example APCICS–74
  format APCICS–74
  options APCICS–74
  restrictions APCICS–75
  usage APCICS–74
REFRESH USEREXIT command
  and static work area BPE–60
  considerations BPE–38, CR–770
  examples BPE–40, CR–772
  format BPE–39, CR–771
  output BPE–40, CR–772
  recommendations BPE–38, CR–770
  usage BPE–39, CR–771
reg# parameter
  /STOP command
    REGION keyword CR–611
reg##–#reg parameter
  /STOP command
    REGION keyword CR–612
REG0 trace DGR–267
REGID keyword
  /DISPLAY command
    ACTIVE CR–206
region
  assignment OG–108
  CCTL OG–83
  class OG–108
  controller, failures OG–157
  DEDB online utility OG–83
  Fast Path message-driven OG–83
  Java dependent OG–83
Region and Jobname Report
  IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–353
  IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–411
region control execution-time options
  for BMP region AS–104
  for MPP region AS–103
Region IWAIT report AS–201
REGION keyword OG–82
REGION keyword
/DISPLAY command
ACTIVE CR–205
/START command CR–588
/STOP command
reg# parameter CR–611
reg#-#reg parameter CR–612
ASSIGN command CR–107
definition CR–66
PSTOP command CR–445
STOP command CR–611
Region Summary report
for region occupancy percentage AS–200
NOT-IWAIT time implications AS–213
Region Summary Report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–355
IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–390
IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–412
Region Wait Report
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–355
IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–391
IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–412
region-control EXEC parameters ISDT–405, ISDT–409
regions, dependent
dumping options ISDT–307
number of, choosing the ISDT–2, ISDT–92,
ISDT–281
preinitialization routines ISDT–346
register contents
Client Connection user exit CQS–54
Client Structure Event exit CQS–174
Client Structure Inform exit CQS–182
CQS Event exit CQS–171, CQS–172
Initialization-Termination user exit CQS–52, CQS–53
Queue Overflow user exit CQS–56
Structure Event user exit CQS–67
Structure Statistics user exit CQS–57, CQS–58
register, using CQS–77
registered state CSL–22
registering clients CSL–134
registering databases ADB–108, ADB–147
registering databases in RECON DBRC–9
registers
client requests CQS–76
prechained save area CG–8
saving CG–8
single save area CG–9
using CQS–76
REL= keyword
DATASET statement URS–42
RELATE function (MFS Service utility DFSUTSA0)
URDBTM–416
RELATE= keyword
UCF FUNCTION=ZB control statement
URDBTM–374
UCF FUNCTION=ZM control statement
URDBTM–376
related (terminal related) MSDB APDB–224
related data sets
DLIB
Database Manager II–17
related data sets (continued)
DLIB (continued)
extended terminal option II–17
IMS Java II–17
RSR Database-Level Tracking feature II–17
RSR Recovery-Level Tracking feature II–16
system services II–16
transaction manager II–17
execution
ACBLIB II–32
DBRC RECON II–32
format II–32
log II–33
message queue II–33
online change II–34
SYSOUT II–34
system
IMS MATRIX II–28
IMS MODBLKS II–28
IMS SYSDEF II–28
JOBS II–28
TCFSLIB II–29
target
IMS non-SYSDEF II–22
IMS SYSDEF II–23
relational database
hierarchical database, compared to JGR–73
relational databases APDG–30
relational operators
Boolean operators APDB–193
independent AND APDB–193
list APDB–25
logical AND APDB–193
logical OR APDB–193
overview APDB–25
SSA, coding APDB–102
SSA, qualification statement APDB–24
relationships
between data elements APDG–16
data, hierarchical APDG–3
defining logical APDG–82
mapping data APDG–21
relationships between data aggregates APDG–21
relative block number ADB–95
relative byte address (RBA) ADB–67
relative record number ADB–67
RELEASE command
CONVERSATION keyword CR–533
description CR–533
environments CR–533
example CR–533
LU 6.2 device CR–533
syntax diagram CR–533
releasing
a segment APCICS–70
resources APCICS–2
releasing storage CSL–19
reload utility (DFSURGL0) ADB–344
reload utility (DFSURRL0) ADB–343
RELQ command ATM–468
remote control of IMS ATM–287
remote destination name ATM–204
remote destination verification
  MSC conversations ATM–216
  system integrity ATM–209
remote DL/I APDG–51
REMOTE keyword
definition CR–66
remote LTERMs ATM–206
remote programs, defining APTM–179
Remote Site Recovery CG–193
Remote Site Recovery
See RSR
Remote Site Recovery (RSR)
  administering AS–317, AS–353
  coexistence considerations RPG–50
  components, understanding the basic AS–319, AS–324
  database reorganization utilities URDBTM–540
  Database Reorganization utilities URDBTM–537
  database utilities URDBTM–537
  database utility verification URDBTM–538
DBTRACK ADB–482
  enhancements
    introduction to RPG–10
    overview RPG–175
  error handling AS–348, AS–353
  global service group
    HALDB ADB–482
  hardware and software requirements RPG–24
  hardware replication AS–335
  ILS (isolated log sender) AS–339
  IMS workload on multiple OS/390 images AS–339
  initializing
    active site AS–340, AS–346
    tracking site AS–346, AS–348
  installing AS–335, AS–340
  introduction AS–317, AS–332
  isolated log sender (ILS) AS–339
  log management AS–330
  migration RPG–41
  multiple OS/390 images, running IMS on AS–339
RCVTRACK ADB–482
  security, establishing AS–353
  shadowing
    HALDB ADB–482
  software replication AS–336
  system definition requirements AS–342, AS–348
  tracking type
    HALDB ADB–482
    XRF and AS–327
    XRF, comparison with AS–326
Remote Site Recovery (RSR), DBRC support
  See RSR
remote stations AS–33
remote systems, programmable OG–366
remote takeover
determining message loss after ATM–67
restarting the network after ATM–66
VTAM definition for Transport Manager Subsystem ATM–67
remote takeover, definition AS–324
remote terminal operator (RTO)
  See RTO (remote terminal operator)
Remote-site Recovery.
  See RSR
REMOVE keyword
definition CR–66
removing a segment and its dependents APCICS–35
Removing an SSYS from DB Authorization DBRC–77
REO ISDT–457
reorganization of RECON
  adding information DBRC–290
  deleting information DBRC–176
reorganization record DBRC–56
reorganization utilities
  See also utilities
    introduction to reorganization utilities ADB–338
reorganizing ADB–337, ADB–475
reorganizing databases OG–213
reorganizing RECON, CHANGE.RECON DBRC–60
  REP= keyword
    UCF FUNCTION=ZB control statement
      URDBTM–373
    UCF FUNCTION=ZM control statement
      URDBTM–376
repeating structures
  accessing JGR–24
  DLITypeInfoList class JGR–24
  dotted notation JGR–24
  sample output message JGR–24
repetitive data elements, isolating APDG–17
REPL (Replace) call
  description APDB–141
  format APDB–141
  N command code APDB–33
  parameters APDB–141
  SSAs APDB–142
  usage APDB–142
  with MSDB, DEDB or VSO DEDB APDB–225
REPL (Replace) command
  description APCICS–60
  examples APCICS–63
  format APCICS–61
  options APCICS–61
  restrictions APCICS–64
  usage APCICS–62
REPL call function APDB–313, APTM–383
REPL parameter ADB–220
REPL= parameter keyword
  SENFLD statement URS–132
REPLACE module
  DL/I trace, using DGR–249
REPLACE parameter CHANGE.RECON command DBRC–143
replace rules for logical relationships
  choosing ADB–181
  description of ADB–433, ADB–437
REPLACE= parameter keyword
  SENFLD statement URS–132
replacing a segment APCICS–60
replacing segments
  HISAM databases ADB–74
replacing segments (continued)

- HSAM databases ADB–64
- REPLICATE | NOREPLICATE parameter ADB–260
- replication data sets, optional III–61
- replication, area data set ADB–112
- reply resynch OTMA–30
- reply to the terminal in a conversation APDG–96
- replying to one alternate terminal APTM–128
- replying to the terminal in a conversation APTM–139
- repopulate structure directive CSL–144
- report //DFSSTAT OG–99
- DLIModel utility JGR–97
- evaluating system performance OG–97
- IMS Monitor OG–99
- job summary OG–99
- Statistical Analysis utility OG–96
- system OG–100
- system tuning OG–97
- tracing OG–99
- report of instructor schedules APDG–25
- reports ATM–233
- reports
  - Call Summary AS–166
  - Fast Path Analysis ADB–335
  - HALDB single partition processing ISDT–445
  - IMS Monitor ATM–233
  - IMS Model II AS–166
  - MSC ATM–233
  - use in tuning AS–211
- reports, creating APDG–16
- REPresynch OTMA–30
- REPresynch command OTMA–79
- REPRO function of VSAM AMS, offline reorganization DBRC–60
- REQresynch OTMA–30
- REQresynch command OTMA–78
- request protocol CSL–21
- request resynch OTMA–30
- REQUEST= keyword

  - control statements
    - UCF FUNCTION=DU URDBTM–351
    - UCF FUNCTION=IM URDBTM–356
    - UCF FUNCTION=OP URDBTM–348
  - UCF FUNCTION=RR URDBTM–361
  - UCF FUNCTION=RU URDBTM–363
  - UCF FUNCTION=SN URDBTM–365
  - UCF FUNCTION=SR URDBTM–367
  - UCF FUNCTION=SU URDBTM–369
  - UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–371
  - requesting a segment
    - using GU APDB–133

- requests CQS–73
  - requests
    - assembling a program CQS–81
    - authorization CQS–74
    - coding CQS–74
    - CQSBRWSE CQS–86
    - CQSCHKPT CQS–93
    - CQSCONN CQS–96
    - CQSDEL CQS–102

requests (continued)

- CQSDEREG CQS–106
- CQSDISC CQS–107
- CQSINFRM CQS–112
- CQSMOVE CQS–116
- CQSPUT CQS–120
- CQSQUERY CQS–127
- CQSREAD CQS–136
- CQSSRECVR CQS–141
- CQSREG CQS–146
- CQSSSYNC CQS–148
- CQSSHUT CQS–155
- CQSSUNLK CQS–156
- CQSUPD CQS–161
- CSLZORY CSL–23
- CSLZSHUT CSL–25
- DSECTs, using CQS–81
- ECB, using CQS–78
- environmental requirements CQS–75, CSL–19
- example CQS–165
- general guidelines for writing CSL–16
- introduction CQS–73
- lists, using CQS–79
- literals, coding CQS–78
- literals, using CQS–78

- Operations Manager
  - command deregistration CSL–78
  - command registration CSL–82
  - command response CSL–85
  - CSLOMCMD CSL–55
  - CSLOMI CSL–62
  - CSLOMQRY CSL–72
  - CSLOMREG CSL–82
  - unsolicited output CSL–79
  - parameters, coding CQS–76
  - planning considerations CSL–20

- Resource Manager
  - CSLRMRDG CSL–116
  - CSLRMPRI CSL–117
  - CSLRMPRS CSL–121
  - CSLRMPRT CSL–127
  - CSLRMQRY CSL–129
  - deleting resources CSL–111
  - query resources CSL–129

- return and reason codes CQS–79
- sample CQS–165
- sequence of CQS–74, CSL–89

- Structured Call Interface
  - buffer return CSL–169
  - CSLSCQSC CSL–182
  - CSLSCRDY CSL–184
  - CSLSCREG CSL–185
  - CSLSCRRQ CSL–191
  - CSLSCROS CSL–194
  - deregistration CSL–171
  - query CSL–179
  - send message CSL–172
  - symbol name, using CQS–77
  - symbol value, using CQS–77

- requests, processing APDG–6
required application data, analyzing APDG–11
requirements
DASD RPG–28
hardware CQS–9
hardware
direct access devices RPG–21
for multiple systems coupling (MSC) RPG–22
processors RPG–21
shared message queues RPG–24
shared VSO coupling facility enhancements RPG–24
Sysplex data sharing RPG–23
system console RPG–21
tape units RPG–21
hardware and software for IMS Version 8 RPG–21
software CQS–9
software
IMS Version 8 RPG–24
operating system RPG–21
programming languages supported RPG–28
rerouting messages CG–337
res-sharing-scope element JGR–56
res-type element JGR–56
RES, online execution parameter AS–98
RESCAN statement (language utility) URDBTM–512
RESERVE command, during backup DBRC–58
reserved words
description CR–17
keywords CR–16, CR–783
null keywords CR–19
null words CR–783
parameters CR–783
reserving
place for command codes APDB–241
segment
command code APDB–250
lock management APDB–251
reset attached process FM header ATM–358
RESET command
description CR–535
environments CR–535
example CR–535
MFS bypass CR–28
syntax diagram CR–535
RESET keyword
definition CR–66
RESET.GSG command DBRC–307
resetting a subpointer APDB–42
resetting a subset pointer APCICS–98
resetting significant status CG–323, CG–413
resetting the GENMAX parameter DBRC–73
residency mode (RMODE) APDB–115, APTM–59
RESIDENT online change ISDT–60
RESLIB IV–11
resolution utility (DFSURG10) ADB–346
Resolve In-Doubt exit routine CG–532
resolving data conflicts ADB–52
resolving data structure conflicts APDG–74
resource
changing online OG–119
resource (continued)
commands to control MSC ATM–229
commands, remote terminal operator OG–334
IMSplex, in an
callable services ATM–128
managing ATM–127
modifying OG–104
monitoring in data sharing environment OG–206
MSC considerations ATM–213
name uniqueness ATM–127
name uniqueness
LTERM ATM–129
user ATM–131
VTAM terminal node ATM–130
status classification ATM–40
status recovery ATM–39
status recovery mode ATM–40
structure OG–170
transaction ATM–131
transaction manager
MSNAME ATM–130
type consistency ATM–128
Resource access control facility (RACF)
uses with Security Maintenance utility URS–183
Resource Access Control Facility URS–183
See RACF (Resource Access Control Facility)
Resource Access Control Facility.
See RACF (Resource Access Control Facility)
resource access security
AGN exit routine, designing AS–133, AS–153
ext routine AS–133
implementing with RACF AS–141
signon verification AS–118
Resource Access Security Exit Routine (DFSISIS0)
attributes CG–215
description CG–215
IMS callable services CG–215
IMS environments CG–215
including the routine CG–215
link-editing CG–215
naming convention CG–215
registers
contents on entry CG–216
contents on exit CG–216
sample routine location CG–215
specifying CG–215
using callable services CG–215
resource access security, IMS URS–182
resource allocation for MSDBs ADB–271
resource classes
correspondence to IMS definition AS–141
in LGEN processing AS–47
resource clean-up module (DFSMRCL0) IV–11, IV–70
resource contention ADB–272
resource coordination CG–503
Resource Lock Manager
   See IRLM (Internal Resource Lock Manager)
Resource Management Facility
   See see RMF
Resource Management Facility II
   See RMF II (Resource Management Facility II)
Resource Manager
   administration tasks CSL–102
   command behavior CR–21
   configuration requirements CSL–6
   coordinating IMSplex-wide processes CSL–111
   CSLRST1 CSL–108
   CSLRST2 CSL–109
definition and tailoring CSL–97
deregistering clients CSL–116
exit routines
   client connection CSL–103
   initialization/termination CSL–105
   RM statistics CSL–107
failures CSL–111
function provided CSL–3
initialization parameters CSL–99
maintaining global resource information CSL–96
   master CSL–111
overview CSL–3, CSL–95
requests
   CSLRMDRG CSL–116
   CSLRMPRI CSL–117
   CSLRMPRR CSL–119
   CSLRMPRS CSL–121
   CSLRMPRT CSL–127
   CSLRMRQY CSL–129
   CSLRMRREG CSL–134
   CSLRMUPD CSL–138
deleting resources CSL–111
maintaining global resource information CSL–110
   process respond CSL–119
   process step CSL–121
   registering clients CSL–134
terminate process CSL–127
updating resources CSL–138
resource structure CSL–3
sample CSLRlxxx member CSL–101
sample startup procedure CSL–98
sample user exit list PROCLIB member CSL–102
shutting down CSL–102
starting CSL–102
startup procedure CSL–97
statistics record CSL–108, CSL–109
user exit list PROCLIB member CSL–101
Resource Manager (RM) ATM–19
Resource Manager (RM)
   See also RM (Resource Manager)
   enhancements
   overview RPG–183
   introduction to RPG–17
resource manager, definition ATM–399
resource managers APDG–109
Resource Manager
   clean up process CSL–111
resource name list.
   See RNL (resource name list)
resource name uniqueness
   disabling enforcement ATM–20, ATM–128
resource naming rules
   ETO terminals ISDT–57
   macros ISDT–57
Resource Recovery
   application program APDG–109
   Introduction to APDG–108
   protected resources APDG–108
   recoverable resources APDG–108
   resource managers APDG–109
   sync-point manager APDG–108
Resource Recovery Services/Multiple Virtual Storage
   (RRS/MVS)
   introduction to APDG–108
   ODBA interface APDG–135
Resource Recovery Services/MVS (RRS/MVS)
   See RRS/MVS (Resource Recovery Services/MVS)
Resource Recovery Services.
   See RRS
resource structure AS–403, AS–404, ATM–19, CSL–96
resource structure
   benefits ATM–19
   configuration AS–404
   failure CSL–97
   information stored CSL–96
   recovery CSL–97
resource structure, definition CQS–3
resource structures CQS–7
resource translation table
   See external subsystem attach facility
resource type
   definition CQS–3
resource type consistency
   disabling enforcement ATM–20, ATM–128
resource-ref element
   example JGR–57
   requirements for IMS Java JGR–56
resources
   assignment
   status CR–213
   changed status CR–226
   protected APDG–108
   recoverable APDG–108
   security APDG–9
   TM
   sharing ATM–19, ATM–20
resources, limiting access to IIIV–63
resources, releasing APCICS–2
respond to a process CSL–119
response mode
   dynamic establishment ATM–272
   errors
   detection ATM–317
   ISC ATM–317, ATM–319
ISC
   input ATM–560
terminal
   definition ATM–445
response mode (continued)
terminal (continued)
design considerations ATM–446, ATM–535
effects of specifying transaction-dependent ATM–445
figure ATM–445
introduction ATM–37
methods of termination ATM–446
restrictions ATM–446
sizes of message queue data sets ATM–477
sizes of workstation output buffers ATM–477
station-by-station ATM–445
types ATM–445
when activated ATM–445
response mode, description APDG–99
response requests, output message ATM–485
response requirements
IMS commands and indicators ATM–468, ATM–484
inquiry transactions
irrecoverable ATM–319, ATM–487
recoverable ATM–319, ATM–486
irrecoverable-inquiry transactions ATM–65
ISC messages ATM–321
LU 6.2 application program ATM–65
MFS control requests ATM–488
output ISC messages ATM–321
verifying IMS receipt ATM–321, ATM–487
VTAM indicators and commands ATM–264, ATM–468
response time ATM–78, ATM–237
response time
after takeover AS–287
as a user oriented objective AS–174
criteria definition AS–174
during takeover AS–287
responses to commands CG–450, CG–460
restart ADB–75, ADB–76
restart
active site OG–279
after shutdown OG–87
AO application CG–465
automatic OG–88, OG–92
backout of BMPs, deferring OG–91
batch jobs OG–93
BMP regions OG–157
cleaning up after failed attempt OG–126
coding CICS applications ATM–574
component OG–86
data sharing OG–222
definition OG–6
DL/I database tracking OG–280
emergency OG–79, OG–90
emergency
failures OG–150
IFPs OG–157
log router OG–279
MVS Automatic Restart Manager CQS–35
output available, ISC ATM–305
overview OG–16
security definition CR–347
SLDS as input OG–80
structure recovery CQS–33
restart (continued)
tracking site OG–279
warm start OG–89
without remote takeover OG–278
restart and recovery ATM–568
restart call
See XRST call
restart data set
See RDS (restart data set)
restart in data sharing
after DBRC failure DBRC–39
after IMS failure DBRC–38
emergency, after DBRC failure DBRC–39
emergency, after IMS failure DBRC–38
normal DBRC–38
restart transaction, CICS ATM–543
restart your program
code for, description APDG–62
with basic CHKP APDG–43
with symbolic CHKP APDG–43
restart, emergency APDG–183
Restart, Extended APDG–41, APDG–62
Restart, Extended
parameters APDB–178
position in database APDB–180
restarting your program APDB–179
restrictions APDB–181
starting your program normally APDB–179
usage APDB–179
Restart, Extended (XRST) APDB–147
Restart, Extended (XRST)
description APDG–178
restart, IMS OTMA–42
RESTART= keyword
Partial Database Reorganization Step 2
(DFSPRCT2) URDBTM–95
restarting BMPs OG–92
restarting CQS
cold start CQS–35
description CQS–34
structure initialization CQS–32
warm start CQS–34
restarting IMS
checkpoints, using ISDT–3
restarting your program
XRST call APDB–179, APTM–124
restarting your program, basic checkpoints APDB–243
restarting your program, with EXEC DLI XRST
command APCICS–88
restore operations, MFS library URDBTM–394
RESTORE parameter GENJCL.RECOV command
DBRC–214
restriction
/ASSIGN command CR–100
command status in emergency restart CR–25
shutdown checkpoint in shared-queues environment
CR–138
restrictions OTMA–45
restrictions
AIB APCICS–5
CHKP (Checkpoint) command APCICS–70
restrictions (continued)
CHKP and XRST with GSAM APDB–218
database calls
to DEDBs APDB–240
to MSDBs APDB–231
DEQ (Dequeue) command APCICS–71
DIB label APCICS–6
DLET (Delete) command APCICS–36
F command code APDB–32
F irlmproc,SET command CR–714
for dynamic PSBs AS–55
for Fast Path application programs AS–49
for master terminal devices AS–72
GN (Get Next) command APCICS–41
GNP (Get Next in Parent) command APCICS–47
GU (Get Unique) command APCICS–53
HSSP, of ADB–276
I/O area APCICS–9
I/O area, PL/I APCICS–10
ISRT (Insert) command APCICS–58
LOG command APCICS–73
modifying existing logical relationships ADB–409
number of database calls and Fast Path APDB–35
POS command APCICS–60
QUERY command APCICS–74
reallocating message queue AS–86
REFRESH command APCICS–75
REPL (Replace) command APCICS–64
RETRIEVE command APCICS–66
ROLLB command APCICS–75
ROLL command APCICS–76
ROLS command APCICS–77, APCICS–78
segments ADB–14
SETS command APCICS–79
SETU command APCICS–80
SSA rules for DEDBs ADB–124
SYMCHKP (Symbolic Checkpoint) command
APCICS–83
using secondary indexes with logical relationships
ADB–201
XRF with USERVAR AS–263
XRST (Extended Restart) command APCICS–85
ResultSet
aggregate data types JGR–84
iterating JGR–93
TYPE_FORWARD_ONLY JGR–84
TYPE_SCROLL_INSENSITIVE JGR–84
ResultSet.getAsciiStream method JGR–86
ResultSet.getCursorName method JGR–86
ResultSet.getUnicodeStream method JGR–86
RESYNC request CG–569
resync UOW entry, CQS CQS–176
resynchronization
See also message resynchronization
assumptions OTMA–28
deferred OTMA–32, OTMA–33
flow OTMA–32
OTMA protocol OTMA–30
overview OTMA–27
sample message OTMA–34
resynchronization, message
See message resynchronization
retrieval call, status code APTM–14
retrieval calls
D command code APDB–30
F command code APDB–31
L command code APDB–33
status codes, exceptional APDB–18
retrieval of IMS database statistics APDG–147
RETRIEVE command
description APCICS–64
examples APCICS–66
format APCICS–65
options APCICS–65
restrictions APCICS–66
usage APCICS–65
Retrieve Command (RCMD) call
See RCMD call APDB–166, APTM–115
retrieve named storage service
element BPE–75
output BPE–75
parameters BPE–74
retrieve trace
ID table DGR–252
output sample DGR–253
using DGR–250
retrieving
dependent segments sequentially APCICS–41
dependents sequentially APDB–129
first occurrence of a segment APDB–31
last occurrence APDB–33
segments
Q command code, Fast Path APDB–35
Q command code, full function APDB–35
sequentially APDB–30
segments sequentially APCICS–36
segments with D APDB–30
specific segments APCICS–47
the location of a dependent segment APCICS–59
the location of the last inserted sequential dependent
segment APCICS–59
RETRY keyword
STOP command CR–749
RETRY option APDG–47
return and reason codes
client requests CQS–79
CQSBRWSE request CQS–92
CQSCHKPT request CQS–96
CQSCONN request CQS–101
CQSDEL request CQS–105
CQSDEREG request CQS–107
CQSDISC request CQS–111
CQSINFRM request CQS–116
CQSMOVE request CQS–119
CQSPUT request CQS–126
CQSQUERY request CQS–135
CQSREAD request CQS–140
CQSRECVR request CQS–145
CQRSREG request CQS–147
CQRSYSNS request CQS–153
CQSSHUT request CQS–156
return and reason codes (continued)

CQSUNLCK request CQS–160
CQSUPD request CQS–165

return code, checking APTM–13

return codes

callable service CG–25
CSLRMDEL CSL–114
CSLRMPRI CSL–119
CSLRMPRR CSL–121
CSLRMPRS CSL–125
CSLRMPPRT CSL–129
CSLRMORY CSL–133
CSLRMREG CSL–137
CSLRMUPD CSL–142
CSLMCBLF CSL–170
CSLCDBG CSL–172
CSLMMSG CSL–178
CSLSCQRY CSL–182
CSLCQSC CSL–183
CSLCRCY CSL–185
CSLCREG CSL–190
CSLCROF CSL–193
CSLCRQS CSL–199
INITIATE OLC command OG–130
online change failures OG–133
UIB APDB–98, APDB–297

Return Destination Process Name

See RDPN

Return Primary Resource Name

See RPRN

returning a status code APCICS–69

returning failed active IMS as new active IMS AS–279

REUSE keyword OG–64, OG–66

REUSE parameter commands

CHANGE.CAGRP DBRC–108
CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–120
INIT.CAGRP DBRC–226
INIT.DBDS DBRC–15, DBRC–232

REUSE parameter, image copy data sets for future use DBRC–27

reusing image copy data sets DBRC–29

reviews ADB–25

reviews

application requirements AS–33
design AS–34

REXX (continued)

exts (continued)

PARTNUM APDB–281, APTM–337
PCBINAP DB–278, APTM–334
SAY APDB–277, APTM–333
IMSRXTRC, trace output APDB–266, APTM–322

REXX SPOC API CSL–88

REXX SPOC API

See also SPOC (single point of control)
batch job CSL–219
preparing the environment CSL–215
reason codes CSL–217
retrieving command responses CSL–217
return codes CSL–217
samples CSL–218
setting up the IMSplex CSL–215
subcommands CSL–215

REXX, IMS adapter

. (period) usage APDB–265, APTM–321
describing environment APDB–256, APTM–312
AIB, specifying APDB–262, APTM–318
description APDB–255, APTM–311
DFSREXX0 program APDB–255, APDB–259,

APTM–311, APTM–315
DFSREXX1 APDB–255, APTM–311
DFSREXXU user exit APDB–255, APTM–311
DFSREXXC0 program APDB–255, APTM–315
diagram APDB–258, APTM–314

dl parameters APDB–262, APTM–318
entry parameters CG–300

environment APDB–264, APTM–320, CG–300
example execs APDB–277, APTM–333
exec name, choosing CG–299

feedback processing APDB–262, APTM–318

I/O area APDB–262, APTM–318
installing APDB–255, APTM–311, CG–299

IVPREXX exec APDB–259, APTM–315

IVPREXX PSB APDB–255, APTM–312

IVPREXX setup APDB–256, APTM–312

LLZZ processing APDB–262, APTM–318

LNKED requirements APDB–255, APTM–311

non-TSO/E APDB–255, APTM–311

PCB, specifying APDB–262, APTM–318

programs APDB–255, APTM–311

PSB requirements APDB–255, APTM–311

sample generation APDB–256, APTM–312

sample JCL APDB–256, APTM–312

SPA processing APDB–262, APTM–318

SRRBACK APDB–255, APTM–311

SRRCMIT APDB–255, APTM–311

SSA, specifying APDB–262, APTM–318

SYSEXEC DD APDB–255, APDB–256, APTM–311,

APTM–312

system environment APDB–255, APDB–256,

APTM–311, APTM–312

SYSTSIN DD APDB–256, APTM–312

SYSTSPRT DD APDB–255, APDB–256, APTM–311,

APTM–312

TSO environment APDB–255, APTM–311

TSO/E restrictions APDB–255, APTM–311

Index 269
REXX, IMS adapter (continued)
  user exit routine (DFSREXXU) CG–299
  ZZ processing APDB–262, APTM–318
REXXIMS commands APDB–266, APDB–268,
  APTM–322, APTM–324
REXXIMS commands
  See also IMSQUERY extended function
  DLIINFO APDB–264, APDB–265, APTM–320,
    APTM–321
  IMSRXTRC APDB–264, APDB–266, APTM–320,
    APTM–322
  MAPDEF APDB–264, APTM–320
  MAPGET APDB–264, APTM–320
  MAPPUT APDB–264, APDB–269, APTM–320,
    APTM–325
  SET APDB–264, APDB–270, APTM–320, APTM–326
  SRRBACK APDB–264, APDB–271, APTM–320,
    APTM–327
  SRRCMT APDB–264, APDB–271, APTM–320,
    APTM–327
  STORAGE APDB–264, APDB–272, APTM–320,
    APTM–328
  WTL APDB–264, APDB–273, APTM–320, APTM–329
  WTO APDB–264, APDB–273, APTM–320,
    APTM–329
  WTOR APDB–264, APDB–273, APTM–320,
    APTM–329
  WTP APDB–264, APDB–273, APTM–320,
    APTM–329
REXXTDLI commands APDB–260, APTM–316
  Rfr, variable-gathering action command IIV–106
  RGN= operand PROC statement (MFS Language utility)
    URDBTM–402
  RGN= parameter
    procedures
      ACBGEN URS–158
      DBDBGEN URS–12
      PSBGEN URS–114
    RGSUF, online execution parameter AS–99
    RHB definition/mapping macro DGR–59
    RHT definition/mapping macro DGR–59
    RIS (recoverable in-doubt structure) OG–42
    risks to security, combined files APDG–2
    RIT (RECON initialization token) DBRC–17
    RLB definition/mapping macro DGR–59
    RLCBT definition/mapping macro DGR–59
    RLDS (recovery log data set) DBRC–133
    RLDS (recovery log data set)
      accumulating changes using DFSUCUM0 DBRC–31
      commands DBRC–133
      commands
        CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–133
        CHANGE.SECONDS (for RLDS) DBRC–151
        NOTIFY.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–282
        NOTIFY.SECONDS (for RLDS) DBRC–298
        condensing OG–52
        copying OG–50
        creation OG–50
        defining OG–12, OG–59
        deleting information from RECON DBRC–172
        log OG–48
RLDS (recovery log data set) (continued)
  output to Log Archive utility URS–218
  records DBRC–50
  selecting DBRC–325
  using for recovery OG–164
RLDS (Recovery log data set) URS–216
RLMCB definition/mapping macro DGR–59
RLPL definition/mapping macro DGR–59
RLQD definition/mapping macro DGR–59
RM (Resource Manager) AS–397
RM (Resource Manager)
  functions of AS–400
  initializing AS–406
  overview AS–400
  recommendations AS–400
  requirements AS–400
  shutting down AS–410, AS–411
  starting AS–410, OG–75
  stopping OG–144
  terminals, managing AS–403
  XRF OG–234
RM (Resource Manager), definition CQS–3
RM affinity ATM–41
RM client
  planning considerations CSL–22
RM exit routine PROCIB member
  EXITMBR parameter BPE–12
RM trace table types
  * (asterisk) BPE–9
  CSL BPE–10
  ERR BPE–10
  PLEX BPE–10
  recommendations BPE–9
  RM BPE–10
RMF
  accounting procedures ISDT–6
RMF II (Resource Management Facility II)
  as monitoring tool AS–179
  for I/O analysis AS–221
  for paging rates AS–211
  used in tuning AS–191
RMNAME parameter ADB–240
RMNAME parameter
  specifying number of blocks or CIs ADB–239
  specifying number of RAPS ADB–92
  usage ADB–416
RMNAME= operand
  DBD statement URS–25
RMxxxxxx command
  syntax diagram CR–537
RNL (resource name list) IIV–63
RNR
  See Rapid Network Reconnect
ROLB
  in MPPs and transaction-oriented BMPs APDB–246
ROLB (Roll Back) call
  compared to ROLL call APDB–244
  description APDB–167, APDB–246
ROLB (Roll Back) call (continued)
- format APDB–167
- maintaining database integrity APDB–244
- parameters APDB–167
- usage APDB–246

ROLB (Rollback) command
- description APCICS–75
- examples APCICS–75
- format APCICS–75
- options APCICS–75
- restrictions APCICS–75
- usage APCICS–75


ROLB call
- comparison to ROLL and ROLS call APTM–149
- description APTM–116, APTM–150
- format APTM–117
- parameters APTM–117
- restrictions APTM–118
- summary APTM–347
- usage APTM–117
- use in conversations APTM–136

ROLB call function APDB–313, APTM–383

ROLB system service call APDG–32, APDG–62

ROLL (Roll) call
- compared to ROLB call APDB–244
- description APDB–168, APDB–245
- format APDB–168
- maintaining database integrity APDB–244

roll back point
See bailout point

roll back to SETS/SETU call
See ROLS call

ROLL call APTM–118

ROLL call
- comparison to ROLB and ROLS call APTM–149
- description APTM–118, APTM–149
- format APTM–118
- parameters APTM–118
- restrictions APTM–119
- summary APTM–347
- usage APTM–118
- use in conversations APTM–136

ROLL call function APDB–313, APTM–383

ROLL command
- description APCICS–76
- examples APCICS–76
- format APCICS–76
- options APCICS–76
- restrictions APCICS–76
- usage APCICS–76

ROLL system service call APDG–62

rollback call
See ROLB call

ROLS
backing out to an intermediate bailout point
APDB–248

ROLS (Roll Back to SETS) call (continued)
- parameters APDB–169
- TOKEN APDB–247

ROLS call
- comparison to ROLL and ROLS call APTM–149
- description APTM–119
- format APTM–119
- parameters APTM–119
- restrictions APTM–120
- Spool API functions APTM–120
- summary APTM–347
- usage APTM–120
- use in conversations APTM–136
- with LU 6.2 APTM–151
- with TOKEN APTM–151
- without TOKEN APTM–151

ROLS call function APDB–314, APTM–384
ROLS command APCICS–89

ROLS command
- description APCICS–77
- examples APCICS–77
- format APCICS–77
- options APCICS–77
- restrictions APCICS–78
- usage APCICS–77

ROLS system service call APDG–32, APDG–46, APDG–64

ROLX call function APDB–314, APTM–384
root addressable area ADB–93, ADB–115, ADB–419
root anchor point APDG–69
root anchor point (RAP) ADB–416

roll back point
See bailout point

roll back to SETS/SETU call
See ROLS call

ROLL call APTM–118

ROLL call
- comparison to ROLB and ROLS call APTM–149
- description APTM–118, APTM–149
- format APTM–118
- parameters APTM–118
- restrictions APTM–119
- summary APTM–347
- usage APTM–118
- use in conversations APTM–136

ROLL call function APDB–313, APTM–383

ROLL command
- description APCICS–76
- examples APCICS–76
- format APCICS–76
- options APCICS–76
- restrictions APCICS–76
- usage APCICS–76

ROLL system service call APDG–62

rollback call
See ROLB call

ROLS
backing out to an intermediate bailout point
APDB–248

ROLS (Roll Back to SETS) call (continued)
- parameters APDB–169
- TOKEN APDB–247

ROLS call
- comparison to ROLL and ROLS call APTM–149
- description APTM–119
- format APTM–119
- parameters APTM–119
- restrictions APTM–120
- Spool API functions APTM–120
- summary APTM–347
- usage APTM–120
- use in conversations APTM–136
- with LU 6.2 APTM–151
- with TOKEN APTM–151
- without TOKEN APTM–151

ROLS call function APDB–314, APTM–384
ROLS command APCICS–89

ROLS command
- description APCICS–77
- examples APCICS–77
- format APCICS–77
- options APCICS–77
- restrictions APCICS–78
- usage APCICS–77

ROLS system service call APDG–32, APDG–46, APDG–64

ROLX call function APDB–314, APTM–384
root addressable area ADB–93, ADB–115, ADB–419
root anchor point APDG–69
root anchor point (RAP) ADB–416

root anchor points
See RAPs (root anchor points) ADB–92
root segment, definition ADB–7, APDG–3

ROOT= parameter
- AREA statement URS–45
- roster, current APDG–12
- routine, error APTM–14

routines
- client CQS–171
- DFSERA50 APDG–168
- ESTAE APDG–46
- STAEG APDG–46
- user-supplied, CQS CQS–51
- routines, error APDB–18

routing
- messages in an MSC-IMSplex configuration ATM–238
- routing code, definition ATM–21
- routing codes AS–57, AS–231
- routing codes with online change AS–231
- routing exit routines
- link routing ATM–211
- MSC conversations ATM–215
- MSC routing ATM–209
- program routing ATM–211
- terminal / input routing ATM–210

Routing exit routines
- Terminal Routing exit routine ATM–210

Index 271
Routing exit routines (continued)

TM/MSC Message Routing and Control Exit Routine
ATM–211

routings messages
between IMS systems CG–421
destination name ATM–204
ISC examples ATM–279, ATM–286
parameters ATM–279
SYSIDs ATM–204
when applications abend CG–359
routing path (MSC) ATM–199

rows
relational representation, in JGR–76
segment instances, compared to JGR–73
RPL (request parameter list) DGR–304
RPLI definition/mapping macro DGR–60
RPRN (return primary resource name) APTM–299, USRBM–478
RPRN (Return Primary Resource Name)
ATTACH FM header ATM–380
message routing, ISC ATM–279
SCHEDULER FM header ATM–380
RPRN= operand (DIV statement)
specifying USRBM–478
RPRN= operand (DIV statement), specifying APTM–299
RPST definition/mapping macro DGR–60
RQ* messages, LSTATUS command ATM–341
RDQ* ATM–263, ATM–321, ATM–325
RQE* ATM–263, ATM–321, ATM–325
RQR command, SLU P ATM–438
RRE definition/mapping macro DGR–60
RRN (relative record number) ADB–67
RRS/MVS (Resource Recovery Services/Multiple Virtual Storage) APDG–113, APDG–135
RRS/MVS (Resource Recovery Services/MVS)
ATM–398
RSE (recoverable service element) AS–249
RSE (recoverable service element)
definition of AS–258
example of AS–258
notifying the availability manager AS–307
RSENAMEn keyword AS–307
RSENAMEn specification AS–258
RSENAMEn= keyword AS–307

RSHUT command ATM–345
RSR DBRC–21
RSR

COMM macro
APPLID parameter ISDT–70
PSWD parameter ISDT–74
DFSRSRx member ISDT–351
DL/I batch jobs, ISDT–193
enabling ISDT–90
IMSCTRL macro, RSRFEAT parameter
GSGNAME parameter ISDT–90
RSRFEAT parameter ISDT–94
TMINAME parameter ISDT–97
including in IMS ISDT–26
log router activity, tracing ISDT–385
options, specifying ISDT–351

RSR (Remote Site Recovery)

See also Remote Site Recovery (RSR)
active IMS AS–319
alternate IMS AS–319
BTAM terminals CR–36
commands supported on the tracker CR–33
DB/DC environment, in a AS–13
DLT, installation of IIV–9
global online change, and AS–412
installation of IIV–9
protected conversations and ATM–402
restarting the network ATM–66
RLT, installation of IIV–9
shared queues, planning for ATM–116
valid environments for installation IIV–9

RSR (remote-site recovery)
allocating DBDSs and areas OG–266
begin
shading OG–260
catch-up processing OG–282
database tracking OG–273
database update set OG–265
databases OG–265
discontinuing OG–293
DL/I batch OG–277
DL/I batch jobs OG–270
enabling XRC tracking OG–294
Fast Database Recovery Region OG–266
gap processing during XRC tracking OG–295
HALDB OG–274
HSSP OG–269
IMSp lex OG–264
IRLM OG–277
log gaps OG–281
log router OG–270
loger OG–268
new active subsystem, starting OG–290
normal operations
active site OG–267
tracking site OG–270
online change OG–269, OG–276
online forward recovery OG–283
operating OG–259, OG–267
restart without remote takeover OG–278
takeover OG–284
RSR (remote-site recovery) (continued)
takeover
  aborting OG–288
  message queues, sharing OG–292
  new active subsystem, starting OG–290
  performing OG–285, OG–287
  planned OG–284
  starting new tracking subsystem OG–292
  tracking site OG–289
  unplanned OG–287
takeover, introduction OG–267
termination
  abnormal OG–280
  active site OG–277
  tracking site OG–278
  transport manager OG–277, OG–280
TMS OG–267
tracing
database setup OG–261
tracking
  preparations OG–259
  tracking log OG–265
XRC tracking
during takeover OG–296
restarting considerations during OG–295
resuming OG–294
routing delays OG–294
shutdown processing during OG–295
stopping OG–294
RSR Database-Level Tracking feature
data sets IV–17
RSR Recovery-Level Tracking feature
data sets IV–16
RSTART command
CONTINUOUS keyword CR–546
description CR–546
environments CR–545
examples CR–548
LINE keyword CR–546
LINK keyword CR–546
LOPEN keyword CR–546
MODE keyword CR–547
MSPLINK keyword CR–547
NODE keyword CR–547
syntax diagram CR–545
USER keyword CR–547
RSTRT control statement
  Database Prefix Update utility (DFSURGP0)
  URDBTM–133
RSTRT= statement
  Database Scan utility (DFSURGS0) URDBTM–119
RT CR–15
RTAKEOVER command
  active subsystem CR–551
description CR–551
  tracking subsystem CR–552
RTC ode keyword (continued)
  START command CR–589
  STOP command CR–613
RTC ode macro AS–57
RTC ode macro
description ISDT–133
parameters ISDT–133
parameters
  CODE= ISDT–133
  INQUIRY= ISDT–133
  syntax diagram ISDT–133
RTC ode macro statement
  for Fast Path AS–50
  used with online change AS–231
RTO (remote terminal operator) ATM–61
RTR (ready-to-receive) command ATM–491
RTR (ready-to-receive) command
  Fast Path ATM–491
  IMS functions ATM–491
  protocol ATM–344
  resetting component status to unprotected ATM–452
  summary ATM–344, ATM–491
RTRUNC parameter APDG–97
RTT (resource translation table) CG–498, ISDT–457
RU (request unit) chaining in ISC ATM–337
rules
coding an SSA APDB–102
defining logical relationships ADB–174
defining logical relationships
description of ADB–429, ADB–469
in logical databases ADB–175, ADB–181
in physical databases ADB–173
fields in a segment ADB–15
HD with data set groups ADB–229
secondary indexes with logical relationships
  ADB–201
  segments ADB–14
  using an SSA ADB–128
RULES parameter ADB–429, ADB–469
RULES parameter
  FIRST, L command code APDB–33
  HERE
  F command code APDB–32
  L command code APDB–33
RULES= APCICS–57
RULES= keyword
  LCHILD statement URS–74
  SEGM statement URS–62
Run Profile Report URS–352, URS–409
Run Profile Report
  adding generalized processing ratios
    DB/DC URS–354
    DBCTL URS–389
    DCCTL URS–411
  IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–353
  IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–389
  IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–410
run statement
  MSDB Maintenance utility (DBFDBMA0)
  URDBTM–149

Index 273
RUNTIMES parameter commands
   CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–135
   CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–140
   CHANGE.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–154
   CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–158
   NOTIFY.CA DBRC–270
   NOTIFY.IC DBRC–273
   NOTIFY.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–276
   NOTIFY.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–279
   NOTIFY.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–284
   NOTIFY.PRILOG (for TSLDS) DBRC–284
   NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–291
   NOTIFY.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–293
   NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–296
   NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–300
   NOTIFY.UIC DBRC–304
RX status code ADB–434

S (database recovery) statement
   Database Recovery utility (DFSURDB0) URDTBM–244
   S (STATUS) statement APDB–336, APTM–406
S command code
   examples APDB–42
   subpointer, resetting APDB–42
SAA resource recovery interface calls OG–40
SAMETRM= parameter keyword
   PCB TYPE=TP parameter URS–116
SAMETRM=YES APTM–139
sample
   code
   asynchronous processing OTMA–134
   synchronous processing OTMA–123
   message OTMA–88
   message
      client-bid OTMA–88
      response OTMA–89
   transaction OTMA–89
Sample
   BPE configuration file BPE–12
   BPE user exit list PROCLIB member BPE–19
   combined user exit list PROCLIB member BPE–19
   CQS user exit list PROCLIB member BPE–16
   initialization exit routine BPE–77
   OM user exit list PROCLIB member BPE–17
   processing exit routine BPE–78
   RM user exit list PROCLIB member BPE–18
   SCI user exit list PROCLIB member BPE–19
   termination exit routine BPE–79
sample AO application
   DFSAOPGM CG–465
   UETRANS CG–455
sample AO exit CG–242
sample applications
   Common Service Layer IIV–165
   DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures JGR–63
   Fast Path IIV–151
   IMS IIV–137
   IMS Java IIV–133
sample applications (continued)
   IVP IIV–131
   Java IIV–133
   partitioning IIV–161
   Syntax Checker IIV–165
sample installation jobs RPG–29
sample JCL APDB–340, APTM–410
sample listing of RECON
   Active Site DBRC–375
   tracking site DBRC–402
sample programs
   call-level assembler language, CICS online APDB–53
   call-level COBOL, CICS online APDB–60
   call-level PL/I, CICS online APDB–70
   command-level
      assembler language APCICS–12
      C APCICS–23
      COBOL APCICS–15
      PL/I APCICS–19
sample transactions IIV–137
sample, location of
   routines, location of CG–35
samples
   message processing application JGR–16
samples.tar file
   expanding JGR–2
SANPQ keyword OG–237
SAP analysis procedure DGR–31
SAP definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SAV, online execution parameter AS–98
save area
   for registers CG–8
   prechained CG–8
   single, registers CG–9
save area set
   Fast Path problem analysis
      example DGR–355
      finding during DC analysis DGR–304
save area set, abnormal DGR–33
SAVE keyword
   ASSIGN command CR–107
   definition CR–66
   RECOVER command
      STOP keyword CR–526
save-area-ID-to-module
   cross-reference table DGR–531
SAY exec APDB–277, APTM–333
SB (OSAM Sequential Buffering) AS–205
SB (OSAM Sequential Buffering)
   benefits ADB–250
   benefits
      productivity ADB–250
      programs ADB–250
      utilities ADB–250
   buffer handler ADB–252
   buffer pools ADB–252
   buffer set ADB–252
   CICS ADB–250
   conditional activation ADB–251
   data set groups ADB–251
   DB-PCP/DSG pair ADB–251

274  Master Index and Glossary
SB (OSAM Sequential Buffering) (continued)
deactivation ADB–251
description ADB–249, ADB–250
disallowing use ADB–255
overlapped I/O ADB–250, ADB–252
periodical evaluation ADB–251
random read ADB–249
requesting use ADB–253, ADB–256
sequential read ADB–249
virtual storage ADB–252

SB (sequential buffering)
COMPARE option, use in SB DGR–261
control block diagram DGR–71
DFSSBHDO utility
using with SB IMAGE CAPTURE option DGR–260
DL/I trace table entry DGR–259
SB IMAGE CAPTURE option
using with DFSSBHDO utility DGR–260
SBESNAP option, activating DGR–260
SBSNAP option
activating DGR–259
limiting output DGR–260
service aid tool DGR–259

SB keyword
definition CR–66
START command CR–589
STOP command CR–613

SB Test utility (DFSSBHDO)
data set requirements URDBTM–324
description URDBTM–323
example URDBTM–329
image capture log record URDBTM–323
input and output URDBTM–325
JCL requirements
   DD statements URDBTM–326
   EXEC statement URDBTM–325
output URDBTM–325
restrictions URDBTM–324
utility control statement
   DBIO URDBTM–327
   SELECT URDBTM–328
SB-Detail report URS–445
SB-Summary Report URS–443
SB= keyword
   PCB TYPE=DB parameter URS–125
SBCC ISDT–420
SBESNAP ISDT–421
SBESNAP option, activating DGR–260
SBHE definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SBI (stop bracket initiation) command ATM–353
SBI (stop bracket initiation) command
   CICS ATMM–553
   IMS-CICS session ATM–554
   session shutdown ATM–353
   use in data flow control ATM–253
SBIC ISDT–419
SBONLINE control statement ISDT–378
SBPARM ISDT–416
SBPARMS definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SBPSS definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SBPST definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SBSCD definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SBSNAP ISDT–420
SBSNAP option
   activating DGR–259
   limiting output DGR–260
SBUF definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SC (session control) protocols
See also ISC, SC protocols
BIND parameters ATM–308
binding sessions ATM–300
binding sessions
   negotiable versus nonnegotiable ATM–300
   parallel session ATM–301
   resolving a race ATM–301
   single session ATM–301
   synchronizing sessions ATM–302
message resynchronization ATM–302
message resynchronization
   commands used ATM–302
   designing procedures ATM–303, ATM–308
   when required ATM–302
session initiation ATM–310
session initiation
   completing ATM–310
   ISC ATM–299
   session states ATM–309
session termination ATM–311
session termination
   abnormal ATM–312
   normal ATM–311
STSN flow ATM–312
STSN flow
   primary-to-secondary half session ATM–312
   secondary-to-primary half session ATM–313
STSN format ATM–314
XRF complex, establishing an ISC session ATM–300
XRF complex, establishing connection ATM–300
SC (Structured Call Interface)
stopping OG–144
SCA (system control area) APTM–208
SCA (system control area)
description APTM–208
device-dependent information APTM–277
specifying APTM–277, URDBTM–450
use APTM–240
SCA (system control area), ISC support ATM–277
SCA parameter (DFLD statement), specifying
   URDBTM–494
SCA1 definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SCAN control block function CG–21
scan utility (DFSURGS0) ADB–345
SCAN= operand
   DATASET statement URS–41
SCANS= keyword
   Partial Database Reorganization Step 2
   (DFSPRCT2) URDBTM–95
SCAR definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SCD (system contents directory) ADB–129
SCD definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SCD diagram, online DGR–68

Index 275
scenarios
  online change OG–132
SCHD (Schedule) command
  description APCICS–66
  examples APCICS–67
  format APCICS–66
  options APCICS–66
  usage APCICS–67
SCHD parameter ADB–258
SCHD PSB command APCICS–15, APCICS–22
SCHED request CG–570
  schedule a PSB, in a call-level program, how to APDG–56
  schedule, classes example APDG–23
SCHEDULER FM header
  ATTACH ATM–359
  chained message support ATM–359
  example ATM–523
  format ATM–389
  IMS-CICS session ATM–565
  introduction ATM–358, ATM–359
  MFS ATM–367
  parameter description ATM–377, ATM–381
  request for asynchronous execution ATM–270
scheduler message block (SMB) OTMA–5
scheduler trace
  example DGR–206
  format DGR–203
scheduling
  algorithm ATM–29
  AOI transactions ATM–115
  Fast Path messages ATM–20
scheduling a PSB in a CICS online program
APCICS–66
scheduling algorithm
  developing AS–59
  factors in region occupancy AS–198
scheduling HALDBs APDB–18
scheduling HALDBs
  application programs, against APDB–114
SCHEDXX CSL–13
SCI
  environmental requirements CSL–19
  ready state CSL–22
  registered state CSL–22
SCI (Structured Call Interface) AS–397
SCI (Structured Call Interface)
  automatic RECON loss notification AS–403
  functions of AS–401
  initializing AS–406
  overview AS–400
  registration exit routine AS–403
  security AS–408
  shutting down AS–410, AS–411
  starting AS–410, OG–75
  XRF OG–234
SCI exit routine PROCLIB member
  EXITMBR parameter BPE–12
SCI Registration Exit Routine (DSPSCIX0) (continued)
  including the routine CG–217
  link-editing CG–217
  naming convention CG–217
  sample routine location CG–217
SCI trace table types
  * (asterisk) BPE–10
  CSL BPE–10, BPE–11
  ERPL BPE–11
  ERR BPE–11
  INTP BPE–11
  PLEX BPE–11
  recommendations BPE–10
SCOPE= parameter
  START irmprc command CR–699
SCRAPLOG for QCF
  description/sample record DGR–285
  JCL for printing records DGR–287
SCRATCH function (MFS Service utility DFSUTSA0)
URDBTM–415
scratch pad area (SPA)
  See SPA
scratchpad area (SPA) AS–58
screen design considerations APDG–95
screen formatting
  3270 or SLU 2
  erase all unprotected option APTM–261
  force format write option APTM–261
  3290
  logical units APTM–261
  partitions APTM–261
  specifying screen size URDBTM–460
screen protection, Finance Communication System
  BID option ATM–451
  NOBID option ATM–451
screens
  protection ATM–39
  unprotected screen option ATM–84
script member, error URDBTM–521
SCROLLI= operand (PD statement), specifying URDBTM–508
SCROLLJ= operand (DIV statement), specifying URDBTM–508
SCS (SNA character string) controls
  format controls ATM–521
  function code assignments ATM–522
SCS1 devices
  CARD= operand (DIV statement) URDBTM–468
  DEV statement APTM–294
  DEV statement keywords URDBTM–474
  meaning of designation APTM–178
SCS2 devices
  DEV statement keywords URDBTM–474
  meaning of designation APTM–178
  specifying line width URDBTM–469
SDB definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SDB keyword dictionary DGR–465
SDCB definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SDEP (sequential dependent)
  CI preallocation ADB–266
Index 277

SDEP CI
  diagnosing CI problem in DEDB
    format DGR–359
SDEPs
  format support RPG–48
SDF II, definition ATM–79
SDFSISRC
  target library IIV–131
  using during file-tailoring phase IIV–90
SDFSISRC target library IIV–137, IIV–151
SDFSMAC IIV–62
SDFSRESL ADB–419
SDFSSLIB
  members
    DFSIXS05 IIV–96
    DFSIXS32 IIV–96
    DFSIXS36 IIV–96
  using during file-tailoring phase IIV–90
SDSF (Spool Display and Search Facility) APDG–182
SDSG definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SDT (start data traffic) command ATM–310
SDT (start data traffic) command
  completing session initiation ATM–310
  IMS ATM–466
SDUMP
  IRLM address space dump
    description DGR–349
    formatting and printing DGR–349
  ODF DGR–131
  Offline Dump Formatter URS–314
SDUMP dump AS–100
SDWA definition/mapping macro DGR–60
search argument
  release level used DGR–48
search arguments
  creating DGR–18
  developing DGR–17
search field ADB–192
SEARCHA= keyword
  DATASET statement URS–42
searching for APARs DGR–48
searching problem reporting databases DGR–17
secondary allocation DGR–6
secondary data set groups
  See multiple data set groups ADB–18
secondary data structure ADB–190
secondary index database
  block format DGR–107
  segment data format DGR–107
  VSAM LRECL format DGR–106, DGR–107
Secondary Index Database Maintenance Exit Routine
  CG–95
Secondary Index Database Maintenance Exit Routine
  (continued)
  link-editing CG–96
  loading CG–96
  naming convention CG–96
  parameters CG–98
  registers
    contents on entry CG–97
    contents on exit CG–98
  residing CG–95
  sample routine CG–98
  sample routine location CG–96
  use CG–95
  using callable services CG–95
secondary index DBD generation URS–8
secondary index field JGR–109
secondary index relationships URS–69
secondary indexes
  multiple qualification statements APDB–206
secondary indexing
  analyzing requirements ADB–52
  comparison with logical relationships ADB–206
  DB PCB contents APDB–208
  description APDG–76
  description of ADB–184
  effect on programming APDB–205
  examples of uses APDG–77
  index maintenance exit routine ADB–196
  INDICES parameter ADB–199
  information returned by DL/I APDB–208
  introduction ADB–17
  loading databases ADB–326
  locking ADB–107
  maintenance ADB–197
  making keys unique ADB–194
  Partitioned Secondary Index (PSINDEX) APDG–77
  pointer segment ADB–191
  procedure for adding ADB–411
  processing as separate database ADB–198
  restructured hierarchy ADB–189
  segments ADB–186
  sharing ADB–199
  sparse indexing ADB–196
  specifying APDG–78
  specifying in DBD ADB–203
  SSAs APDB–205
  status codes APDB–208
  storage ADB–190
  suppressing index entries ADB–196
  system related fields ADB–194
  use
    logical relationships ADB–201
    variable-length segments ADB–202
  uses ADB–184
  utility unload ADB–348
secondary logical unit
  See also SLU
  design considerations ATM–266
  first speaker in ISC ATM–266
secondary logical unit type P
See SLU P
secondary master terminal
commands logged CR–25
secondary master terminal logging AS–72
secondary processing sequence ADB–190, APDB–206
secondary terminals AS–302
SECURE command CR–557
SECURE command
APPC keyword CR–555
CHECK parameter CR–555, CR–556
description CR–555
environments CR–555
examples CR–556
FULL parameter CR–555, CR–556
NONE parameter CR–555, CR–556
OTMA keyword CR–556
PROFILE parameter CR–556
syntax diagram CR–555
security AS–113
security
activating IMS security AS–134
activating IMS security
defining the SECURITY macro AS–135, AS–154
initializing RACF AS–141, AS–157
activating online changes OG–122
and the PROCOPT= operand APDG–85
AO (automated operator) application programs
AS–25, AS–124, AS–126
AO applications CG–449, CG–459
changing online OG–121
checking OTMA–2
choices made during system definition AS–114
CMD call AS–124
coding Security Maintenance utility input statements
AS–136
commands that can be authorized to a transaction
AS–125
CPI-C driven application program considerations
AS–127
data section of message prefix OTMA–84
database APDG–83, APDG–85
database
RACF security AS–149
segment and field-level sensitivity AS–148
with RACF AS–149
DBCTL considerations AS–150
declaring resources AS–136
definition
at cold start CR–427
at restart CR–347
dependent region
no signon AS–134
design considerations
authorizing commands AS–120
authorizing transactions AS–120
choosing types of security AS–118
DBCTL environment AS–152
limiting access from a dependent region AS–131
limiting access from a terminal AS–118
LTERM security AS–121
security (continued)
design considerations (continued)
master terminal AS–123
using RACF AS–129
display bypass and password masking AS–147
DLISAS database authorization AS–79
encryption AS–149
encryption
using the Segment Edit/Compression routine
AS–149
VTAM terminals AS–149
establishing ADB–31
ETO AS–130
EXEC parameters ISDT–403, ISDT–407, ISDT–411
facility class CSL–153
Fast Path considerations
in DB/DC AS–127
in DBCTL AS–154
field level sensitivity APDG–85
field-level sensitivity ADB–218
for OTMA OTMA–47
levels
CHECK OTMA–48
FULL OTMA–49
NONE OTMA–48
PROFILE OTMA–48
logical link CR–170
maintenance blocks IIV–10
modifying OG–110
ODBA application program considerations AS–127
doing databases and data communications APDG–10
of resources APDG–9
online changes AS–158
options ISDT–7
options
specifying at startup OG–81
password authorizations CR–170
password security APDG–92
physical AS–147
preparing exit routines AS–140
RACF CSL–153, OTMA–49
RACF protection IIV–63
requirements, fulfilling OG–339
resources that can be protected AS–113, AS–151
risks of combined files APDG–2
Security Maintenance utility AS–136
Security Maintenance utility, executing AS–138
segment sensitivity APDG–84
signon APDG–91
signon verification AS–118
Structured Call Interface CSL–153
security (continued)

supplying information about your application
APDG–93
system libraries and data sets
DLISAS procedure AS–148
IMS procedure AS–148
overview AS–147
system startup options AS–143, AS–157
terminal APDG–91, CR–170
terminal default CR–22
terminal, default AS–115
transaction code CR–170
user
  no signon AS–134
  violation control AS–150
security checks in program-to-program switching
APTM–130
security considerations
CICS ATM–560
ISC ATM–257
MSC ATM–225
SMU in MSC ATM–226
security exit routines
resource access CG–215
security inspection ADB–29
Security macro
description ISDT–2
SECURITY macro
COMM macro, and ISDT–137
description ISDT–134
IMSGEN macro, and ISDT–137
parameters ISDT–135
parameters
  PASSWD= ISDT–135
  RCLASS= ISDT–135
  SECCNT= ISDT–135
  SECLVL= ISDT–135
  TERMNL= ISDT–136
  TRANCMD= ISDT–136
  TYPE= ISDT–137
relationship to COMM and IMSGEN ISDT–137
syntax diagram ISDT–134
SECURITY Macro
defining AS–135
SECURITY macro statement
DBCTL environment AS–151
NORACFCM keyword AS–136
overriding values with JCL AS–143, AS–158
PASSWD keyword AS–123, AS–135
RACFCOM keyword AS–136
RCLASS keyword AS–135, AS–142
resource access security URS–182
SECCNT keyword AS–135
SECLVL keyword AS–123, AS–135
TERMNL keyword AS–123, AS–135
TRANCMD keyword AS–123, AS–135
TYPE keyword AS–135
Security Maintenance utility IIIV–10

Security Maintenance Utility
See SMU (Security Maintenance utility)

Security Maintenance utility (DFSISMP0)
application group name (AGN) tables AS–132
authorizing dependent region startup AS–132
coding input statements AS–136, AS–155
command authorization user exit URS–183
control statements URS–188
description URS–179, URS–188
elements of input AS–136, AS–155
executing AS–138, AS–156
execution URS–188
execution coordinated with nucleus AS–47
IMS resource access security URS–182
input URS–180
input statement operands URS–188
invoking the procedure URS–188
JCL requirements URS–186
LTERM security URS–182
naming protected resources AS–151
output URS–180, URS–190
overview URS–179
password security URS–182
PTERM protection example AS–117
Resource access control facility (RACF) URS–183
restrictions URS–181
security options URS–179, URS–181
sign-on verification URS–183
transaction and command protection example AS–117
transaction command security URS–182
Security Maintenance Utility, MSC ATM–226
security matrix tables AS–138
security options ATM–44
security options
APPC/IMS, RACF ATM–46
APPC/IMS, SAF ATM–46
as part of system definition AS–79
command authorization ATM–45
command authorization
  DFSCCMD0 Command Authorization exit routine ATM–46
  LTERM name ATM–45
  user ID ATM–45
ETO ATM–47
ETO
  user ID ATM–47
  user LTERM name ATM–47
for dependent regions AS–22
levels of security ATM–44
levels of security
  access to resources ATM–44
  access to terminals ATM–44
password ATM–46
password
  LTERM name ATM–46
  user ID ATM–46
RACF ATM–44
security profile ATM–45

Index 279
security options  

security profile  

DFSCTRN0 Transaction Authorization exit routine  

ATM–45  

LTERM name ATM–45  

user ID ATM–45  

signon verification ATM–44  

SMU ATM–44  

transaction authorization ATM–45  

transaction authorization  

RACF ATM–45  

SMU ATM–45  

transaction command ATM–46  

transaction security ATM–429  

transaction security  

RACF ATM–429  

UACC (NONE) ATM–429  

SECURITY procedure, process URS–184  

security related execution-time options  

for BMP region AS–107  

for IMS procedure AS–102  

for MPP region AS–104  

security related parameters  

for BMP regions AS–107  

for message regions AS–104  

for online execution AS–102  

Security Reverification Exit Routine (DFSCTSE0)  

CG–401  

Security Reverification Exit Routine (DFSCTSE0)  

attributes CG–401  

description CG–401  

IMS callable services CG–401  

IMS environments CG–401  

including the routine CG–401  

link-editing CG–401  

naming convention CG–401  

registers  

contents on entry CG–402  

contents on exit CG–402  

sample routine location CG–401  

using callable services CG–401  

security violations AS–146  

security violations  

notifying the master terminal AS–146  

recorded on system log AS–146  

setting a threshold AS–146  

security, migration considerations RPG–37  

SEG option  

Database Scan utility (DFSURGS0) URDBTM–117  

SEG statement  

EXIT= operand URDBTM–445  

GRAPHIC= operand URDBTM–445  

SEG statement ADB–173, JGR–103, JGR–106  

SEG statement ADB–173, JGR–103, JGR–106  

SEG statement (continued)  

HSAM database URS–46  

in secondary indexing ADB–206  

in the physical DBD ADB–170  

INDEX database URS–56  

keyword abbreviations URS–56  

MSDB database URS–54  

PHDAM database URS–50  

PHIDAM database URS–53  

pointer keyword options and abbreviations URS–58, URS–59  

PSINDEX database URS–56  

specifying insert, delete, and replace rules ADB–429  

specifying pointers ADB–83  

specifying variable-length segments ADB–208  

segment  

adding one sequentially APCICS–71  

and its dependents, removing APCICS–35  

concatenated key APCICS–9  

description APDG–3  

level number field APCICS–8  

name field, DIB (DL/I interface block) APCICS–8  

parts of ADB–14  

preventing access to by other programs APDG–58  

releasing a APCICS–70  

replacing APCICS–60  

requesting using GU APDB–133  

sensitivity APDG–84  

Segment  

Message Output Format APTM–17  

segment code  

description ADB–14  

HDAM ADB–96  

HISAM ADB–66  

HSAM ADB–62  

PHDAM ADB–96  

Segment compression routine  

adding ADB–418  

changing ADB–418  

deleting ADB–418  

segment deletion ADB–124  

segment edit routine  

specifying URDBTM–445  

use APTM–190  

Segment edit routine CG–321  

Segment edit routine  

interface CG–319  

use CG–314, CG–317  

segment edit/compression exit routine  

avoiding split segments ADB–212  

specifying minimum segment size ADB–212  

Segment Edit/Compression exit routine AS–149  

Segment Edit/Compression Exit Routine (DFSCMPX0) CG–107  

Segment Edit/Compression Exit Routine (DFSCMPX0)  

activating CG–110  

attributes CG–108  

attributes  

DEDB CG–109  

full-function database CG–108  

compression routine CG–110
Segment Edit/Compression Exit Routine (DFSCMPX0)  
(continued)
description CG–107
entry codes CG–113, CG–114
entry parameters, DL/I CG–113
how it works CG–109
IMS callable services CG–108
IMS environments CG–108
including the routine CG–108
initialization routine CG–117
link-editing CG–108
loading CG–109
messages and codes CG–118
naming convention CG–108
parameters CG–115
parameters
CSECTs used for parameter passing CG–115
registers CG–113
registers
contents on entry CG–113
contents on exit CG–113
sample routine CG–116
sample routine
DFSCMPX0 CG–116
DFSKMPX0 CG–119
sample routine location CG–108
segment types, applicable CG–109
tabled data information CG–112
segment edit/compression facility
description of ADB–210
introduction ADB–17
procedure for adding ADB–412
specifying the use of ADB–213
uses ADB–211
segment format, output message APTM–274
segment format, output message
restriction APTM–274
segment level number field APDB–92
segment name
DB PCB, field APDB–93
SSA, qualification statement APDB–24
SEGMENT parameter ADB–203
segment prefix mapping DGR–104
segment search argument
See also SSA (segment search argument)
See SSA (segment search argument) ADB–193
segment search argument (SSA)
coding rules APDB–102
segment-level sensitivity AS–148
segment, information needed APDB–49
SEGMENT= operand
XDFLD statement URS–83
segments
accessing
HDAM databases ADB–99
HIDAM databases ADB–99
HISAM databases ADB–68
HSAM databases ADB–63
PHDAM databases ADB–99
PHIDAM databases ADB–99
adding to a database APCICS–53
segments (continued)
calculating frequency ADB–306
calculating size ADB–305
changing position of data ADB–393
changing size ADB–392
child, definition ADB–7
data elements ADB–15
DEDB
segment growth ADB–213
definition ADB–6
deleting
HD databases ADB–103
HISAM databases ADB–72
HSAM databases ADB–64
MSDB (main storage database) ADB–129
dependent, definition ADB–7
fields ADB–15
fixed-length ADB–14
fixed-length segments
specifying minimum size ADB–212
full-function
avoiding split segments ADB–212
specifying minimum size ADB–212
in medical database example APCICS–2, APDB–20
in SQL queries JGR–76
inserting
HD databases ADB–100
HISAM databases ADB–68
HSAM databases ADB–64
MSDB ADB–129
introduction to ADB–14
logical child ADB–161
moving segment types ADB–392
occurrence, definition ADB–7
parent, definition ADB–7
pointer ADB–186
procedure for adding to database ADB–390
procedure for deleting from database ADB–391
replacing
HISAM databases ADB–74
HSAM databases ADB–64
retrieving sequentially APCICS–36
retrieving specific APCICS–47
root, definition ADB–7
rules ADB–14
source ADB–187
tables, compared to JGR–73
target ADB–187
twin, definition ADB–8
type, definition ADB–7
variable length ADB–14
variable-length segments
specifying minimum size ADB–212
Segments
Message Input Format APTM–16
segments, adding to change DEDBs ADB–422
segments, deleting to change DEDBs ADB–422
segments, selecting multiple JGR–79
SEGNAME= keyword
UCF FUNCTION=SN control statement
URDBTM–365
SEGNO keyword
ASSIGN command
description CR–107
definition CR–67
SEGSIZE keyword
ASSIGN command
description CR–107
definition CR–67
select group, skeletal JCL DBRC–315
SELECT keyword
description JGR–77
definition JGR–77
example JGR–76
selecting multiple segments JGR–79
SELECT statement
SB test utility (DFSSBHD0) URDBTM–328
SELECT= operand (DPAGE statement)
specifying URDBTM–485
SELECT= operand (DPAGE statement), specifying APTM–306
selecting
extended log formatting for X'50' log records
XFMT= subparameter URS–287
log records by recovery token
example of selecting all record types URS–289
example of selecting specific record types URS–290
TOKEN= subparameter URS–288
selecting keywords DGR–19
selection criteria parameter DBRC–317
selective receiver ERP
description ATM–345
sense codes ATM–345
selector pen
specifying in CONFIG macro ISDT–76
selector pen, 3270
application program device-dependent information
APTM–272
effect on input fields APTM–272
PEN= operand (DFLD statement) URDBTM–503
specifying URDBTM–468
specifying field detectability URDBTM–497
send and receive protocol
bracketing
input ATM–476
output ATM–482
IMS ATM–471
SEND INVITE EXEC command, CICS ATM–538
SEND LAST EXEC command, CICS ATM–539
send-then-commit
flow OTMA–18
with Confirm flow OTMA–20
send/receive and bracket protocol ATM–471
SEND/RECEIVE EXEC command, CICS ATM–538
sender ERP, sense codes ATM–350
sending IMS commands from CICS ATM–558
sending messages
defining alternate PCBs for APTM–127
overview APTM–14
to other application programs APTM–130
to other IMS TM systems APTM–132, APTM–134
sending messages (continued)
to several alternate destinations APTM–128
using alternate PCBs APTM–128
using ISRT APTM–127
using the PURG call APTM–128
SENFLD statement ADB–218, ADB–298
sense code ATM–352
sense code
definition ATM–352
error
See error handling
received during ISC ATM–352
selective receiver ERP ATM–345, ATM–349
sender ERP ATM–350, ATM–351
sent during ISC ATM–352
sense codes OTMA–59
sense-status message DGR–305
SENSEG statement
description ADB–298
field-level sensitivity ADB–219
maximum number URS–129
PROCOPT option URS–130
PSB generation URS–129
restricting data access ADB–31
sensitive segments in DB PCB APDB–93
sensitivity
data APDG–4
field level APDG–5, APDG–85
general description APDG–83
key APDG–85
program APDG–45
segment APDG–84
separating input and output devices ATM–34
SEQ option
Database Scan utility (DFSURGS0) URDBTM–117
SEQ= keyword
control statements
UCF FUNCTION=DR URDBTM–350
UCF FUNCTION=DX URDBTM–353
UCF FUNCTION=IL URDBTM–355
UCF FUNCTION=IM URDBTM–356
UCF FUNCTION=PR URDBTM–358
UCF FUNCTION=PU URDBTM–359
UCF FUNCTION=RR URDBTM–361
UCF FUNCTION=RU URDBTM–363
UCF FUNCTION=SN URDBTM–365
UCF FUNCTION=SR URDBTM–367
UCF FUNCTION=SU URDBTM–369
UCF FUNCTION=SX URDBTM–371
UCF FUNCTION=ZM URDBTM–376
SEQBLKS data set URDBTM–387
sequence
hierarchy APDB–126
sequence field
See also keys
HIDAM ADB–96
HISAM ADB–64
HSAM (Hierarchical Sequential Access Method) ADB–61
introduction to ADB–15
logical relationships ADB–168, ADB–169
PHIDAM (Partitioned Hierarchical Indexed Direct Access Method) ADB–96
unique, definition ADB–16
virtual logical child, in APDB–25
sequence fields
uses ADB–15
sequence numbers OTMA–15
sequence numbers
description ATM–307
maintaining ATM–303
management ATM–314, ATM–464
recoverable OTMA–15
send-sequence numbers OTMA–15
storage ATM–314
use ATM–308, ATM–464, ATM–468
sequence of requests CQS–74
sequence set records ADB–260
sequence, indication for statements APDB–340, APTM–410
sequencing in hierarchy ADB–9
sequencing logical twin chains ADB–183
sequential access methods
characteristics of APDG–72
HISAM ADB–64, APDG–73
HSAM ADB–60, APDG–72
types of APDG–72
sequential buffering
CICS, and ISDT–452
control statements, specifying
SBCO ISDT–420
SSESNSAP ISDT–421
SBIC ISDT–419
SBARM ISDT–416
SBSNSAP ISDT–420
SNAPDEST ISDT–422
online system ISDT–378
OSAM ISDT–411, ISDT–414
sequential buffering (SB)
See SB (OSAM Sequential Buffering) ADB–249
Sequential Buffering Initialization Exit Routine
(DFSSBX0) CG–130
Sequential Buffering Initialization Exit Routine
(DFSSBX0)
attributes CG–127
calling CG–128
description CG–127
IMS callable services CG–127
IMS environment CG–127
including the routine CG–127
link-editing CG–127
loading CG–128
naming convention CG–127
parameters CG–128
performance considerations CG–128
registers
contents on entry CG–128
contents on exit CG–130
sample routine location CG–127
sample routines
DFSSBU1 CG–130
Sequential Buffering Initialization Exit Routine
(DFSSBX0)
(sample routines)
DFSSBU2 CG–130
DFSSBU3 CG–130
DFSSBU4 CG–130
DFSSBU9 CG–130
using callable services CG–127
Sequential Buffering, OSAM AS–205
sequential buffering
See SB (sequential buffering)
sequential dependent part of area ADB–116
sequential dependent segments
free space, identifying APCICS–103
how stored APDB–225
in DEDBs APCICS–91
locating a specific dependent APCICS–102
locating the last inserted dependent APCICS–102
POS command APCICS–101
retrieving the location of the last one inserted
APCICS–59
sequential dependents APDB–225, APDG–30
sequential dependents
overview APDB–225
sequential processing only APDG–72
sequential randomizing module ADB–239
sequential storage method ADB–56
sequentially retrieving
dependent segments APCICS–41
segments APCICS–36
serial search
performance CR–18
serial transactions
in an MSC network ATM–221
serialization
of RECON DBRC–43
strategies DBRC–44
server resynch OTMA–30
server token, explanation of OTMA–83
Server-Available flow OTMA–22
server, definition OTMA–2
ServerPac IIV–7, IIV–78
SERVGRP keyword
definition CR–67
START command CR–589
STOP command CR–613
service
corrective service
Authorized Program Analysis Report (APAR)
IIV–77
installing IIV–79
description IIV–77
installing IIV–79
installing
attention notice IIV–79
preventive service
installing IIV–79
program temporary fix (PTF) IIV–77
ServerPac tapes IIV–78
process IIV–77
recommended maintenance strategy IIV–78
session (continued)
special considerations
  IVP IIV–84
  non-SYSDEF target libraries IIV–84
usermods IIV–77

service aid
  DB (database) DGR–217
  DBRC DGR–377
  DC DGR–267
  Fast Path DGR–353
  IRLM DGR–349
  MSC DGR–363
  SYS DGR–113

service class AS–177
service definition AS–177
service error log records
  causes DGR–347
type 67D0 DGR–347

service group
  changing information DBRC–159
  deleting information DBRC–177
service group (SG) AS–323

service utilities
  control statement parameters DBRC–317

service utility
  See MFS service utility, INDEX function

services available to ESAP CG–504

session
  binding ATM–300
definition ATM–8
  establishing ATM–12
  immediate termination OG–142
  ISC, establishing ATM–299
  orderly termination OG–142
  parallel ATM–301
  remote control ATM–287
  requirements to bind ISC ATM–300
  single ATM–301
  terminating OG–137, OG–142
  XRF OG–254

session initialization
  DLIBZONE IIV–14
  GLBLZONE IIV–14
  initial installation environment options IIV–98
  option change verification IIV–100
  option selection IIV–98
  overview IIV–89
  phase selection IIV–104
  primary option menu IIV–98
  table merge IIV–102
  TRGTZONE IIV–16

session initiation ATM–64

session initiation (continued)
  requested by
    CICS ATM–552
    master terminal operator, IMS ATM–299, ATM–462
    network operator, MVS VTAM ATM–462
    network operator, OS/390 VTAM ATM–299
    system definition ATM–299, ATM–462
    workstation ATM–462, ATM–476
  step-by-step explanation ATM–462
  transmission sequence ATM–462
  ways to request ATM–64

session local flag, ATTACH FM header ATM–381

session parameters
  establishing connection ATM–299, ATM–439
  use ATM–299, ATM–439

session recovery
  definition of AS–258
  speed of AS–274

session termination ATM–311

session termination (continued)
  abnormal ATM–312, ATM–553
  BID option specified, effects ATM–490
  CICS ATM–553
  conditional versus unconditional ATM–266
  definition ATM–311, ATM–468
  immediate
    definition ATM–468, ATM–553
    master terminal operator, IMS ATM–311, ATM–468
    network operator, MVS VTAM ATM–468
    network operator, OS/390 VTAM ATM–311
    station ATM–311
    workstation ATM–468
  normal ATM–311, ATM–553
  orderly
    definition ATM–469
    initiated ATM–353, ATM–469
    requested by CICS ATM–553
    sequence ATM–354, ATM–469
  summary (figure) ATM–468
  symmetrical (SBI/BIS) in ISC ATM–353

session-switching at takeover
  backup session AS–274
class-1 terminals AS–258
NCP control blocks AS–260

set backout point call
  See SETS call

set backout point unconditional call
  See SETU call

SET BDY command IIV–14
SET CLOCK command OG–77

SET command
  APPLCOUNT keyword CR–745
  APPLID keyword CR–745
  CONVERSATION keyword CR–559
  description CR–559, CR–745
  entry format CR–745
  environments CR–559
  examples CR–560
  INSTANCE keyword CR–745
  LTERM keyword CR–559
SET command (continued)
   PASSWORD keyword CR–745
   syntax diagram CR–559
   TIMER keyword CR–745
   TRANSACTION keyword CR–560
SET keyword
   /TRACE command CR–658
   definition CR–67
SET option
   examples APCICS–98
   resetting a subset pointer APCICS–98
set options call
   See SETO call
SET SUBFUNC command (REXX) APDB–271, APTM–327
SET ZZ APDB–271, APTM–327
set-and-test-sequence-numbers (STSN) command
   See STSN command
SETOCOND option
   examples APCICS–99
   setting a subset pointer conditionally APCICS–99
setModifiableAlternatePCB(String) method JGR–33
SET ISDT–424
SETO (set options) call AS–239
SETO (set options) call
   allocation error AS–242
   controlling print data sets AS–241
   descriptors, Spool API AS–241
   express alternate PCB AS–242
   ISRT call, writing data and AS–240
   output DD statement AS–239
   purge call (PURG) AS–240
   ROLB call AS–241
   ROLL call AS–241
   ROLS call AS–241
   SETS call AS–241
   SETU call AS–241
   writing data AS–240
   XRF, and AS–242
SETO call APTM–84, OTMA–50
SETO call
   and OTMA environment APTM–87
   description APTM–84
   format APTM–84
   parameters APTM–84
   restrictions APTM–89
   Spool API DGR–342
   summary APTM–347
   usage APTM–86, APTM–363
SETO call function APDB–314, APTM–384
SETO statement ADB–277
SETO system service call APDG–32, APDG–46, APDG–64
SETTING
   interval value AS–265
   parentage with the P command code APDB–34
   subset pointer to zero APDB–44
   timeout value AS–266
setting a backout point
   DL/I APCICS–78
   unconditionally APCICS–79
setting a subset pointer
   conditionally APCICS–99
   to zero APCICS–97
setting inquiry parameters CG–502
setting up a sysplex CQS–11
setting up your system DGR–3
SETO
   backing out to an intermediate backout point
      APDB–248
SETO (Set a Backout Point Unconditional) call
   description APDB–170, APDB–248
   format APDB–170
   parameters APDB–170
SETO and ROLS Call log record CG–472
SETO call APTM–121
SETO call
   description APTM–121, APTM–153
   format APTM–121
   parameters APTM–121
   restrictions APTM–122
   Spool API functions APTM–122
   summary APTM–347
   usage APTM–121
SETO call function APDB–314, APTM–384
SETO command
   description APCICS–78
   example APCICS–79
   format APCICS–78
   options APCICS–78
   restrictions APCICS–79
   usage APCICS–79
SETO system service call APDG–32, APDG–46, APDG–64
setting
   interval value AS–265
   parentage with the P command code APDB–34
   subset pointer to zero APDB–44
   timeout value AS–266
setting a backout point
   DL/I APCICS–78
   unconditionally APCICS–79
setting a subset pointer
   conditionally APCICS–99
   to zero APCICS–97
setting inquiry parameters CG–502
setting up a sysplex CQS–11
setting up your system DGR–3
SETU
   backing out to an intermediate backout point
      APDB–248
SETU (Set a Backout Point) call
   description APDB–170, APDB–248
   format APDB–170
   parameters APDB–170
SETU and ROLS Call log record CG–472
SETU call APTM–121
SETU call
   description APTM–121
   restrictions APTM–122
   Spool API functions APTM–122
   summary APTM–347
   usage APTM–121
SETU system service call APDG–64
SETU, call function APDB–248
setup
WebSphere Application Server for z/OS environment JGR–49
SETZERO option examples APCICS–97 setting a subset pointer to zero APCICS–97
SF=parameter INITMOD URS–203
SFM (sysplex failure management) policy CQS–12
SG (service group) AS–323
SGN= parameter overriding with ERESTART COLDSYS command CR–349
overriding with NRESTART COLDSYS command CR–428
SGT definition/mapping macro DGR–60
shadow database, definition AS–319
share control DBRC–10
share level, in DBRC DBRC–19
shared data
See data sharing
shared message queues coexistence RPG–52
Shared Printer Exit Routine (DFSSIML0)
attributes CG–403
description CG–403
example CG–403
IMS callable services CG–403
IMS environments CG–403
including the routine CG–403
link-editing CG–403
naming convention CG–403
registers
contents on entry CG–404
contents on exit CG–404
sample routine location CG–403
using callable services CG–403
shared queue environment
planning for MSC ATM–115
timestamp CQS–122
shared queue, definition CQS–3
shared queues ATM–13
shared queues (continued)
environment
AOI transactions ATM–115
APPC messages ATM–112
cloned configuring ATM–99
components of, illustration ATM–15
configuring ATM–99
operating in, overview ATM–13
OTMA messages ATM–112
partitioned configuring ATM–100
performance planning AS–210
planning for ATM–99
required components of ATM–15
security planning AS–128
fast path message queue list structures
defining ATM–103
example ATM–103
IMS
definitions ATM–101
interface, tracing ISDT–387
link definitions in an IMSplex deleting ATM–244
message queue list structures
defining ATM–103
example ATM–103
message routing
in an MSC-IMSplex configuration ATM–238
migration considerations RPG–34
MSC (Multiple Systems Coupling)
coexistence ATM–237
sharing MSNAME definitions and SYSIDs
ATM–240
MSC MSNAME definitions
duplication ATM–243
sharing MSNAME statements and SYSIDs
ATM–240
MSNAME definitions deleting ATM–244
MVS system log, role of ATM–15
output message queue count OTMA–44
planning for ATM–93
program-to-program message switch OTMA–54
program-to-program switch OTMA–45
pseudoabend U0830 avoiding ATM–247
send-then-commit messages OTMA–45
SYSIDs
cloning MSC SYSIDs in an IMSplex ATM–244
managing MSC SYSIDs in an IMSplex ATM–244
sharing MSNAME definitions and SYSIDs
ATM–240
when an IMSplex and MSC network coexist
ATM–244
tpipe status OTMA–45
tuning performance ATM–116
tuning performance
parameters ATM–116
structures ATM–116
unsolicited messages OTMA–44
with a CSL CSL–3
without a CSL CSL–10

286 Master Index and Glossary
shared queues environment CG–153
shared queues interface trace
description DGR–215
shared queues option APDG–92
shared secondary index database
commands CR–787
shared secondary indexes ADB–199
SHAREDQ keyword
   CQCHKPT command CR–151
   CQSET command CR–155
definition CR–67
SHARELVL ADB–124
SHARELVL parameter
   CHANGE.DB DBRC–113
   INIT.DB DBRC–239
   specification descriptions DBRC–19
SHAREOPTIONS keyword DBRC–47
Sharing BPE configuration parameters BPE–4
sharing level, assigning one with DBRC DBRC–19
sharing printers
   between systems ATM–89
   between users ATM–90
shift in (SI) control character APTM–213
shift in (SI) framing character APTM–211
shift out (SO) control character APTM–213
shift out (SO) framing character APTM–211
SHISAM (Simple Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method) ADB–74, ADB–326, APDG–74
SHISAM (Simple Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method)
   CI reclaim restriction ADB–234, ADB–338
   VSAM REPRO, using ADB–234, ADB–338
SHISAM database
   block format DGR–103
   LRECL format DGR–103
   segment format DGR–102
SHMSG data set restriction IIV–53
short data type JGR–86
SHSAM (Simple Hierarchical Sequential Access Method) ADB–74, ADB–75, APDG–74
SHSAM database APCICS–9
SHSAM database
   block format DGR–102
   delete byte format DGR–101
   flag byte format DGR–101
   segment format DGR–101
shutdown
   accelerating OG–141
   CHECKPOINT command
      FREEZE keyword CR–139
      restriction in shared-queues environment CR–138
   control region OG–138
   forcing OG–144
   immediate OG–141
   IMS OG–137
   IMSplex, in an ATM–133
   network OG–143
   orderly OG–140
   overview OG–16
   restart OG–87
   status CR–253
shutting down
   planning considerations CSL–22
   the CSL CSL–25
   shutting down an IMS network ATM–298, ATM–470
   shutting down CQS CQS–48, CQS–82
   SICON= keyword
      UCF FUNCTION=RU control statement
      URDBTM–363
SIDE definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SIDE keyword
   definition CR–67
SIDX definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SIGN command
   APPL keyword CR–564
   description CR–563
   environments CR–563
   examples CR–566
   GROUP keyword CR–564
   NEWPW keyword CR–564
   nuserpw keyword CR–564
   OFF keyword CR–565
   ON parameter CR–563
   PassTicket keyword CR–564
   syntax diagram CR–563
   USERD keyword CR–565
   userpw keyword CR–565
   VERIFY keyword CR–565
Sign On/Off Security exit routine (DFSCSGN0) CG–417, CG–418
Sign On/Off Security Exit Routine (DFSCSGN0)
   attributes CG–417
   description CG–417
   IMS callable services CG–418
   IMS environments CG–417
   including the routine CG–418
   link-editing CG–418
   naming convention CG–417
   registers
      contents on entry CG–418
      contents on exit CG–418
      sample routine location CG–418
      using callable services CG–417
Sign-On exit routine (DFSSGNX0)
   associated printing CG–406, CG–408
   description CG–405
   loading CG–406
   naming CG–406
   registers CG–411
Sign-On exit routine (DFSSGNX0) (continued)

- registers
  - contents on entry CG–411
  - contents on exit CG–412
- restrictions CG–380
- supplying data CG–409
- user descriptors CG–408
- USERD= keyword CG–408
- XRF considerations CG–380, CG–407

Sign-On Exit Routine (DFSSGNX0)

- IMS callable services CG–406
- IMS environments CG–406
- including the routine CG–406
- link-editing CG–406
- naming convention CG–406
- sample routine location CG–406

Sign-on verification security URS–183

SIGN command

- protocol ATM–353
- VTAM ATM–492

signing off, definition ATM–13

signing on, definition ATM–13

Signoff exit routine CG–535

Signoff Exit Routine (DFSSGFX0) CG–413

- attributes CG–413
- description CG–413
- IMS callable services CG–413
- IMS environments CG–413
- including the routine CG–413
- link-editing CG–413
- naming convention CG–413
- registers CG–414

Registers

- contents on entry CG–414
- contents on exit CG–415
- restrictions CG–413
- sample routine location CG–413

XRF considerations CG–413

signon

- RACF CR–563
- terminals requiring
  - commands accepted CR–563

Signon and static terminals ATM–60

Signon exit routine CG–535

Signon exit routine (DFSSGNX0)

- See DFSSGNX0 (Signon exit routine)

signon process for external subsystem connections

- CG–501

signon security APDG–91, APDG–93

signon security, RACF APDB–90, APTM–48

signon verification

- exit routine AS–140
- RACF PassTickets AS–140
- resource access security AS–118
  - with RACF AS–130

Simple Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method (SHISAM)

- See SHISAM (Simple Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access Method) ADB–74

Simple Hierarchical Sequential Access Method (SHSAM)

- See SHSAM (Simple Hierarchical Sequential Access Method) ADB–74

simple HISAM (SHISAM) APDG–74

simple HSAM (SHSAM) APDG–74

simple keywords

- See also symbolic keywords, JCL execution member
- control keywords DBRC–314
- control keywords
  - %DELETE DBRC–315, DBRC–318
  - %ENDDEL DBRC–315, DBRC–318
  - %ENDSEL DBRC–315, DBRC–316
  - %SELECT DBRC–315, DBRC–321
  - %SET MEMBER DBRC–315, DBRC–320
  - %SET TIMEFMT DBRC–315, DBRC–320

simulation of online execution AS–168

single area data sets (ADS)

- Fast Path I/O toleration ADB–145
- I/O errors ADB–145

single log input

- Log Recovery utility URS–234
- single logging OG–54

single mode APDG–34, APDG–39, APDG–42

single partition processing

- HALDB ISDT–444

single point of control

- See SPOC (single point of control)

Single Point of Control

- overview CSL–4
- sending commands with CSL–23

single point of control application, introduction to

- RPG–18

single point of control.

- See SPOC

- single positioning APDB–197
- single save area, registers CG–9
- single session, ISC bind requirements (IMS-to-IMS)
  - ATM–287

single-stream program switch OTMA–51

SINGLE1 parameter ATM–276, ATM–332

SINGLE2 parameter ATM–276, ATM–332

size

- maximum
  - HALDB ADB–79
  - HIDAM database ADB–79
  - PHIDAM database ADB–79
  - PHIDAM database ADB–79

size calculation for SSYS record DBRC–77

size calculations

- See space calculations ADB–305
- size field in variable-length segments ADB–208
- size of DEDB estimation ADB–266
- SIZE= keyword
  - AREA statement URS–45
  - DATASET statement URS–38

sizing the IMS.MATRIX data set AS–139
SLDS (system log data set) (continued)
records DBRC–50
recovery OG–156
recovery using the Log Recovery utility URS–234
selecting DBRC–323
single or dual OG–59
using as input to restart OG–80
SLDS (system log data set) statement
Log Archive utility URS–222
SLDS stop time, locating the last in RECON DBRC–72
SLDX= operand (DEV statement), use APTM–222
SLU APTM–177
SLU
  type 1, defining to operate with MFS APTM–177
type 2, defining to operate with MFS
    copy function URDBTM–496
type 4, defining to operate with MFS APTM–177
type 6.1, defining to operate with MFS
  P, defining to operate with MFS APTM–177
SLU 1
  TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
SLU 1 terminal
  COMPONENT keyword CR–102
SLU 2
  TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
SLU 2 Transaction flow
  standard OTMA–7
  with OTMA OTMA–8
SLU 4 terminal
  COMPONENT keyword CR–102
SLU P ATM–433
SLU P
  application program
    converting from Finance ATM–436
    functions available ATM–435
    MFS considerations ATM–435
    XRF considerations ATM–436
  bracket and send/receive protocols ATM–441, ATM–471
  IMS facilities ATM–443
  input component definition ATM–444
  MFS DPM option ATM–479
  network
    major parts ATM–434
    operating ATM–434
    sample configuration ATM–434
    SCAN/NOSCAN ATM–436
  session parameters ATM–501
  TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
  terminals supported ATM–434
  VTAM
    commands and indicators ATM–437
    facilities ATM–437
    workstations ATM–434
    XRF complex, establishing connections ATM–440
SLU P terminal
  COMPONENT keyword CR–102
SLU type 2
  default literal input message fields APTM–191
  defining IMS TM password APTM–192
SLU-1 devices OG–366
SLU-2 devices OG–369
small buffer devices ATM–86
SMALLINT data type JGR–86
SMB definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SMCOPY command
  commands logged to secondary master terminal
  description CR–569
  environments CR–569
  example CR–570
  MASTER parameter CR–570
  syntax diagram CR–569
  TERMINAL keyword CR–570
SMF
  accounting procedures ISDT–6
SMP/E
  commands
    ACCEPT IIV–80, IIV–83
    ACCEPT CHECK GROUPEXTEND
    BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) IIV–83
    ACCEPT GROUPEXTEND IIV–79
    ACCEPT GROUPEXTEND
    BYPASS(APPLYCHECK) IIV–82, IIV–83
    APPLY IIV–83
    APPLY CHECK GROUPEXTEND IIV–79, IIV–83
    APPLY GROUPEXTEND IIV–79, IIV–83
    CLEANUP IIV–80
    GENERATE IIV–82, IIV–84
    JCLIN IIV–83
    LIST IIV–80
    RECEIVE IIV–79, IIV–80, IIV–82, IIV–83
    RESTORE IIV–80, IIV–83
    UNLOAD IIV–80
    ZONEDELETE IIV–81
    ZONEMERGE IIV–82
  data sets
    other SMP/E data sets IIV–16
  data sets.
    See data sets
  installation methods IIV–79
  LGEN definition ISDT–52
  maintaining stage 1 output ISDT–51
  service IIV–77
SMP/E target zone (TLIB) ISDT–51
SMS concurrent image copy, SMSCIC parameter DBRC–195
SMSCIC (SMS concurrent image copy) DBRC–195
SMSCIC parameter command,
  GENJCL.IC DBRC–195
SMU (Security Maintenance utility)
  automated operator transactions CR–26
  DELETE command CR–170
  description CR–26
  ETO ATM–10
  LOCK LTERM command CR–400
  LOCK NODE command CR–400
  password CR–16
  SNA character string (SCS) controls
    See SCS controls
  SNA commands
    See VTAM, commands and indicators
  SNA QUIESCE ATM–39
  SNA terminals AS–250, AS–256
SNAP
call facility (DFSERA20)
  description DGR–163
  output DGR–163
  COMPARE statement, SNAP call DGR–219
  control block output DGR–219
  exceptional condition DGR–220
  SBESNAP option DGR–260
  SBASNAP option DGR–259
  specific call
    description DGR–221
    SB COMPARE option DGR–221
    SBESNAP option DGR–221
    SBASNAP option DGR–221
SNAP call
  description APDB–171
  format APDB–171
  parameters APDB–171
  status codes APDB–174
SNAP call function APDB–314, APTM–384
SNAP control statement
  Database Prefix Update utility (DFSURGP0)
    URDBTM–133
SNAPDEST ISDT–422
SNAPQ checkpoint AS–268
SNAPQ keyword
  CHECKPOINT command CR–140
  definition CR–67
SNGLSIGN keyword
  definition CR–67
  ERESTART command CR–352
  NRESTART command CR–431
SO statement
  Database Change Accumulation utility (DFSUCUM0)
    URDBTM–225, URDBTM–226
SO/SI control characters
  blank suppress option APTM–214
  hex representation APTM–213
  pair verification APTM–216
  processing by MFS APTM–214
  use in mixed data field APTM–213
SO/SI framing characters APTM–211
software requirements CQS–9
software requirements
  data sharing RPG–26
  DBRC RPG–26
  IMS Java RPG–26
  IMS Version 8 RPG–24
  Java and HPJ RPG–28
  Transaction Trace RPG–27
Software Support Facility.
  See SSF (Software Support Facility)
SOR= operand (LPAGE statement), specifying URDBTM–444
SOR= operand (MSG statement), specifying
URDBTM–442
Sort/Split utility AS–48
Sort/Split utility
  LGEN Stage 1 processing ISDT–42
SORTOPT= keyword
  Partial DB Reorganization Step 1 (DFSPRCT1)
URDBTM–95
SORTSETUP command
  DEBD online utilities URDBTM–533
source code for application programs IIV–131, IIV–161
SOURCE parameter ADB–173, ADB–182
source segment ADB–187
SOURCE= keyword
  SEGMD statement URS–63
SOURCEIDs for PTFs IIV–7
SOUT keyword
  procedures
    OLCUTL URS–199
    SECURITY URS–186
SOUT= parameter
  procedures
    ACBGEN URS–158
    DBDGEN URS–12
    IMSDALOC URS–170
    INITMOD URS–203
    PSBGEN URS–113
SPA JGR–21
SPA
  message, defining JGR–21
SPA (scratch pad area) ATM–31, JGR–21
SPA (scratch pad area)
  characteristics ATM–31
  conversational transactions for IMS Java JGR–23
  MSC conversations ATM–215
  size ATM–209, ATM–215
  transaction code field ATM–31, ATM–37
SPA (scratchpad area) APDG–97, APTM–138, APTM–139
SPA (scratchpad area)
  and program-to-program switches APTM–141
  contents APTM–138
  format APTM–138
  inserting APTM–138
  restrictions on using APTM–138
  saving information APTM–139
SPA (scratchpad area), in system definition AS–58
  space calculations
    CIs or blocks needed for database ADB–308
    database size ADB–305
    overhead for DEDB CI resources ADB–307
  space management fields, updating ADB–101
  space management in HD databases ADB–90
  space management module trace IDs DGR–247
  space release in logical relationships ADB–442
  space requirements, data sets
    allocation restrictions IIV–53
    direct output IIV–47
    SYSOUT IIV–58
  space requirements, RECONs DBRC–41
  space search algorithm ADB–103
SPACE statement (language utility) URDBTM–514
  spare RECON, I/O error processing DBRC–61
SPAREA macro ISDT–138
  sparse index, building CG–95
  sparse indexing ADB–196
  special abend processing
    Spool API support DGR–346
  special events, handling.
    See events, handling
  specific segments, retrieving APCICS–47
  specification of
    field level sensitivity APDG–76
    frequency, checkpoint APDG–44
  specify SYSDUMP statement DGR–3
  specify SYSDUMP statement DGR–3
  specifying
    command codes for DEDBs APDB–234
    DB PCB mask APDB–91
    GSAM data set attributes APDB–221
    processing options for DEDBs APDB–239
  specifying a language BPE–4
  specifying a trace level BPE–4
Specifying DBD generation
  GSAM database URS–5
  HIDAM and PHIDAM database URS–6
  HISAM database URS–5
  HSAM database URS–4, URS–8
  Index and PSINDEX databases URS–8
  Logical database URS–9
  MSDB database
    header information(BHDR) URS–7
    secondary index database URS–8
  specifying desired trace options ISDT–462
  specifying external subsystems to IMS CG–498
  specifying log retention intervals, CHANGE.RECON DBRC–145
  specifying the DB PCB APCICS–77
  specifying the exit list PROCLIB member name BPE–11
  specifying time intervals BPE–12
  SPEED I RECOVERY parameter ADB–259
  SPEED keyword DBRC–47
  SPIE routine APDG–47
  splitting databases, MSC ATM–214
  SPM (sync-point manager) APDG–107
SPOC (single point of control)
  functions of AS–401
  introduction OG–200
  maintaining AS–413
  OM API AS–414
  overview AS–401
  requirements AS–401
  REXX SPOC API AS–401
  setting up OG–201
  TSO SPOC AS–401
  using OG–202
Spool
  choosing master terminal devices AS–72
  sysout data sets AS–86
  TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
Spool API
See also IMS Spool API
CHNG and SETO calls DGR–342
CHNG call, keywords APTM–363
debugging tips DGR–346
error codes
description APTM–363
diagnosis, examples APTM–364
feedback from parsing errors DGR–342
functions APTM–81
interfacing directly to DGR–342
ISRT call APTM–81
log records produced by DGR–346
parsing errors
diagnosis, examples APTM–364
error codes APTM–363
status codes APTM–363
print data set characteristics APTM–363
SETO call, keywords APTM–363
special abend processing DGR–346
status codes APTM–363
STORAGE command example APDB–273, APTM–329
Spool API application design APDG–179
SPOOL command
output control ATM–88
Spool Display and Search Facility (SDSF) APDG–182
spool line group
logical record length IIV–59
specifying LINEGRP macro IIV–58
spool line groups AS–87
SPOOL SYSOUT data sets IIV–58
Spool SYSOUT Print utility (DFSUPRT0)
blocking factors URDBTM–517
DD statements
SPOOLnn URDBTM–518
STEPLIB URDBTM–518
SYSPRINT URDBTM–518
description URDBTM–517
DFSWTnnn procedure URDBTM–517
EXEC statement URDBTM–518
IMSWTnnn procedure URDBTM–519
PROC statement
description URDBTM–518
RGN= URDBTM–518
SOUT= URDBTM–518
SYS1= URDBTM–518
SYS2= URDBTM–518
sample output URDBTM–519
system messages URDBTM–519
spooled output control AS–87, ATM–88
SPQB definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SPQBPARM parameter list CG–408
spR, execution phase action command IIV–120
SQL
referring to Java Report JGR–100
SQL (Structured Query Language) APDG–30
SQL (Structured Query Language)
aggregate functions JGR–83
aggregate functions
argument types JGR–84
SQL (Structured Query Language) (continued)
aggregate functions (continued)
result types JGR–84
AS JGR–83, JGR–84
ASC JGR–83
AVG JGR–83
COUNT JGR–83
DELETE JGR–81
DESC JGR–83
template query JGR–76
FROM JGR–81
GROUP BY JGR–83
IMS requirements for JGR–76
INSERT JGR–80
keyword list JGR–133
MAX JGR–83
MIN JGR–83
ORDER BY JGR–83
PCB-qualified query JGR–82
prepared statements JGR–86
recommendations
PCB-qualified query JGR–82
segment-qualified fields JGR–80
segment-qualified fields JGR–79
SELECT keyword requirements JGR–77
SUM JGR–83
supported keywords JGR–76
UPDATE JGR–81
WHERE JGR–82
SQLException JGR–124
SQLstate JGR–124
SQPST definition/mapping macro DGR–60
SRAN definition/mapping macro DGR–61
SRCH parameter ADB–204
SRCH, online execution parameter AS–100
SRCH= keyword
XDFLD statement URS–84
SRRBACK command (REXX)
description APDB–264, APTM–320
format, usage APDB–271, APTM–327
SRRCMIT command (REXX)
description APDB–264, APTM–320
format, usage APDB–271, APTM–327
SRT (structure trace table) BPE–8
SRVresynch OTMA–30
SRVresynch command OTMA–78
SSA (segment search argument) JGR–79
SSA (segment search argument)
coding
formats APDB–103
restrictions APDB–103
rules APDB–102
coding rules APDB–102
command codes APDB–27
definition APDB–24
overview APDB–24
qualification statement APDB–102
qualified APDB–24
reference APDB–102
restrictions APDB–102
SSA (segment search argument) (continued)
restrictions for DEDBs ADB–124
secondary indexes ADB–193
segment name field APDB–24, APDB–102
structure with command code APDB–27
usage APDB–122
usage
command codes APDB–27
DLET APDB–122
GN APDB–127
GPN APDB–131
GU APDB–133
guidelines APDB–26
ISRT APDB–136
multiple qualification statements APDB–193
REPL APDB–142
secondary indexing APDB–205
virtual logical child, in APDB–25
WHERE clause, relation to JGR–82
SSAList
creating an JGR–136
DL/I data, accessing JGR–136
SSAs (segment search arguments)
unqualified APDB–24
SSASIZE= parameter keyword
PSBGEN statement URS–134
SSF (Software Support Facility)
searching DGR–47
SSIB definition/mapping macro DGR–61
SSID parameter commands
CHANGE.BKOUT DBRC–103
CHANGE.DB DBRC–114
CHANGE.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–132
CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–140
CHANGE.RECON DBRC–146
CHANGE.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–151
CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–158
CHANGE.SUBSYS DBRC–161
DELETE.BKOUT DBRC–167
DELETE.LOG (for OLDS) DBRC–172
DELETE.SUBSYS DBRC–178
GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–183
GENJCL.CLOSE DBRC–191
GENJCL.USER DBRC–220
INIT.RECON DBRC–246
LIST.BKOUT DBRC–249
LIST.LOG (for a category of records) DBRC–262
LIST.LOG (for a PRILOG family) DBRC–259
LIST.RECON DBRC–263
LIST.SUBSYS DBRC–264
NOTIFY.BKOUT DBRC–269
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–278
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–282
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for SLDS and TSLDS) DBRC–286
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–295
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–298
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–302
NOTIFY.SUBSYS DBRC–303
SSM
connecting to external subsystems AS–17
SSM (continued)
online execution parameter AS–101
SSM keyword
definition CR–67
START command CR–590
SSOB definition/mapping macro DGR–61
SSPTR= keyword
SEG statement URS–65
SENSESEG statement URS–130
SSR command
description CR–571
environments CR–571
example CR–571
syntax format CR–571
SSRV (system services trace table) BPE–7
SST (subsystem trace) DGR–191
SST (subsystem trace).
See ESS (external subsystem)
SSVP definition/mapping macro DGR–61
STACK statement (language utility) APTM–356,
URDBTM–513
STAE routines APDG–46
stage 1
binder order statements ISDT–50
ETO option ISDT–49
IMS.PROCLIB updates ISDT–315
input statements, entering ISDT–49
input, sequencing ISDT–41
LGEN processing ISDT–42
maintaining output with SMP/E ISDT–51
output ISDT–50
system definition, running ISDT–48
stage 1 processing
LGEN environment AS–47, AS–48
preprocessor AS–48
stage 2
input ISDT–50
output ISDT–51
running ISDT–51
stage 2 processing AS–49
staging libraries AS–81, IIV–13, IIV–55
staging library
See IMS.FORMAT
STAGLOBAL keyword
definition CR–67
RECOVER command
ADD keyword CR–519
START CR–524
STAK call function APDB–324, APTM–394
STALOCAL keyword
definition CR–68
RECOVER command
ADD keyword CR–519
START CR–524
stand-alone dump OG–145
standard application programs and MSC APTM–146
standard BPE user exit parameter list BPE–58
standard character URDBTM–510
standard form of time stamps, parameters of DBRC
commands DBRC–89
standard header file, C code APCICS–28
standard user exit interface
parameter lists
description CG–4
version 1 CG–4
version 3 CG–6, CG–9
user data areas CG–309
standards and procedures
description of ADB–19
introduction ADB–6
start
BMP regions OG–83
CCTL OG–83
cold OG–79, OG–88
control region OG–75
CQS subsystem OG–82
data communications OG–83
data sharing processing OG–203
DBRC address space OG–76
DEDB utility regions OG–83
dependent regions OG–82
IMS network, prerequisites OG–83
IRLM subsystem OG–81, OG–204
Java dependent regions OG–83
MPP regions OG–82
MSC OG–323
warm OG–79, OG–89
XRF OG–235, OG–236
START (/START) command
APPC OG–85
DC OG–84
effects OG–275, OG–276
HALDB OG–274
REGION OG–82
XRCTRACK OG–294
START call function APDB–324, APTM–394
START command
ACCESS keyword CR–581, CR–584
APPC keyword CR–578
AREA keyword CR–578
AUTOARCH keyword CR–579
CLASS keyword CR–579
CQS OG–82
database access, defining ISDT–79
DATABASE keyword CR–579
DATABASE macro, ACCESS parameter ISDT–79
DATAGROUP keyword CR–583
DC keyword CR–585
dependent regions, starting ISDT–2
description CR–577, CR–747
DESCRIPTOR keyword CR–585
description format CR–747
environments CR–576
examples CR–592
GLOBAL keyword CR–578, CR–582
IMS keyword CR–747
IRLM OG–81
START command (continued)
ISOLOG keyword CR–585
LINE keyword CR–585
LOCAL keyword CR–579, CR–582
LTERM keyword CR–586
LUNAME keyword CR–586
MADSIO keyword CR–587
MAXCONV keyword CR–747
MSNAME keyword CR–587
NOBACKOUT keyword CR–582
NODE keyword CR–587
OLDS keyword CR–588
OTMA keyword CR–588
procedure, naming a ISDT–320
PROGRAM keyword CR–588
REGION keyword CR–588
RTCODE keyword CR–589
SB keyword CR–589
SERVGRP keyword CR–589
SSM keyword CR–590
starting a SLU P network ATM–461
SUBSYS keyword CR–590
SURVEILLANCE keyword CR–590
syntax diagram CR–573
SYSTEM keyword CR–747
THREAD keyword CR–590
TMEMBER keyword

START IMS command AS–267
START irmlproc command
DEADLOK= parameter CR–697
description CR–697
IRLMGRP= parameter CR–698
IRLMID= parameter CR–698
IRLMNM= parameter CR–698
LOCKTAB= parameter CR–698
MAXCSA= parameter CR–698
MAXUSR= parameter CR–698
PC= parameter CR–699
SCOPE= parameter CR–699
syntax diagram CR–697
TRACE= parameter CR–699
START keyword
definition CR–68
start lists, VTAM ATM–62
START parameter ADB–195
start-up variables copying IIV–103
START/RETRIEVE EXEC commands, CICS ATM–542
START= keyword
FIELD statement URS–80
STAT= keyword (continued)
SENFLD statement URS–132
STARTAF= statement
DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–267
START keyword
DEFINE command CR–737
STARTHEXT command
DEDB online utilities URDBTM–159, URDBTM–533
START TIME command
DEDB online utilities URDBTM–533
START TIME parameter commands
CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–133
CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–138
CHANGE.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–151
CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–156
DELETE.LOG (for RLDS and SLDS) DBRC–173
NOTIFY.ALLOC DBRC–268
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–276
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–280
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for SLDS and TSLDS) DBRC–285
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–293
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–296
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–300
starting a SLU P network ATM–64
starting an IMS network ATM–63
starting an IMS network
making IMS ready
/START command ATM–298, ATM–461
results ATM–298, ATM–461
prerequisites ATM–63, ATM–461
results ATM–64
starting position in a database, establishing a
APCICS–47
starting up alternate AS–257
starting workstations
See session initiation
STARTNEW parameter
commands DBRC–146
commands
CHANGE.RECON DBRC–146
INIT.RECON DBRC–247
usage DBRC–61
STARTRBA command
DEDB online utilities URDBTM–533
STARTRCV parameter commands
CHANGE.SUBSYS DBRC–162
NOTIFY.SUBSYS DBRC–303
STARTROOT command
DEDB online utilities URDBTM–533
START SEQ command
DEDB online utilities URDBTM–533
STARTUOW command
DEDB online utilities URDBTM–533
startup
security options, specifying OG–81
XRF OG–236
startup procedure
Structured Call Interface CSL–148
Startup Service exit routine CG–561
STAT (Statistics) call
description APDB–174
format APDB–174
parameters APDB–175
usage APDB–176
STAT call
formats for statistics
OSAM buffer pool, STAT call APDG–147
OSAM buffer subpool, enhanced STAT call
APDG–151
VSAM buffer subpool, enhanced STAT call
APDG–157
VSAM buffer subpool, STAT call APDG–149
system service APDG–174
use in debugging APDG–147, APDG–168
STAT call function APDB–314, APTM–384
STAT command
description APCICS–80
examples APCICS–81
format APCICS–81
options APCICS–81
usage APCICS–81
STAT parameter
Database Prerereorganization utility (DFSURPR0)
URDBTM–110
state-data
field explanations OTMA–82
format
client-bid commands OTMA–77
for resume output for special queue for Tpipe
OTMA–81
for resume output for Tpipe OTMA–80
REPresynch commands OTMA–79
REQresynch commands OTMA–78
server-available commands OTMA–77
SRVresynch commands OTMA–78
TBresynch commands OTMA–80
transaction-related information OTMA–76
section of message prefix OTMA–75
Statement object
retrieving JGR–93
statements
AREA ADB–289
data set
description of ADB–288
DATASET
table of data sets ADB–175
example of ADB–232
specifying DDNAMEs for data sets ADB–175
DBD ADB–206, ADB–288
DBDGEN ADB–290
END ADB–290, ADB–299
FIELD
definition of ADB–194
in the DBD ADB–261
position in DBD ADB–289
FINISH ADB–290
LCHILD in logical relationships ADB–170, ADB–173,
ADB–203, ADB–289
OPTIONS
fixing buffers in VSAM ADB–248
for OSAM ADB–261
statements (continued)
OPTIONS (continued)
for VSAM ADB–256, ADB–258
OSAM ADB–261
use in splitting CIs ADB–69
PSBGEN ADB–298
SEG
description of ADB–289
example of ADB–175, ADB–206
in secondary indexing ADB–206
in the physical DBD ADB–170, ADB–173
specifying insert, delete, and replace rules
ADB–429
specifying pointers ADB–83
specifying variable-length segments ADB–208
SENFLD ADB–218, ADB–298
SENSEG
description of ADB–298
field-level sensitivity ADB–219
restricting data access ADB–31
XDFLD
description of ADB–194
in secondary indexing ADB–203
restrictions in use ADB–290
specifying sparse indexing ADB–196
static
node
inclusive parameter CR–17
terminal
ERESTART CMDAUTH command CR–348
static DB/DC environment DGR–54
static work areas BPE–59
STATION macro ISDT–138
STATION macro
description ISDT–138
parameters ISDT–138
parameters
ADDR= ISDT–138
ALIGN= ISDT–138
BACKUP= ISDT–139
FEAT= ISDT–139
NAME= ISDT–139
TANSLM= ISDT–139
TYPE= ISDT–139
syntax diagram ISDT–138
STATION macro statement AS–73
STATION, BACKUP keyword AS–303
station, user ATM–434
station, user
See also workstation
definition of as logical unit ATM–434
device selection ATM–434
statistic records
CQS request CQS–61
data object CQS–60
MVS request CQS–61
queue name CQS–61
request CQS–59
structure checkpoint CQS–64
structure checkpoint entry CQS–65
structure process CQS–59
statistic records (continued)
structure rebuild CQS–62
Statistical Analysis utility OG–96
Statistical Analysis utility (DFSISTS0)
calculating transaction loads URS–456
test statements URS–340
description URS–325
evaluation savings URS–455
for message traffic AS–202
input URS–325, URS–455
JCL requirements
description URS–335
job-stream example URS–335
JCL Requirements URS–335
MSC and AS–180
output URS–325
overview URS–325
program flow URS–326
program modules
EDIT PASS2 (DFSIST20) URS–329
Message Select and Copy or List (DFSIST40) URS–331
Report Writer (DFSIST30) URS–329
SORT and EDIT PASS1 (DFSISTS0) URS–328
reports produced, descriptions and examples
Application-Accounting report URS–330, URS–333
description URS–455
IMS-Accounting report URS–330, URS–333
messages produced by Message Select and Copy (DF) URS–334, URS–340
Messages Queued But Not Sent (by destination) URS–329, URS–331
Messages Queued But Not Sent (by transaction code) URS–329, URS–332
Messages, Program-to-Program (by destination) URS–329, URS–332
Messages, Program-to-Program (by transaction code) URS–329, URS–332
Transaction report URS–330, URS–333
Transaction-Response report URS–330, URS–333
selecting a subset of transactions URS–455
transaction profiles URS–464
use of the IMS system log AS–179
used in tuning AS–191
utility control statements
descriptions URS–340
hardware terminal address URS–341
nonprintable character URS–342
symbolic terminal name URS–340
time URS–341
transaction code URS–340
VTAM terminal name URS–341
utilization for accounting URS–463
Statistical Analysis Utility and MSC ATM–233
Statistics exit routine
colors of registers BPE–45
parameters BPE–45
STATISTICS keyword
CHECKPOINT command CR–141
STATISTICS keyword *(continued)*
  CQUERY command CR–153
  definition CR–68
  statistics offset table BPE–49
status (continued)
  user structures CR–272
  VTAM response CR–259
  XRF system CR–220
status code
  GE (segment not found) APDB–30
  status code, QC APDG–37
status code, returning a APCICS–69
status codes
  AM
    in a delete call ADB–441
    in a replace call ADB–434
    in an insert call ADB–431
  BA APCICS–7
  BC APCICS–7
  blank APDB–17, APTM–13
  checking APDB–17, APTM–13
  checking in a command-level program APCICS–7
  DA ADB–434, ADB–441
  DB PCB, for APDB–154
  DX ADB–441
element code
  error routine APTM–14
  error routines APDB–18
  exception conditions APDB–18, APTM–14
  FH ADB–111, APCICS–7
  field in DB PCB APDB–92, APDB–215
  field in DIB APCICS–7
  FR
    for BMP regions ADB–281
    for CCTL threads ADB–285
    in fast path buffer allocation ADB–280
    in fast path buffer allocation for BMPs ADB–283
  FSA APDB–227
  FW APCICS–7
  FW
    for CCTL threads ADB–285
    in BMP regions ADB–281
    in fast path buffer allocation ADB–280
    in fast path buffer allocation for BMPs ADB–283
  GA APCICS–7
  GB APCICS–7
  GB, end of database APDB–30
  GC ADB–266
  GD APCICS–7
  GG APCICS–7
  GK APCICS–7
  GSAM APDB–217
  H processing option APDB–239
  HALDB partitions APDB–18
  II ADB–431, APCICS–7
  IX ADB–431
  LB APCICS–7
  logical relationships APDB–211
  mapping JGR–123
  NE ADB–198
  NI APCICS–8
  obtaining APCICS–73
  P processing option APDB–239
  processing option P APCICS–103

status (continued)
  user structures CR–272
  VTAM response CR–259
  XRF system CR–220
status code
  GE (segment not found) APDB–30
  status code, QC APDG–37
status code, returning a APCICS–69
status codes
  AM
    in a delete call ADB–441
    in a replace call ADB–434
    in an insert call ADB–431
  BA APCICS–7
  BC APCICS–7
  blank APDB–17, APTM–13
  checking APDB–17, APTM–13
  checking in a command-level program APCICS–7
  DA ADB–434, ADB–441
  DB PCB, for APDB–154
  DX ADB–441
element code
  error routine APTM–14
  error routines APDB–18
  exception conditions APDB–18, APTM–14
  FH ADB–111, APCICS–7
  field in DB PCB APDB–92, APDB–215
  field in DIB APCICS–7
  FR
    for BMP regions ADB–281
    for CCTL threads ADB–285
    in fast path buffer allocation ADB–280
    in fast path buffer allocation for BMPs ADB–283
  FSA APDB–227
  FW APCICS–7
  FW
    for CCTL threads ADB–285
    in BMP regions ADB–281
    in fast path buffer allocation ADB–280
    in fast path buffer allocation for BMPs ADB–283
  GA APCICS–7
  GB APCICS–7
  GB, end of database APDB–30
  GC ADB–266
  GD APCICS–7
  GG APCICS–7
  GK APCICS–7
  GSAM APDB–217
  H processing option APDB–239
  HALDB partitions APDB–18
  II ADB–431, APCICS–7
  IX ADB–431
  LB APCICS–7
  logical relationships APDB–211
  mapping JGR–123
  NE ADB–198
  NI APCICS–8
  obtaining APCICS–73
  P processing option APDB–239
  processing option P APCICS–103
status codes (continued)
retrieval call APTM–14
retrieval calls APDB–18
RX ADB–434
subset pointers APCICS–101, APDB–236
TCO exit routine CG–427
TG APCICS–8
status codes associated with keywords
AR DGR–343
AS DGR–343
status codes, field in I/O PCB APDB–89, APTM–47
STATUS keyword
/DISPLAY command
   ACTIVE CR–206, CR–207
definition CR–68
DISPLAY command CR–740
DISPLAY command
description CR–253, CR–255
examples CR–327
STATUS parameter LIST.RECON command DBRC–263
status recovery mode ATM–40
status recovery mode
   GLOBAL ATM–40
   LOCAL ATM–41
GLOBAL
   Generic Resource affinity ATM–120
LOCAL
   Generic Resource affinity ATM–120
NONE ATM–41
   RCVYCONV= ATM–41
   RCVYFP= ATM–42
   RCVYSTSN= ATM–41
resource types ATM–41
status, library information CR–226
STDENV DD statement JGR–112
STDERR DD statement JGR–112
STDOUT DD statement JGR–112
stem variable CSL–217
STG (storage service trace table) BPE–7
stop
   APPC/IMS OG–137, OG–143
   control region OG–138
   CQS OG–144
   CSL manager address spaces OG–144
data communications OG–137
   dependent regions OG–138
   IRLM subsystem OG–144, OG–204
   MSC OG–323
   OLDS OG–46
   OTMA OG–138
   TCO OG–189
STOP CR–721
STOP (/STOP) command
   DC OG–137
stop bracket initiation command.
   See SBI command
STOP command ATM–38
STOP command
   ABDUMP keyword CR–607
STOP command (continued)
   ADS keyword CR–605
   APPC keyword CR–605
   AREA keyword CR–605
   AUTOARCH keyword CR–607
   BACKUP keyword CR–607
   CANCEL keyword CR–605, CR–612
   CLASS keyword CR–607
   DATABASE keyword CR–607
   DATAGROUP keyword CR–608
   DC keyword CR–608
description CR–604, CR–749
   entry format CR–749
   environments CR–603
   examples CR–616
   GLOBAL keyword CR–606
   ILS keyword CR–749
   JES2 CANCEL CR–612
   LINE keyword CR–608
   LOCAL keyword CR–606
   LTERM keyword CR–609
   LUNAME keyword CR–609
   MADSIO keyword CR–609
   MSNAME keyword CR–610
   MVS/ESA CANCEL CR–612
   NODE keyword CR–610
   NOPFA keyword CR–607
   OLDS keyword CR–611
   OTMA keyword CR–611
   PROGRAM keyword CR–611
   REGION keyword CR–611
   REGION TRANSACTION keywords
   stopping WFI mode CR–612
   RETRY keyword CR–749
   RTCODE keyword CR–613
   SB keyword CR–613
   SERVGRP keyword CR–613
   SUBSYS keyword CR–613
   SURVEILLANCE keyword CR–613
   syntax diagram CR–601
   SYSTEM keyword CR–749
   THREAD keyword CR–614
   TMEMBER keyword
   OTMA CR–614
   TMS keyword CR–749
   TPIPE keyword
   OTMA CR–614
   TNAME keyword CR–609
   TRANSACTION keyword CR–614
   USER keyword CR–615
   VGRS keyword CR–615
   WADS keyword CR–615
STOP cqsjob command
description CR–721
STOP irlmproc command
description CR–723
example CR–723
STOP keyword
definition CR–68
STOP state ATM–38, ATM–66
STOPAFT= statement
  DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–267
File Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSERA10)
  URS–264
STOPAFTERFAIL# command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–534
STOPHEXT command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–160, URDBTM–165,
  URDBTM–534
STOPPED keyword
  DEFINE command CR–737
stopped status CG–554
stopped transactions in MSC ATM–232
stopping
  MSC ATM–227
  workstations
  See session termination
STOPRBA command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–534
STOPROOT command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–534
STOPSEQ command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–534
STOPTIME command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–535
STOPTIME parameter commands
  CHANGE.IC DBRC–127
  NOTIFY.CA DBRC–270
  NOTIFY.IC DBRC–274
STOPUOW command
  DEDB online utilities URDBTM–535
STOR parameter
  F irimproc,STATUS command CR–716
storage
  !token APDB–272, APTM–328
  STORAGE command APDB–272, APTM–328
STORAGE command (REXX)
  description APDB–264, APTM–320
  format, usage APDB–272, APTM–328
storage estimates
  extended private storage ISDT–46, ISDT–47
storage management
  control block relationships created for MAIN pool
    DGR–75
  control block relationships for DFSCBT00 pools
    DGR–79
  control block relationships for DFSPOOL pools
    DGR–78
  control block relationships for preallocated storage
    blocks DGR–76
storage manager trace DGR–206
Storage Manager, modifying storage pool definitions
  AS–101
storage of data (continued)
  in separate files APDG–1
  introduction ADB–6
  MSDB (main storage database) ADB–127, ADB–275
  multiple data set groups ADB–230
  PHDAM databases ADB–93
  PHIDAM databases ADB–96
  variable-length segments ADB–208
storage overlap APCICS–9
storage pool
  status CR–238
storage pool definitions
  default ISDT–362
  DFSSPMxx, overriding defaults ISDT–362
storage services CG–16
storage services
  create named storage service BPE–73
  destroy named storage service BPE–75
  free storage service BPE–69
  get storage service BPE–67
  retrieve named storage service BPE–74
storage services statistics area BPE–55
storage shortage OTMA–44
storage, releasing CSL–19
stored procedures
  See DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures
stream mode
  description APTM–192
  input example APTM–198
  process of record in APTM–201
  repetitive DFLD generation URDBTM–490
  specifying URDBTM–462
  treatment of nulls APTM–195
  with ISC APTM–201
String data type
  boolean data type JGR–86
structure
  creation and deletion ATM–141
  data APDG–4
  list
    definition ATM–15
    overflow, definition ATM–15
    primary, definition ATM–15
    major APCICS–10
    minor APCICS–10
    pair, definition ATM–15
    physical, of a database APDG–4
STRUCTURE
  ALLOWAUTOALT AS–380
  FULLTHRESHOLD AS–380
  MINSIZE AS–380
structure alter CQS–38
structure checkpoint, initiating CQS–39
structure copy CQS–46
structure duplexing CQS–8, CQS–46
structure duplexing
  enabling CQS–47
Structure Event user-supplied exit routine
  CQS CQS–66
structure failed directive CSL–144

Index  299
structure full
  managing CQS–41
  monitoring CQS–42
  monitoring
    structure overflow CQS–43
structure functions CQS–7
STRUCTURE keyword
  CQCHKPT command CR–151
  COQUERY command CR–153
  CQSET command CR–155
definition CR–68
  DISPLAY command
    description CR–257
    examples CR–330
structure of data, methods APDG–16
structure overflow CQS–7
structure overflow
  function CQS–41
  structure full monitoring CQS–43
structure pair
definition CQS–3
structure rebuild CQS–8
structure rebuild
  initiating CQS–44
structure recovery CQS–45
structure recovery data set (SRDS)
  overview ATM–15
structure recovery data set, definition CQS–4
structure repopulation CQS–45
Structure Statistics user-supplied exit routine
  CQS CQS–57
structure types CQS–6
structure usage
  managing CQS–41
Structured Call Interface
  administration CSL–152
  configuration requirements CSL–7
  definition and tailoring CSL–147
  exit routines CSL–153
  exit routines
    input CSL–161
  functions provided CSL–4
  overview CSL–4, CSL–147
  requests CSL–169
  requests
    buffer return CSL–169
    CSLSCDRG CSL–171
    CSLSCMSG CSL–172
    CSLSCQSC CSL–182
    CSLSCRDY CSL–184
    CSLSCREG CSL–185
    CSLSCRQR CSL–191
deregistration CSL–171
  query CSL–179
  ready request CSL–184
  registration CSL–185
  send message CSL–172
  send request CSL–194
  sample startup procedure CSL–148
  security CSL–153
  shutting down CSL–152

Structured Call Interface (continued)
  starting CSL–152
  startup procedure CSL–147
  user exits
    BPE statistics CSL–157
    client connection CSL–153
    initialization parameters CSL–150
    initialization/termination CSL–155
    List PROCLIB member CSL–149
    notify client CSL–164
Structured Call Interface (SCI) ISDT–431
Structured Call Interface (SCI)
  See also SCI (Structured Call Interface)
  enhancements
    overview RPG–201
    introduction to RPG–17
Structured Query Language (SQL) APDG–30
structures
  authorizing connections to CQS–37
  cold start CQS–33
deleting CQS–48
duplexing CQS–46
empty CQS–32
functions CQS–7
  initialization CQS–32
  rebuilding CQS–44
  recovery for restart CQS–33
  repopulation CQS–45
resource CQS–7
  restarting CQS CQS–32
See sysplex data sharing AS–376
  size CQS–15
  CQS–38
  structure copy CQS–46
  structure recovery CQS–45
types CQS–6
  warm start CQS–32
STSN command ATM–312
STSN command
  action code ATM–468
  action code format ATM–315, ATM–316, ATM–464
  action required ATM–308, ATM–465
  controller sequence number, verification ATM–464
  Finance Communication Systems ATM–464,
  ATM–468
  flow ATM–312
  message resynchronization ATM–464, ATM–467
  response ATM–308, ATM–466
  response
    requirements ATM–466
    response requirements ATM–468
    summary ATM–467
    summary (figure) ATM–308
  sync points ATM–307
  VTAM sequence number, verification ATM–464
STSN function, requirements for ETO ATM–189
STSN support for ETO devices ATM–190
sub-option change verification panel IIV–101
sub-option selection panel IIV–100
SUB= operand (DEV statement)
  specifying URDBTM–471
  use APTM–199
SUBPOOL macro ATM–272, ATM–292

SUBPOOL macro
description ISDT–139
for switched communication devices ISDT–139
LU 6.1 VTAM Devices ISDT–139
parameters ISDT–140
parameters
  MSGDEL= ISDT–140
  NAME= ISDT–140
syntax diagram ISDT–140

subpools users
dynamic allocation ATM–272
VTAM ATM–272
SUBS parameter ADB–258
SUBS= parameter ISDT–462
SUBSEQ parameter ADB–194
SUBSEQ= operand
XDFLD statement URS–84
subsequence field ADB–192
subsequent BPE exit routines, calling BPE–60
SUBSET parameter commands
  CHANGE.CA DBRC–106
  NOTIFY.CA DBRC–272
subset pointer command codes
restrictions APDB–28
subset pointers ADB–119, ADB–269
subset pointers
  DBD, defining APICICS–94
  DEDB, managed by command codes APDB–28
defining, DBD APDB–234
defining, PCB APDB–234
description APICICS–91, APDB–232
GETFIRST option APICICS–96
M command APDB–40
MOVENEEXT option APICICS–97
preparation for using APICICS–93
preparing to use APDB–234
PSB, defining APICICS–94
R command code APDB–41
resetting APDB–42
S command code APDB–42
sample application APICICS–94, APDB–39, APDB–235
SENSEG statement URS–130
SET option APICICS–98
SETCOND option APICICS–99
SETZERO option APICICS–97
status codes APICICS–101, APDB–236
using APDB–232
Z command code APDB–44

substitution character
See translation, character

SUBSYS keyword
CHANGE command CR–128
definition CR–68
DISPLAY command
description CR–257
  examples CR–307, CR–330
START command CR–590
STOP command CR–613

subsystem
changing information DBRC–160
direct-control ATM–555
external, definition ATM–10
listing DBRC–264
queued ATM–555
RECON DBRC–178
RECON
  adding information DBRC–302
  deleting information DBRC–178

subsystem (SSYS) record
deleting a DBRC–77
initializing during IMS restart DBRC–57
size calculation DBRC–77
working with DBRC–76

subsystem access
declaring
  for batch systems AS–360
  for online systems, changing online AS–360
  for online systems, overview AS–360
  online databases that share data AS–369
excluding a database from data sharing AS–370
overview AS–359

subsystem connections CG–500

subsystem identification parameters ISDT–402

Subsystem Not Operational exit routine CG–538

subsystem termination CG–553

Subsystem Termination exit routine CG–540

Subsystem Termination Service exit routine CG–563

subsystems
  connecting or disconnecting OG–108
  effect of commands on OG–108
SUF, online execution parameter AS–99
SUF= operand (DO statement), specifying
  URDBTM–447, URDBTM–487
SUM keyword JGR–83
SUMM parameter
  Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0)
  URDBTM–110

Summary
database management call APDB–291
system service calls APDB–292
summary of changes for DFSDDLT0 internal control statements APDB–303
summary of command codes APDB–27
summary of symbolic CHKP and basic CHKP APDG–41
Summary-of-Exception-Detail-by-Transaction-Code (for IFP Regions) Report
  Fast Path Log Analysis utility URS–299
Summary-of-Region-Occupancy Report
  Fast Path Log Analysis utility URS–302
Summary-of-VSO-Activity Report
  Fast Path Log Analysis utility URS–303
summary, EXEC DLI commands APCICS–33
Supervisor Call.
See SVC (Supervisor Call) modules
supply security information, how to APDG–93
supporting multiple clients CQS–14
suppress indexing CG–95
suppressing index entries ADB–196
SURV parameter in member DFSHSBxx AS–265
SURV=ALL, LNK, LOG, RDS, NO AS–305

surveillance
of the active IMS AS–270
options AS–305
XRF OG–246

SURVEILLANCE keyword
CHANGE command CR–128
definition CR–68
START command CR–590
STOP command CR–613

surveillance mechanisms
absence of signal causing takeover AS–259, AS–271
changing AS–259
definition of AS–257, AS–258
description of AS–258
establishing AS–259, AS–265
example of AS–259
interval value, setting AS–265
recommended for XRF AS–265
starting AS–259
stopping AS–259
summary of parameters AS–264
timeout value, setting AS–266

Surveyor utility (DFSPRSUR) ADB–350
SUSPEND keyword
definition CR–69
DEQUEUE command CR–184

suspending output from IMS ATM–468
SVC (Supervisor Call) modules IIV–69
SVC utility
See Dynamic SVC utility (DFSUSVC0)

SWITCH command CR–629

SWITCH command
ABDUMP keyword CR–630
ACTIVE keyword CR–630
BACKUP keyword CR–630
CHECKPOINT keyword CR–630
description CR–629
environments CR–629
examples CR–630
FORCE keyword CR–630
OLDS keyword CR–630
syntax diagram CR–629
SYSTEM keyword CR–629
WADS keyword CR–630

SWITCH parameter in DFSHSBxx AS–265

SWITCH SYSTEM command
planned takeover AS–271, AS–277
takeover process AS–272, AS–275

switching devices AS–311

switching-priority of sessions
class-1 terminals, defining AS–302
default value AS–301
messages at takeover AS–292

SX (/SX) operand ADB–194

SYM= option

DFSPERA10 OPTION control statement URS–266

symbol name, using CQS–77
symbol value, using CQS–77
symbolic checkpoint
commands APCICS–83

symbolic checkpoint (continued)
description APDG–41, APDG–60
IDs, specifying APDG–60
issuing APDG–62
restart APCICS–88, APDG–62
restart with APDG–43

XRST APCICS–88
Symbolic Checkpoint (CHKP Symbolic) APDB–145
Symbolic Checkpoint (CHKP Symbolic)
format APDB–145
parameters APDB–146
restrictions APDB–147
usage APDB–147

symbolic checkpoint call ADB–75, ADB–76
symbolic checkpoint call
See Symbolic CHK call
Symbolic CHK call
description APTM–94
format APTM–94
parameters APTM–94
restrictions APTM–95
summary APTM–347
usage APTM–95

symbolic keywords
description DBRC–313, DBRC–315, DBRC–330
for all supported utilities DBRC–332

JCL execution member
%ALLSEL DBRC–329
%ALLTIME DBRC–329
%ALLUSID DBRC–329
%CADSN DBRC–328
%CAFSEQ DBRC–328
%CALGTM DBRC–328
%CAODSN DBRC–320
%CASEL DBRC–328
%CATIME DBRC–328
%CAUNIT DBRC–328
%CAVCNT DBRC–328
%CAVOLS DBRC–328
%DALTIME DBRC–329
%DBADDN DBRC–330
%DBADSAV DBRC–330
%DBDDN DBRC–329, DBRC–330
%DBDSDEL DBRC–330
%DBDSN DBRC–330
%DBDSNRV DBRC–330
%DBNAME DBRC–329, DBRC–330
%DBTYPE DBRC–330
%DBUSID DBRC–330
%DDNAME DBRC–317
%ICCAT DBRC–327
%ICDNS DBRC–327
%ICFSEQ DBRC–327
%ICSEL DBRC–327
%ICSTOP DBRC–327
%ICTIME DBRC–327
%ICTYPE DBRC–327
%ICUNIT DBRC–327
%ICUSID DBRC–327
%ICVCNT DBRC–327
%ICVOLS DBRC–327
symbolic keywords (continued)
JCL execution member (continued)
%LOGDSN DBRC–325
%LOGGETIM DBRC–326
%LOGFRID DBRC–326
%LOGFSEQ DBRC–326
%LOGLFRID DBRC–326
%LOGMERG DBRC–326
%LOGONL DBRC–326
%LOGRLMT DBRC–326
%LOGSEL DBRC–326
%LOGUNIT DBRC–326
%LOGVOLS DBRC–326
%OLDCTIM DBRC–322
%OLDFRID DBRC–322
%OLDLRID DBRC–322
%OLDSDDN DBRC–322
%OLDSSEL DBRC–322
%OLDSTYP DBRC–322
%PLGTIME DBRC–329
%SLDETIM DBRC–323
%SLDFRID DBRC–324
%SLDFSEQ DBRC–323
%SLDLRID DBRC–324
%SLDRMT DBRC–324
%SLDSDDN DBRC–323
%SLDSSEL DBRC–324
%SLDSTIM DBRC–323
%SLDUNIT DBRC–323
%SLDVOLS DBRC–323
%SSID DBRC–314
%TIME DBRC–314
simple keywords DBRC–314, DBRC–329
recognized by DBRC DBRC–332
user-defined DBRC–315
symbolic keywords, JCL execution member
simple keywords
%SLDCHKT DBRC–324
substitution DBRC–311
symbolic pointers
logical relationships ADB–155, ADB–182
secondary indexes ADB–187, ADB–193
SYMCHKP (Symbolic Checkpoint) command
current position APCICS–82
description APCICS–81, APCICS–88
examples APCICS–83
format APCICS–81
options APCICS–82
restrictions APCICS–83
usage APCICS–82
SYN macro statement
modifying command keyword table CG–169
SYNC (Synchronization Point) call ADB–266
SYNC (Synchronization Point) call
description APDB–176
format APDB–176
parameters APDB–177
usage APDB–177
SYNC call
description APTM–122
format APTM–122
parameters APTM–122
restrictions APTM–123
summary APTM–347
usage APTM–123
SYNC call function APDB–314, APTM–384
sync point
CPI Communications driven programs OG–40
data propagation OG–43
definition OG–5, OG–13
input messages, ISC ATM–319
ISC
CICS ATM–560
input ATM–324
output ATM–325
requirements ATM–321
log records OG–43
overview OG–13
relationship to commit point and check point OG–39
sync point processing for Fast Path ADB–145
SYNC_LEVEL OG–40
sync_level values APDG–107
sync-point manager (SPM) APDG–107, APDG–108
synchronization call
See SYNC call
synchronization phase
description of AS–268
illustration of AS–268
using SNAPQ checkpoint AS–268
synchronization point
See also backout point
definition AS–28
in transaction flow AS–184
output thread ADB–145
processing ADB–145, ADB–385
synchronization, ISC half sessions ATM–319
synchronous conversation, description for LU 6.2
transactions APDG–105
synchronous data capture
DPROP (DataPropagator NonRelational) CG–44
synchronous processing
See also ATTACH FM header
ATTACH FM header, ISC ATM–357
CICS ATM–537
definition ATM–270
SYNCELEVEL keyword
definition CR–69
SYNCSESS keyword
definition CR–69
synonym, data element APDG–13
synonyms ADB–95
syntax
control statements URDBTM–435
errors URDBTM–437
Syntax Checker
See also IMS Syntax Checker
coexistence considerations RPG–52
Syntax Checker (continued)

enhancements
- overview RPG–207
- introduction to RPG–18
- overview ISDT–320

syntax diagram
- assembler language, DL/I call format APDB–74
- C language, DL/I call format APDB–76
- COBOL, DL/I call format APDB–79
- Pascal, DL/I call format APDB–82
- PL/I, DL/I call format APDB–84

syntax notation, commands DBRC–96

syntax of EXEC DLI commands APCICS–33

syntax, DBRC command DBRC–87, DBRC–88

syntax, message prefix OTMA–65

SYNTERM request CG–573

SYS (systems)

service aid
- common trace table interface DGR–163
- description DGR–113
- dispatcher trace DGR–169
- dumps, formatting online DGR–157
- external subsystem trace DGR–178
- File Select and Formatting Print utility DGR–129
- ITASK ECB posting DGR–177
- log record format (type X’49’) DGR–126
- log record format (type X’67’) DGR–127
- log record table DGR–113
- ODF (offline dump formatter) DGR–131
- queue manager trace DGR–211
- scheduler trace DGR–203
- shared queues interface trace DGR–215
- Snap call facility DGR–163

SYS= keyword
- OLCUTL procedure URS–199
- OLCUTL procedure URS–199
- INITMOD procedure URS–202
- INITMOD procedure URS–202
- SYS1.DUMPXX data set
- IRLM address space dump
- description DGR–349
- formatting and printing DGR–349
- SYS1.DUMPxx data sets DGR–7
- SYS1.LOGREC record
- IRLM diagnosis DGR–349
- SYS1.NUCLEUS
- attention notice IIV–70
- discussion of IIV–70
- SYS1.PARMLIB CSL–13
- SYS1.VTAMLST ATM–58
- SYS1.VTAMLST
  - ATCCONxx member ATM–62
  - ATCSTRyy member ATM–62
  - defining IMS as an application node ATM–58
  - VTAM nodes ATM–59
- SYS2= keyword
  - procedures
    - IMSDALOC URS–170
    - SECURITY URS–186
  - procedures
    - ACBGEN URS–158

SYS2= parameter (continued)

  - procedures (continued)
    - DBDGEN URS–13
    - INITMOD URS–202
    - PSBGEN URS–114

SYSABEND dump AS–100

SYSID keyword
- BROADCAST command CR–113
- definition CR–69
- DISPLAY command
  - description CR–259
  - examples CR–330
- MSASSIGN command CR–418
- MSVERIFY command CR–421
- SYSID keyword, MSC ATM–197
- SYSID paths, MSC URDBTM–429
- SYSID tables
  - deleting MSNAME definitions in an IMSplex
    - ATM–244

SYSID TRANSACTION keyword
- definition CR–69

SYSIDs ATM–202

SYSIDs
- cloning in an IMSplex ATM–244
- managing in an IMSplex ATM–244
- sharing among systems in an IMSplex ATM–240

SYSIN input APDB–340, APTM–410

SYSIN/SYSOUT in program testing AS–171

SYSIN2 input processing APDB–340, APTM–410

SYSMDUMP
- Offline Dump Formatter URS–315
- SYSMDUMP dump AS–100
- SYSMDUMP statement DGR–3

SYSMSG FM header
- ATTACH FM header ATM–360
- format ATM–391
- sending ATM–360
- types ATM–360

SYSMSG= operand (DEV statement), specifying
- URDBTM–469

SYSMSG= operand (PDB statement), specifying
- URDBTM–505

SYSOUT data sets
- allocation of data sets IIV–58
- BSAM EXCP use in IIV–58
- for TSO browsing IIV–58
- space requirements, data sets IIV–58

SYSOUT parameter JGR–111

sysplex
- data sharing OG–225
- local online change OG–126
- online change OG–123

sysplex data sharing
- buffer invalidation AS–374
- calculating size of structures AS–387
- concepts and terminology AS–373
- configurations AS–382
sysplex data sharing (continued)
converting batch jobs to BMPs AS–385
coupling facility AS–375
data sharing group AS–374
defining AS–385
IRLM and AS–386
overview AS–373, AS–393
Structure Alter
  CFRM policy definitions AS–390
  command AS–390
  enabling AS–389
  structures AS–376
structures
  cache AS–378
  changing the size of AS–389
  Structure Alter AS–389
VSO DEDB areas AS–378
VSO DEDB areas
  structure duplexing AS–380
  structure size altering AS–380
  system-managed rebuild AS–379
when to use AS–385
XRF AS–381
sysplex data-sharing APDG–36
sysplex environment ATM–13
sysplex environment
  APPC messages ATM–112
  APPC messages
    asynchronous ATM–113
    synchronous ATM–113
  definition ATM–13
  eligibility for processing ATM–112
  eligibility for processing
    messages ATM–112
  OTMA messages ATM–112
  OTMA messages
    asynchronous ATM–113
    synchronous ATM–113
  shared queues in ATM–13
Sysplex environment
  definition ATM–13
Sysplex terminal management enhancements
  introduction to RPG–13
  overview RPG–209
Sysplex Terminal Management CSL–96
sysplex, definition CQS–4
SYSPRINT
  Log Archive utility URS–218
SYSPRINT listing control
  compilation statements URDBTM–435
  EJECT statement URDBTM–515
  PRINT statement URDBTM–514
  SPACE statement URDBTM–514
  TITLE statement URDBTM–514
SYSSERVE keyword APCICS–68
SYSSTAT FM header, format ATM–391
system
  console OG–363
  data set
    backup OG–15
system (continued)
  definition
    IMS ISC sample ATM–289, ATM–294
    messages, length ATM–360
    report OG–100
system analysis DGR–113
system analysis.
  See SYS (systems)
system checkpoint
  definition AS–27
  frequency AS–75
system checkpoint data set, CQS OG–49
system checkpoint, initiating CQS–39
System Configuration Report
  IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–352
  IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–388
  IMS Monitor (DCCTL) URS–410
system console
  UNLOCK DATABASE command CR–670
  UNLOCK PROGRAM command CR–670
  UNLOCK TRANSACTION command CR–670
system console organization AS–256
system console, requirements of RPG–21
system contents directory
  See GSCD call
system contents directory (SCD) ADB–129
system control area
  See SCA (system control area)
system control area (SCA)
  See SCA (system control area)
system control execution-time options
  for BMP region AS–105, AS–107
  for IMS procedure AS–99
system data sets
  attributes.
    See data sets
  related system data sets
    IMS MATRIX IIV–28
    IMS MODBLKS IIV–28
    IMS SYSDEF IIV–28
    JOBS IIV–28
    TCFSLIB IIV–29
system data sets, protection AS–147
system definition ATM–217
system definition
  3270 master terminal format support APTM–245
  ALL ISDT–29
  allowing for Fast Path AS–50
  application programs AS–41
  as a hierarchic structure AS–45
  BATCH ISDT–29
  binder order statements ISDT–50
  changing online OG–120
  choosing a type AS–46
  classes
    DB/DC ISDT–29
    DBCTL ISDT–29
    DCCTL ISDT–29
  considerations, with MFS APTM–223
  CTBLKLS ISDT–29
  documentation AS–37
Examples

- DB/DC environment ISDT–465
- DC macro statements ISDT–470
- for a Common Service Layer CSL–13
- IMSCTRL macro ISDT–85
- in XRF complex AS–43, AS–300
- input AS–45
- LGEN environment AS–48
- macros ATM–217, ATM–218
- managing ISDT–41
- MODBLKS ISDT–29
- modifying for online change AS–229

MSC
- exit routines ATM–222
- general considerations ATM–217
- implications ATM–223
- local ATM–218
- macros ATM–218
- partner ATM–218
- setting link priorities ATM–220
- verifying ATM–224
- MSVERIFY ISDT–29
- MVS PPT CSL–13
- NUCLEUS ISDT–29
- ON-LINE ISDT–29

Preprocessor
- description ISDT–43
- executing ISDT–45
- LGEN ISDT–46
- parameters, defining ISDT–46
- standard ISDT–46
- storage requirements, estimating ISDT–46

Preprocessor, use of AS–46
- required macros for Fast Path AS–50
- requirements for data sharing AS–367

RSR enabling ISDT–90
- stage 1 input AS–44, ISDT–49
- stage 1 output ISDT–50
- stage 1, running ISDT–48
- stage 2 input ISDT–50
- stage 2 output ISDT–51
- stage 2, running ISDT–51

Type
- guidelines ISDT–96
- type ALL
  - when to perform IIV–82
- types AS–46
- verifying ISDT–43

System definition changes
- controlling AS–227
- coordinating security definitions AS–228
- for online change AS–229
- selecting a definition type AS–227

System definition macro statements
- APPLCTN macro, for Fast Path AS–50
- checking with the preprocessor AS–46
- checklist AS–45
- coding for XRF AS–301
- databases AS–45, AS–53
- FPCTRL macro, for Fast Path AS–50

System definition macro statements (continued)
- Multiple Systems Coupling AS–45
- non-VTAM terminals AS–45
- programs AS–45, AS–53
- reprocessing requirements AS–227
- RTCODE macro, for Fast Path AS–50
- system environment AS–45
- TERMINAL macro, for Fast Path AS–50
- TRANSACT macro, for Fast Path AS–50
- VTAM terminals AS–45

System Definition Preprocessor Exit Routine (Input Phase) (DFSPRE60)
- attributes CG–221
- description CG–221
- IMS callable services CG–222
- IMS environments CG–221
- including the routine CG–221
- link-editing CG–221
- naming convention CG–221
- parameters CG–222
- registers
  - contents on entry CG–222
  - contents on exit CG–222
- sample routine CG–223
- sample routine location CG–222
- using callable services CG–221

System Definition Preprocessor Exit Routine (Name Check Complete) (DFSPRE70)
- attributes CG–225
- description CG–225
- IMS callable services CG–225
- IMS environments CG–225
- including the routine CG–225
- link-editing CG–225
- naming convention CG–225
- parameters CG–226
- registers
  - contents on entry CG–226
  - contents on exit CG–226
- sample routine location CG–225
- using callable services CG–225

System Definition Preprocessor exit routine (termination) (DFSPRE70)
- attributes CG–225
- description CG–225
- IMS environments CG–225
- including the routine CG–225
- link editing CG–225
- naming convention CG–225
- parameters CG–226
- registers
  - contents on entry CG–226
  - contents on exit CG–226
- sample routine location CG–225
- using callable services CG–225

System definition stage 1 source
- DB/DC IIV–199
- DBB IIV–195
- DBCTRL IIV–197
- DCCTRL IIV–211
- XRF IIV–205

System definition, tasks AS–53

System definition, tasks
- allocating communication pool space AS–73
- allowing for online change AS–47
- assigning system resources AS–74
- declaring online databases AS–54
- declaring online programs AS–54
system definition, tasks (continued)
defining application AS–53
defining terminals AS–70
defining transactions AS–57
planning a scheduling algorithm AS–59
specifying security options AS–79
specifying the master terminal AS–71

system definitions
XRF OG–238

system design changes, effect of AS–224
database modified AS–224
exit routines AS–224
for online change AS–224
message format changed AS–224
network control AS–224
output changed AS–224
programs modified AS–224
scheduling changes AS–224
security maintenance AS–224
terminal attachment AS–224
transactions modified AS–224

tuning changes AS–224

System for Generalized Performance Analysis Reporting (GPAR) AS–180

system generation
storage requirements ISDT–47

system identification for logical link paths ATM–197

system identifier (MSC) ATM–202

system initialization parameters, displayed CR–348,
CR–428, CR–578

SYSTEM keyword
CQCHKPT command CR–151
DEFINE command CR–737
definition CR–69
START command CR–747
STOP command CR–749
SWITCH command CR–629
UNLOCK command CR–670

system library, protection AS–147

system literals
date formats URDBTM–449
description APTM–209
other formats, CA parameter (MFLD statement) URDBTM–450
time formats URDBTM–449

system log ATM–233, ATM–236

system log
introduction AS–26
on tape APDG–32
security violation records AS–146
specifying AS–83
storage APDG–31

system log data set
See SLDS (system log data set)

system log data set (SLDS) records DBRC–50

system log data set
See SLDS (system log data set)

system log management, with data sharing DBRC–33

system log, MVS
shared queues and ATM–15

system log, writing information to the APCICS–72

system logging
status CR–234

system logs, with data sharing DBRC–33

system management
enhancements
introduction to RPG–14

System Management Facility
See see SMF

system message field, specifying URDBTM–469

system message format, IMS-provided APTM–244

system message partition, specifying URDBTM–505

system messages
at initialization AS–268
at takeover AS–254, AS–292
CHECKPOINT command CR–138
during I/O prevention AS–259, AS–260
process triggered by AS–274
when IRLM operation resumes AS–276
when user logs on AS–264

system operators
See operators at XRF complex

system post code list DGR–178

system programmers
establishing surveillance mechanisms AS–259
understanding I/O prevention AS–260

system related fields ADB–194

system requirements
DB2 UDB for z/OS stored procedures JGR–59

system resource manager (SRM) AS–260, AS–287

system resources OTMA–46

system service
ACCEPT APCICS–69
CHKP APCICS–69
command APCICS–68
DEQ APCICS–70
LOAD APCICS–71
LOG APCICS–72
QUERY APCICS–73
REFRESH APCICS–74
ROLB APCICS–75
ROLL APCICS–76
ROLS APCICS–77
SETS APCICS–78
SETU APCICS–79
STAT APCICS–80
SYMCHKP APCICS–81
XRST APCICS–83

system service aid.
See SYS (systems)

system service calls
See also DL/I calls, system service
APSB (allocate program specification block) APDG–137
APSB (Allocate PSB) APDB–144
CHKP (Basic) APDB–144
CHKP (Symbolic) APDB–145
CHNG APDG–179

Index 307
system service calls (continued)
DPSB (deallocate program specification block) APDG–138
DPSB (deallocate) APDB–147
GMSS (Get Message) APDB–148
I/O PCB, requesting during PSBGEN APDG–59
ICMD (Issue Command) APDB–151
INIT APDG–46
INIT (Initialize) APDB–153
INQY APDG–46
INQY (Inquiry) APDB–157
ISRT APDG–179
list of APTM–13
LOG APDG–160, APDG–174
LOG (Log) APDB–163
PCB (schedule a PSB) APDB–165
PURG APDG–180
RCMD (Retrieve Command) APDG–166
ROLB APDG–32, APDG–62
ROLB (Roll Back) APDB–167
ROLB call APTM–136, APTM–150
ROLL APDG–62
ROLL call APTM–136, APTM–149
ROLS APDG–32, APDG–46, APDG–64
ROLS call APTM–136
SETO APDG–179
SETS APDG–32, APDG–46, APDG–64
SET/SETU (Set a Backout Point) APDB–170
SNAP APDG–171
STAT APDG–147, APDG–174
STAT (Statistics) APDB–174
SYNC (Synchronization Point) APDB–176
TERM (Terminate) APDB–177
XRST (Extended Restart) APDG–180

system statistics area (continued)
recommendations BPE–47
statistics offset table BPE–49
structure of BPE–47
System Support Program (SSP)
generating control blocks for backup sessions
AS–300
requirement for XRF AS–255
XRF process, contribution to AS–261
system test AS–164
system trace table DGR–6
system wait DGR–41
system-managed rebuild CQS–43
system-managed rebuild
command AS–379
system, as part of RSR name AS–323
System/3
LINEGRP macro statement, specifying ISDT–113
lines
LOOPTEST LINE command CR–405
stopping output
/MONITOR command CR–415
TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
System/7
LINEGRP macro statement, specifying ISDT–113
lines
LOOPTEST LINE command CR–405
stopping output
/MONITOR command CR–415
TERMINAL macro statement, specifying ISDT–140
SYSTSIN DD statement JGR–112
SYSUDUMP dump AS–100
SYSUDUMP statement DGR–3

T (Comment) statement APDB–326, APTM–396
T= keyword
DFSE010 OPTION control statement URS–266
TAB definition/mapping macro DGR–61
tabbing
control characters APTM–221
field tabs APTM–193, URDBTM–462
horizontal APTM–221, URDBTM–469
vertical APTM–221, URDBTM–470
TABLE keyword
/TRACE command CR–658
definition CR–69
table merge II–101
table merge completed panel II–103
table merge in progress panel II–102
TABLE statement, specifying URDBTM–508
table-merge request panel II–101
TABLEEND statement, specifying URDBTM–510
tables
relational representation, in JGR–74
segments, compared to JGR–73
tables, writing trace DGR–5
TADD process code II–133, II–161
tailoring
execution JCL for data sharing AS–370
execution procedures AS–89
tailoring (continued)
  execution procedures for Fast Path AS–92
  IMS for XRF AS–304
  take checkpoints, how to APDG–59
  takeover
    abort OG–288
    as users see it AS–251, AS–292
    definition AS–248, AS–250, AS–324
    description of AS–251, AS–270, AS–278
    differences in takeover process AS–275
    discontinuing RSR OG–293
    effect on non-XRF jobs on alternate IMS AS–287
    effect on terminals AS–258, AS–274
    messages AS–292
    performing OG–285, OG–287
    phase, description of AS–270, AS–278
    phase, different processes AS–275
    planned AS–250, OG–284
    planned
      process AS–271, AS–277
      schedule system changes AS–255
      problem determination after AS–254
      processing AS–257
      RSR OG–267, OG–284
      setting criteria for AS–265
      sharing message queues OG–292
      starting new tracking subsystem OG–292
      system messages during AS–258, AS–292
      tracking subsystem, starting OG–292
      unplanned AS–250, OG–287
    XRF OG–248
  takeover conditions
    definition AS–254
    description of AS–270
    establishing AS–255
    ISC link fails to send signals AS–265
    log records fail to appear AS–265
    planned AS–271
    RDS signals fail to appear AS–265
  TAKEOVER keyword
    /TRACE command CR–661
    definition CR–69
  tape OG–365
  tape units, requirements RPG–21
  tape, magnetic ADB–60
  TAPEUNIT parameter commands
    CHANGE.RECON DBRC–147
    INIT.RECON DBRC–247
  target data sets
    attributes.
    See data sets
    related target data sets
      IMS non-SYSDEF IIV–22
      IMS SYSDEF IIV–23
  target library
    SDFSISRC IIV–137, IIV–151
  target segment ADB–187
  target zone (TRGTZONE) IIV–16
  task ID field ADB–92
  tasks
    commands for OG–33
    TASKs IIV–90
    tasks of DBRC DBRC–4
    TBresynch OTMA–30
    TBresynch command OTMA–80
    TCB association CSL–21
    TCB statistics table BPE–51
  TCO (Time-Controlled Operations)
    CNT Edit exit routine OG–185
    exit routine OG–184
    installing OG–182
    loading a script OG–189
    message sets OG–188
    overview OG–181
    stopping OG–189
    time schedule requests OG–185
    using OG–183
    verification utility OG–189
  TCO Error Report
    See Time-Controlled Operations Verification utility (DFSTVER0)
  TCO exit routine (DFSTXIT0)
    attributes CG–425
    description CG–425
    DL/I calls CG–426
    IMS environments CG–425
    including the routine CG–425
    link editing CG–425
    loading CG–425
    message formats CG–427
    naming convention CG–425
    registers, contents on entry CG–426
    sample routine location CG–425
    status codes CG–427
    using callable services CG–425
  TCO keyword
    /TRACE command CR–661
    definition CR–69
  TCO script library
    See Time-Controlled Operations Verification utility (DFSTVER0)
  TCO Time-Schedule Request Table
    See Time-Controlled Operations Verification utility (DFSTVER0)
  TCO-Message-Table Report
    See Time-Controlled Operations Verification utility (DFSTVER0)
  TCO-Statistics Report
    See Time-Controlled Operations Verification utility (DFSTVER0)
  TCO-Summary Report
    See Time-Controlled Operations Verification utility (DFSTVER0)
  TCO-System-Elements Report
    See Time-Controlled Operations Verification utility (DFSTVER0)
  TCT definition/mapping macro DGR–61
  TDS keyword
    COMPT command CR–147
    definition CR–69
    RCOMPT command CR–511
Teleprocessing Network Simulator (TPNS) AS–171
temporary transaction pipe OTMA–57
TERM (Terminate) call
description APDB–177
format APDB–177
usage APDB–177
TERM (Terminate) command
description APCICS–67
examples APCICS–68
format APCICS–67
options APCICS–67
usage APCICS–67
TERM request CG–570
terminal
administering OG–108
assigning OG–108
LU 6.2 devices
security command defaults CR–37
operating OG–337
operating, end-user procedures OG–331
OTMA
security command defaults CR–37
physical, defining ATM–147
startup OG–337
terminal communication task trace
entry point DGR–267
save area DGR–268
trace ID DGR–268
trace output DGR–269
trace record example DGR–269
trace record format DGR–269
terminal control commands OTMA–46
terminal devices, allocating in an online system
ISDT–192
terminal failure AS–255
TERMINAL keyword
definition CR–70
DELETE command CR–170
ERESTART command CR–352
MODIFY command CR–411
NRESTART command CR–431
SMCOPY command CR–570
TERMINAL macro ATM–293, IIV–59
TERMINAL macro (continued)
parameters (continued)
LTRM= ISDT–159
MODEL= ISDT–160
MODETB= ISDT–160
MSGDEL= ISDT–161
NAME= ISDT–162
OPTIONS= ISDT–162
OUTBUT= ISDT–167
PTRSIZE= ISDT–169
PU= ISDT–169
SEGSIZE= ISDT–169
SESSION= ISDT–170
SIZE= ISDT–170
TYPE= ISDT–172
UNIT= ISDT–172
syntax diagram ISDT–142
TERMINAL macro statement
BACKUP keyword AS–303
for BTAM terminals AS–71
for Fast Path AS–50
NAME keyword AS–302
terminal management enhancements
introduction to RPG–18
terminal modes ATM–36
terminal modes
conversation mode ATM–37
exclusive ATM–38
lock mode ATM–38
response mode ATM–37
SNA QUIESCE ATM–39
terminal network IIV–11
terminal problem
diagnosing using DC trace DGR–276
terminal profiles, documentation AS–38
Terminal Reconnect Protocols ATM–55
Terminal Routing exit routine ATM–210
Terminal Routing Exit Routine (DFSCMTR0)
attributes CG–422
description CG–421
example CG–422
IMS callable services CG–422
IMS environments CG–422
including the routine CG–422
link-editing CG–422
naming convention CG–422
registers
contents on entry CG–422
contents on exit CG–422
sample routine location CG–422
using callable services CG–422
terminal screen, designing APDG–95
terminal security APDG–91, APDG–93
terminal-related database ADB–125
terminals
See also class-1, class-2, or class-3 terminals
attached through VTAM ATM–24
Class 1 with XRF ATM–26
Class 2 with XRF ATM–26
COMPINOP state ATM–39
component protection state ATM–39
Terminals (continued)
connections ATM–25
conversation mode ATM–37
defining priority of session recovery AS–302
definition ATM–6
device class control ATM–86
documenting requirements ATM–24
ETO and exclusive mode ATM–38
ETO, in system definition AS–70
exclusive mode ATM–38
IMSplex, in an ATM–130
IMSplex, in an
managing ATM–127
INOP state ATM–39
lock mode ATM–38
logical
chains ATM–33
master terminal ATM–35
queues ATM–33
relationship to physical terminals ATM–32
logon in the XRF complex AS–261
LU 6.2 terminals and Fast Path ATM–47
managing globally AS–403
modes and states ATM–36, ATM–39
name uniqueness ATM–127
nonswitched ATM–25
nonswitched
contention, with ATM–25
nonswitched communications network ATM–35
page protection state ATM–39
polled ATM–25
profiles ATM–57, ATM–59
QERROR state ATM–38
QLOCK state ATM–38
requirement for XRF AS–256
response mode
See response mode, terminal
RM definition ATM–130
screen protection state ATM–39
separating input and output devices ATM–34
SNA QUIESCE ATM–39
states ATM–38
STOP state ATM–38
support for, IMS ATM–24
supported by IMS Version 8 RPG–22
switched ATM–25
sysplex, in a
recovery status ATM–43
system definition macro keywords AS–303
test mode ATM–38
TERMINATE command
description CR–633
environments CR–633
format CR–633
Terminate Identify exit routine CG–542
TERMINATE OLC CR–633
TERMINATE OLC
environments CR–633
syntax diagram CR–633
TERMINATE OLC command OG–120, OG–131
terminate process CSL–127
Terminate Thread exit routine CG–543
terminating a PSB in a CICS online program
APCICS–67
terminating communications, MSC conversations
ATM–216
terminating connections with external subsystems
CG–501
terminating ISC Extension conversations ATM–318
terminating sessions OG–142
terminating the IVP session IVL–124
termination ECB CG–501, CG–553
termination of a PSB, restrictions APDG–56
termination phase
description of AS–279
illustration of AS–280
termination requested by external subsystem CG–553
termination, abnormal APCICS–8, APDG–39
termination, session
See session termination
TERMTHRD request CG–575
TEST command
description CR–643
environments CR–643
test mode ATM–38, ATM–269
test of application programs
using BTS II APDG–142
using DFSDDLT0 APDG–164
using DL/I test program APDG–141
what you need APDG–141, APDG–163
test of DL/I call sequences APDG–141, APDG–164
test program
See DL/I Test Program (DFSDDLT0)
test, unit APDG–141, APDG–163
testing
aids AS–168
backup IMS procedures AS–277
database AS–165
ensuring network readiness AS–166
MFS formats online AS–169
MFSTEST mode AS–169
monitoring in test environments AS–166
online AS–167
online system AS–163
operational procedures AS–165
testing (continued)
performance AS–171
phases in AS–163
procedures, operational AS–165
programs AS–171
QCF, with AS–171
simulating online execution AS–168
stress AS–171
SYSIN/SYSOUT AS–171
system AS–164
test database AS–165
test system AS–164
with Batch Terminal Simulator AS–168
with online change AS–170
testing a database
description of ADB–301
introduction ADB–4
testing MFS control blocks
See MFS Language utility (DFSUPAA0)
testing procedures OG–329
testing status codes APDB–17
testing, application programs ADB–302
TFORMAT IIIV–62
TG status code APCICS–8
third access path ADB–440
thread function requests CG–570
thread function requests
ABTTERM CG–574
COMTERM CG–574
IMS CG–572
PREP CG–573
SCHED CG–570
SYNTERM CG–573
TERMTHRD CG–575
THREAD keyword
definition CR–70
START command CR–590
STOP command CR–614
thread, external subsystem CG–500
time
setting OG–77
TIME data type JGR–86
time qualifier DBRC–318
time stamp DBRC–89
time stamp
conversions and examples DBRC–94
DBRC commands affected by format DBRC–95
defined by COMM macro CR–12
specifying zero values DBRC–93
standard default settings for values DBRC–95
standard format DBRC–89
TIMEFMT parameter DBRC–91
two-digit year input DBRC–93
time stamps OG–77
Time-Controlled Operations (TCO) Communication
Name Table (CNT) exit routine (DFSTCNT0)
(continued)
registers
contents on entry CG–430
contents on exit CG–431
sample routine location CG–430
Time-Controlled Operations (TCO) exit routine
See TCO exit routine
Time-Controlled Operations (TCO) Exit Routine (DFSTXIT0)
IMS callable services CG–426
IMS environments CG–425
including the routine CG–426
link-editing CG–425
naming convention CG–425
sample routine location CG–426
Time-Controlled Operations Verification utility (DFSTVER0)
DD statements URDBTM–523
DD statements
DFSTCF URDBTM–523
STEPLIB URDBTM–523
SYSIN URDBTM–523
SYSPRINT URDBTM–523
SYSUDUMP URDBTM–523
description URDBTM–521
EXEC statement URDBTM–522
output
description URDBTM–523
error report URDBTM–523
message-table report URDBTM–525
statistics report URDBTM–524
summary report URDBTM–525
time-schedule request table URDBTM–523
timer elements report URDBTM–524
return codes URDBTM–525
TCO script library URDBTM–521
TCO Verification procedure URDBTM–521
TIME= keyword
SB Test utility SELECT statement URDBTM–329
TIMEFMT parameter sublist
CHANGE.RECON DBRC–149
default settings DBRC–93
order of precedence of the subparameters DBRC–92
timeout
activating APTM–131
TIMEOUT keyword
/TRACE command CR–661
definition CR–70
TIMEOUT value
CHANGE command CR–128
timeout value, definition of AS–264
TIMEOVER keyword
definition CR–70
DISPLAY command
description CR–259
examples CR–331
timer
counting unused IOVF control intervals ISDT–269
TIMER keyword
SET command CR–745
timestamp
for shared queue message CQS–122
used in command responses CR–12
TIMESTAMP data type JGR–86
TIMEZIN parameter CHANGE.RECON command
DBRC–148
TIMEZONE keyword OG–77
TIMEZONE parameter, CHANGE.RECON command
DBRC–147
TINYINT data type JGR–86
TITLE statement (language utility) URDBTM–514
TLIB ISDT–51
TM and MSC Message Routing and Control User Exit Routine (DFSMSCED)
IMS callable services CG–352
IMS environments CG–352
including the routine CG–352
link-editing CG–352
naming convention CG–352
sample routine location CG–352
TM batch
See batch environment
TM batch program APDG–32
TM Batch, programming considerations APTM–9
TM message routing control user exit CG–349
TM resources
sharing ATM–19
sharing
disabling sharing ATM–20
TM/MSC Message Routing and Control Exit Routine
ATM–211
TMEMBER keyword
/TRACE command CR–662
definition CR–70
DEQUEUE command CR–185
DISPLAY command
description CR–259
examples CR–331
OTMA client CR–70
START command CR–590
STOP command CR–614
TMEMBER operand OTMA–43
TMEMBER TPIPE keyword
EXIT command CR–360
TMS (transport manager subsystem) AS–319
TMS (transport manager subsystem)
RSR OG–267
TMS command
DEFINE CR–737
DISPLAY CR–739
SET CR–745
START CR–747
STOP CR–749
TMS keyword
START command CR–747
STOP command CR–749
TMSUFFIX ENVAR keyword JGR–60
TO= keyword
MSDB Maintenance utility MSDBINIT statement
URDBTM–151
TOAREA= keyword
Database Surveyor utility (DFSPRSUR) URDBTM–77
Partial DB Reorganization Step 1 (DFSPRCST)
URDBTM–94
TOD (time-of-day) clock OG–76
TOD clock IIV–50
token
correlator OTMA–83
destination OTMA–84
originator’s OTMA–84
server OTMA–83
token, definition of APDG–98
TOKEN= subparameter URS–288
tools
available in IMS OG–11
Data Extraction, Processing, and Restructuring
System ADB–303
for test databases ADB–303
for test databases
DL/I test program ADB–304
VisualAge Generator ADB–303
IMS Monitor OG–98
IMS Performance Analyzer OG–97
productivity OG–11
tools, IBM for IMS RPG–69
TOTIME parameter commands
DELETE.LOG (for RLDS and SLDS) DBRC–173
GENJCL.ARCHIVE DBRC–182
LIST.HISTORY DBRC–257
LIST.LOG DBRC–261
TPEND exit AS–258
Tpipe
See also transaction pipe
limit per Tmember OTMA–46
TPPIPE keyword
/TRACE command CR–662
definition CR–70
DEQUEUE command CR–185
START command CR–586
STOP command CR–609
TPNAME keyword
/TRACE command CR–653
ALLOCATE command CR–96
definition CR–71
DEQUEUE command CR–183
START command CR–586
STOP command CR–609
TPNS (Teleprocessing Network Simulator) AS–171
trace
CTRACE records AS–392
GTF (Generalized Trace Facility) AS–179, AS–189
GTF Detail Trace report AS–212
GTFPARS Job Summary and Detail Trace report
IMS Monitor AS–166, AS–179, AS–189
IMSPA DC Queue Transaction report AS–216
trace (continued)
IRLM activity AS–372, AS–392
log router DGR–432
when to avoid using AS–207
TRACE (/TRACE) command OG–95, OG–100
TRACE (/TRACE) command
IMS Monitor OG–98, OG–112
options OG–319
VTAM I/O Timeout facility OG–108
TRACE command
DASD log activity, tracing ISDT–383
DB2 subsystem connection, tracing ISDT–387
DBF entries from FP, tracing ISDT–384
description CR–651
DFSMSCE0 keyword CR–652
dispatcher activity, tracing ISDT–383
DL/I activity, tracing ISDT–383
environments CR–650
examples CR–663
EXIT keyword CR–652
latch activity, tracing ISDT–385
LEVEL keyword CR–652
LINE keyword CR–653
LINK keyword CR–653
lock activity, tracing ISDT–385
LUNAME keyword CR–653
MODULE keyword CR–653
MONITOR keyword CR–654
MONITOR keyword
parameter environments table CR–655
NODE keyword CR–655
OPTION keyword CR–656, CR–660
options ISDT–382
OSAMGTF keyword CR–656
OTMA control, tracing ISDT–386
PI keyword CR–656
PROGRAM keyword CR–657
PSB keyword CR–658
queue manager, tracing ISDT–386
RSR log router, tracing ISDT–385
scheduler, tracing ISDT–386
SET keyword CR–658
shared queues interface, tracing ISDT–387
storage manager calls, tracing ISDT–387
syntax diagram CR–647
TABLE keyword CR–658
TAKEOVER keyword CR–661
TCO keyword CR–661
TIMEOUT keyword CR–661
TMEMBER keyword CR–662
TPipe keyword CR–662
TPNAME keyword CR–653
TRANSACTION keyword CR–662
TRAP keyword CR–662
UNITYPE keyword CR–662
VOLUME keyword CR–657, CR–661
trace control facility APDG–164
TRACE CT command OG–100, OG–113
TRACE CT command
examples CR–727
trace entries
options, defining ISDT–379
storage requirements ISDT–388
trace environment, internal DGR–4
trace facility OG–102
TRACE keyword
definition CR–71
DISPLAY command
description CR–261
examples CR–331
TRACE parameter
F irlmproc,STATUS command CR–716
trace parameters ADB–258
trace report OG–99
trace table
external trace environment
starting and stopping DGR–4
locating DGR–165
sizes
MVS master DGR–6
MVS system DGR–6
Trace Table Record Format and Print Module
(DFSERA60) URS–287
trace tables, writing DGR–5
trace, DL/I
use to analyze DL/I call DGR–248
TRACE= keyword
MSDB Maintenance utility action statement
URDBTM–150
TRACE= parameter
START irlmproc command CR–699
TRACE=nnn parameter
F irlmproc,SET command CR–714
TRACEOFF parameter CHANGE.RECON command
DBRC–147
TRACEON parameter CHANGE.RECON command
DBRC–147
traces
CIBSTRAC DGR–312
CIBTRACE DGR–313
common trace table interface DGR–163
controlling the volume DGR–4
CQS DGR–7
DBRC DGR–381
DBRC external DGR–404
DC DGR–269
dispatcher DGR–169
DL/I DGR–227
dl/i call image capture DGR–221
DLA3LOG DGR–300
external subsystem DGR–178
Fast Path DGR–5
job control block DGR–217
LXB DGR–371
MSC communication task DGR–363
offloading trace data set DGR–5
OTMA DGR–338
program isolation DGR–254
queue manager DGR–211
retrieve DGR–250
scheduler DGR–203
traces (continued)
shared queues interface DGR–215
which to run at all times DGR–4
TRACETABLE BPE–23, CR–755
TRACETABLE
command verbs BPE–23, CR–755
DISPLAY TRACETABLE command output BPE–25, CR–757
format of DISPLAY TRACETABLE BPE–23, CR–755
format of UPDATE TRACETABLE BPE–28, CR–759
UPDATE TRACETABLE command output BPE–30, CR–762
usage of DISPLAY TRACETABLE BPE–24, CR–755
usage of UPDATE TRACETABLE BPE–28, CR–760
tracing OG–102
tracing
CTRACE, using OG–100, OG–113
GTF trace OG–99
IMS Java library methods JGR–126
J2EE JGR–47
log OG–51
program isolation and lock OG–100
Trace statements, adding JGR–126
WebSphere Application Server for z/OS JGR–47
XMLTrace JGR–124
TRACK parameter NOTIFY.RECOV command DBRC–288
track space used ADB–244
tracking
database, RSR OG–273
routing delays OG–294
XRC
enabling OG–294
gap processing OG–295
restart considerations OG–295
resuming OG–294
shutdown processing during OG–295
stopping OG–294
unplanned remote takeover OG–296
tracking IMS
definition AS–319
TRACKING keyword
definition CR–71
TRACKING parameter
CHANGE.DB command DBRC–115
CHANGE.SUBSYS command DBRC–162
tracking phase
description of AS–269
illustration of AS–272
tracking site
restart OG–279
RSR OG–270
RSR, termination OG–278
TRACKING STATUS keyword
definition CR–71
DISPLAY command CR–263
traffic between two IMS systems ATM–272
trailing blank compression APTM–230
TRANAUTH keyword
definition CR–71
ERESTART command CR–352
TRANAUTH keyword (continued)
NRESTART command CR–431
TRANCMDS keyword
definition CR–71
ERESTART command CR–352
MODIFY command CR–411
NRESTART command CR–432
TRANSACT macro APDG–40
TRANSACT macro
description ISDT–172
EDIT=ULC ATM–85
parameters ISDT–174
parameters
CODE= ISDT–175
DCLWA= ISDT–175
EDIT= ISDT–175
FPATH= ISDT–176
INQ= ISDT–176
INQUIRY= ISDT–176
MAXRGN= ISDT–177
MODE= ISDT–177
MSGTYPE= ISDT–177
PARLIM= ISDT–178
PROCLIM= ISDT–179
PRTY= ISDT–181
ROUTING= ISDT–182
SCHED= ISDT–182
SEGNO= ISDT–184
SEGSIZE= ISDT–184
SERIAL= ISDT–184
SPA= ISDT–185
SYSID= ISDT–185
WFI= ISDT–186
PRTY= keyword ATM–220
syntax diagram ISDT–173
translation to uppercase ATM–81
TRANSACT macro statement
defining transactions AS–57
for Fast Path AS–50
INQUIRY keyword AS–59
keywords for Fast Path transactions AS–59
MSGTYPE keyword AS–59
PGMTYPE keyword AS–54
PROCLIM keyword AS–59
PRTY keyword AS–62
SCHED keyword AS–69
system definition, in AS–53
used with online change AS–231
TRANSACT macros (DFSPRE60) CG–223
transaction ATM–65
transaction
abends ATM–573
authorization AS–120
code, definition ATM–21
codes, unique ATM–28
command security AS–124
definition AS–9
exit routine preparation AS–140
Fast Path
defining characteristics AS–59
potential AS–25

Index 315
transaction (continued)
Fast Path (continued)
restrictions AS–49
flow of events AS–181
for program-to-program switch AS–120
IMSplex, in a ATM–131
MSC statistics ATM–236
multiple systems ATM–195
RACF PassTickets AS–140
security with no user signon AS–134
states ATM–65
with exit routine or RACF AS–120
Transaction Analysis utility ATM–233
Transaction Analysis utility (DFSILTA0) AS–191
transaction attributes, architected OTMA–91
transaction authorization
terminals requiring signon CR–563
Transaction Authorization exit routine (DFSCTRN0) CG–433
Transaction Authorization exit routine (DFSCTRN0)
attributes CG–433
description CG–433
IMS environments CG–433
including the routine CG–433
link editing CG–433
naming convention CG–433
registers
contents on entry CG–434
contents on exit CG–435
sample routine location CG–433
using callable services CG–433
Transaction Authorization Exit Routine (DFSCTRN0)
IMS callable services CG–434
IMS environments CG–433
including the routine CG–433
link-editing CG–433
naming convention CG–433
sample routine location CG–434
transaction code APDG–32, APDG–33, APTM–234
transaction code
format of OG–339
Transaction Code (Input) Edit Routine (DFSCSMB0)
attributes CG–437
description CG–437
example CG–439
IMS callable services CG–437
IMS environments CG–437
including the routine CG–437
link-editing CG–437
naming convention CG–437
registers
contents on entry CG–438
contents on exit CG–438
sample routine location CG–438
using callable services CG–437
transaction code (remote destination) ATM–204
transaction code attributes (MSC) URDBTM–429
Transaction Code Input edit routine (DFSCSMB0)
interfases CG–438
transaction command security URS–182
transaction flow and IMS Monitor events URS–347
TRANSACTION keyword
/DISPLAY command
QCNT CR–270
/TRACE command CR–662
ASSIGN command CR–107
CHANGE command CR–129
definition CR–71
DELETE command CR–169
DEQUEUE command CR–185
DISPLAY command
description CR–270
examples CR–338
with Q keyword CR–248
with SYSID keyword CR–259
generic parameters CR–18
LOCK command CR–400
MSASSIGN command CR–418
PSTOP command CR–446
PURGE command CR–453
SET command CR–560
START command CR–591
STOP command CR–614
UNLOCK command CR–671
Transaction Manager APCICS–32
Transaction Manager
introduction ATM–5
resources ATM–129
Transaction Manager control block diagram DGR–89
transaction manager resource
APPC Descriptor ATM–129
MSNAME ATM–130
Transactions ATM–131
User ATM–131
User ID ATM–132
VTAM LTERM ATM–129
VTAM Terminal Nodes ATM–130
transaction pipe
and message flow OTMA–10
definition OTMA–5, OTMA–8
differences from LTERMs OTMA–9
differences from UNIX pipes OTMA–9
flow in full-duplex environment OTMA–12
in an OTMA client/server environment OTMA–9
naming conventions for OTMA–14
non-synchronized OTMA–9
number a client can create OTMA–6
synchronized OTMA–9
temporary OTMA–57
use of queues and message flow OTMA–11
using OTMA–8
transaction profiles
in capacity planning AS–232
obtaining base profiles AS–175
significant elements AS–174
transaction reports
See Statistical-Analysis utility
transaction retry, Fast Path
description DGR–356
processing flow DGR–356
transaction retry, Fast Path (continued)
  system programmer response DGR–356
Transaction Server, CICS APCICS–5
transaction statistics in MSC URS–383, URS–437
transaction sync point relationships ATM–319, ATM–560
transaction timings, Fast Path ADB–334
Transaction Trace
  introduction to RPG–18
  software requirements RPG–27
transaction types
  commands ATM–488
  definitions ATM–65, ATM–486
  inquiry
    definition ATM–484
    recoverable or irrecoverable ATM–486, ATM–487
ISC session, during ATM–268
message switches
  IMS ATM–487
  ISC ATM–375
  ISC examples ATM–280, ATM–283
supported by ISC, list ATM–256
test mode, in ISC ATM–269
update ATM–486
transaction-oriented BMPs
  ROLB APDB–246
transaction-oriented BMPs.
  See BMP (batch message processing) program
Transaction-Response report
  description URS–457
  example URS–457
  Statistical Analysis utility (DFSISTS0)
    reports URS–330, URS–333
Transaction-Statistics report URS–457
TRANSACTION/STEP keyword
/DISPLAY command
  ACTIVE CR–207
transactions
  and correlator token OTMA–83
  assignment OG–109
  changing online OG–121
  commit-then-send OTMA–16, OTMA–17
  conversational JGR–21
  effect of commands on OG–107
  entering OG–339
  Fast Path OTMA–45
  flow for standard OTMA–17
  grouping OTMA–4
  IMS conversational OTMA–45
  IMS, using a nonsynchronized Tpipe OTMA–29
  IMS, using a synchronized Tpipe OTMA–29
  priorities OG–109
  recoverable OTMA–28
  requeueing suspended ATM–114
  resetting after ten U3303 abends AS–67
  send-then-commit OTMA–16, OTMA–19
  stopped due to 10 U3303 abends AS–65
  unrecoverable OTMA–28
translating, EXEC DLI program APCICS–29
translation, character (continued)
  for input messages
    specifying URDBTM–471
    using XX’3F’ APTM–199
  for output messages
    device control characters APTM–203
    GRAPHIC= operand (SEG statement) URDBTM–446
    SUB= operand (DEV statement) APTM–199
translator
  COBOL II APCICS–29
  MVS & VM APCICS–29
  options required for EXEC DLI APCICS–29
  version, DIB (DL/I interface block) APCICS–7
transmission chains APTM–227
transparency option ATM–83
transport manager
  RSR OG–267
  terminating OG–277
transport manager commands CR–735
transport manager subsystem
  installing ISDT–311
  VTAM definition ISDT–311
transport manager subsystem (TMS) AS–319
TRAP keyword
/TRACE command CR–662
  definition CR–71
TRCLEV
  BPE trace table statements BPE–6
  BPE trace table types BPE–6
  parameters BPE–4
  PROCLIB members BPE–4
  RM trace table types BPE–9
TREATMNT segment APCICS–3, APDB–21
TRGTZONE (Target Zone) IIV–16
TRKAUTOARCH keyword
  definition CR–71
TRN= parameter
  overriding with ERESTART COLDSYS command
    CR–349
  overriding with NRESTART COLDSYS command
    CR–428
TRS keyword
/DISPLAY MODIFY command CR–229
  definition CR–72
truncation
  literal fields URDBTM–449
  of input messages APTM–184
  of output fields APTM–203
TSLDS (tracking subsystem log data set)
  adding information to RECON DBRC–283
  CHANGE.PRILOG (for TSLDS) DBRC–137
  CHANGE.SECCLOG (for TSLDS) DBRC–155
  changing information DBRC–137
  NOTIFY.PRILOG (for TSLDS) DBRC–284
TSO
  starting CSLULXCB program CSL–215
TSO application programs APDG–40
TSO browsing, IMS support of IIV–58
TSO SPOC CSL–31, CSL–88
TSO SPOC

See also SPOC (single point of control)
command example CR–15
entering CR–11
format CR–10
interface CR–11
screen example CR–11

TSO SPOC application
enhancements
overview RPG–221
introduction to RPG–18

TSO, running on alternate IMS AS–251, AS–287

TSO/E REXX

See REXX, IMS adapter
tuning
as an iterative process AS–192
assessing I/O contention AS–220
buffers ATM–233
data sharing AS–371
defining a strategy AS–211
detecting processor resource problems AS–213

DLISAS AS–79
examining paging rates AS–197
implementation plan AS–228
MSC environment ATM–213
MSC tuning and monitoring ATM–233
report OG–97
the IMS system AS–221
tuning a database
description of ADB–337
Fast Path ADB–333
introduction ADB–5
tuning considerations
control program address spaces ISDT–7
two phase commit process CG–503
two stage randomizer, changing root addressable space
ADB–419
two-phase commit
overview OG–40
single-phase OG–42
UOR OG–42
two-phase commit process
UOR APDG–109
two-phase commit process, definition ATM–399
two-phase commit protocol APDG–109

TXTU parameter APDG–181
type 1 (DFSAOE0)
See AO exit routine or AO application CG–241

Type 1 Automated Operator Exit Routine (DFSAOE0)
IMS callable services CG–242
IMS environments CG–242
including the routine CG–242
link-editing CG–242
naming convention CG–242
sample routine location CG–242
type 18 log record APDG–61

Type 2 Automated Operator Exit Routine (DFSAOE00)
IMS callable services CG–136
IMS environments CG–136
including the routine CG–136
link-editing CG–136

Type 2 Automated Operator Exit Routine (DFSAOE00) (continued)
naming convention CG–136
sample routine location CG–136

Type 2 SVC IIV–10
Type 4 SVC IIV–10

TYPE keyword

/DISPLAY command
ACTIVE CR–206
/DISPLAY DATABASE command CR–216
definition CR–72

TYPE macro

/RPG–221

/TYPE macro

description ISDT–186
MFS ISDT–504
parameters ISDT–187
parameters
BACKUP= ISDT–187
EDIT= ISDT–187
OPTIONS= ISDT–187
UNITYPE= ISDT–188
syntax diagram ISDT–186

TYPE macro statement, BACKUP keyword AS–303

TYPE parameter ADB–220
type-1 AOI OG–194
type-2 AOI OG–196
type-of-failure keyword DGR–19

TYPE= operand
DIV statement
specifying URDBTM–474

TYPE= operand (DEV statement), specifying
APTM–256, URDBTM–460

TYPE= operand (DIV statement)
specifying APTM–294

TYPE= operand (MSG statement), specifying
URDBTM–442

TYPE= parameter
alternate PCB statement URS–116
DATASET URS–173
DEDB online utilities URDBTM–535
DFSDCMON URS–173
DFSMDA URS–172
DL/I PCB statement URS–119
FIELD statement URS–80
FINAL URS–177
FPDEDB URS–172
GSAM PCB statement URS–128
INITIAL URS–172
OLDS URS–175
RECON URS–174
SEGm statement URS–58
SLDS URS–175
tp URS–116

TYPEFP parameter commands
CHANGE.DB DBRC–114
INIT.DB DBRC–230
LIST.DB DBRC–251

TYPEIMS parameter commands
CHANGE.DB DBRC–114
INIT.DB DBRC–230
LIST.DB DBRC–251
types
data, mapped to COBOL JGR–88
supported JGR–86
types of AOI, comparison OG–200

U
(Comment) statement APDB–326, APTM–396
U Command Code APDB–37
U3303 abend
stopping transactions and PSBs after ten U3303
abends AS–65
U3303, abend
resetting stopped PSBs AS–67
resetting stopped transactions AS–67
UCF (utility control facility)
described ADB–350
restartable initial database load program ADB–321
running restartable load program under ADB–322
UCF (Utility Control Facility) with data sharing DBRC–38
UDATA keyword
definition CR–72
OPNDST command CR–440
UDATA parameter commands
CHANGE.UIC DBRC–163
NOTIFY.UIC DBRC–305
UDS keyword
COMPT command CR–147
definition CR–72
RCOMPT command CR–511
UEHB (User Exit Header Block)
contents CG–261
description CG–261
flags CG–261
UEHB definition/mapping macro DGR–61
UHASH definition/mapping macro DGR–61
UIB (user interface block)
defining, in program APDB–98
field names APDB–100
PCB address list, accessing APDB–98
return codes, accessing APDB–98
return codes, list APDB–297
UIBDLTR
introduction APDB–99
return codes, checking APDB–297
UIBFCTR
introduction APDB–99
return codes, checking APDB–297
UIBCPCB
introduction APDB–99
return codes, checking APDB–297
UIC, NOTIFY.UIC
updating RECON DBRC–15
UM (undefined record format) IIV–58
Unaccessed ETO User Control Blocks ATM–180
UNAUTH parameter
CHANGE.DB command DBRC–114
restrictions DBRC–109
using DBRC–109
UNAVAIL parameter commands
CHANGE.ADS DBRC–102
CHANGE.PRILOG (for OLDS) DBRC–131
UNAVAIL parameter commands (continued)
CHANGE.SECLOG (for OLDS) DBRC–150
INIT.ADS DBRC–224
unavailability of data APDG–44, APDG–63
UNBIND command, stopping session initiation ATM–310
unconditional bracket termination, IMS error handling
ATM–488, ATM–490
unconditionally setting a backout point APCICS–79
undefined record format.
See UM (undefined record format)
undefined-length records APDB–215
underline, on fields URDBTM–501
unique identifier, data APDG–14
unique sequence fields
HISAM (Hierarchical Indexed Sequential Access
Method) ADB–64
introduction ADB–16
unit of recover,
See UOR
unit of recovery
definition ATM–400
in-doubt, definition ATM–400
in-flight, definition ATM–400
unit of work APDG–38
unit of work, definition CQS–4
unit of work, ending a logical APCICS–69
UNIT parameter commands
CHANGE.CA DBRC–106
CHANGE.IC DBRC–126
CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–136
CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–140
CHANGE.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–154
CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–159
GENJCL.CA DBRC–187
GENJCL.IC DBRC–198
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–205
INIT.CA DBRC–225
INIT.IC DBRC–238
NOTIFY.CA DBRC–272
NOTIFY.IC DBRC–274
NOTIFY.PRILOG DBRC–287
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–282
NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–292
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–298
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–302
unit test APDG–141, APDG–163
UNIT= keyword
DFSMDA TYPE=DFSCMON statement URS–174
UNIT2 parameter commands
CHANGE.IC DBRC–126
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–205
INIT.IC DBRC–238
NOTIFY.IC DBRC–274
NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–292
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–298
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–302
units of work (UOW) ADB–115
UNITYPE keyword
/TRACE command CR–662
definition CR–72
UNITYPE keyword on TYPE macro ATM–50
UNIX pipes OTMA–9

Index 319
UNLOAD parameter
MSDB Dump Recovery utility URDBTM–266
unload utility (DFSURGU0) ADB–343
unload utility (DFSURUL0) ADB–342
UNLOADCP parameter
MSDB Dump Recovery utility URDBTM–266
UNLOCK command
DATABASE keyword CR–670
description CR–669
entered from AOI application programs CR–670
entered from master terminal CR–670
entered from system console CR–670
environments CR–669
examples CR–671
LTERM keyword CR–670
NODE keyword CR–670
password CR–16
PROGRAM keyword CR–670
PTERM keyword CR–670
syntax diagram CR–669
SYSTEM keyword
definition CR–670
display screen format CR–672
TRANSACTION keyword CR–671
UNLOCK SYSTEM command
ensuring database integrity AS–260
process during takeover AS–274, AS–292
UNPLAN keyword
definition CR–72
unprotected screen option ATM–84
unprotecting the screen
specifying parameter on DLFD statement
URDBTM–496
UNPROTECT option APTM–241
unqualified call
overview APDB–19
unqualified calls, definition of APDB–24
unqualified POS call
I/O returned area
key words APDB–139
map of APDB–139
keywords APDB–139
unqualified SSA
segment name field APDB–24
structure with command code APDB–27
usage with command codes APDB–27
unrecoverable transactions OTMA–28
unscheduled reassignments, MSC ATM–228
unsolicited output request CSL–79
UNSTACK statement (language utility) APTM–356,
URDBTM–513
UOR (unit of recovery) APDG–109
UOR (unit of recovery)
definition OG–42
UOR (unit of recovery) parameter commands
CHANGE.BKOUT DBRC–103
NOTIFY.BKOUT DBRC–269
UOR keyword
CHANGE command CR–130
definition CR–72
UOR keyword (continued)
DISPLAY command
description CR–271
examples CR–339
UORTIME parameter CHANGE.BKOUT command
DBRC–103
UOW (unit of work) ADB–115, ADB–266
UOW boundary, processing DEDB APDB–239
UOW locking ADB–278
UOW structural definition ADB–420
UOW= parameter
AREA statement URS–45
UPAD codes DGR–244
update access AS–359
update access, specify with PROCOPT operand
APDG–86
update capability
transferring OG–215
UPDATE command
environments CR–676
examples CR–685
format CR–675
LE keyword
description CR–677
TRAN keyword
description CR–679
UPDATE keyword JGR–81
UPDATE keyword
eXample JGR–81
UPDATE TRACETABLE command BPE–28, CR–759
UPDATE TRACETABLE command
BPE-defined trace table types BPE–28, CR–760
CQS-defined trace table types BPE–29, CR–760
OM-defined trace table types BPE–29, CR–761
RM-defined trace table types BPE–29, CR–761
SCI-defined trace table types BPE–29, CR–761
updating
segments in an MSDB, DEDB or VSO DEDB
APDB–225
updating control blocks in the alternate IMS AS–269
updating DB2 data CG–57
updating resources CSL–138
updating system definition
choosing a type AS–46
for online change AS–230
with multiple macro changes AS–227
uppercase, using Basic Edit APTM–20
usage
ACCEPT command APCICS–69
CHKP (Checkpoint) command APCICS–70
DEQ (Dequeue) command APCICS–71
DLET (Delete) command APCICS–36
GN (Get Next) command APCICS–40
GNP (Get Next in Parent) command APCICS–46
GU (Get Unique) command APCICS–51
ISRT (Insert) command APCICS–57
LOAD command APCICS–72
LOG command APCICS–73
POS command APCICS–60
QUERY command APCICS–73
REFRESH command APCICS–74
usage (continued)
- REPL (Replace) command APCICS–62
- RETRIEVE command APCICS–65
- ROLB command APCICS–75
- ROLL command APCICS–76
- ROLS command APCICS–77
- SCHD (Schedule) command APCICS–67
- SETS command APCICS–79
- SETU command APCICS–80
- STAT command APCICS–81
- SYMCHKP (Symbolic Checkpoint) command APCICS–82
- TERM (Terminate) command APCICS–67
- XRST (Extended Restart) command APCICS–84

usage scenarios
- online change OG–132
- use chain ADB–245
- use of RAPs in a HIDAM or PHIDAM database ADB–98

USEAREA keyword
- /RECOVER command
  - ADD CR–519

USEDBDS keyword
- definition CR–72
- RECOVER command
  - ADD keyword CR–519

USEDBDS parameter GENJCL.RECOV command DBRC–215

USEIC parameter GENJCL.RECOV command DBRC–215

user
- access problems OG–178
- as a TM resource ATM–131
  - dynamic CR–72
  - IMSplex, in an
    - name uniqueness ATM–131
    - RM definition ATM–132
- ISC dynamic CR–72
- ISC static CR–72
- ISC subpool CR–72
- ISC,LTERM assignment OG–109
- non-ISC static CR–73
- sysplex, in a
  - recovery status ATM–43

USER ATM–268

user abend 119ABEND OTMA–20

user authorization processing CG–501

user control block
  - preventing deletion of CR–66, CR–107

user data area
  - creating CG–309
  - uses for CG–310

user data field in pointer segment ADB–194

user descriptor ATM–141, ATM–165

user exit header block
  See UEHB

user exit list PROCLIB member (continued)
- sample RM BPE–18
- sample SCI BPE–19

user exit routine CG–35

user exit routine processing URDBTM–339

user exit routines
- Operations Manager
  - BPE Statistics CSL–52
  - client connection CSL–40
  - input CSL–43
  - introduction CSL–40
  - output CSL–45
  - security CSL–49

user exits
- See CQS user-supplied exit routines

user ID
- as a TM resource ATM–132
  - IMSplex, in an
    - name uniqueness ATM–132
    - recovery status ATM–44

User ID caching scheme OTMA–48

user interface block
  See UIB (user interface block)

USER keyword
- /DISPLAY command
  - AUTOLOGON CR–273
  - EMHQ CR–273
  - QCNT CR–273
  - RECOVERY CR–273

ASSIGN command CR–107
- BROADCAST command CR–115
  - CHANGE command CR–130
  - CLSDST command CR–144
  - COMPT command CR–147
  - definition CR–72
  - DEQUEUE command CR–185
  - DISPLAY command
    - description CR–272
    - examples CR–340
  - END command CR–344
  - ERESTART command CR–353
  - EXCLUSIVE command CR–358
  - EXIT command CR–360
  - generic parameters CR–18
  - NODE keyword combinations CR–789

NRESTART command CR–431, CR–432
  - OPNDST command CR–440
  - QUIESCE command CR–507
  - RSTART command CR–547
  - START command CR–591
  - STOP command CR–615

Index 321
USER keyword (continued)

TEST command CR–644
USER macro statement AS–72
user message table (DFSCMTU0)
  example
    routine CG–229
User Message Table (DFSCMTU0)
  coding CG–228
  description CG–227
  example
    table CG–228
    formatting CG–228
    IMS callable services CG–227
    naming CG–227
    naming convention CG–227
    purpose and use CG–227
    rules for defining CG–228
user modifications to IVP IIV–90
User Queue Space Notification Exit routine AS–85
user requirements, analyzing APDG–9
user workstation
  See also workstation, analyzing APDG–9
user workstation.
  See also workstation, user
  bracket protocol ATM–328
user workstation.
  See also workstation, user
  API (application program interface)
    CICS asynchronous ATM–555
    CICS synchronous ATM–555
user-data section of message prefix OTMA–86
user-managed rebuild CQS–44
user-supplied exit routines
  abends in BPE–62
  BPE Statistics BPE–45
  BPEUXCSV macro BPE–62
  callable services BPE–62
  calling subsequent exit routines BPE–60
  dynamic work areas BPE–60
  environment BPE–61
  execution environment BPE–57
  general information BPE–57
  initialization sample BPE–77
  Initialization-Termination BPE–43
  interfaces and services BPE–57
  performance considerations BPE–61
  processing sample BPE–78
  recommendations BPE–43, BPE–57, BPE–62
  reentrant BPE–61
  refreshing BPE–37, CR–769
  registers BPE–61
  specifying the owner’s type BPE–15
  standard parameter list BPE–58
  static work areas BPE–59
  termination sample BPE–79
  work areas BPE–59
user-supplied exit routines.
  See CQS user-supplied exit routines
user, security when no signon AS–134
USERD= keyword CG–408
USEREXIT commands BPE–31, CR–763
userid indicator, field in I/O PCB APDB–91, APTM–50
userid, field in I/O PCB APDB–90, APTM–48
USERKEYS parameter commands
  GENJCL_ARCHIVE DBRC–184
  GENJCL_CA DBRC–187
  GENJCL_CLOSE DBRC–191
  GENJCL_IC DBRC–198
  GENJCL_OIC DBRC–205
  GENJCL_RECEIVE DBRC–209
  GENJCL_RECOV DBRC–215
  GENJCL_USER DBRC–220
usermods IIV–77
userpw keyword
  SIGN command CR–565
USERRCOV parameter, CHANGE.DB DBRC–112
USERVAR ATM–300
USERVAR
  initializing OG–237
  keyword AS–308
  table
    definition AS–261
    example of AS–261
    IMS changing entry AS–274
    procedures for initializing AS–262
    variable definition AS–261
using DB Groups DBRC–17
using DBRC, considerations for DBRC–10
USR records, GTF (Generalized Trace Facility)
  DBRC–147
USRHASH= ISDT–81
USRHASH=, with DEDB Resource Name Hash routine
  CG–79
USRX (user exit routine trace table) BPE–7
USSTAB option defined in VTAM ATM–61
USTOPPED condition
  resetting a USTOPPED transaction AS–67
USTOPPED state ATM–66
utilities
  See also MSDB-to-DEDB Conversion utility, Fast Path (DBFUCDB0)
  ACB maintenance ADB–299
  ACBGEN URS–155
  Batch Backout APDG–32
  Batch Backout utility (DFSBBO00) URDBTM–249
  Database Change Accumulation utility (DFSUCUM0)
    URDBTM–215
  Database Image Copy 2 enhancements RPG–5
  Database Image Copy 2 utility (DFSUDMT0)
    URDBTM–189
  Database Image Copy utility (DFSUDMP0)
    URDBTM–179
  Database Prefix Resolution utility (DFSURG10)
    ADB–346, URDBTM–121
  Database Prefix Resolution utility (DFSURG10)
    ADB–346, URDBTM–121
  Database Prefix Update utility (DFSURGP0)
    ADB–347, URDBTM–129
  Database Prereorganization utility (DFSURPR0)
    ADB–345, URDBTM–105
  Database Recovery utility (DFSURDB0)
    URDBTM–235
utilities (continued)

Database Scan utility (DFSURGS0) ADB–345, URDBTM–113
Database Surveyor utility (DFSPRSUR) ADB–350
Database Surveyor utility (DFSPRSUR) URDBTM–73
Database Utilities in an RSR Environment URDBTM–537
Database-Monitor Report utility (DFSUTR30) URDBTM–293
DBGEN ADB–287, URS–3
DBGEN consists of URS–4
databases used with URS–4
DBFDBMA0 ADB–126, URDBTM–145
DBFUHDR0 ADB–266
DBRC (DFSURD0) DBRC–38
DEDB Area Data Set Compare utility (DBFUMMH0) URDBTM–275
DEDB Area Data Set Create utility (DBFUMRI0) URDBTM–271
DEDB Initialization utility (DBFUMIN0) URDBTM–141
DEDB Partial Database Reorganization utility (DBFUMRL0) URDBTM–163
DEDB Partial Database Reorganization utility (DBFUMDL0) URDBTM–163
DEDB Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSA10) URDBTM–529
DFSER0 ADB–347, URDBTM–129
DFSPRCT1 ADB–351, URDBTM–87
DFSPRSUR ADB–350, URDBTM–73
DFSUFC00 ADB–350, URDBTM–145
DFSURG0 ADB–347, URDBTM–129
DFSURG0 ADB–345, URDBTM–113
DFSURG0 ADB–343, URDBTM–43
DFSURG0 ADB–345, URDBTM–105
DFSURR0 ADB–343, URDBTM–35
DFSURR0 ADB–342, URDBTM–21
Dynamic Allocation URS–167
Dynamic SVC utility (DFSUMC0) URS–209
Fast Path Log Analysis utility (DFBUC0) URS–291
File Select and Formatting Print program APDG–42
File Select and Formatting Print utility (DFSA10) URS–261
for unload and reloading secondary indexes ADB–348
Global Online Change utility (DFSOU0) URS–204
HD Reorganization Reload utility (DFSURG0) URDBTM–57
HD Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURG0) URDBTM–43
High-Speed DEDB Direct Reorganization (DFBUD0) ADB–266
High-Speed DEDB Direct Reorganization utility (DFBUD10) URDBTM–169
HISAM Reorganization Load utility (DFSURG0) URDBTM–35
HISAM Reorganization Utility (DFSURG0) URDBTM–21
HISAM Reorganization Unload utility (DFSURG0) URDBTM–35
IMS Monitor Report Print utility (DFSUTR20) URS–257
Interpreting DFSSTAT Reports URS–439
Interpreting DB-Monitor Reports URDBTM–295
Interpreting IMS Monitor Reports URS–347
Interpreting IMS Monitor Reports for DBCTL URS–385
Interpreting IMS Monitor Reports for DCCTL URS–407
Interpreting Statistical Analysis and Log-Transaction Reports URS–455
Log Archive utility (DFSARC0) URS–215
Log Merge utility (DFSMTM0) URS–229
Log Recovery utility (DFSLTR0) URS–233
Log Transaction Analysis utility (DFSILT0) URS–319
MFS Device Characteristics Table Utility (DFSUMC0) URDBTM–403
MFS Language Utility (DFSUMA0) URDBTM–383
MFS Service Utility (DFSUTSA0) URDBTM–411
MSDB Dump Recovery utility (DBFDBDR0) URDBTM–263
MSDB Maintenance ADB–126
MSDB Maintenance utility (DBFDBMA0) URDBTM–145
MSDB-to-DEDB Conversion utility (DBFUC0) URDBTM–281
Multiple Systems Verification Utility (DFSUMSV0) URDBTM–425
Offline Dump Formatter utility (DFSOF0) URS–313
Online Change Copy utility (DFSUC0) URS–197
Online Database Image Copy utility (DFSUMC0) URDBTM–205
Partial Database Reorganization ADB–351
Partial Database Reorganization utility (DFSPRCT1 URDBTM–87
Program-Isolation-Trace Report utility (DFSPIRP0) URDBTM–319
PSGND ADB–295, URS–111
Recovery Control (DSPRUX0) DBRC–6 reorganization ADB–338
SB Test utility (DFSBBH0) URDBTM–323
Security Maintenance utility (DFSISP0) URS–197
Spool SYSOUT Print Utility (DFSUPR0) URDBTM–517
Statistical Analysis utility (DFSUMTS0) URS–325
Time-Controlled Operations Verification Utility (DFSTVER0) URDBTM–521
UCF ADB–350
utility control facility (DFSUMC0) URDBTM–333
VSAM AMS DBRC–60, DBRC–61
utility

Database Change Accumulation OG–52
execution, recording OG–307
Global Online Change OG–125
recovery OG–104
utility control facility
See UCF (utility control facility)

Utility Control Facility (DFSUCF00)

checkpoint/restart capabilities URDBTM–338
database zaps capability URDBTM–341
database zaps performed URDBTM–371
description URDBTM–333
error-point abends URDBTM–341
easamples, JCL URDBTM–379
execution of database utilities URDBTM–335
FUNCTION= keyword
control statement requirements URDBTM–347
DR for HD Reorganization Reload utility
URDBTM–349
DU for HD Reorganization Unload utility
URDBTM–350
IL for initial load program URDBTM–354
IM for Image Copy utility URDBTM–355
PR for Prefix Resolution utility URDBTM–357
PU for Prefix Update utility URDBTM–358
RR for Secondary Index Reload URDBTM–360
RU for Secondary Index Unload URDBTM–361
SN for Database Scan utility URDBTM–364
SR for HISAM Reorganization Reload utility
URDBTM–366
SU for HISAM Reorganization Unload utility
URDBTM–368
SX for HISAM Reorganization Unload and Reload combined (DX) URDBTM–370
ZB for database zaps URDBTM–372
ZM for module zaps URDBTM–374
initial load application program considerations
checkpoint module (DFSUCP90), UCF
URDBTM–338
description URDBTM–336
DL/I status codes associated URDBTM–337
initial load exit routine URDBTM–337
JCL requirements
DD statements URDBTM–344
EXEC statement URDBTM–343
keywords specified on utility control statements
minimum requirements URDBTM–378
module zap capability URDBTM–341
restrictions URDBTM–333
return codes URDBTM–378
service aids URDBTM–341
termination/error processing URDBTM–338
types of processing
normal URDBTM–335
restart URDBTM–339
termination/error URDBTM–338
user exit routine processing URDBTM–339
utility control statement
Database Scan (SN) URDBTM–364
database zaps (ZB) URDBTM–372
FUNCTION=OP URDBTM–348
HD Reorganization Reload (DR) URDBTM–349
HD Reorganization Unload (DU) URDBTM–350
HD Reorganization Unload and Reload combined (DX) URDBTM–352

Utility Control Facility (DFSUCF00) (continued)
utility control statement (continued)
HISAM Reorganization Reload (SR)
URDBTM–366
HISAM Reorganization Unload (SU)
URDBTM–368
HISAM Reorganization Unload and Reload combined (SX) URDBTM–370
Image Copy (IM) URDBTM–355
initial load (IL) URDBTM–354
module zaps (ZM) URDBTM–374
Prefix Resolution (PR) URDBTM–357
Prefix Update (PU) URDBTM–358
Secondary Index Reload (RR) URDBTM–360
Secondary Index Unload (RU) URDBTM–361
user’s initial load (IL) URDBTM–354
WTOR (write-to-operator-with-reply) function
URDBTM–342
Utility Control Facility (UCF) DBRC–38
utility control statement
INIT.CA DBRC–34
INIT.CAGRP DBRC–34
utility control statements
See compilation statements
UXDT definition/mapping macro DGR–61
UXPL_EXITPLP
Client Connections exit CQS–54
Init-Term exit CQS–53
Queue Overflow exit CQS–56
Structure Statistics exit CQS–58
UXRB control block DGR–61
UXRB definition/mapping macro DGR–61

V

V command code APDB–38
V keyword
DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–266
VSSEGRBA APDB–139
valid log subset, in data sharing to compress the size
DBRC–33
VALID parameter commands
CHANGE.CA DBRC–105
CHANGE.IC DBRC–126
VALID2 parameter CHANGE.IC command DBRC–126
VALUE= keyword
control statements
UCF FUNCTION=ZB URDBTM–373
UCF FUNCTION=ZM URDBTM–376
DFSERA10 OPTION control statement URS–266
values, isolating duplicate APDG–19
VARCHAR data type JGR–86
variable gathering panel
DOC action panel IIV–108
ENT mode panel IIV–107
LST mode panel IIV–106
phase complete verification panel IIV–109
variable gathering—return to phase selection panel IIV–110
variable intersection data (VID) ADB–163
variable length output data stream APTM–228
variable names, mandatory APCICS–6
variable-gathering phase
action commands
  Chg II–106
  Doc II–106
  eNt II–106
  Lst II–106
  Nxt II–106
  Prv II–106
  Rfr II–106
  verbs II–105
description II–104
END II–109
ENT mode II–107
indicator symbols II–107
LST Mode II–106
modes
  ENT II–105, II–107
  LST II–105, II–106
return to phase selection II–110
start-up copying II–103
switching modes II–107
variable-length records APDB–215
variable-length segment
  HDAM format DGR–107
  HIDAM format DGR–107
  HISAM format DGR–107
  PHDAM format DGR–107
  PHIDAM format DGR–107
variable-length segments
  definition ADB–14
  description of ADB–208
  introduction ADB–17
  procedure for adding ADB–411
  replace operations ADB–209
  specifying in DBD ADB–208
  specifying minimum size ADB–212
  storage ADB–208
  use with secondary indexes ADB–202
  uses ADB–209
  using ADB–207
  what application programmers need to know ADB–210
VAUT, online execution parameter AS–99
VBASF, formatted VSAM subpool statistics APDG–149
VBASS, formatted summary of VSAM subpool statistics APDG–151
VBASU, unformatted VSAM subpool statistics APDG–150
VBESF, formatted VSAM subpool statistics APDG–157
VBESS, formatted summary of VSAM subpool statistics APDG–159
VBESU, unformatted VSAM subpool statistics APDG–158
vector table format
  DFSPRE60 CG–222
  DFSPRE70 CG–226
verification
  IMS terminal support ATM–24
  remote destinations ATM–209
  transaction definitions across systems ATM–224
verification process
  See Multiple Systems Verification utility (DFSUMSV0)
  VERIFY= keyword
  control statements
    UCF FUNCTION=ZB URDBTM–373
    UCF FUNCTION=ZM URDBTM–375
  VERSID= operand (DEV statement), specifying URDBTM–471
version identification
  description APTM–233
  for DPM formats APTM–248
  for SLU P APTM–182
  specifying URDBTM–471
version information
  Version 6 changes RPG–247
  Version 7 changes RPG–227
VERSION parameter
  DBD statement URS–29
vertical line, on fields URDBTM–501
vertical partitioning ATM–195
VGRS keyword
  description CR–73
  START command CR–592
  STOP command CR–615
  VID (variable intersection data) ADB–163
  VID keyword
    COMPT command CR–147
    definition CR–74
  view of data, a program's APDG–4
  view, local APDG–22
  VIEW=MSDB operand
    PSBGEN operand URS–127
  VIEWLOC= operand (PD statement), specifying URDBTM–507
  VIEWPORT= operand (PD statement), specifying URDBTM–506
  violation control AS–159
virtual fetch
  DFSVFLqq ISDT–367
virtual logical child ADB–153, APDB–25
virtual storage
  obtaining BPE–67
  releasing BPE–69
virtual storage option
  introduction ADB–132
virtual storage option data entry database (VSO DEDB)
  See VSO DEDB (virtual storage option data entry database), processing
virtual storage used during tracking AS–269
Virtual Telecommunications Access Method
  See VTAM (Virtual Telecommunications Access Method)
Virtual Telecommunications Access Method.
  See VTAM (Virtual Telecommunications Access Method)
VisualAge Generator ADB–303
VisualGen APDG–16
VLVB records ATM–377
VOLLIST parameter commands
  CHANGE.CA DBRC–106

Index 325
VOLLIST parameter commands (continued)
CHANGE.IC DBRC–126
CHANGE.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–136
CHANGE.PRILOG (for SLDS) DBRC–140
CHANGE.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–154
CHANGE.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–159
GENJCL.CA DBRC–188
GENJCL.IC DBRC–199
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–206
INIT.CA DBRC–225
INIT.IC DBRC–238
NOTIFY.CA DBRC–271
NOTIFY.IC DBRC–275
NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–292
VOLLIST2 parameter commands
CHANGE.IC DBRC–127
GENJCL.IC DBRC–199
GENJCL.OIC DBRC–206
INIT.IC DBRC–238
NOTIFY.IC DBRC–275
NOTIFY.REORG DBRC–292
VOLNUM parameter GENJCL.CA command DBRC–188
VOLSER parameter commands
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for RLDS) DBRC–282
NOTIFY.PRILOG (for SLDS and TSLDS) DBRC–287
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for RLDS) DBRC–298
NOTIFY.SECLOG (for SLDS) DBRC–302
VOLUME keyword
/TRACE command CR–657, CR–661
definition CR–74
VS COBOL II APCICS–19
VS COBOL II and Language Environment APDB–113
VS Pascal subroutines, preloading AS–207
VSAM
buffer pools, defining ISDT–369, ISDT–411
data set
maximum size ADB–79
performance options, defining ISDT–374
subpools, defining ISDT–371, ISDT–413
VSAM (virtual storage access method)
UCF FUNCTION=SR control statement
URDBTM–367
VSAM (Virtual Storage Access Method)
access to GSAM databases ADB–76
adjusting buffers ADB–371
adjusting options ADB–375, ADB–376
and Hiperspace buffering ADB–246
buffer pool
/DISPLAY POOL command CR–243
buffer pools AS–204
changing access methods ADB–377
changing space allocation ADB–376
CIDF (control interval definition field) ADB–308
data sets IV–55
enhanced buffer pool
/DISPLAY POOL command CR–244
ESDS in HD databases ADB–90
FMTIMS statement example DGR–136
HISAM databases ADB–65
index ADB–260
VSAM (Virtual Storage Access Method) (continued)
local shared resource pools
assigning data sets ADB–258
defining ADB–258
index and data subpools ADB–258
subpools of same size ADB–246
LRECL format DGR–106
options ADB–256, ADB–261
passwords ADB–33
PSINDEX DGR–106
RDF (record definition field) ADB–308
secondary index DGR–106
storage of secondary indexes ADB–190
structure
calculating the size of AS–389
explained AS–376
specifying AS–385
track space used ADB–244
VSAM (Virtual Storage Access Method) create mode
DBRC–45
VSAM AMS (access method services)
offline reorganization DBRC–60
restoring RECONs DBRC–61
VSAM Buffer Pool Report
//DFSSTAT URS–439
description URS–440
IMS Monitor (DB/DC) URS–369
IMS Monitor (DBCTL) URS–400
VSAM buffer subpool, retrieving
enhanced subpool statistics APDG–157
statistics APDG–149, APDG–157
VSAM-Buffer-Pool report
description URBDBTM–295
fields in the report URBDBTM–295
using the report URBDBTM–301
VSAM-Statistics report
description URBDBTM–302
fields in the report URBDBTM–302
VSAM, STAT call APDB–176
VSAMFIX parameter ADB–248, ADB–258
VSAMPLS parameter ADB–258
VSI definition/mapping macro DGR–61
VSO DEDB (virtual storage option data entry database)
checkpoint processing ADB–144
data sharing ADB–141
defining a VSO Cache Structure Name ADB–135
defining a VSO DEDB area ADB–133
emergency restart ADB–144
I/O error processing ADB–143
I/O error processing
read errors ADB–143
write errors ADB–143
input processing ADB–142
locking ADB–140
options across restart ADB–144
output processing ADB–142
PRELOAD option ADB–142
resource control ADB–140
using data spaces ADB–139
with XRF ADB–144
VSO DEDB (virtual storage option data entry database), processing APDB–225
VSO DEDB areas
  block-level sharing of ADB–138
VSO DEDB areas, block-level sharing of AS–378
VSO parameter
  CHANGE.DBDS DBRC–122, DBRC–233
VSO, shared enhancements
  overview RPG–191
VSPEC, online execution parameter AS–94
VT= operand (DEV statement)
  specifying URDBTM–470
  use APTM–221
VTAB= operand (DEV statement)
  specifying URDBTM–470
  use APTM–222
VTAM
  COMM macro, and ISDT–68, ISDT–70, ISDT–74
  transport manager system definition ISDT–311
VTAM (Virtual Telecommunications Access Method)
  ACB
    close CR–255
    ACBNAME parameter ATM–219
    accepting logons from CR–587
    APPL statement ATM–219
    attached terminals ATM–24
    attached terminals
      LOOPTEST LINE command CR–405
    BB indicator ATM–275, ATM–341
    BID command ATM–327, ATM–447
    binary synchronous communications (BSC) ATM–24
    BIS command ATM–353
    BIS command
      LU 6.1 half sessions ATM–353
      use with CICS ATM–553
    bracket protocol ATM–441
    bracket protocol
      CD (change direction) ATM–441
      Finance Communication System ATM–441
      SLU P ATM–441
    bracket protocols ATM–270
    buffering ATM–67
    CANCEL command ATM–336, ATM–492
    CD indicator ATM–275, ATM–439
    CHASE command ATM–337
    COMM macro ATM–219
    commands and indicators ATM–264, ATM–438
    connecting to OG–83
    devices with MFS support ATM–24
    EB indicator ATM–275, ATM–342
    establishing sessions ATM–439
    establishing sessions
      Finance Communication System ATM–439
      SLU P ATM–439
    facilities ATM–264
    facilities
      commands and indicators ATM–264, ATM–437
      data transmission ATM–264
      Finance Communication System ATM–437
      IMS ATM–437, ATM–438
VTAM (Virtual Telecommunications Access Method)
  (continued)
  facilities (continued)
    ISC ATM–264
    SLU P ATM–437
    used by ISC ATM–535, ATM–556
    failure as cause of takeover AS–254, AS–271
    generation ATM–58
    generation
      IMS as host subsystem ATM–58
      LOGON MODE identifiers ATM–61
      NCP buffer pool values ATM–60
      storage requirements ATM–59
      VTAM buffer pool values ATM–59
      VTAM configurations ATM–62
      VTAM nodes ATM–59
    half-duplex protocol, ISC ATM–328
    IMS, relationship to ATM–8
    initializing backup sessions AS–260
    interface considerations, attention notice IIV–75
    IRLM naming suggestions IIV–76
    link
      RSTART command CR–546
      logical unit definitions IIV–75
      logon message processing AS–261
      macros ATM–266
    macros
      SEND ATM–266
      TERMSESS ATM–266
      master terminals, defining AS–302
      message resynchronization OG–170
      missing interrupt handler (MIH) ATM–68
      mode table entry IIV–75
      MSC linking ATM–195
      MSC links
        checkpoint shutdown CR–370
        PSTOP MSPLINK command CR–445
      NCP delay IIV–76
      network role ATM–7
      node
        close CR–255
        DELETE command CR–170
        EXCLUSIVE NODE command CR–358
        IDLE NODE command CR–371
      node as chosen name ATM–25
      operands
        BIND IIV–75
        CINIT IIV–75
        CRYPTO IIV–75
        PACING IIV–75
      output buffers ATM–59
      ownership affecting terminal switching in XRF
      complex AS–296
      pacing ATM–67
      parallel session support IIV–75
      parallel sessions ATM–219
      parameters
        COMCYCL IIV–76
        DELAY IIV–76
        LOGMODE IIV–75
        MODE IIV–75

Index 327
VTAM (Virtual Telecommunications Access Method) parameters (continued)

MODETB Ex–IV–75
performance considerations AS–208
planning considerations AS–299
RPL (request parameter list) DGR–304
RQR command ATM–438, ATM–492
SBI command ATM–353
SBI command
LU 6.1 half sessions ATM–353
use with CICS ATM–554
SDLC using VTAM ATM–219
SDT command ATM–310
SESSION parameter ATM–219
shutdown OG–137
SIGNAL command ATM–353, ATM–492
synchronous data link control (SDLC) ATM–24

terminal

starting DC trace DGR–269
stopping DC trace DGR–270
terminating a session OG–137, OG–142
Transport Manager Subsystem, definition for ATM–67
UNBIND command ATM–310
USERVAR variable AS–296
VARY command IV–75
VTAM ATM–231
VTAM I/O Timeout facility OG–108
XRF OG–255
XRF process, contribution to AS–260, AS–264
XRF requirements AS–255, AS–299

VTAM ACB keyword
/DISPLAY command
ACTIVE CR–205
VTAM application name AS–302
VTAM application name
communicating new name AS–261
defining to IMS AS–302
processing of AS–263, AS–274

VTAM commands
/LOGON APPLID AS–261
/modify AS–261
/modify USERVAR AS–274

VTAM generic resources
GRSNAME keyword CR–54

VTAM I/O facility

effects on VTAM terminals APTM–131
VTAM support OTMA–3

VTAM terminal

activating a "timeout" APTM–131
VTAM terminals, encryption AS–149
VTAMPOOL keyword
ASSIGN command CR–108
definition CR–74
VTAMPOOL macro ISDT–188
VTAMPOOL macro statement AS–45
warm starting structures CQS–32
WebSphere Application Server for z/OS JGR–i
WebSphere Application Server for z/OS applications JGR–35
applications
  IVP JGR–39
  samples JGR–42
classpath, setting JGR–45
configuring
  access to IMS JGR–36
  custom service, installing JGR–38
  IMS JDBC resource adapter, installing JGR–37
prerequisites JGR–36
deployment descriptor JGR–56
IVP JGR–39
IVP
  application, installing JGR–40
data source, installing JGR–39
prerequisites JGR–39
samples.tar file JGR–39
testing JGR–41
overview JGR–35
restrictions
  container-managed signon JGR–36
java.sql.Connection object JGR–36
shared connections JGR–36
running your application
  application, installing JGR–46
classpath, setting JGR–45
data source, installing JGR–45
prerequisites JGR–44
sample applications
  application, installing JGR–43
data source, installing JGR–42
prerequisites JGR–42
testing JGR–44
server.policy file JGR–38
system requirements JGR–36
tracing JGR–47
WebSphere Application Server for z/OS environment setup JGR–49
WF1DDS= keyword
  UCF FUNCTION=DR control statement
    UDDBTM–350
WFI (wait-for-input) mode AS–64
WFI parameter APDG–37
WHB definition/mapping macro DGR–61
WHERE keyword JGR–82
WHERE keyword
  fields, valid JGR–82
  operators, valid JGR–82
  SSAs, relation to JGR–82
WIDTH= operand (DEV statement)
  specifying UDDBTM–469
  use APTM–221
WINDOWOF= operand (PD statement), specifying
  UDDBTM–507
work area
  CBT pool DGR–567
  Fast Path
    locating in an IMS dump DGR–360
  work area (continued)
    locating using load list DGR–565
work areas for BPE user exit routines
  dynamic work area BPE–60
  static work area BPE–59
work areas, creating for ESAP CG–547
work qualifier, definition AS–177
work unit
  backed out ATM–302, ATM–568
  CICS ATM–568
  committed ATM–302, ATM–568
  definition ATM–302
  example ATM–303
  pending, unilateral decisions ATM–304
  status at session initiation ATM–309
workload
  effect of takeover on alternate IMS AS–287
  monitoring AS–173, AS–187
  planning for alternate IMS AS–287
workload distribution, MSC ATM–214
workload manager AS–173
workload manager
  distribution AS–173
  performance objectives AS–175
Workload Manager
  business importance AS–175
  performance objectives AS–175
workstation SPOC CSL–88
workstation, user
  API ATM–265, ATM–533
  CICS asynchronous ATM–533
  CICS synchronous ATM–533
  bracket protocol
    input messages, ISC ATM–328
    output messages, ISC ATM–331
  definition as logical unit ATM–272
  logical unit definition ATM–8
  terminology ATM–272
workstations
  See also station, user
  Finance Communication System ATM–434
  SLU P ATM–434
WPM1 keyword
  COMPT command CR–147
  definition CR–74
WPM2 keyword
  COMPT command CR–147
  definition CR–74
WPM3 keyword
  COMPT command CR–147
  definition CR–74
write errors
  recovery OG–158
write errors, DEDB VSO ADB–143
write-ahead data set.
  See WADS (write-ahead data set)
write-to-operator-with-reply (WTOR) function
  Utility Control Facility (DFSUCF00) UDDBTM–342
writing a CQS client CQS–73
writing application programs, environmental summary
APTM–7
writing exit routines CG–7
writing information to the system log APCICS–72,
APDG–160
writing trace tables DGR–5
WTL command (REXX)
description APDB–264, APTM–320
format, usage APDB–273, APTM–329
WTO command (REXX)
description APDB–264, APTM–320
format, usage APDB–273, APTM–329
WTO statement APDB–339, APTM–409
WTOR CSL–6
WTOR command (REXX)
description APDB–264, APTM–320
format, usage APDB–273, APTM–329
WTOR statement APDB–339, APTM–410
WTP command (REXX)
description APDB–264, APTM–320
format, usage APDB–273, APTM–329

X

X’18’ log record APDG–42
X’6701’ log records
log sequence field DGR–128
map DGR–278
prefix area DGR–127
subrecord and data area formats DGR–128
X’68’ log record DGR–346
X’D9’ trace entry DGR–242
XCF
basic message flow OTMA–10
XCF group name OTMA–37
XCF macros OTMA–45
XCI option CG–76
XCRB definition/mapping macro DGR–61
Xdfld statement JGR–109
XDfld statement URS–82
XDfld statement
description ADB–194, URS–82
format URS–82
H DAM database URS–82
HISAM database URS–82
in secondary indexing ADB–203
keywords URS–82
parameter description URS–83
PHDAM database URS–83
restrictions in use ADB–290
specifying sparse indexing ADB–196
XES and OS/390 services AS–378
XFMT= subparameter URS–287
XMCA definition/mapping macro DGR–61
XMCI definition/mapping macro DGR–61
XMI
creating JGR–97
metamodel JGR–101
XML output CSL–201
XML output
and OM directives CSL–91

XML output (continued)
command header CSL–209
CSLOMCMD CSL–205
CSLOMQRY CSL–206
tag descriptions CSL–207
XMLTrace
application JGR–126
enabling JGR–125
XMLTrace class JGR–124
XMLTrace.enable JGR–125
XMLTrace.ims Java library methods JGR–126
XMLTrace.libTraceLevel JGR–126
XPCB (Extended Program Communication Block)
CG–48
XPCB (Extended Program Communication Block)
Assembler example CG–53
COBOL example CG–54
PL/I example CG–55
XRC tracking
enabling OG–294
gap processing OG–295
restart considerations OG–295
resuming OG–294
routing delays OG–294
shutdown processing OG–295
stopping OG–294
unplanned remote takeover OG–296
XRF
COMM macro
APPLID parameter ISDT–70
PASSWD parameter ISDT–74
CTLUNIT macro, BACKUP parameter ISDT–78
DFSHSBxx PROCLIB member ISDT–342
system definition ISDT–41
XRF (Extended Recovery facility)
INTERVAL keyword CR–55
stopping the surveillance function CR–613
system-related status information CR–220
UNLOCK SYSTEM command
system console CR–670
XRF (Extended Recovery Facility) ATM–26, OTMA–42
XRF (Extended Recovery Facility)
active IMS AS–248
active IMS
failure AS–249
allocation of data sets IIV–60
alternate IMS AS–248
alternate system
START REGION command CR–589
application program AS–256
availability manager OG–235
backout OG–253, OG–255
benefits of AS–248
checkpoint OG–237
Class 1 terminals ATM–52
Class 2 terminals ATM–50
Class 3 terminals ATM–51
class of service ATM–51
class-1 terminals OG–240
class-1 terminals
description AS–288
XRF (Extended Recovery Facility) (continued)
class-1 terminals (continued)
ownership of AS–299
specifying backup option AS–292
class-2 terminals AS–289
class-3 terminals AS–290
commands OG–241, OG–242
commands mirrored by the alternate CR–31
commands supported on the alternate CR–32
complex IIV–9

description of AS–250
initialization, at AS–267, AS–280
synchronization, during AS–268
takeover, after AS–254, AS–278
takeover, before AS–252
takeover, during AS–253, AS–272
termination, at AS–280
concepts AS–248
contribution to
DFSMS AS–260
IMS AS–257
NCP AS–260
OS/390 AS–259
VTAM AS–260

customizing individual terminals AS–302
data propagation OG–234
data set OG–240
data set
initializing OG–235
data set placement requirements IIV–60
data-sharing environment OG–234
DB/DC environment, in a AS–12
DBCTL OG–256
DBCTL capabilities AS–250
defining IMS to VTAM AS–296
defining VTAM application name to IMS AS–302
definition ATM–48
determining parameters OG–235
DFSHSBxx parameters AS–304
diagnostics OG–256
display screen
master terminal CR–4
system status CR–5
DSE AS–249
DSE (dependent service element)
initializing XRF AS–258
dumping activity after takeover AS–254, AS–278
EEQE in post-takeover phase AS–278
end users OG–252
environment IIV–99
establishing communication ATM–300
establishing communication
Finance Communication System ATM–440
ISC ATM–300
SLU P ATM–440
system takeover considerations ATM–440
establishing support AS–302
global resource serialization and AS–298
hardware requirements AS–256
HSBID parameter AS–301

XRF (Extended Recovery Facility) (continued)
HSBMBR parameter AS–301
impact on other data sets IIV–62
IMS data set placement AS–311, AS–315
IMS identifier OG–236
IMS master terminals AS–302
IMS secondary terminals AS–302
IMS system definition macro statements AS–301
IMSplex OG–234
introduction AS–247
ISC link AS–287
licensed program requirements AS–255
limitations of AS–255
LNK parameter for surveillance AS–305
local queue manager data sets ATM–98
log close and switch AS–272
LOG parameter for surveillance AS–305
log protection AS–272
logging on AS–257
maintaining OG–245
master terminals ATM–35
message format after takeover APTM–220
monitoring OG–241
MSC links AS–304
network considerations OG–252
network status OG–243
new alternative, establishing OG–256
NO parameter for surveillance AS–306
online change OG–123, OG–234
online changes OG–234
online environment IIV–89
operational requirements AS–256
operations OG–233
operations
system status, explanation OG–241
overview OG–231
phases of processing AS–266
phases of processing, cycle of AS–280
planned takeover AS–286
planning OG–232
planning for AS–281, AS–286
post-takeover OG–254
post-takeover phase AS–278
problem determination after takeover AS–254, AS–278
RDS parameter for surveillance AS–306
recommendation for DBRC AS–270
recoverable service element (RSE) AS–307
recovery modes ATM–42
replicate data sets IIV–60
requirements AS–250, AS–255
requirements
hardware AS–255
software AS–255
RSENAME= keyword AS–307
RSR and AS–327
RSR, comparison with AS–326
session recovery AS–302
shared data sets
tracking phases IIV–60
SLU P application program ATM–436
XRF (Extended Recovery Facility) (continued)
SNAPQ AS–27
software requirements AS–247
specifying IMS.PROCLIB members AS–304
starting OG–235
starting the surveillance function CR–590
startup procedures OG–236
subsystems
starting OG–236
SURV=ALL, LNK, LOG, RDS, NO AS–305
surveillance OG–246
surveillance
establishing AS–265
options AS–305
stopping AS–259
synchronization OG–237
sysplex
global online change OG–123
system data sets
updating OG–247
system definition AS–43, AS–300
system definitions OG–238
takeover AS–249, OG–248
takeover
as users see it AS–292
BTAM OG–253
causes AS–249
CICS OG–253
conditions OG–248
criteria for AS–265
executing new transactions AS–275
failure OG–252
flow OG–249
I/O prevention OG–249
I/O toleration, ending OG–250
manual control OG–251
planned OG–248
post-takeover OG–254
problem determination after AS–254, AS–278
terminal support OG–252
TSO OG–253
unplanned OG–248
takeover conditions AS–308
takeover considerations ATM–440
takeover considerations
Finance Communication System ATM–440
SLU P ATM–440
terminal support ATM–26, ATM–51
terminals OG–252, OG–254
terminals in AS–288, ATM–49
terminating OG–256
termination phase AS–280
terminology AS–248
third system as an alternate AS–279
tracking
control region, dumping OG–247
overview OG–240
suspending operations OG–247
tracking phase
Application Program and Transaction Status AS–270
XRF (Extended Recovery Facility) (continued)
tracking phase (continued)
Communication Network Status AS–269
Database Status AS–270
Dependent Region Status AS–270
Message Queue Status AS–270
MFS Pool Status AS–270
USERVAR ATM–300, OG–237, OG–253
USERVAR table, VTAM
at takeover AS–262
automated by NCCF AS–274
defining IMS to VTAM AS–296
USERVAR variable
restrictions AS–263
updating entries AS–261
USERVAR= keyword AS–308
VTAM OG–255
VTAM ownership affecting terminal switching AS–296
XRF environment
starting DC trace DGR–270
stopping DC trace DGR–270
XRF takeover CR–25
XRST (Extended Restart) APDB–147, APDG–41
XRST (Extended Restart) call
description APDB–178
format APDB–178
parameters APDB–178
restrictions APDB–181
usage APDB–179
with GSAM APDB–218
XRST (Extended Restart) command
description APCICS–83
examples APCICS–85
format APCICS–83
options APCICS–83
restrictions APCICS–85
usage APCICS–84
XRST call APTM–123
XRST call
description APTM–123
format APTM–123
parameters APTM–123
restrictions APTM–125
summary APTM–347
usage APTM–124
XRST call function APDB–314, APTM–384
XSDB (Extended Program Communication Block)
Assembler example CG–56
COBOL example CG–56
PL/I example CG–57
XSDB (Extended Segment Data Block) CG–50
XTRC
definition CR–74
Z
Z command code
examples APDB–44
setting a subpointer to zero APDB–44
Z NET command OG–137
z/OS
  IMS SVC modules IIV–69
  VTAM Generic Resource affinity ATM–121
Z1 field APTM–16
Z2 field APTM–16
Z2 field in message prefix ATM–86
ZIB definition/mapping macro DGR–61
ZONEDECIMAL data type JGR–86
ZZ field
  in input message APTM–15
  in output message APTM–16
This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A. IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user’s responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation
Licensing
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku
Tokyo 106, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
J46A/G4
555 Bailey Avenue
San Jose, CA 95141-1003
U.S.A.
Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this information and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement, or any equivalent agreement between us.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurement may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

All statements regarding IBM’s future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrates programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM for the purposes of developing, using, marketing, or distributing application programs conforming to IBM's application programming interfaces.

Each copy or any portion of these sample programs or any derivative work, must include a copyright notice as follows:

© (your company name) (year). Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp. Sample Programs. © Copyright IBM Corp. _enter the year or years_. All rights reserved.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

**Trademarks**

The following terms are trademarks of the IBM Corporation in the United States or other countries or both:

- BookManager
- CICS
- OS/390
- Parallel Sysplex
UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.